



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

LANE

MEDICAL



LIBRARY

LEVI COOPER LANE FUND





8548

A TEXT BOOK
OF
OPERATIVE SURGERY
AND
SURGICAL ANATOMY.

BY
ARTHUR TREHERN NORTON, F.R.C.S.,
SURGEON TO, AND SURGEON IN CHARGE OF THE THROAT DEPARTMENT AT, ST. MARY'S HOSPITAL;
LECTURER ON SURGERY, AND LATE LECTURER ON ANATOMY IN ST. MARY'S MEDICAL
SCHOOL; EXAMINER IN SURGERY AT DURHAM UNIVERSITY.

BASED ON THE ORIGINAL WORK OF
PROFESSORS CLAUDE BERNARD & CH. HUETTE.

SECOND EDITION.

ILLUSTRATED BY 88 PLATES DRAWN FROM NATURE, AND
ENGRAVED ON STEEL, AND MANY WOODCUTS.



LONDON:
BAILLIÈRE, TINDALL, AND COX
20, KING WILLIAM STREET, STRAND.
[PARIS: BAILLIÈRE. MADRID: C. BAILLY-BAILLIÈRE.]

1886.
Hta

Y9A991 3MAJ

N88

1886

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THE present work needs but little introduction. The names of its eminent French authors are a sufficient guarantee of its excellence. The correctness and the artistic finish of the plates can hardly be surpassed.

Some of the operations described in the original work have been rendered obsolete by the advancement of science and the improvement of surgical instruments and appliances, and it has been thought advisable in some instances to mention such operations only casually, and in others to withdraw them entirely from the English edition. In consequence of the changes referred to, one or two of the figures represent varieties of operations rarely performed, and portray instruments now superseded. The historical interest attaching, however, to these figures affords an ample justification for retaining them as valuable illustrations of the surgical handicraft of the past.

A full description of the many improvements in operative surgery which have been introduced since the publication of the French work has been added; and where more than one operation may be performed with the same object in

view, special reference has been made to those operations in vogue in this country and on the Continent at the present day,

I have to thank Mr. Silcock for adding greatly to the chapter on 'Ophthalmic Surgery;' Dr. Wiltshire and Mr. M. Handfield Jones for supervising the subject of 'Diseases of Women;' Mr. Buckston Browne, 'Lithotrity;' Mr. Field, 'Aural Surgery;' Mr. McEwen and Mr. Davy, 'Osteotomy;' and Mr. Henry Morris, 'Renal Operations.' Three woodcuts on 'Ophthalmic Surgery' have been copied, with some alterations, from Mr. Juler's work.

ARTHUR TREHERN NORTON.

WIMPOLE STREET,

October 1st, 1885.



CONTENTS.

PLATE	PAGE
I. METHODS OF HOLDING THE BISTOURY - - -	13
Incisions.	
II. CLOSURE OF WOUNDS - - -	14
Sutures.	
III. THE SETON - - -	16
Seton of the Neck—Vaccination.	
IV. BLEEDING FROM THE ARM - - -	17
Anatomy—Operation—Punctures and Scarifications—	
Acupuncture.	
BLEEDING FROM THE FOOT - - -	18
Anatomy—Operation.	
V. BLEEDING FROM THE JUGULAR - - -	19
Operation.	

ARTERIOTOMY.

Anatomy—Operation - - -	20
VI. LIGATURE OF ARTERIES - - -	20
Anatomy—Operation.	
VII. LIGATURE OF THE ULNAR AND RADIAL ARTERIES -	22
Anatomy—Operation.	
VIII. LIGATURE OF THE BRACHIAL ARTERY - - -	24
Anatomy—Operation.	
IX. LIGATURE OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY IN THE ARMPIT,	
ITS LOWER THIRD - - -	25
Anatomy—Operation.	
X. LIGATURE OF THE AXILLARY AND SUBCLAVIAN ARTERIES	27
Operation.	
LIGATURE OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY IN THE FIRST	
PART OF ITS COURSE - - -	28
First Method—Second Method.	
LIGATURE OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY - - -	29

PLATE	PAGE
XI. LIGATURE OF THE CAROTID, LINGUAL AND FACIAL ARTERIES	30
Anatomy—Operation.	
DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS	31
Ligature of the Brachio-cephalic Trunk—Ligature of the Common Carotid Artery—Ligature of the Lingual Artery—Ligature of the Facial Artery as it passes over the Border of the Lower Jaw.	
XII. LIGATURE OF THE RADIAL ARTERY AND DORSAL ARTERY OF THE FOOT	34
Anatomy of the Radial Artery on the Dorsal Surface of the Carpus—Operation—Anatomy of the Dorsal Artery of the Foot—Operation.	
STEPS OF THE OPERATION	35
XIII. LIGATURE OF THE ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY	35
Anatomy—Operation.	
DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS	36
Ligature of the Lower Part of the Anterior Tibial Artery—Ligature of the Upper Part of the Anterior Tibial Artery—Ligature of the Peroneal Artery.	
XIV. LIGATURE OF THE POSTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY	38
Anatomy—Operation.	
STAGES OF THE OPERATION	39
Mannec's Method.	
XV. LIGATURE OF THE POPLITEAL ARTERY	40
Anatomy—Operation.	
STAGES OF THE OPERATION	41
Marshall's Method—Jobert's Method.	
XVI. LIGATURE OF THE FEMORAL ARTERY	42
Anatomy—Operation.	
STAGES OF THE OPERATION	43
Hunter's Operation—Scarpa's Operation.	
XVII. LIGATURE OF THE FEMORAL ARTERY IMMEDIATELY BELOW THE CRURAL ARCH: OF THE ILIAC AND EPICLASTRIC ARTERIES	45
Anatomy—Operation.	
STAGES OF THE OPERATIONS	46
AMPUTATIONS.	
RULES FOR MAKING THE FLAPS	50
XVIII. DISARTICULATION OF TWO LAST PHALANXES OF THE FINGERS AND OF AN ENTIRE FINGER	51
Anatomy—Operations	

CONTENTS.

PLATE	DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS	
	<i>Disarticulation of two last Phalanges:</i>	
	Method—Flap Operation.	
	<i>Disarticulation of an Entire Finger: Method</i>	
	Lateral Flaps—Oval Operation.	
XIX.	DISARTICULATION OF THE FOUR FINGERS AND OF	
	FIRST AND FIFTH METACARPAL BONES	
	Operations.	
	DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS	
	<i>Disarticulation of the Four Fingers Together: Flap</i>	
	Operation.	
	<i>Disarticulation of the Metacarpal Bone of the Third</i>	
	Oval Method.	
	<i>Disarticulation of the Metacarpal Bone of the Little</i>	
	Finger: Oval Method.	
XX.	CARPO-METACARPAL AND RADIO-CARPAL DISARTICULA-	
	TION	
	Anatomy—Operations.	
	DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS	
	<i>Carpometacarpal Disarticulation of the Four Fingers</i>	
	Single Flap Operation.	
	<i>Radio-carpal Disarticulation.</i>	
XXI.	DISARTICULATION OF THE ELBOW	60
	Anatomy—Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS	61
XXII.	DISARTICULATION OF THE SHOULDER	61
	Anatomy—Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS	62
XXIII.	DISARTICULATION OF THE TOES	63
	Anatomy—Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS	64
XXIV.	TARSO-METATARSAL DISARTICULATION — LISFRANC'S	
	OPERATION	65
	Anatomy—Operation.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS	66
	Hey's Amputation.	
XXV.	MEDIO-TARSAL DISARTICULATION, TERMED CHOPART'S	67
	Anatomy—Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS	68
	Chopart's Medio-tarsal Disarticulation.	
	TIBIO-TARSAL DISARTICULATION	69
	Piragoff's Operation.	
XXVI.	DISARTICULATION OF THE KNEE	70
	Anatomy—Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS	71

PLATE		PAGE
XXVII.	DISARTICULATION OF THE THIGH - - -	72
	Anatomy—Operations—Arrest of Hæmorrhage.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS - - -	74
	AMPUTATIONS IN THE CONTINUITY OF THE BONES.	
XXVIII.	AMPUTATIONS OF THE FOOT AND HAND - - -	77
	Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS - - -	77
XXIX.	AMPUTATION OF THE FOREARM AND OF THE ARM -	78
	Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS - - -	79
XXX.	AMPUTATION OF THE LEG - - -	82
	Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS - - -	82
XXXI.	AMPUTATION OF THE THIGH - - -	84
	Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS - - -	84
XXXII.	RESECTIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE UPPER EXTREMITY - - -	86
	Operations.	
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS - - -	86
XXXIII.	RESECTIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE LOWER EXTREMITY - - -	92
	STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS - - -	92
XXXIV.	RESECTION OF THE INFERIOR AND SUPERIOR MAXIL- LARY BONES - - -	97
	Methods of Operating.	
	RESECTION OF THE BONES OF THE TRUNK - - -	99
XXXV.	TREPANNING OF THE CRANIAL BONES - - -	101
	Anatomy—Method of Operating.	
	OSTEOTOMY - - -	103
	Operations for Genu Valgum—Ogston's Operation —Anatomy of the Parts concerned in Macewen's Operation for Genu Valgum—Macewen's Opera- tion for Genu Valgum—Operations for the Re- lief of Anchylosed Hip-joint when at an angle producing Deformity—Adam's Operation— Gant's Operation—Anchylosis of the knee-joint.	
	OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED UPON THE ORGAN OF VISION.	
	OPERATIONS UPON THE EYELIDS - - -	112
	Anatomy—The Eyelids.	

CONTENTS.

PLATE	PAGE
XXXVI. OPERATIONS UPON THE EYELIDS - - -	113
XXXVII. FURTHER OPERATIONS PERFORMED ON THE EYELIDS - - -	114
METHODS OF OPERATING - - -	114
Coloboma—Ankyloblepharon—Symblepharon— Epicanthus—Blepharoptosis—Organic Entropion and Trichiasis—Ectropion—Blepharoplasty—Tumours of the Eyelids.	
XXXVIII. OPERATIONS ON THE LACHRYMAL APPARATUS -	125
Anatomy.	
XXXIX. OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE LACHRYMAL APPARATUS (<i>continued</i>) -	127
Operations.	
XL. OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE MUSCLES OF THE EYE - - -	135
Anatomy.	
STRABISMUS - - -	136
Operations.	
XLI. OPERATION FOR CATARACT BY DEPRESSION -	139
XLII. CATARACT AND ARTIFICIAL PUPIL - -	140
OPERATIONS ON THE EYEBALL - - -	140
Anatomy.	
CATARACT - - -	142
Operations for the Removal of Cataract by Extraction—Operations for the Removal of Cataract by Discission and Gradual Absorption—Operation for the Removal of Cataract by the Method of Suction.	
OPERATIONS FOR ARTIFICIAL PUPIL - - -	150
Iridectomy—Iridodesis—Iridotomy (Iritomy)—Sclerotomy—Paracentesis of the Vitreous Chamber.	
OPERATIONS PRACTISED UPON THE CORNEA -	154
Inspection of the Cornea—Removal of a Foreign Body from the Cornea—Paracentesis of the Anterior Chamber—Scraping Corneal Ulcers—Tattooing the Cornea—Comical Cornea—Peritomy—Pterygium—Enucleation of the Eyeball—Fitting an Artificial Eye.	
OPERATIONS ON THE EAR.	
XLIII. OPERATIONS ON THE EAR - - -	161
Operations on the External Ear—Operations on the Middle Ear.	

CONTENTS.

OPERATIONS ON THE LIPS.

PAGE	PAGE
XLIV. HARE-LIP, CHEILOPLASTY - CONTRACTION OF THE BUCCAL ORIFICE	167
XLV. HARE-LIP, ETC. (<i>continued</i>)	167
Reproduction of the Buccal Orifice Hare-lip— Double Hare-lip. Complicated Hare lip—Re- moval of Cancers of the Lip and Cheiloplasty— Cheiloplasty of the Lower Lip—Genoplasty.	

OPERATIONS ON THE NOSE AND NASAL FOSSÆ.

XLVI. OPERATIONS ON THE NOSE AND NASAL FOSSÆ	176
Rhinoplasty—Contraction and Occlusion of the Nostrils—Foreign Bodies in the Nostrils Poly- pus Nasi—Plugging the Nose.	
OPERATIONS ON THE FRONTAL AND MAXILLARY SINUSES	181
Perforation of the Frontal Sinus—Catheterism and Perforation of the Maxillary Sinus.	
XLVII. LIGATION OF A NASAL POLYPUS—REMOVAL OF TONSILS	183

CANCER OF THE TONGUE.

XLVIII. CANCER OF THE TONGUE	183
Operative Measures—Section of the Frenum Lingue: -Abnormal Adhesions of the Tongue.	
OPERATIONS ON THE TONSILS	187
Abscess of Tonsils—Excision of Tonsils.	
XLIX. OPERATIONS ON THE SALIVARY APPARATUS	188
Fistula of the Parotid Gland and Steno's Duct Anatomy—Operative Measures Extirpation of the Submaxillary Gland.	
RANULA	191
L. STAPHYLOGRAPHY	192
LI. STAPHYLOGRAPHY (<i>continued</i>)	193
CLEFT PALATE	193
Operations—Staphyloplasty—Palatoplasty.	
LII. CATHETERISM OF THE AIR-PASSAGES AND OF THE ÆSOPHAGUS	198
CATHETERISM OF THE ÆSOPHAGUS	198
Anatomy—Operative Measures Stricture of the Æsophagus—Catheterism of the Air-passages.	

CONTENTS.

xi

LIGATURE OF VASCULAR TUMOURS.

PLATE	PAGE
LIII. LIGATURE OF VASCULAR TUMOURS	203
LIV. GOITRE LIGATION	204
Goitre.	

ŒSOPHAGOTOMY.

LV. ŒSOPHAGOTOMY	207
Anatomy—Operation.	

BRONCHOTOMY.

LVI. BRONCHOTOMY	209
Operations, etc.—Infra-hyoid Bronchotomy—Thyro-laryngotomy—Laryngotomy—Laryngo-tracheotomy—Tracheotomy.	

EXTIRPATION OF THE BREAST— EMPHYEMA.

LVII. EXTIRPATION OF THE BREAST—EMPHYEMA	219
Extirpation of the Breast—Operations.	
FLUIDS IN THE CHEST	220
Operations—Paracentesis of the Pericardium.	
LESIONS OF THE INTERCOSTAL ARTERIES	224

OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE ABDOMEN.

LVIII. OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE ABDOMEN	225
Paracentesis of the Abdomen—Anatomy—Gastro-tomy and Gastrostomy.	
ABSCESS OF THE LIVER, TUMOURS FROM BILIARY CALCULI, AND HYDATID CYSTS	228
Cholecystotomy.	
WOUNDS OF THE ABDOMEN	228
Strangulation of the Great Omentum—Strangulation of the Intestines.	
LIX. WOUNDS OF THE INTESTINE	230
LX. HERNIA—SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE INGUINAL REGION	237
LXI. CONTINUATION OF THE SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE INGUINAL REGION	238

PLATE	PAGE
LXII. SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE SCROTUM, AND OF THE SPERMATIC CORD	241
LXIII. A THEORETICAL EXPLANATION OF THE FORMATION OF HERNIAS	243
LXIV. SURGICAL ANATOMY OF HERNIAS	244
LXV. RADICAL CURE OF HERNIA	245
The Operations,	
GENERAL STUDY OF HERNIAS	251
Obstruction—Strangulation—Seat of the Strangulation—Treatment of Hernias—Reduction of Hernias—Operation of Taxis—Duration of the Taxis.	
LXVI. OPERATION FOR DIVISION OF THE STRUCTURE (KELCOTOMY)	257
DIVISION OF THE STRUCTURE IN INGUINAL HERNIA	258
Cranal Hernia—Operation—Umbilical Hernia (Omphalocele or Exomphalus).	
LXVII. ACCIDENTAL ARTIFICIAL ANUS	266
Pathological Anatomy—Operations—Obliiteration of the External Opening in Cases of Artificial Anus.	
LXVIII. OPERATION FOR ARTIFICIAL ANUS	272
Anatomy.	
LXIX. OPERATION FOR ARTIFICIAL ANUS (<i>continued</i>)—Artificial Anus—Operation.	273
OPERATIONS PERFORMED ON THE KIDNEY	276
LXX. OPERATIVE SURGERY OF THE ANUS AND RECTUM	290
Fistula in Ano—Operations.	
FISSURE OF THE ANUS	293
LXXI. CONTINUATION OF OPERATIONS UPON THE RECTUM AND ANUS	294
Hæmorrhoidal Tumours, or Piles—Polypi of Rectum—Cancer of Rectum—Anatomy—Operative Surgery—Plugging the Rectum—Foreign Bodies in the Rectum—Stricture of the Anus and Rectum—Prolapse of the Rectum—Imperforate Anus—Abnormal Anus.	
LXXII. OPERATIONS PERFORMED UPON THE PENIS	301
Division of the Frenum—Phimosis—Paraphimosis—Cancer of the Penis—Amputation of the Penis.	
LXXIII. OPERATIONS UPON THE PENIS AND SCROTUM	304
Hydrocele—Tumours of the Testis.	
LXXIV. OPERATION FOR VARICOCELE	306
Varicocele.	

CONTENTS.

<i>PLATE</i>	
LXXV. OPERATIONS ON THE BLADDER AND URETHRA	
Puncture of Bladder.	
LXXVI. CONTINUATION OF OPERATIONS UPON THE BLADDER AND URETHRA	
Surgical Anatomy of the Urethra—Catheterisation of the Urethra.	
LXXVII. FALSE PASSAGES—STRICTURE OF URETHRA—PUNCTURE OF URETHRA—ENLARGEMENT OF MEATUS—FISTULA OF URETHRA—INSTRUMENTS IN URETHRA	
Strictures of Urethra—Treatment—Operations on Urinary Fistulæ.	
LXXVIII. CATHETERISM AND LITHOTRITY	
Lithotritry—The Operation and Instruments ; Crushing a Stone in the Bladder.	
LXXIX. SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE PERINEUM	
LITHOTOMY	
Surgical Anatomy of the Perineum.	
LXXX. SUPRA-PUBIC OR 'HIGH' OPERATION	
Surgical Anatomy of the Supra-pubic Region—Operation—Tumours of the Bladder.	
LXXXI. OPERATIONS PRACTISED ON THE GENITAL ORGANS OF WOMEN	34
Cutting for Stone in Women—Surgical Anatomy of the Female Perineum.	
OPERATIVE PROCEDURES	348
On Catheterism and Cutting for Stone in Women—Dilatation of the Urethra.	
LXXXII. OPERATIONS INVOLVING THE GENITAL APPARATUS PROPERLY SO-CALLED	353
Operations applicable to Rupture and Fistulæ of the Vagina—Operations on the Vulva—Operations on the Vagina.	
LXXXIII. OPERATIONS APPLICABLE TO THE TREATMENT OF UTERINE POLYPI AND PROLAPSE OF THE WOMB	364
Operations upon the Uterus.	
OPERATIVE PROCEDURES	365
Operations the object of which is to remedy Prolapse of the Uterus and Vagina, Vaginal Cystocele and Rectocele	
LXXXIV. OPERATIONS ON THE UTERUS AND ITS APPENDAGES	371
EXPLORATION OF THE CERVIX UTERI	371
Operations applicable to Cancer of the Cervix Uteri.	
DISEASES OF THE OVARY	379
Operative Procedures.	

PLATE	PAGE
LXXXV. OBSTETRICAL OPERATIONS—PREMATURE ARTIFICIAL DELIVERY - - - - -	383
Operative Procedures.	
LXXXVI. CÆSARIAN SECTION—SYMPHYSEOTOMY - - - - -	386
CÆSARIAN SECTION - - - - -	386
Operative Procedures.	
SYMPHYSEOTOMY - - - - -	389
LXXXVII. TENOTOMY - - - - -	390
Torticollis or Wryneck—Section of the Sterno-cleido-mastoid Muscle—Club-hand—Permanent Contraction of the Fingers.	
TORTICOLLIS—SECTION OF THE STERNO-MASTOID -	391
Operations—Permanent Contraction of the Fingers—Clubbed Hand—Section of Palmar Aponeurosis, and of the Flexor Tendons—Web Fingers—Norton's Operation.	
LXXXVIII. CLUBFOOT—SECTION OF TENDO-ACHILLIS .	396
Clubfoot—Division of the Tendons of the Leg and Foot—Operation.	

LIST OF PLATES.

PLATE	PAGE
I. METHODS OF HOLDING THE BISTOURY - - -	11
II. THE APPLICATION OF SUTURES IN THE UNION OF WOUNDS - - - - -	14
III. THE SETON, SCARIFICATION, CUPPING, VACCINATION -	16
IV. VENESECTION IN THE ARM AND LEG - - -	17
V. ARTERIOTOMY—THE TEMPORAL ARTERY—VENESECTION —THE INTERNAL JUGULAR VEIN - - -	19
VI. THE EFFECTS OF THE LIGATURE AND TORSION UPON ARTERIES - - - - -	20
VII. LIGATURE OF THE RADIAL AND ULNAR ARTERIES -	22
VIII. LIGATURE OF THE BRACHIAL ARTERY - - -	24
IX. LIGATURE OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY IN THE THIRD PART OF ITS COURSE - - - - -	25
X. LIGATURE OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY IN THE FIRST PART OF ITS COURSE—LIGATURE OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY - - - - -	27
XI. LIGATURE OF THE COMMON CAROTID, LINGUAL, AND FACIAL ARTERIES - - - - -	30
XII. LIGATURE OF THE RADIAL ARTERY AND DORSAL ARTERY OF THE FOOT - - - - -	34
XIII. LIGATURE OF THE ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY - -	35
XIV. LIGATURE OF THE POSTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY - -	38
XV. LIGATURE OF THE POPLITEAL ARTERY - - -	40
XVI. LIGATURE OF THE FEMORAL ARTERY - - -	42

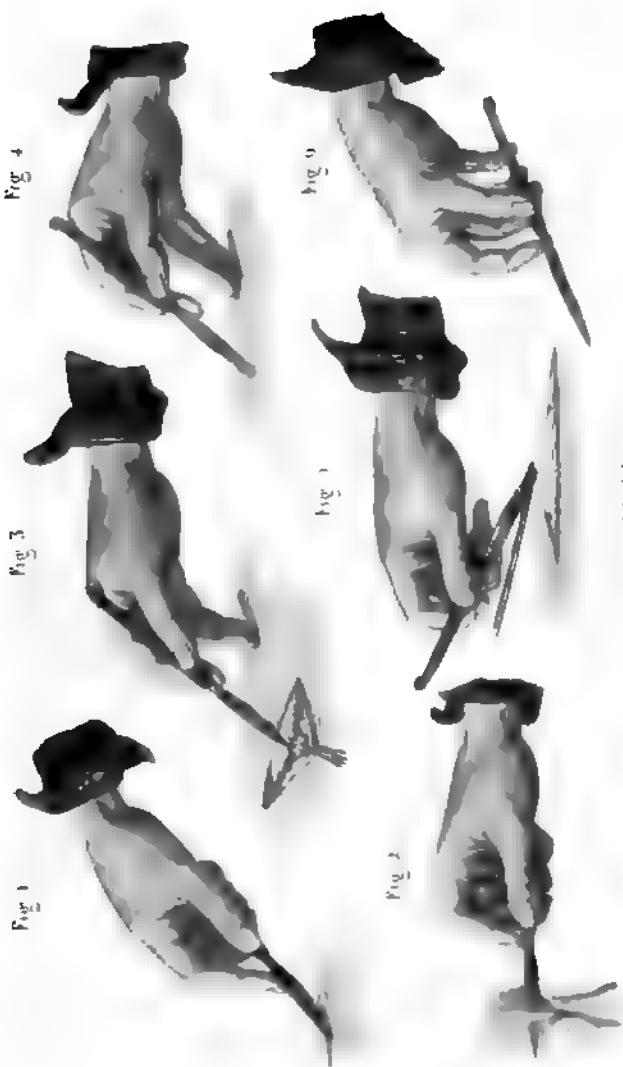
PLATE	PAGE
XVII. LIGATURE OF THE FEMORAL ARTERY IMMEDIATELY BELOW THE CRURAL ARCH; OF THE ILLIAC AND EPIGASTRIC ARTERIES	45
XVIII. DISARTICULATION OF THE LAST TWO PHALANXES OF THE FINGERS AND OF AN ENTIRE FINGER	51
XIX. DISARTICULATION OF THE FOUR FINGERS AND OF THE FIRST AND FIFTH METACARPAL BONES	55
XX. CARPO-METACARPAL AND RADIO-CARPAL DISARTICULATION	57
XXI. DISARTICULATION OF THE ELBOW	60
XXII. DISARTICULATION OF THE SHOULDER	61
XXIII. DISARTICULATION OF THE TOES	63
XXIV. TARSO-METATARSAL DISARTICULATION	65
XXV. MEDIO-TARSAL DISARTICULATION	67
XXVI. DISARTICULATION OF THE KNEE	70
XXVII. DISARTICULATION OF THE THIGH	72
XXVIII. AMPUTATIONS OF THE FOOT AND HAND	77
XXIX. AMPUTATIONS OF THE ARM AND FOREARM	78
XXX. AMPUTATION OF THE LEG	82
XXXI. AMPUTATION OF THE THIGH	84
XXXII. RESECTIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE UPPER EXTREMITY	86
XXXIII. RESECTIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE LOWER EXTREMITY	92
XXXIV. RESECTION OF THE INFERIOR AND SUPERIOR MAXILLARY BONES	97
XXXV. TREPANNING OF THE CRANIAL BONES	101
XXXVI. OPERATIONS UPON THE EYELIDS	113
XXXVII. FURTHER OPERATIONS PERFORMED ON THE EYELIDS	114
XXXVIII. OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE LACRYMAL APPARATUS	125
XXXIX. OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE LACRYMAL APPARATUS (<i>continued</i>)	127
XL. OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE MUSCLES OF THE EYE	135
XLI. OPERATION FOR CATARACT BY DEPRESSION	139
XLII. CATARACT AND ARTIFICIAL PUPIL	140

LIST OF PLATES.

PLATE	PAGE
XLIII. OPERATIONS ON THE EAR - - -	161
XLIV. HARE LIP, CHEILOPLASTY — CONTRACTION OF THE BUCCAL ORIFICE - - -	167
XLV. HARE-LIP, ETC. (<i>continued</i>) - - -	167
XLVI. OPERATIONS ON THE NOSE AND NASAL FOSSÆ -	176
XLVII. LIGATURE OF A NASAL POLYPUS. — REMOVAL OF TONSILS - - -	183
XLVIII. CANCER OF TONGUE AND OPERATION FOR STAMMERING -	183
XLIX. OPERATIONS ON THE SALIVARY APPARATUS -	188
I. STAPHYLOGRAPHY - - -	192
II. STAPHYLOGRAPHY (<i>continued</i>) - - -	193
LII. CATHETERISM OF THE AIR PASSAGES AND OF THE ÆSOPHAGUS - - -	198
LIII. LIGATURE OF VASCULAR TUMOURS -	202
LIV. GOITRE LIGATION - - -	203
LV. ÆSOPHAGOTOMY - - -	207
LVI. BRONCHOTOMY - - -	209
LVII. EXTIRPATION OF THE BREAST—EMPYEMA -	219
LVIII. OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE ABDOMEN - - -	225
LIX. WOUNDS OF THE INTESTINE - - -	230
LX. HERNIA—SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE INGUINAL REGION - - -	237
LXI. CONTINUATION OF THE SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE INGUINAL REGION - - -	238
LXII. SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE SCROTUM, AND OF THE SPERMATIC CORD - - -	246
LXIII. A THEORETICAL EXPLANATION OF THE FORMATION OF HERNIAS - - -	250
LXIV. SURGICAL ANATOMY OF HERNIAS -	251
LXV. RADICAL CURE OF HERNIA - - -	254
LXVI. OPERATION FOR DIVISION OF THE STRICTURE (KELLO- TOMY) - - -	257
LXVII. ACCIDENTAL ARTIFICIAL ANUS -	266
LXVIII. OPERATION FOR ARTIFICIAL ANUS -	272
LXIX. OPERATION FOR ARTIFICIAL ANUS (<i>continued</i>) -	273
LXX. OPERATIVE SURGERY OF THE ANUS AND RECTUM -	290

PLATE	PAGE
LXXI. CONTINUATION OF OPERATIONS UPON THE RECTUM AND ANUS - - - - -	294
LXXII. OPERATIONS PERFORMED UPON THE PENIS -	301
LXXIII. OPERATIONS UPON THE PENIS AND SCROTUM	304
LXXIV. OPERATION FOR VARICOCELE - -	306
LXXV. OPERATIONS ON THE BLADDER AND URETHRA	308
LXXVI. CONTINUATION OF OPERATIONS UPON THE BLADDER AND URETHRA - - - - -	310
LXXVII. FALSE PASSAGES—STRICTURE OF URETHRA—PLAS- TIC OPERATIONS—ENLARGEMENT OF MEATUS— FIXING INSTRUMENTS IN URETHRA -	317
LXXVIII. CATHETERISM AND LITHOTRITY - -	325
LXXIX. SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE PERINEUM—LITHO- TOMY - - - - -	331
LXXX. SUPRA-PUBIC OR 'HIGH' OPERATION FOR LITHO- TOMY - - - - -	338
LXXXI. OPERATIONS PRACTISED ON THE GENITAL ORGANS OF WOMEN - - - - -	342
LXXXII. OPERATIONS INVOLVING THE GENITAL APPARATUS PROPERLY SO CALLED - - - - -	353
LXXXIII. OPERATIONS APPLICABLE TO THE TREATMENT OF UTERINE POLYPI AND PROLAPSE OF THE WOMB	364
LXXXIV. OPERATIONS ON THE CERVIX UTERI AND OVARIES -	370
LXXXV. OBSTETRICAL OPERATIONS—PREMATURE ARTIFI- CIAL DELIVERY - - - - -	381
LXXXVI. CÆSARIAN SECTION—SYMPHYSEOTOMY -	386
LXXXVII. TENOTOMY - - - - -	390
LXXXVIII. CLUBFOOT—SECTION OF TENDO-ACHILLIS -	396

Pl. I



J. B. Baillière & Fils, Éditeurs
P. r.

A TEXT BOOK
OF
OPERATIVE SURGERY AND SURGICAL
ANATOMY.

PLATE I.

METHODS OF HOLDING THE BISTOURY

THERE may be said to be three principal methods of holding the bistoury, each of which may be subdivided into two varieties.

First Position (Figs. 1 and 2), *Firmness and Strength*. The handle of the bistoury is held like a table-knife, with the edge of the knife turned downwards, and the index-finger extended upon the back of the blade (Fig. 1); or with the edge turned upwards, and the index-finger placed on the side of the blade close to its junction with the handle (Fig. 2).

Second Position (Figs. 3 and 4), *Lightness and Precision*. The bistoury is held like a pen, with the edge turned downwards (Fig. 3), or upwards (Fig. 4).

Third Position (Figs. 5 and 6), *Nicety and Precaution*.—The bistoury is held like the bow of a violin, with the handle of the instrument held forwards, the blade backwards, and the cutting edge upwards (Fig. 5), or else with the handle backwards, the blade forwards, and the edge downwards (Fig. 6).

INCISIONS.

Incisions in the skin are made with the object of laying bare or of removing some deeper part.

They should be made sufficiently large, or the operation is rendered tedious and difficult.

Incisions are *simple* and *compound*.

Simple are — (straight) or ∪ (curvilinear).

Compound are V, L, T, H, + (crucial, or stellate), U (u-shaped), and \subset (elliptical).

Compound incisions may be sometimes avoided, when the skin is loose and plentiful, by forcibly drawing upon the margin so as to dilate the wound.

Incisions are made from *without inwards*, as for the extirpation of a tumour, or from *within outwards*, as laying open a fistula.

Incisions from *without inwards*.—The skin being applied to and stretched upon the deeper parts by the left hand of the surgeon, or by assistants, the operator takes the knife in the first or second position (Figs. 1 and 3), plunges it perpendicularly at once to a proper depth, and then inclines it at an angle of 45°. On withdrawing the knife, he again raises it to the perpendicular in order to avoid terminating the incision *en queue* that is to say, by a cut oblique with the skin. The cut should be made by slight pressure, and by a sawing movement. When necessary to avoid structures situated immediately beneath the skin, the knife is held in the third position (Fig. 6), and the parts are divided almost layer by layer, or it may be considered advisable to adopt the method of cutting from within outwards upon a grooved director.

Incisions from *within outwards*. They may be made with or without a grooved director.

In one process, the knife being introduced in the second or third position beneath the skin, aponeurosis, or into a sinus, is raised to the perpendicular and made to cut through the tissues from heel to point.

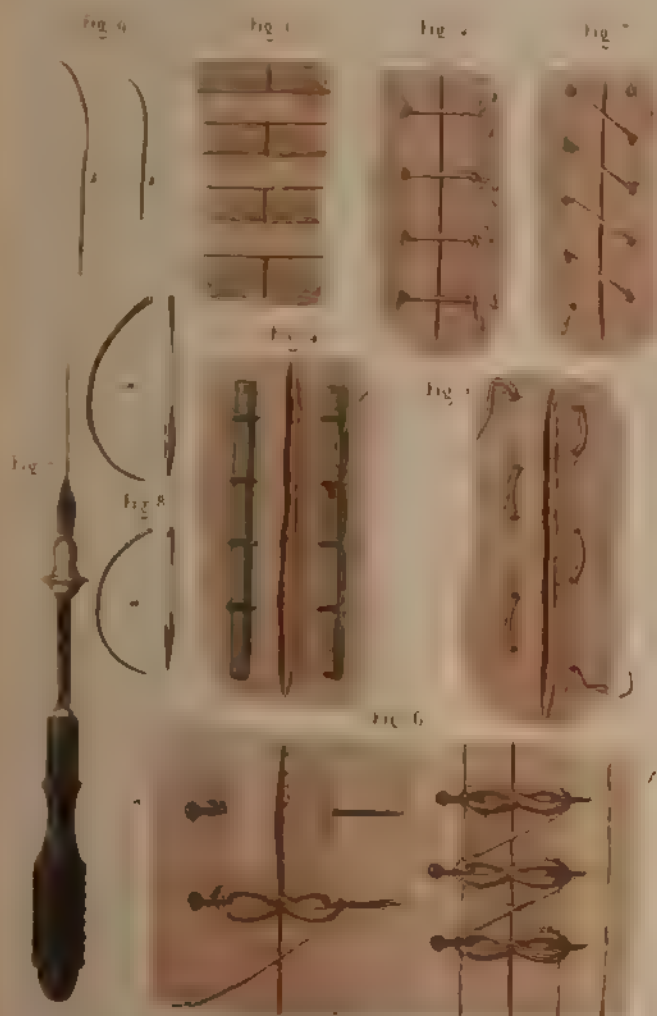
In a second process, the knife being introduced in the first position, its point is made to perforate the tissues to the surface, and the cutting is effected from point to heel. By this second process a fold of skin may be cut through, as in the operation for strangulated hernia: a fold of integument is raised, and held at one extremity by the operator, at the other extremity by an assistant; the knife, held in the first position, is now made to pierce the fold, and cut its way to the surface.

PLATE II.

CLOSURE OF WOUNDS.

The methods of closing wounds vary according to the nature of the solution of continuity, and according to the object which the surgeon has in view. When suppuration should take place the lips of the wound should be simply opposed, but when it is desired to obtain union by the first intention it is necessary that they should be adjusted very exactly, and so retained till union is secured.

In some instances the divided tissues may be brought together by



means of appropriate bandages or strips of adhesive plaster (Fig. 1), whilst in perhaps the majority of cases it is necessary to have recourse to an operative measure—that is, the *suture*.

SUTURES (Figs. 2, 3, 4, 5, 6).

Sutures are of three varieties.

1. The simple suture (Figs. 2 and 3), which brings together the lips of the wound edge to edge.

2. The suture *à points profonds* (Fig. 5), which brings together the lips of the wound by the deep part, and to some extent surface to surface.

3. The twisted suture (Fig. 6), which brings together the lips of the wound at once by their edges and by their depths.

1. *The simple suture* is made by passing a thread by means of a needle, curved or straight, through the two lips of the wound. The two ends of the thread are now to be tied with a reef-knot and cut off short. A sufficient number of sutures must be passed to adjust the lips of the wound in their whole length. This form is called the interrupted suture (Fig. 2). If the same thread be continued through several punctures, it is called the continued suture, or the Glover's suture (Fig. 3).

2. *Suture à points profonds* (Fig. 5).—This suture is commenced like the simple continued suture, the thread being passed through the two lips of the wound, but the thread, instead of returning across the wound, runs along its borders alternately on the right and the left sides. From its appearance it has received the name of the zigzag suture (Fig. 5).

The quill suture (Fig. 4). A variety of the preceding. It is made by passing as many double threads as sutures required deeply through the lips of the wound. A piece of wood or quill is passed through the loops formed by the doubled threads, whilst the free ends of the threads are tied moderately tight upon a corresponding piece of wood or quill on the opposite side of the wound.

A piece of ivory or vulcanite perforated for the sutures is preferable to the quill or wood.

3. *The twisted suture* (Fig. 6) is made by passing a steel pin deeply through the two lips of the wound. The lips are then pressed together, and a thread is passed, commencing at its centre, in the form of a figure 8, around the extremities of each pin, and made to cross itself on to the pin below. The operation is completed by cutting off the extremities of the pins, and in order that they may not injure the skin a piece of plaster or lint is placed beneath the cut ends.

Fig. 7. A needle-holder, used when force is required to make the needle penetrate.

Fig. 8. *a a*. Flat needle of Boyer, curved in the arc of a circle.
b b. Needle of Velpeau, with the eye lateral, curved and flattened only in its anterior half.

PLATE III.

THE SETON.

A seton is the establishment of an issue by means of threads of silk or cotton, or a piece of tape.

SETON OF THE NECK.

A vertical fold of skin on the posterior region of the neck is raised and perforated at its base by a straight bistoury held in the first position. The silk or tape, *c*, previously oiled, is then passed by means of an eyed probe, and loosely tied. A poultice may be applied to the wound, or a piece of lint smeared with simple cerate, and supported by a band around the neck. The tape may be renewed at discretion.

The seton needle (Fig. 1') dispenses with the bistoury and the eyed probe, in that it makes the opening, and on its withdrawal brings through the silk or tape.

VACCINATION.

The upper and outer part of the arm is generally chosen for inoculation of vaccine.

There are four methods: 1. Friction; 2. Venication; 3. Scarification; 4. Puncture.

The last two only will be described.

In vaccinating by scarification a portion of the skin of the arm, about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch square, is scratched in all directions by the point of a needle or sharp lancet. The epidermis of an infant is extremely thin, and a very light scratch is sufficient to draw blood. Care should be taken not to make the scratches deep enough to cause the blood to run, but its appearance in the line of the scratches is to be desired. The virus is then to be pressed into the scarified surface.

In vaccinating by the puncture method, an ordinary lancet, or still better a vaccine lancet and needle (Fig. 2), is made use of. The instrument is first charged with vaccine either by dipping the point in the liquid from an open vaccine vesicle (if the vaccination is made from arm to arm), or in the humective with the preserved vaccine virus. The lancet, held in the right hand like a pen, is then presented horizontally to the surface of the skin, and its point made to penetrate to about 2 millimetres beneath the epidermis. After five or six seconds the instrument is withdrawn, the epidermis being slightly raised at the same time in order to cause the vaccine to enter the puncture. A small drop of blood invariably escapes, which should be pressed into the wound by the lancet to avoid the loss of the virus.

Pl. 3

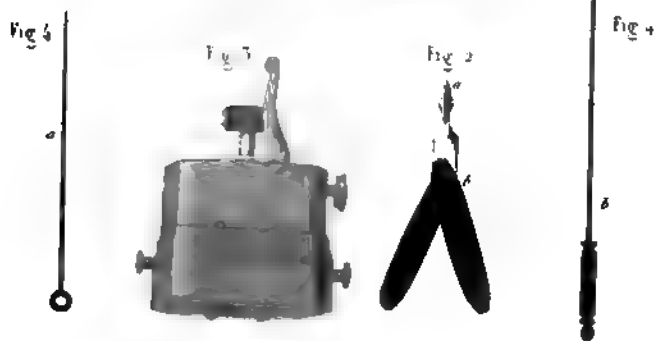
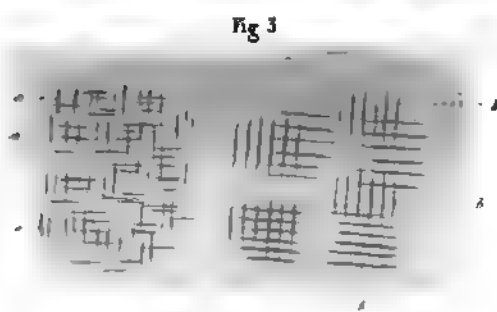
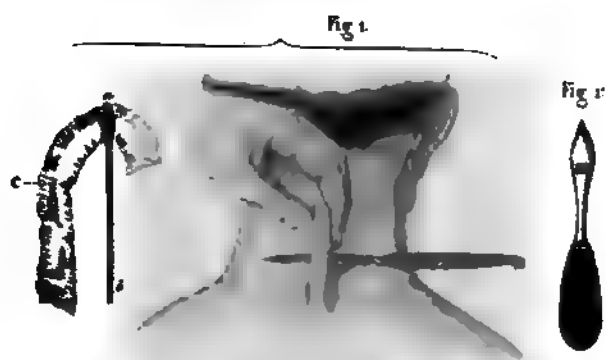


Fig 7

5

.

:

Pl. 4



Fig. 1



Fig. 3



Fig. 4

PLATE IV.

BLEEDING FROM THE ARM.

Fig. 1.—ANATOMY.

The skin (1) and adipose tissue covering the veins in the bend of the arm, together with the sub-jacent aponeurosis (2), have been removed in order to show the relation which the deep parts have towards the superficial veins.

A, Radial vein, accompanied by some filaments (*a*) of the musculo-cutaneous nerve.

B, Median cephalic vein, with a branch (*b*) of the musculo-cutaneous nerve beneath it.

C, Cephalic vein formed by the union of the two preceding. Along its inner border is the musculo-cutaneous nerve (*c*).

D, Median vein and filaments of musculo-cutaneous (*d*).

E, Median basilic vein crossed in front or behind by branches (*e*) of internal cutaneous nerve. This is a large branch which usually has communication with the deeper veins. It crosses the brachial artery (F) and the median nerve (H), from which it is separated only by the bicipital aponeurosis (G).

I, Ulnar veins; M, basilic vein, formed by the union of the median basilic with the ulnar veins; *m*, internal cutaneous nerve.

Fig. 2.—OPERATION.

The patient being seated or reclining, a handkerchief or broad tape is passed twice round the arm, about three or four finger-breadths above the bend of the elbow, and tied. The superficial veins dilate below the constriction, but care should be taken that the pulse at the wrist is not affected.

The surgeon next extends the arm of the patient, and fixes it firmly between his own arm and chest; and with his left hand he then tenses the skin over the bend of the elbow, and at the same time with the left thumb presses upwards the blood in the vein upon which he is about to operate, in order to fully dilate it. Now taking a lancet between the thumb and finger of the right hand, and supporting his hand upon the arm of the patient by means of the other fingers, he carefully punctures the dilated vein in a line obliquely, or at right angles to its course (*a'*, *a'*, *a'*).

The flow of blood may be increased by the patient grasping a stick or other material from time to time.

When the desired quantity has been obtained, the bleeding may be arrested by the application of the thumb of the left hand to the open-

ing in the vein. The ligature around the arm being then removed, a small four-fold compress is to be applied to the wound, and there retained by means of a narrow figure of 8 bandage.

The vein usually chosen for venesection is the median basilic, though any well-dilated vein in the bend of the elbow would do.

The median basilic is generally the most apparent, but it must be remembered that it lies directly over the brachial artery, being separated from it by the bicipital fascia. There is, therefore, always some danger of wounding the artery.

The Editor suggests a method which he has always adopted in performing venesection at the bend of the elbow. He never uses a lancet, but a small and sharp scalpel. When the vein is well dilated, and caused to bulge by the pressure of the thumb of the left hand, the knife is taken in the right hand in the second position; the right hand is now to be supported on the side of the arm to be bled by means of the little and fourth fingers. The knife is placed with its point close up to the vein, with its cutting edge upwards, and with the back of the blade resting on the arm of the patient, and slightly pressing into the arm, so that the point of the knife is a little below the level of the vein. The knife is now pushed onwards, and it cuts through the vein at right angles, about one-quarter to one-third of its circumference. In this method there can be no danger, for the point of the knife is never directed towards the artery, and no movement on the part of the patient could make the instrument to cut.

Fig. 3.—PUNCTURES AND SCARIFICATIONS.

Punctures (*a, a, a*) are made with the needle or a lancet to relieve an inflamed or œdematous part.

Scarifications (*b, b, b*) are superficial incisions made close together by means of a lancet or bistoury held in the third position.

Fig. 3' is a scarificator in which a number of lancets (12 to 24) are set in action at the same time by means of a spring. This instrument is almost invariably used in cupping.

Fig. 4.—ACUPUNCTURE.

Acupuncture is puncturing any particular tissue with a needle (Fig. 4, *a* and *b*). When the needles are connected with a galvanic battery it is termed galvano puncture, an operation frequently performed in the treatment of nævi and aneurismal tumours.

BLEEDING FROM THE FOOT.

Fig. 3.—ANATOMY.

The internal saphenous vein (*A*) arises from the plexus of veins (*B*) on the dorsum of the foot, and ascends in front of the internal malleolus (*C*). It is accompanied by filaments of the internal saphenous nerve (*D*).



.

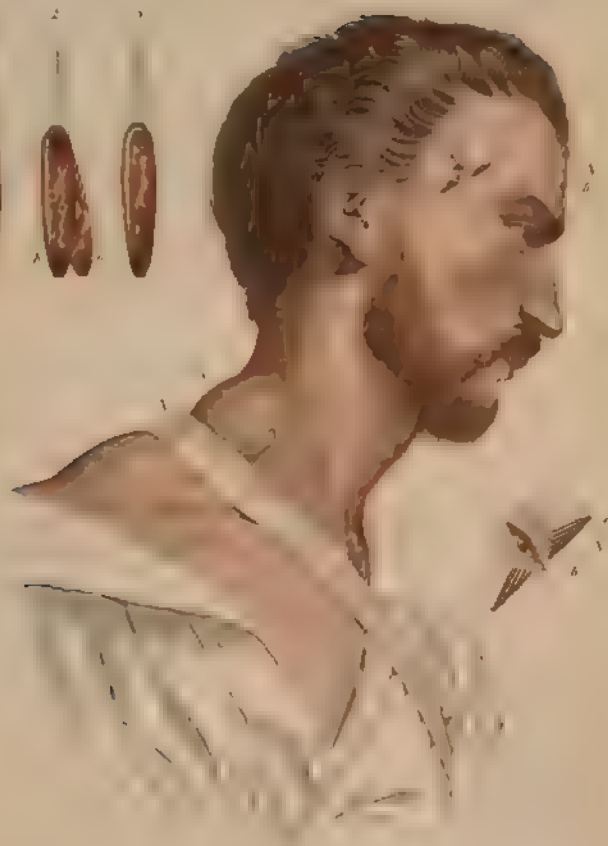
.

Pl 5

Fig 1



Fig 2



J. B.

Fig. 4.—OPERATION.

The venous circulation is arrested by means of a bandage as in the arm, placed about two finger-breadths above the malleoli. The foot may be then put into a bath of hot water. After a minute or so the surgeon places the foot upon his knee, and with care fixes the internal saphenous vein, which otherwise rolls under the finger. He then punctures the vessel, as in bleeding from the arm.

The blood rarely flows in a jet: it is therefore customary to place the foot again into the hot water, till the colour of the water, or the time of immersion, leads one to believe that a sufficient quantity of blood has been obtained.

The dressing consists of a little square compress held upon the wound by a figure 8 or stirrup bandage.

PLATE V.

Fig. 1. Lancets:—1. Barley grain. 2. Oat-shaped. 3. Serpent tongue.

Fig. 2 B, Venesection of the external jugular; A', arteriotomy of the temporal artery.

BLEEDING FROM THE JUGULAR (Fig. 2, B).

The external jugular vein extends from behind the angle of the lower jaw to the middle of the clavicle. Directed obliquely from before backwards, it crosses the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, being covered by the skin and platysma.

OPERATION.

The patient seated, or, still better, reclining, the circulation in the vessel is prevented by compression of the vessel a little above the clavicle. For this purpose a thick compress is pressed upon the vessel by a bandage, which is passed around the neck and beneath the opposite axilla. When the vessel is sufficiently swelled the surgeon fixes it with the left index-finger, and then makes the puncture. The opening, which is made about the middle of the neck, should be large, and in direction at right angles to the fibres of the platysma, otherwise the blood will escape only into the cellular tissue. It often happens that the blood does not escape in a stream, but runs down the neck.

The flow of blood is arrested by removing the compress, at the same time applying the finger to the wound, to prevent the introduction of air.

The dressing consists in drawing the wound together with a piece of plaster. Sometimes a pad and circular bandage are found necessary, in order to prevent the flow of blood.

ARTERIOTOMY.

ANATOMY.

A', Puncture of the temporal artery.

B', Division of the skin.

c', Pyramidal compresses for compression of the artery.

The temporal artery, a branch of the external carotid, ascends vertically over the root of the zygomatic process of the temporal bone. After a course of about 2 inches upon the temple it divides into two branches—a posterior and an anterior. The latter lies upon the epicranial aponeurosis, and is covered only by the skin, a position favourable for arteriotomy.

OPERATION.

The patient being seated, or lying, the temporal artery is sought for by its pulsations, and is then fixed by the left thumb and index-finger. Then with a straight bistoury, held in the third position, the operator makes a short incision across the vessel, but not completely severing it. The blood escapes, sometimes in a jet, but more often dribbles. In order to arrest it the artery is compressed on the two sides of the wound by means of the pyramidal compresses held in position by a bandage tied with the packer's knot.

° ° ° It is well to completely sever the artery before attempting to arrest the hæmorrhage, as the cut extremities of the vessel will then contract.

PLATE VI.

LIGATURE OF ARTERIES.

1. *Effect of the ligature upon arteries.*

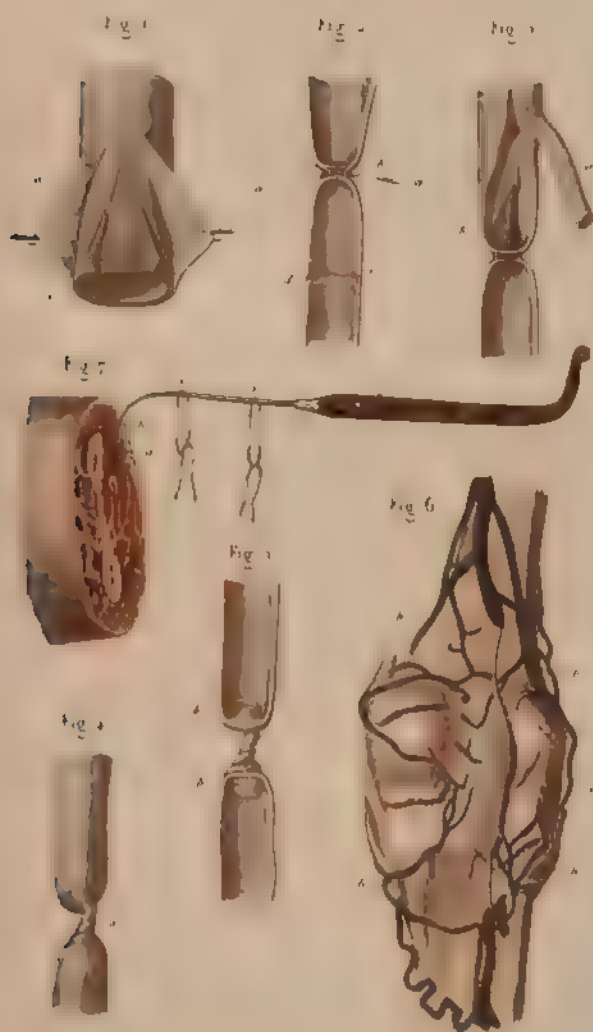
Fig. 1.—Arteries are composed of three tunics: *a*, external tunic—most vital, supple, and resisting; *b*, middle tunic—yellow, elastic, formed of circular fibres, possesses obscure vitality; *c*, internal tunic—slender, smooth, transparent, without vitality.

Fig. 2.—When a ligature is applied to an artery, the internal and middle tunics are torn through by the thread, and retract in such manner that the walls (*c*, *d*) of the external tunic, the only one which resists the ligature, are brought into contact by their internal face.

Fig. 3.—After the ligature of an artery, the collateral vessel (*a*) above dilates, and in the space between the ligature and the first branch above it the blood stagnates, and forms a clot (*b*), which obliterates the artery after the separation of the ligature.

Figs. 4 and 5.—*Torsion* (*a*) has the same effect upon the coats of an artery as the ligature—that is, it tears through the internal and middle

Pl 6



coats (*b, b*), which are pressed back above and below, whilst the external tunic (*c*) alone resists and twists to obliterate the calibre of the artery.

Fig. 6.—When the course of the blood is interrupted by a ligature or by any other circumstance, the circulation is re-established below by means of the dilatation of the anastomosis between the collateral branches above and below. Fig. 6 (Dupuytren Museum) represents an aneurism (*a*) of the popliteal artery cured by the employment of ice. The articular arteries (*b, b, b, b*) are considerably dilated, re-establishing the circulation in the lower part of the limb.

Fig. 7.—*a*, Artery in a stump, seized on the point (*b*) of a tenaculum; *c, c'*, ligatures for the purpose of tying the artery.

2. Ordinary procedures in ligaturing an artery.

In order to find an artery which it is intended to tie—

Firstly. Determine the course of the vessel, both by anatomical knowledge and by the pulsation of the vessel.

Secondly. The skin being conveniently stretched, make an incision with a convex bistoury, held in the third position, along the course of the vessel, increasing the length of the incision according to the depth of the vessel.

This incision should comprise the skin and the cellular tissue.

Thirdly. Divide by means of the grooved director the enveloping aponeurosis, and turn aside the muscles to seek the vessel, which is usually contained, together with its companion veins and nerves, in a common sheath.

Fourthly. Raise the sheath with dissecting forceps, and divide it with precaution sufficient only to introduce an aneurism needle.

Fifthly. Next lay aside the bistoury, and with the director and forceps free the vessel from the tissue around, taking care not to denude the vessel to too great an extent, and also to introduce the director between the vessel and the most important companion structure, in order not to wound that structure by the point of the director.

Sixthly. When the artery is denuded and raised upon the director, determine the pulsation, and then pass the ligature beneath it by means of an aneurism needle furnished with the thread, introducing the needle between the artery and the most important companion structure.

Seventhly and lastly. Tie the artery tightly in the first knot, drawing the thread over the two index-fingers, like pulleys, in order to prevent too great an elevation, and a too great traction upon the artery; then tie the second knot, and cut one end of the ligature, bringing the other out at the lower end of the wound, unless the cat-gut ligature is employed, in which case both ends are cut off short.

PLATE VII.

LIGATURE OF THE ULNAR AND RADIAL ARTERIES.

Fig. 1.—ANATOMY.

- A, Brachial artery, with the median nerve *b* lying to its inner side.
c, Median basilic vein crossing the course of the brachial artery and median nerve, from which it is separated by the bicipital fascia *d*.
 E, Common origin of the radial and ulnar arteries.
f, Median nerve crossing the ulnar artery near its origin.
 E G, Upper part of the ulnar artery lying upon the deep flexor, covered by the pronator radii teres, flexor carpi radialis, palmaris longus, and flexor sublimis digitorum, which, being cut through, permit the artery to be seen in company with its venæ comites.
 G K, Lower part of the ulnar artery more superficially situated than the upper; also accompanied by the venæ comites. It is in relation internally with the ulnar nerve and the flexor carpi ulnaris, and externally with the tendons of the superficial flexor.
 L, The ulnar artery forming the superficial palmar arch.
 E P, Upper part of radial artery, with its venæ comites, in relation internally with the outer border of the pronator radii teres *n*, and flexor carpi radialis *o*; externally with the supinator longus *m* which overlaps it.
 P T, Lower part of the radial artery almost subcutaneous with the venæ comites, and in relation, without, with the supinator longus and the radial nerve for the middle third of its course; and within, with the tendon of the flexor carpi radialis.]

Fig. 2. OPERATION.

Incision 1.—Ligature of the ulnar artery in its upper third: division of—*a*, skin; *b*, aponeurosis; *c*, space between flexor carpi ulnaris and flexor sublimis digitorum; *d*, ulnar nerve; A, ulnar artery.

Incision 2.—Ligature of ulnar artery in its lower third—*a*, skin; *b*, aponeurosis; *c*, ulnar nerve; *d*, tendon of superficial flexor; A, artery upon the director.

Incision 3.—Ligature of the radial artery in its upper third—*a*, skin; *b*, aponeurosis; *c*, radial nerve; *d*, internal border of long supinator; A, radial artery.

Incision 4. Ligature of the radial artery in its lower third—*a*, skin; *b*, aponeurosis; *c*, radial nerve; A, artery.



Ligature of the radial artery in the lower part of the fore-arm.

Incision No. 4.

Firstly. Make an incision about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch in length on the outer side of the tendon of the flexor carpi radialis, dividing the skin and cellular tissue.

Secondly. Divide the aponeurosis upon a grooved director.

Thirdly. Seek out, isolate, and tie the vessel which lies close to the outer side of the tendon.

Ligature of the radial artery in the upper third.

Incision No. 3.

An incision $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 inches in length is to be made along the border of the long supinator if it can be felt, or else in the course of a line representing the direction of the artery extending from the middle of the bend of the elbow to the inner side of the styloid process of the radius, dividing the skin and cellular tissue, but avoiding the subcutaneous veins. The aponeurosis being next divided on a grooved director, the border of the long supinator is to be sought and drawn aside by a retractor. Beneath it will be found the radial artery, with its companion veins, from which it must be isolated before being ligatured.

Ligature of the ulnar artery in the lower third of the fore-arm.

Incision No. 2.

An incision $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch in length, dividing the skin and cellular tissue, is to be made along the outer side of the flexor carpi-ulnaris. The aponeurosis being next divided with the director, the tendon of the flexor carpi-ulnaris is to be drawn inwards, and the artery is there found between its companion veins.

Ligature of the ulnar artery in the middle of the fore-arm.

Incision No. 1.

An incision $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 inches long, dividing the skin and cellular tissue, is to be made in a line drawn from the trochlea to the elevation of the pisiform bone, then seek for the first intermuscular space which becomes visible, proceeding from within outwards. Now the aponeurosis may be divided upon the director, and the flexor sublimis digitorum muscle turned aside, beneath which is the artery with its companion veins. After having isolated the vessel, it will be necessary to raise it with an aneurism needle, in consequence of the depth of the wound.

PLATE VIII.

LIGATURE OF THE BRACHIAL ARTERY.

Fig. 1.—ANATOMY.

A, B, *Brachial artery*.—It extends from the lower border of the *teres major* to a little below the elbow-joint. Situated internal to the humerus above, it descends curving from within outwards, and becomes anterior to it below. It is in relation in its upper fourth with the *coraco-brachialis* C, and below this with the internal border of the *biceps* D, which overlaps it in its two lower thirds in muscular subjects. Altogether below, it runs along the inner side of the *biceps* tendon, between it and the median nerve, and then courses beneath the *bicipital aponeurosis* a, which separates it from the median basilic vein b.

The *median nerve* E accompanies the artery in its course lying external to it above, crossing it at about the centre, and lying internal to it below.

The *ulnar and musculo-spiral nerves* are in relation with the vessel for about its upper sixth, lying internal and posterior to it respectively.

F, G, *The brachial veins*.—The internal is the more voluminous. They lie alongside the artery, and interlace by frequent anastomosis.

H, *Inferior profunda artery* accompanying the *ulnar nerve*.

Fig. 2. OPERATION.

Incision 1.—*Ligature of the brachial artery in its lower part.*

a, division of the skin and cellular tissue; b, of the aponeurosis; c, median basilic vein, situated between the skin and aponeurosis, and curved inwards; d, internal border of the *biceps* muscle; e, median nerve lying internal to the artery; F, the artery extricated from the common sheath, and raised upon a director.

Incision 2 — *Ligature of the brachial artery in the upper part of the arm.*

a, Division of the skin and cellular tissue; b, of the aponeurosis; c, companion vein; d, median nerve on the outer side of the artery; E, the artery upon a director.

1. *Ligature of the brachial artery at the bend of the arm.*

Incision 1.

(1) Recognise the tendon and internal border of the *biceps* muscle.

(2) Make an incision $\frac{3}{4}$ inches in length along the inner border of the *biceps*. This incision must involve only the skin and cellular tissue, avoiding the median basilic vein, which must be pressed according to circumstances, either inwards or outwards.

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig. 1



Fig. 2



A. B. C. D. E. F. G. H. I. J. K. L. M. N. O. P. Q. R. S. T. U. V. W. X. Y. Z.

(3) Divide upon the director the aponeurosis which is here formed of the lincipital expansion.

(4) Beneath will be seen the artery accompanied by its veins, and having the nerve to its inner side; raise with the forceps the sheath of the vessels and nerve, and incise it with care to an extent sufficient to isolate the artery; raise it upon the director and ligature.

2. *Ligature of the brachial artery at the upper part of the arm.*

Incision 2.

(1) Having determined the inner border of the biceps, make an incision about $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length, involving the skin and cellular tissue.

(2) Raise the aponeurosis upon a director.

(3) Seek the nerve nearest to the internal border of the biceps: that is, the median nerve, beneath and internal to which will be found the artery.

(4) Carefully open the common sheath, having first raised it with a pair of forceps, then pushing the nerve outwards, isolate the artery, passing the director beneath it from without inwards.

PLATE IX.

LIGATURE OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY IN THE ARMPIT, ITS LOWER THIRD.

Fig. 1.—ANATOMY.

1. Great pectoral muscle drawn aside. 2. Small pectoral muscle. 3. Latissimus dorsi and Teres major. 4. Biceps. 5. Triceps. 6. Brachial aponeurosis.

A. *Axillary artery*—A continuation of the subclavian artery, it commences at the lower border of the first rib, and terminates at the lower border of the Teres major. In its course it is divided into three parts by the pectoralis minor muscle. The lowest or third part of its course is in relation externally with the coraco-brachialis (*b*) muscle, and here it may be readily compressed against the humerus. Internally it is covered by only the skin and cellular tissue, and its pulsation can be easily felt.

c, d, e, f. The branches of the brachial plexus closely surround the artery in the third part of its course.

c. The musculocutaneous nerve, on the outer side of the vessel.

d. The median nerve in front of and somewhat to the outer side, commencing by two roots—one on each side of the vessel.

e, The *internal cutaneous*, and *f*, the *ulnar*, lie to the inner side.

The *musculo-spiral* nerve is internal and behind, but is hidden by the vein.

G, The axillary vein lies internal to the artery, and overlaps both it and the nerves.

All the vessels and nerves of the axilla are connected together by a loose cellular tissue, which contains also lymphatic glands and vessels.

h, i, Subcapular arteries and veins.

K, Brachial artery—a continuation of the axillary, separated from the nerves and veins which surround it.

Fig. 2.—OPERATION.

a, Incision of the skin; *b*, division of the aponeurosis; *c*, median nerve pushed upwards; *d*, axillary vein pressed downwards by a soft retractor; *e*, internal cutaneous nerve; *f*, aponeurotic sheath of the axillary vessels; *g*, axillary artery upon the director passed from within outwards, and from below upwards.

One operation now adopted for tying the axillary artery in the third part of its course, i.e., below the pectoralis minor muscle, is called *Lisfranc's method*. It consists of: 1. Find the position of the artery by drawing a longitudinal line such as would separate the anterior third of the axilla from the two posterior thirds, or by feeling the internal border of the coraco-brachialis muscle. 2. Incise the skin and cellular tissue in the course of the vessel for a distance of $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches. 3. As soon as the fasciculus of vessels and nerves comes into view, relax the parts by slightly bending the arm. 4. Next ascertain the position of the coraco-brachialis, in order to find the artery. 5. By the aid of the director press first the median nerve and internal cutaneous nerve forwards, then the ulnar and musculo-spiral backwards, the artery and vein lying in the interval between them. 6. Isolate with precaution, and pass the director from behind forwards, so as to avoid the axillary vein.

A second, and perhaps the more simple, operation for tying the axillary artery in the third part of its course is the following.

1. Supinate the arm, and extend it nearly at right angles to the trunk. 2. Make an incision $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length along the border of the latissimus dorsi muscle, so as to run transversely across the inner side of the arm, and terminate at the inner border of the biceps muscle. 3. Divide the deep fascia upon a director. 4. Relax the arm, and the vessels may now be detected surrounded by the nerves of the brachial plexus. In order to isolate the artery, it will be necessary to press the median nerve forwards, and the ulnar and musculo-spiral nerves backwards. The director is to be passed from behind forwards, to avoid the vein.

Pl 10



— 10 —

PLATE X.

LIGATURE OF THE AXILLARY AND SUBCLAVIAN ARTERIES.

Fig. 1.—1. The clavicle and great pectoral muscle. 2. The axillary vessels exposed. 3. Trapezius. 4. Sterno-mastoid. 5. Omo-hyoid. 6. Deltoid. 7. Small pectoral.

A. Axillary artery—its upper part covered by the pectoralis major, from which it is separated by a layer of adipose tissue containing the cephalic and other branches of vein and artery, and the external anterior thoracic nerve: *a*, supra-scapular artery running along the upper border of the clavicle.

B. The axillary vein internal to and in front of the artery.

C. The cephalic vein lies in the groove between the pectoralis major and the deltoid, crossing the artery at the upper border of the pectoralis minor, and there emptying into the axillary vein.

D. The brachial plexus external and behind the artery. The external anterior thoracic nerve may cross the artery sometimes in front, sometimes behind.

Figs. 1 and 2 A. The subclavian artery, arising from the brachio-cephalic artery on the right side, from the arch of the aorta on the left, ascends to curve over the first rib (*a*), and then descends as far as the first intercostal space, where it takes the name of axillary. From the point of origin it results that the left subclavian artery is longer in its ascending portion than the right. (See Plate XI., Fig. 1.)

The subclavian artery, after passing between the scalene muscles, descends upon the first rib, *a* (Fig. 2), in a groove external to the tubercle of insertion of the scalenus anticus, *b* (Fig. 2), a tubercle of some importance.

Beyond the scalenus the artery lies in the subclavian triangle, limited by the clavicle, the sterno mastoid (*d*), and the omo-hyoid, where it is covered at its highest part only by the deep cervical fascia, adipose tissue and skin; lower down by the subclavius muscle and the clavicle.

The first rib rises above the clavicle in subjects in whom the neck is long, and the artery can then be compressed either directly or by forcibly lowering the clavicle.

B. The subclavian vein, in front of and below the artery, from which it is separated by the insertion of the scalenus anticus, *b* (Fig. 2). The external jugular vein (*e*) crosses the artery in front to empty into the subclavian.

C. The brachial plexus of nerves are altogether external to the artery.

Fig. 3.—OPERATION.

Incision No. 1.—*Ligature of the axillary artery.*

a, Incision of the skin; *b*, of the subjoined aponeurosis; *c*, upper border of the pectoralis minor; *e*, fibres of pectoralis major cut across; *d*, axillary vein; *A*, axillary artery upon an aneurism needle below the level of the cephalic vein.

Incision No. 2.—*Ligature of the subclavian artery external to the scalenes.*

a, Incision in the skin; *b*, in the aponeurosis; *c*, omo-hyoid muscle; *d*, brachial plexus of nerves; *e*, scalenus anticus muscle; *f*, subclavian vein; *A*, subclavian artery.

LIGATURE OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY IN THE FIRST PART OF ITS COURSE.

FIRST METHOD.

In this operation the vessel is ligatured in a triangular space limited above by the clavicle, below and externally by the pectoralis minor, below and internally by the sternal portion of the pectoralis major. The shoulder lying free, the elbow slightly away from the body, and the head inclined towards the opposite side, an incision is made parallel with the clavicle, and $\frac{1}{2}$ inch to 1 inch below it, compressing the skin and cellular tissue, and extending from the cellular interval between the great pectoral and the deltoid muscles as far as two finger-breadths external to the sterno-clavicular articulation. The fibres of the great pectoral muscle being successively divided, the posterior sheath of the muscle comes into view. Then, to favour the separation of the lips of the wound, the shoulder may be lowered a little, and by means of the director the costo-coracoid membrane may be torn through. With the finger introduced into the wound, the small pectoral muscle is to be pushed downwards and outwards, and in the depths will be seen—1, the axillary vein inflated with blood; 2, the axillary artery external to and behind it; 3, the brachial plexus above, external and behind the artery.

In passing the ligature behind the artery, the vein must be pressed a little inwards, and the ligature passed between it and the artery.

SECOND METHOD (CHAMBERLAYNE).

One incision 4 inches long is made below the clavicle, and a second nearly the same length, corresponding to the cellular interval between the great pectoral and the deltoid muscles, taking care to avoid the

cephalic vein. The triangular flap thus formed is turned downwards and inwards, and the artery is to be sought above the pectoralis minor, as in the preceding operation.

LIGATURE OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

The subclavian artery may be tied in the second or third parts of its course.

1. External to the scalenes.

2 Between the scalenes.

1st. External to the scalenes.

(1) The patient being conveniently arranged, with the face turned towards the opposite side, a transverse incision is made above the clavicle, parallel to its posterior border, and extending from the external margin of the sterno-mastoid to the trapezius. The skin platysma and fasciæ, including the supra-clavicular nerves, may be divided layer by layer; or if the operator prefer, the whole may be divided by one incision, by drawing the skin downwards about $\frac{3}{4}$ inch, and cutting on to the bone; the external jugular vein, if it cannot be avoided, may be cut through, first tying it above and below.

(2) By means of the forceps and director the deeper tissues may be torn through. The index-finger may then be passed into the depths of the wound, to find the tubercle of origin of the scalenus anticus upon the first rib.

(3) The tubercle being recognised, the artery may be felt immediately behind it, and may be readily exposed by the director, after which the aneurism needle may be passed beneath the vessel, guided along the finger from before backwards, and a little from within outwards; at the same time the finger placed above and external to the artery—that is, between it and the brachial plexus—supports the artery and prevents it from slipping. To facilitate this part of the operation, the shoulder should be lowered.

2nd. Between the two scalenes. (Dupuytren.)

This operation differs but little from the preceding. After having recognised the tubercle on the first rib, and made out the attachment of the scalenus anticus, a director is passed between the artery and the scalenus anticus, and the muscle is to be divided. The artery is now freely exposed, and may be ligatured. The objections to this operation are—1. The point of ligature is too near the origin of large branches. 2. The phrenic nerve which runs along the scalenus, or immediately to its inner side, is exposed to danger. 3. The subclavian vein or the internal mammary artery may be wounded.

PLATE XI.

LIGATURE OF THE CAROTID, LINGUAL, AND FACIAL ARTERIES.

Figs. 1, 2, 3.—ANATOMY.

Fig. 1. *Origin of the carotid and subclavian arteries; branches of the subclavians.*

a a, Arch of the aorta; *b*, brachio-cephalic or innominate artery; *d, c*, right subclavian and right carotid; *e, f*, left subclavian and left carotid. Before passing between the scalenes (*g*), the subclavians give off the vertebral arteries *h h*; inferior thyroids and transversales humeri, perhaps also the transversales colli, either separately or from a common trunk, the thyroid axes *i i*; and internal mammaries *j j*; external to the scalenes, the posterior scapular *k k*, the thoracic axis *l*—which is, however, generally given off from the first part of the axillary artery.

Fig. 2. *Relation of the arterial with the venous trunks.*

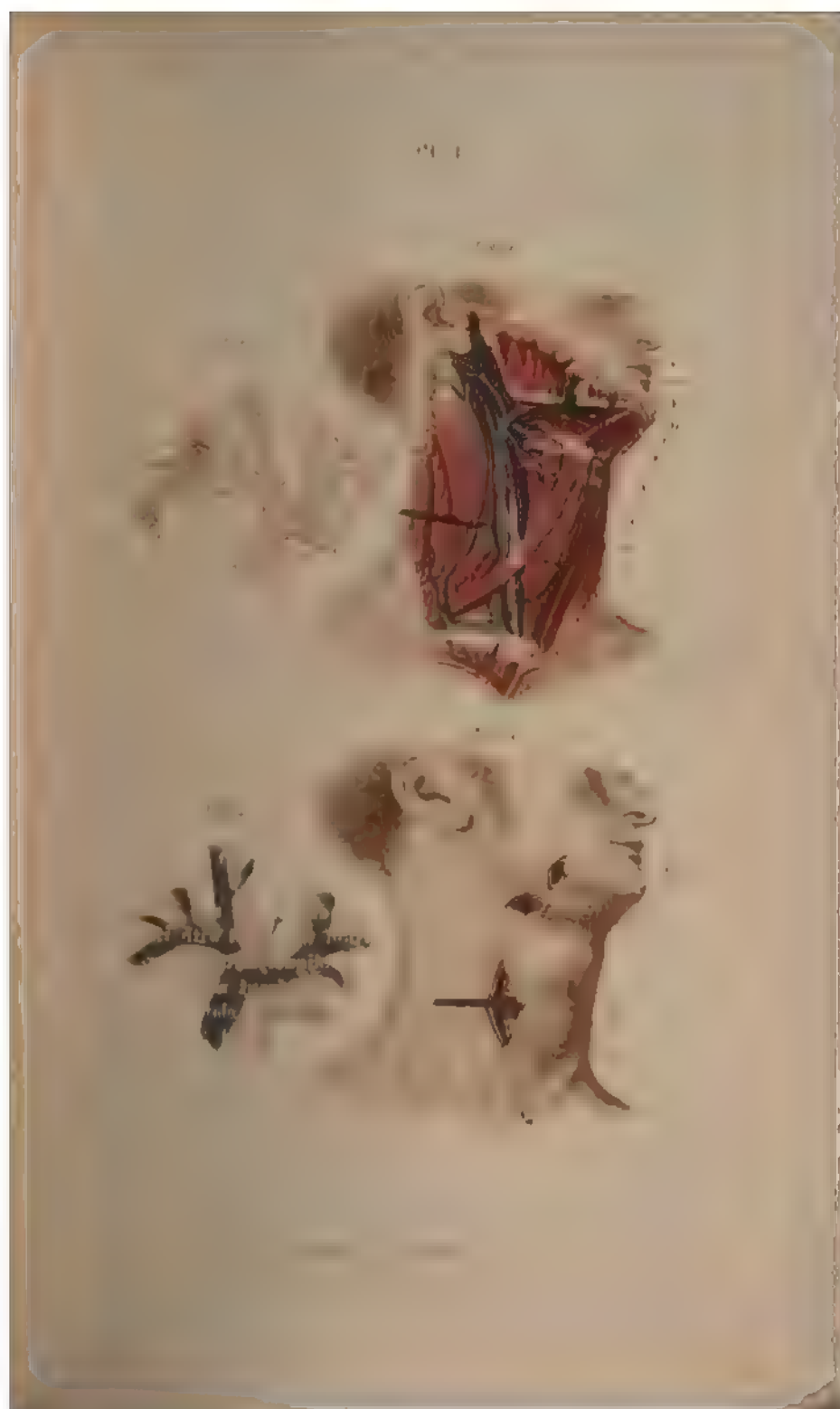
a a, Internal jugular, in front of and external to the carotids; *b b*, subclavian veins, anterior, parallel to, and a little below, the subclavian arteries; *c*, innominate vein, or right brachio-cephalic, in front of and external to the innominate artery; *d*, left brachio-cephalic vein, crossing from without inwards in front of the left subclavian and carotid arteries; *e*, inferior thyroid vein; *f*, external jugular.

Fig. 3.—1, Sterno-thyroid muscle; 2, omo-hyoid; 3, sternal origin of the sterno-mastoid cut across; 4, masseter.

A. Right common carotid artery, extending from the innominate artery at the sterno-clavicular articulation to a level with the upper border of the thyroid cartilage. It runs obliquely from before backwards, and from within outwards, along the front and side of the neck, lying upon the pre-vertebral muscles, and in relation internally with the trachea, larynx, and pharynx. It is covered by the sterno-mastoid (3, 3), and in its lower half by the sterno-thyroid (1), the omo-hyoid (2) crossing it about the middle. These muscles separate it from the platysma and fascia, which structures alone cover it in its upper part.

B. The internal jugular vein lies external to the artery, and overlaps it.

C. The pneumogastric nerve descends behind and between the artery and vein contained in the same sheath. below it passes between the subclavian artery and vein to enter the thorax. It furnishes a variable number of cardiac branches, which cross in front of the lower fourth



of the artery. The sympathetic nerve is altogether behind the sheath of the vessels, and contained in loose connective-tissue.

D. The internal carotid and the external carotid D' arise by the bifurcation of the common carotid. The external carotid, lying at first internal to and then crossing outwards in front of the internal carotid, terminates at the level of the condyle of the lower jaw, where it divides into the temporal and internal maxillary arteries. At first superficial, it then dips beneath the hypoglossal nerve (H), the digastric and stylo-hyoid muscles, and the parotid gland.

E. The facial artery arises from the external carotid a little above the hyoid bone, passes beneath the digastric and stylo-hyoid muscles along the outer surface of the submaxillary gland, and curving upwards, gains the body of the lower jaw, then lies in the interstice which separates the masseter muscle (4) from the triangularis oris, and distributes itself upon the cheek and face.

F. The lingual artery, arising from the external carotid below the preceding, and at the level of the hyoid bone, is crossed by the hypoglossal nerve (H), and then turning beneath the hyo-glossus muscle, runs to be distributed mainly in the tongue.

OPERATION.

Incision No. 1.—Ligature of the carotid artery in the upper part.

a, Skin ; *b*, cervical aponeurosis ; *c*, pneumogastric nerve ; *d*, sterno-mastoid muscle ; *A*, carotid artery.

Incision No. 2.—Ligature of the lingual artery.

a, Skin ; *b*, platysma and fascia . *c*, incision of the hyo-glossus muscle ; *A*, the lingual artery.

Incision No. 3.—Ligature of the facial artery.

a, Skin ; *b*, platysma and fascia ; *A*, the facial artery.

DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS.

I. LIGATURE OF THE BRACHIO-CEPHALIC TRUNK.

This artery, commencing at the most interior part of the transverse portion of the arch of the aorta, terminates, after a course of about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch, behind the right sterno-clavicular articulation.

(1) The patient lying upon the back with the head extended, an \perp shaped incision is to be made, of which the horizontal stroke shall run from the sterno-clavicular articulation parallel with the clavicle, and about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above it, and as far outwards as the centre of the bone. The perpendicular stroke is then to be extended upwards

along the inner border of the right sterno-mastoid to a distance of about 3 inches.

(2) Divide upon the director the sternal origin and the greater part of the clavicular origin of the right sterno-mastoid muscle, which may then be turned upwards and outwards.

(3) The carotid artery is to be recognised, and it will then serve as a guide to find the trunk of the brachio-cephalic.

(4) Isolate with care, by means of the finger as far as may be possible, the brachio-cephalic trunk, avoiding the pneumogastric and phrenic nerves and the internal jugular vein; then pass the ligature beneath the vessel by the aid of a curved director or aneurism needle, which must be introduced from before backwards and from right to left.

II. LIGATURE OF THE COMMON CAROTID ARTERY.

The common carotid may be tied either above the omo-hyoid muscle or below it.

1. *Ligature in the upper part.*

The patient lying with the head extended and turned towards the opposite side, (1) make an incision about 3 inches in length along the inner border of the sterno-mastoid muscle, terminating a little below the cricoid cartilage: the incision will include the skin, cellular tissue, and platysma.

(2) Incise upon a director the deep cervical fascia, which here unites the sterno-mastoid with the sterno hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles.

(3) Then flexing the head so as to relax the muscles, and at the same time separating the muscles referred to, the omo-hyoid muscle is brought into view, crossing the depths of the wound.

(4) The artery and vein being now seen enveloped in a common sheath, on which lies the descendens noni nerve, the sheath may be carefully raised with the forceps and with precaution divided sufficiently to admit the director, whilst at the same time an assistant presses on the internal jugular vein at the upper part of the wound, in order to prevent the great dilatation of the vein, which is often of serious inconvenience to the operator.

(5) There remains only to tear with the director the cellular tissue which unites the vessels together, and so to isolate the artery, which may be now raised upon the aneurism needle, passing the instrument from without inwards.

2. *Ligature at the lower part.*

(1) Make an incision $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 inches in length, commencing $\frac{3}{4}$ inch above the sterno-clavicular articulation, and extending upwards along the inner border of the sterno-mastoid.

(2) The skin and cellular tissue and cervical fascia being divided, the muscle is brought into view.

(3) French surgeons advise that the sternal fasciculus should be divided, but it is sufficient to draw it aside, when the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid are now seen.

(4) The latter muscles are to be drawn inwards, and the sheath of the vessels is thus exposed.

(5) The sheath is to be opened as far inwards as possible, so as to isolate the artery without injuring the vein, which has a tendency as soon as the sheath is opened to bulge in front of the artery. The director is to be passed from without inwards, so as to avoid the vein and the pneumogastric nerve, which latter lies behind and between the vessels enclosed within the sheath.

III. LIGATION OF THE LINGUAL ARTERY (Plate XI, Fig. 4).

(1) Having recognised beneath the integument the great cornu of the hyoid bone, make an incision about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch in length parallel with the cornu, and about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above it, including the skin, cellular tissue, and platysma myoides.

(2) This incision will expose the lower border of the submaxillary gland, which must be raised in order to see the shining tendon of the digastric muscle.

(3) Immediately below this is the hypoglossal nerve, and about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below this nerve the hyoglossus muscle must be divided transversely, to come exactly upon the line of the artery. The vessel may be now easily ligatured, as it is not in contact with any vein or nerve.

IV. LIGATION OF THE FACIAL ARTERY AS IT PASSES OVER THE BORDER OF THE LOWER JAW (Plate XI, Fig. 4).

(1) Request the patient to firmly close the jaw. In this way the anterior margin of the masseter muscle may be clearly defined. On the border of the jaw, and at the anterior margin of the muscle, may be felt a slight depression in which the vessel lies, and may usually be felt pulsating.

(2) At this point make a vertical incision about an inch in length, involving the skin, platysma, and cellular tissue.

(3) The anterior fibres of the masseter are thus exposed, and along them runs the artery lying upon the maxillary bone, and often accompanied by the vein, which it is necessary to separate with care, in consequence of the dense cellular tissue surrounding it.

PLATE XII.

LIGATURE OF THE RADIAL ARTERY AND DORSAL ARTERY OF THE FOOT.

Fig. 1.—ANATOMY OF THE RADIAL ARTERY ON THE DORSAL SURFACE OF THE CARPUS.

1. Posterior annular ligament of the carpus.
2. Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis.
3. Extensor primi internodii pollicis.
4. Extensor secundi internodii pollicis.

A. The radial artery, turning around the radio carpal articulation, passes beneath the extensor ossis metacarpi and extensor primi internodii pollicis (2 and 3), and then obliquely beneath the extensor secundi internodii pollicis to penetrate between the two heads of the abductor indicis, and thus gains the palm of the hand, where it ultimately forms the deep palmar arch. In this part of its course it is in relation with venous branches, and some nerve filaments from the radial nerve, covered only by the general aponeurosis and the integument.

Fig. 2.—OPERATION.

a, Incision in the integument; b, the aponeurosis; A, the radial artery.

Fig. 3.—ANATOMY OF THE DORSAL ARTERY OF THE FOOT.

1. Dorsal annular ligament.
2. Tendon of the extensor proprius pollicis.
3. The common extensor of the toes.
4. Internal tendon of the extensor brevis digitorum.

A. The dorsal artery, a continuation of the anterior tibial artery, commences beneath the annular ligament of the tarsus (1), and extends from the middle of the intermalleolar space to the proximal extremity of the first interosseous space, where it penetrates the first dorsal interosseous muscle to reach the sole of the foot, and there it anastomoses with the plantar arch. Covered by the aponeurotic layer which binds it upon the tarsus, and by the general aponeurosis and the integument, the dorsal artery descends upon the instep, accompanied by two satellite veins, and by the tibial nerve (b) internal to it. It courses along the outer side of the tendon of the extensor proprius pollicis (2), an important relation which can be made out by extending the great toe; and external to it runs the inner head of the extensor brevis digitorum (4), which in muscular subjects somewhat overlaps it.

Fig. 4.—OPERATION.

a, Incision in the skin; b, the aponeurosis; A, the dorsal artery.



Fig

Fig



STEPS OF THE OPERATION.

Ligature of the radial artery on the dorsal surface of the carpus.

(1) By forced extension of the thumb determine beneath the skin the projection of the extensor secundi internodii.

(2) Make an incision about 1 inch in length, internal, and parallel to this tendon, the middle of the incision corresponding to the summit of the first intermetacarpal space.

(3) Divide the aponeurosis.

(4) Beneath the aponeurosis, in the angle formed at the summit of the first intermetacarpal space, will be found the radial artery, accompanied by two veins.

(5) Disengage it from the veins with the point of the director and ligature.

Ligature of the dorsal artery of the foot.

(1) In the course of a line extending from the intermalleolar space to the first interosseous space that is along the outer border of the extensor proprius pollicis, make an incision $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 inches in length, including the skin and cellular tissue.

(2) Divide the aponeurosis upon the director.

(3) Recognise the internal head of the extensor brevis digitorum.

(4) Beneath it will be found the artery lying upon the bone, and accompanied by two veins. Isolate with the director and ligature.

PLATE XIII.

LIGATURE OF THE ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY.

Fig. 1. — ANATOMY.

1. Patella. 2. External malleolus. 3. External aponeurosis of the leg. 4 and 5. Tibialis anticus and extensor communis digitorum turned aside, and thus exposing the vessels deeply situated in the intermuscular space. 6. Peroneal muscles divided. 7. The fibula.

A. The anterior tibial artery, the external and anterior branch of the bifurcation of the popliteal, arises beneath the fibrous arch of the soleus and terminates beneath the anterior annular ligament, when it becomes the dorsal artery of the foot. Its direction from above downwards, and somewhat obliquely from behind forwards, would be represented by a line drawn from the inner part of the head of the fibula to the centre of the tibio-tarsal articulation. This artery pierces the interosseous ligament from behind forwards at the level of the

upper fourth of the leg, and descends nearly two-thirds of its length upon the ligament : below it lies upon the outer surface of the tibia, turning to reach the front of the lower extremity of that bone. To its inner side lies the *tibialis anticus* (4) and the bone ; to its outer side, the *extensor communis digitorum* on the upper third, and the *extensor proprius pollicis* in the lower two-thirds, the tendon of the latter muscle crossing it below from without inwards. To the outer side of this tendon, and in the same space with it, the artery passes beneath the annular ligament.

The *extensor* muscles and the *tibialis anticus*, between which lies the artery, are intimately united and bound down by the *aponeurosis* (3), a disposition which conceals their partition and renders their separation difficult.

B, B The *venæ comites* accompany the artery in its whole length.

C. The anterior tibial nerve, at first external to the artery, crosses in front of it at the lower fourth, and becomes internal to it beneath the ligament.

A'. The *peroneal* artery, a branch of the posterior tibial, descends vertically along the posterior aspect of the fibula as far as the lower tibio-fibular articulation, being covered above by the *soleus*, then lying between the *flexor longus pollicis* and the *tibialis posticus* (9), and below upon the *interosseous* ligament.

Fig. 2.—OPERATION.

Incision No. 1.—*Ligature of the anterior tibial at its lower part.*

a, The skin ; *b*, the *aponeurosis* ; *c*, *tibialis anticus* muscle ; *d*, *extensor proprius pollicis* ; *e*, anterior tibial nerve ; A, the artery raised upon a *Deschamps'* needle.

Incision No. 2.—*Ligature of the anterior tibial in its upper part.*

a, The skin ; *b*, the *aponeurosis* ; *c*, *extensor communis digitorum* ; *d*, *tibialis anticus* ; *e*, anterior tibial vein ; A, the artery.

Incision No. 3.—*Ligature of the peroneal artery in its lower part.*

a, The skin ; *b*, the *aponeurosis* ; *c*, *peroneus longus* ; *d*, *flexor longus pollicis* ; *e*, external border of the *soleus* ; A, the artery.

DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS.

I. LIGATURE OF THE LOWER PART OF THE ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY.

Following the line of the artery, or, better still, the external border of the *tibialis anticus* muscle, which can be readily perceived—

(1) Make an incision about three inches in length, comprising the skin and subcutaneous cellular tissue.

(2) Divide the aponeurosis upon a director.

(3) With the index-finger break down the connective-tissue in the muscular interstice, and in the depth of the wound will be found the artery embracing the tibia, and accompanied by its two veins.

(4) Disengage it from the veins and ligature.

II. LIGATURE OF THE UPPER PART OF THE ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY.

(1) At rather more than an inch external to the crest of the tibia, and in the course of a line which would extend from the head of the fibula to the centre of the ankle joint, make an incision $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length, dividing the skin and cellular tissue.

(2) Divide the aponeurosis upon the director, and if difficult to find the intermuscular space this fascia may be divided crucially.

(3) The intermuscular space being seen or recognised by means of the finger on the outer side of the tibialis anticus, the muscles are to be freely separated by the finger, and the vessel will be detected lying upon the interosseous ligament and accompanied by the anterior tibial nerve to its outer and front part, and the two companion veins surrounding it.

(4) Isolate the artery and ligature with the aid of a rectangular aneurism needle.

III. LIGATURE OF THE PERONEAL ARTERY.

(1) Recognise the outer border of the fibula, then $\frac{1}{2}$ inch behind, and parallel to it, make an incision about 3 inches in length, dividing the skin and cellular tissue.

(2) Divide the aponeurosis to the same extent on a director.

(3) Recognise, and then push inwards, the external border of the soleus muscle, which often overlaps the fibula. Next, starting from the border of the bone, which is now uncovered, cut through a layer of fascia which covers the flexor longus pollicis, and then separate the muscle from its attachment to the fibula; turn the muscle inwards, and the artery will be found lying upon the bone, and gradually approaching the interosseous ligament as it descends.

PLATE XIV.

LIGATURE OF THE POSTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY.

Fig. 1.—ANATOMY.

1. The patella. 2. Internal malleolus. 3. Internal surface of the tibia. 4. Internal aponeurosis. 5. Solens muscle drawn backwards.

A. The posterior tibial artery commencing at the bifurcation of the popliteal terminates beneath the internal annular ligament, where it divides into the internal and external plantar. Its direction would be represented by a line drawn obliquely from the middle of the ham to a point behind the malleolus.

In its *upper third* the artery is deeply situated, lying upon the tibialis posticus (7), and covered by the deep aponeurosis, the solens (5), and gastrocnemius (9).

In its *middle third* it approaches nearer to the surface, descending parallel to the internal border of the tibia, separated from the bone by the common flexor of the toes (8), and covered by the deep aponeurosis and the internal border of the soleus (5).

Lastly, in the *lower third*, the vessel lying immediately beneath the aponeurosis runs behind the tendons of the tibialis posticus, and flexor communis digitorum, with the internal border of the tendo-achillis (6) near behind it.

B, B. Two companion veins accompany the posterior tibial artery in its whole extent, frequently interlacing; (b) internal saphenous vein.

C. The posterior tibial nerve coursing along the posterior and outer part of the artery.

Fig. 2.—OPERATION.

Incision No. 1. —*Ligature of the lower part of the posterior tibial artery.*

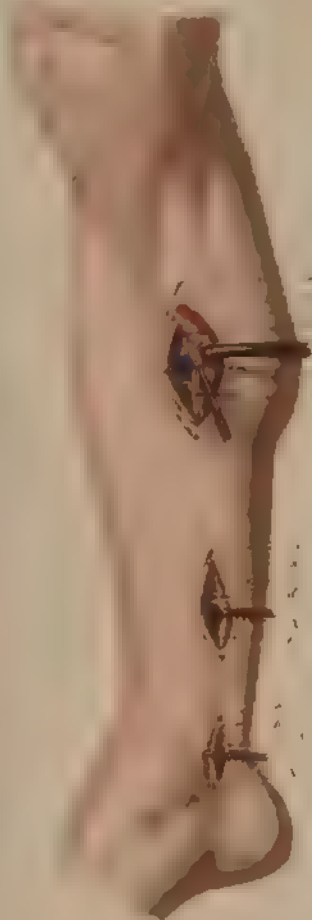
a, The skin; b, the aponeurosis; c, the posterior tibial nerve; A, the artery.

Incision No. 2.—*Ligature of the middle third of the posterior tibial artery.*

a, The skin; b, aponeurosis; c, the border of the soleus; d, the common flexor, e, the posterior tibial nerve. A, the artery.

Incision No. 3.—*Ligature of the upper third of the posterior tibial artery.*

a, The skin; b, the aponeurosis; c, the gastrocnemius drawn back by a retractor; d, an incision made through those fibres of the soleus attached to the inner border of the tibia; A, the artery.



STAGES OF THE OPERATION.

1. *Ligature of the posterior tibial artery in the lower part or behind the malleolus.*

(1) At $\frac{1}{2}$ inch behind the posterior border of the internal malleolus make a semilunar incision in the integument nearly 2 inches in length, the concavity embracing the malleolus.

(2) Divide the aponeurosis upon a director, carefully avoiding the synovial grooves on the posterior part of the malleolus.

(3) Beneath the aponeurosis and in front of the nerve, the artery is to be found between two companion veins.

2. *Ligature of the middle third of the posterior tibial artery.*

(1) At $\frac{2}{3}$ inch behind the internal border of the tibia make an incision $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length in the skin and cellular tissue.

(2) Divide the aponeurosis, and draw the border of the soleus muscle outwards.

(3) Incise the deep aponeurosis upon a director, and immediately beneath it will be seen the artery with its two veins.

3. *Ligature of the upper third of the posterior tibial artery.*

(1) At about 1 inch behind the internal border of the tibia make a longitudinal incision $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 inches in length through the skin, cellular tissue and aponeurosis.

(2) By means of the index-finger within the wound separate and turn outwards the internal border of the gastrocnemius.

(3) Next detach the fibres of the soleus arising from the internal border of the tibia, and turn this muscle outward.

(4) Whilst these muscles are held backwards and outwards by a retractor, divide upon a director the deep aponeurotic fascia, beneath which can be seen the vessels.

(5) Isolate the artery, and pass the ligature with either a Cooper's or a Deschamps' needle.

MANNE'S METHOD.

Instead of detaching the soleus muscle from the tibia, this author advises the division of this muscle layer by layer in its whole thickness, penetrating the posterior surface of the muscle at about $\frac{3}{4}$ inch from the internal border of the tibia. The knife soon comes upon a thick pearly fibrous lamina, upon which are inserted the fleshy fibres, the anterior aponeurosis of the muscle traversed by numerous vascular branches. On incising this aponeurosis, the deep aponeurotic fascia comes into view, beneath which lies the artery.

In performing this operation, the contractions of the muscles often impede the operator to such an extent that it becomes necessary to divide the muscle across its fibres.

PLATE XV.

LIGATURE OF THE POPLITEAL ARTERY.

Figs. 1, 2, and 3.—ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—*Aponeurotic layer, superficial vessels and nerves.*

1—1. Popliteal aponeurosis in part removed. 2. Semi-membranosus. 3. Biceps. 4. Cutaneous vessels and nerves. 5. Internal saphenous vein.

A. *External or short saphenous vein.*—It ascends for a distance vertically towards the middle of the popliteal aponeurosis, where it perforates; beneath the fascia it runs external to the popliteal nerve to enter the popliteal vein. It is accompanied by the external saphenous nerve (*b*).

C. *The popliteal or internal popliteal nerve.*—Sub-aponeurotic in the popliteal region, which it traverses vertically from above downwards to become the posterior tibial nerve; situated superficial to and a little external to the popliteal vessels, from which it is separated by a fine layer of adipose tissue, it furnishes beneath the aponeurosis many filaments to the popliteal region; from it is also given off the communicans poplitei (*b*) or external saphenous, which perforates the fascia in company with the short saphenous vein.

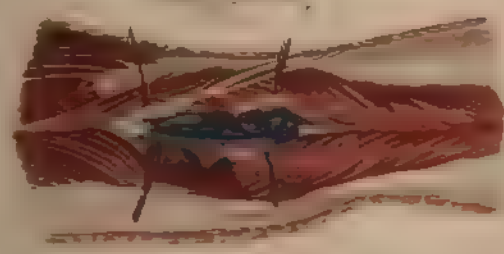
D. *Peroneal or external popliteal nerve.*—More superficial and smaller than the preceding. It descends obliquely from within outwards, beneath the aponeurosis, to be distributed in the leg. In the popliteal space it gives off the communicans peronei, and a branch called the peroneal saphenous (*e*), which, piercing the aponeurosis in a variable position, ultimately joins the external saphenous (*b*).

Fig. 2.—*Sub-aponeurotic dissection*

The popliteal nerve is cut across, and the adipose tissue which occupies the space has been removed, leaving bare the popliteal vessels.

A. *The popliteal artery* extends from Hunter's canal to the lower border of the popliteus muscle; it is directed a little obliquely from within outwards, overlapped in its course and crossed near the centre by the popliteal vein (B), which at the lower part of the artery is somewhat internal and at the upper part external to the artery. These two vessels are covered superiorly by the belly of the semi-membranosus (1), and at the lower part by the two bellies of the gastrocnemius (2 and 3). They are bound together in their course by dense connective-tissue, which renders it difficult to isolate them.

Fig. 3.—A. The popliteal artery, at first internal to the femur (1),



Pl. 10

Pl. 10

lies below upon its posterior surface, then passing between the condyles (2 and 3) comes into contact with the tibio-femoral articulation. In its course it furnishes many branches, of which the chief are—the *superior articular* (*a b c*) ; the *inferior articular* (*d e*), which anastomose with the preceding in front of the knee, the *azygos articular*, and the *sural*, which are distributed to the gastrocnemius.

Fig. 4.—OPERATION.

The popliteal artery may be ligatured either in the upper or the lower part of the popliteal space by the same operation—the only difference being that to find the vessel in the lower part it would be necessary to make an incision 4 inches in length commencing $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the articulation, and following the direction of the interval which separates the two heads of the gastrocnemius.

Ligature of the popliteal artery in its upper part.

a, The skin ; *b*, the aponeurosis ; *c*, adipose tissue ; *d*, the popliteal nerve ; *e*, the external saphenous vein ; *f*, the popliteal vein ; *A*, the artery upon a Deschamps' needle.

STAGES OF THE OPERATION.

(1) The patient lying upon the belly with the leg extended, make a longitudinal incision through the skin and cellular tissue $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length, down the centre of the popliteal space, and terminating between the condyles of the femur.

(2) Incise the aponeurosis upon a director, taking care to avoid and to push outwards the external saphenous vein.

(3) With the index-finger, or with the point of the director, separate the fat and cellular tissue, at the same time slightly flexing the leg upon the thigh, in order to separate the muscles more easily.

(4) Recognise the outer border of the semi-membranosus muscle, and the popliteal nerve will be now seen coming from beneath it.

(5) Push the nerve inwards, and beneath and a little internal to it will be found the popliteal vein.

(6) Isolate the vein with caution, and also draw it cautiously inwards, when the artery will be found lying the deepest of all the structures.

(7) Carefully isolate the artery and ligature with an aneurism needle.

MARSHALL'S METHOD.

The object of this operation is to tie the popliteal artery in its lower part, but instead of arriving at it through the popliteal space, the inner side of the leg is penetrated.

The patient lies upon the back with the leg flexed and lying on its

outer surface. The surgeon, standing on the outer side of the limb, makes an incision $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length, commencing below the internal tuberosity of the tibia and carrying it downwards along the internal border of the inner head of the gastrocnemius—that is, somewhat obliquely from without inwards and from behind forwards to within $\frac{1}{2}$ inch of the internal border of the tibia.

On dividing the skin, the internal saphenous vein is to be avoided. The gastrocnemius is next to be recognised; then, on flexing the leg upon the thigh, so as to relax that muscle, the index-finger is to be introduced beneath it, so as to completely separate it from the deep muscles. The artery is now readily seen, with the nerve slightly to its inner side and surrounded in its lowest part by the satellite veins which accompany the tibial arteries.

JOBERT'S METHOD.

In this operation, which is the counterpart of the preceding, the object is to tie the popliteal artery in the upper part; but instead of approaching it through the popliteal space, an incision $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length is made, commencing immediately above the inner condyle of the femur: the dissection is carried between the vastus internus and the muscles which form the inner boundary of the popliteal space.

PLATE XVI.

LIGATURE OF THE FEMORAL ARTERY.

Fig. 1.—ANATOMY.

A. The femoral artery, a continuation of the external iliac, extends from the middle of the crural arch (1) to the end of Hunter's canal, where it becomes the popliteal. The vessel is in front of the femur in the upper part of its course, internal to it in the middle, and posterior to it in the popliteal region. In its upper fourth it is covered only by some lymphatic ganglia, the femoral aponeurosis and the skin—its superficial position allowing of its being compressed upon the body of the pubes or upon the head of the femur. Lower, the sartorius muscle (*b b*) becomes its companion, covering it and also crossing it in such manner that the vessel corresponds to its internal border on the upper part of its extent, and almost to its external border in Hunter's canal.

C. The femoral vein accompanies the artery, lying internal to it above, posterior to it in the chief part of its extent, and a little external to it below. These two vessels, united together by a very dense



cellular tissue in their two lower thirds, are in addition contained in a common aponeurotic sheath.

The internal saphenous vein (*d*), subcutaneous, runs along the inner border of the sartorius muscle, and empties itself into the femoral vein at the saphenous opening.

E. The anterior crural nerve, situated external to the artery, is separated from it by an aponeurotic layer which binds it to the psoas muscle.

F. The internal saphenous nerve lies external to the femoral artery, but in the lower fourth it penetrates the sheath of the vessels, and in Hunter's canal it crosses the artery to leave the sheath on the inner side, afterwards accompanying the internal saphenous vein.

The femoral artery is also crossed by the two branches of the internal cutaneous nerve (*g* and *h*).

Fig. 2.—OPERATION.

Incision No. 1.—*Ligature of the femoral artery in its lower fourth.*

a, The skin and subcutaneous cellular tissue; *b*, the aponeurosis; *c*, external border of the sartorius drawn inwards; *d*, internal saphenous nerve; *e*, tendinous sheath of the femoral vessels at Hunter's canal; *A*, the artery.

Incision No. 2.—*Ligature of the femoral artery in its upper third.*

a, The skin and cellular tissue; *b*, aponeurosis; *c*, sheath of the femoral vessels; *d*, femoral vein; *e*, saphenous nerve; *f*, internal border of the sartorius; *A*, the artery.

STAGES OF THE OPERATION.

Ligature of the femoral artery in Hunter's canal.

(See Fig. 2, Incision 1.)

The course of the artery is represented by a line drawn from the centre of the crural arch to the internal condyle of the femur.

(1) The thigh being partly flexed and turned outwards, make an incision through the skin and cellular tissue $\frac{1}{2}$ inches long in the direction of the line referred to, and commencing rather below the middle of the thigh, so that the centre of the incision shall correspond to the union of the lower with the middle third of the thigh.

If preferred, the outer margin of the sartorius may be chosen for the line of the incision instead of the line representing the course of the artery.

In order to define the precise course of the sartorius muscle, it is well to make the patient put that muscle into action before being

placed under the influence of the anæsthetic; and if the operator so desire he may mark the border with ink.

(2) Divide the aponeurosis (*b*) on the director a distance of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch internal to the external border of the sartorius.

(3) Draw the sartorius inwards, and then with the index-finger seek the interval between the adductor magnus and the vastus internus; in this way the finger is brought against the entrance to Hunter's canal.

(4) With the greatest care the wall of Hunter's canal may be divided upon a director, and the artery may now be seen with the vein behind and external, the internal saphenous nerve above and crossing it.

(5) With the point of the director carefully separate a sufficient space around the artery within the dense cellular tissue which unites the vessels together, and pass the ligature from behind forwards.

Ligature of the femoral artery in the middle of the thigh.

HUNTER'S OPERATION.

Fig. 2, Incision 2.

The limb being placed as in the preceding operation—

(1) Make an incision through the skin and cellular tissue 3 inches long, in the middle third of the thigh and in the direction of the artery recognised by the representative line or along the inner border of the sartorius muscle. In this incision the saphenous vein is to be avoided.

(2) Incise the aponeurosis upon the director.

(3) Draw the sartorius muscle outwards, in order to expose the sheath of the vessels which is subjacent.

(4) With the point of the director in the right hand and the forceps in the left, make a small opening in the sheath over the position occupied by the artery.

(5) With the director isolate the artery carefully from the tissue around it, and pass the ligature from within outwards.

Ligature of the femoral artery in the upper third of the thigh.

SCARPA'S OPERATION.

(1) At 3 inches below the crural arch commence an incision through the skin and cellular tissue, and prolong it for a distance of 3 inches in the direction of the internal border of the sartorius muscle.

(2) Draw the saphenous vein inwards; but a number of lymphatic vessels cannot be avoided.

(3) Incise the aponeurosis upon a director.

(4) The sheath of the vessels can now be seen, and the artery can



111

112

113

114

be felt pulsating; open the sheath with the director, as advised in the previous operation. The vein here lies internal to and behind the artery, and the ligature must be passed from within outwards.

The chief danger in the operation consists in ligaturing the vessel too near the origin of its large branch—the profunda femoris—the circulation through which would tend to prevent the formation of the clot above the ligature, and thus materially increase the danger of secondary hæmorrhage.

PLATE XVII.

LIGATURE OF THE FEMORAL ARTERY IMMEDIATELY BELOW THE CRURAL ARCH; OF THE ILIAC AND EPIGASTRIC ARTERIES.

Figs. 1 and 2.—ANATOMY.

1—1. The cut fibres of the external and internal oblique and transversalis muscles. 2 Peritoneum and fascia transversalis; the fascia transversalis ensheathing the spermatic cord by an infundibuli form prolongation (3). 3. The crural arch. 6. The fascia lata, the part about the saphenous opening removed, to show the vessels.

A, Femoral artery; B, femoral vein, an aponeurotic layer or septum separating the vein from the artery; C, internal saphenous vein; D, lymphatic vessels and ganglia.

A'. The epigastric artery arises from the inner side of the external iliac, immediately above the crural arch. It passes beneath the vas deferens, or in the female the round ligament, and curves upwards and inwards, between the peritoneum and the fascia transversalis, to reach the deeper surface of the rectus muscle. It is accompanied by two veins.

Fig. 2.

1. Section of the abdominal muscles cut parallel to the crest of the ilium. 2. Anterior superior spine of the ilium. 3. Fascia lata. 4. Psoas muscle. 5. Iliacus muscle.

A, Aorta; B, right common iliac.

This latter artery commences at the bifurcation of the aorta, at the lower border of the fourth lumbar vertebra, and descends obliquely outwards as far as the sacro-iliac symphysis, where it divides into external and internal iliac (C and D).

The external iliac artery (C), continuing the course of the common iliac as far as the crural arch, forms with that vessel a single trunk, almost rectilinear, applied above to the vertebral column, and below to

the psoas muscle (4). Before passing under the crural arch the external iliac gives origin to the deep circumflex iliac (c), and the deep epigastric arteries (c').

The internal iliac artery (D) forms an acute angle with the preceding, and plunges into the pelvic cavity, where it at once divides into many branches.

The common iliac arteries are crossed at the level of the sacro-iliac symphysis by the ureter (e), and the spermatic veins (d).

E, The common iliac veins passing behind the right common iliac artery unite to form the vena cava inferior.

G, The anterior crural nerve; H, lymphatic glands and vessels.

Fig. 3.—OPERATION.

a, The skin; b, c, d, incisions in the aponeurosis and in the muscles forming the wall of the abdomen; e, the peritoneum separated (but not incised) and raised upwards from the external iliac vein; A, the external iliac artery upon a Deschamps' needle.

STAGES OF THE OPERATIONS.

Ligature of the common femoral artery.

(1) Recognise the position of the artery by its pulsations at a point a little internal to the centre of Poupart's ligament.

(2) Make an incision $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length in the course of the vessel, commencing at Poupart's ligament. It is here impossible to avoid small lymphatic vessels.

(3) Incise the crural aponeurosis with the greatest care upon a director, and immediately beneath will be seen the crural sheath containing the vessels, the vein being internal to the artery.

(4) With the point of the director denude the artery sufficiently to pass the ligature from within outwards.

Ligature of the deep femoral artery.

The deep femoral artery leaves the common femoral at a point about 2 inches below Poupart's ligament.

(1) Make an incision in the course of the vessel 3 inches long, commencing $\frac{1}{2}$ inch to 1 inch below Poupart's ligament.

(2) Incise the fascia lata upon a director to the same extent. The sheath of the femoral vessels is now seen, the artery being the external of the two.

(3) With the index-finger separate the cellular tissue on the outer side of the artery, keeping the finger also rather beneath the vessel.

(4) By means of the finger the external circumflex artery will be felt, and by following thus inwards the deep femoral artery can be detected.

(5) Isolate it from the surrounding tissue and its vein by the point of the director.

It is rarely necessary to ligature this vessel, but should occasion arise, it should be tied some distance below the origin of the circumflex vessels, otherwise there will be danger of secondary hæmorrhage.

Ligature of the external iliac artery.

The patient lying upon the back with the muscles of the abdomen relaxed—

(1) Make a curved incision $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length, and 1 inch above Poupart's ligament, commencing from a point $\frac{1}{2}$ inch external to the external abdominal ring, and terminating at a point on a level with the anterior superior spine of the ilium, but nearly 2 inches internal to it. In cutting through the skin and cellular tissue some small vessels will be cut, which, if necessary, may be tied before proceeding with the operation.

(2) Incise upon a grooved director the muscular fibres and tendinous aponeurosis of the external oblique.

(3) In like manner cut through the internal oblique and transversalis muscles.

(4) By the index-finger detach the fascia transversalis as low as Poupart's ligament.

(5) It is possible that it may be necessary to cut this fascia on the director. If so, the greatest care must be taken not to enter the peritoneum: but it is better when practicable, instead of cutting the transversalis fascia, to push on steadily and carefully with the finger, so as to raise the transversalis fascia with the peritoneum away from the vessels.

(6) Next measure the point at which the artery should be found a little internal to the centre of Poupart's ligament, and with the index-finger pressed down upon that point determine the pulsation of the vessel.

(7) Next, whilst the wound is kept open by the fingers of an assistant, or by a soft retractor—the sheath of the vessels being now seen, and the artery being the external of the two—with the point of the director prick open the sheath, which is here thin, and pass the director carefully on each side of it, so as to prepare the way for the needle of Deschamps, which must be passed from within outwards.

Ligature of the epigastric artery.

This artery may be wounded in an operation for strangulated hernia, or by accident. If the artery is wounded close to its origin, it would be necessary to ligature the external iliac artery as well. The same method as the preceding must be adopted, only on arriving at the spermatic cord that structure must be drawn outwards, to see the

position of the internal abdominal ring. At this point—that is, in contact with the inner side of the spermatic cord, and immediately behind the transversalis fascia—is the artery.

Ligature of the circumflex iliac artery.

This vessel, arising on the outer side of the external iliac artery opposite the epigastric, may be tied near to its origin by the same operation. It does not pierce the transversalis muscle until it reaches the middle of the crest of the ilium.

Ligature of the common iliac artery.

The patient lying upon the back with the thighs somewhat flexed—

(1) Make an incision through the skin and cellular tissue in a curve $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above Poupart's ligament, extending from the external abdominal ring to a point 1 inch internal to and 1 inch above the anterior superior spine of the ilium.

(2) By means of a director cut through the common tendon, and through the muscular fibres of the external and internal oblique and of the transversalis muscles.

(3) With extreme caution raise the transversalis fascia, so as to avoid injuring the peritoneum, and incise it upon the director, or tear it carefully with the finger.

(4) Now with the finger cautiously detach the peritoneum from the structures behind it sufficiently to expose the vessel in question.

(5) Isolate the vessel with the point of the director.

(6) With a rectangular aneurism needle pass the ligature behind the vessel about its centre.

The common iliac artery may be also ligatured by Stevens' method for ligaturing the internal iliac artery.

Ligature of the internal iliac artery—Stevens' method.

(1) Make an incision through the skin and cellular tissue 5 inches in length, external to the deep epigastric artery and parallel with it.

(2) Divide successively upon a director the abdominal muscles.

(3) By means of the finger carefully separate the peritoneum from the psoas and rhacus muscles, and from the brim of the pelvis, as far as the level of the bifurcation of the common iliac.

(4) Cautiously isolate the vessel with the index-finger, and pass the ligature by means of the common aneurism needle.

Ligature of the gluteal artery.

The patient lying on the belly—

(1) Ascertain the position of the summit of the great trochanter, and also of the posterior superior iliac spine.

(2) Make an incision 4 inches in length, commencing at a point $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches below the posterior superior iliac spine, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches external to the sacrum, descending obliquely towards the summit of the great trochanter.

(3) Having cut through the skin and cellular tissue, and the fibres of the great gluteal muscle, the artery will be found situated immediately below the superior border of the great sciatic notch.

(4) Press aside the pyriformis and middle gluteal muscles, which by their proximity conceal the vessel, then isolate the vessel and ligature it.

AMPUTATIONS.

When it is required to amputate a limb or a part of a limb by disarticulation, it is necessary (1) to discover the precise spot of articulation; (2) to penetrate it, in cutting through the structures which unite the bones; (3) so to manage the soft parts that the stump shall be sufficiently covered.

1. *Rules for recognising the line of articulation.*

Nearly all the extremities of bones which enter into the formation of joints are provided with tuberosities prominent beneath the skin. These tuberosities, more or less close to the joint, occupy such positions as to serve as sure guides to the surgeon in defining the articulation.

(1) Seek first that which is the most distinct, as the smaller prominences are then more easily recognised.

(2) With this view place the limb in a convenient position, and if necessary exercise movements in order to make the osseous prominences more distinct, or to render visible and appreciable to the touch the tendons attached in the neighbourhood of the joint.

The folds of skin around a joint are often of service in discovering its situation. These folds, which are well marked about the digital articulation, are situated in some instances immediately over the articulation, and in others at a distance from it.

2. *Rules for penetrating a joint.*

The surgeon should possess such a knowledge of the position of the joints that he could readily traverse them with the knife, although masked by surrounding disease. It is not less useful to be well acquainted with the position, form, and extent of the ligaments, in order to divide them without hesitation.

A disarticulating knife should be narrow, to turn easily in the joint, and strengthened along the back in order not to break.

These points being attended to, the disarticulation may be proceeded with in conformity with the following general rules:

(1) Determine by the application of the thumb and index-finger the

two extremities of the articular diameter—thus the line which the knife must take will be defined.

(2) In penetrating a joint anteriorly, it should be extended ; and if, on the contrary, it is to be penetrated from behind, it should be partly flexed, in order to increase the articular interspace.

(3) Always commence by dividing the principal ligaments which hold the bones together ; the lateral and dorsal being divided, the knife can usually be insinuated between the articular surfaces ; but if the articulation be dovetailed, as the tarso-metatarsal, there may exist special means of attachment of the interosseous ligaments, which it will be necessary first to divide with the point of the knife.

(4) When the articulation is well opened, it will generally suffice to pull aside the articular surfaces by moderate traction. If the articulation is closely joined, it will be necessary to luxate it by force, care being taken to avoid undue injury to the parts ; then, if there should exist by chance ossified ligaments which do not yield to the knife, it will be necessary to separate them by the saw.

(5) When a joint is penetrated, the heel and the point of the knife ought to proceed parallel upon the same line ; and if when passing beyond the articular surfaces to leave the joint the surgeon fears to perforate the integument destined for the formation of the flap, it will suffice to separate them by the thumb and finger, and by gentle traction.

3. *Methods of operating.*

All amputations of the limbs may be arranged under three heads :

(1) *The circular operation.*—In this case all the parts are divided in a circular manner, and the section is covered solely by the skin, which has been previously drawn up like a sleeve before making the incision.

(2) *The oval or oblique operation.*—This form is usually adopted in the removal of the digits, and consists of an elliptical incision around a part or joint which results when the amputation is completed in a wound the form of which is oval.

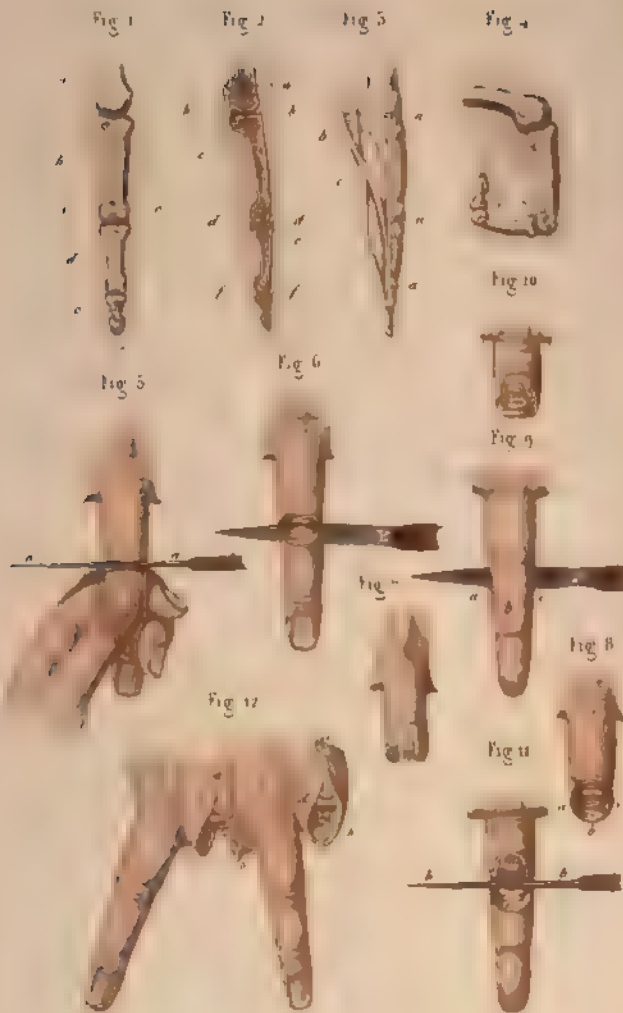
(3) *Flap operation.* In this case one or more flaps are cut of dimensions calculated to cover the surface of the wound without tension.

RULES FOR MAKING THE FLAPS.

(1) In cases where it is difficult to control hæmorrhage—for instance, amputation at the shoulder joint,—the less important flap or flaps should be first made, and when the disarticulation is completed the flap which will contain the large vessels may be cut.

(2) In making a flap outwards, care should be taken not to terminate it in a point. The cutting should therefore be effected by the whole length of the blade, carried with a slight sawing motion, and in a line obliquely from the point of puncture to the point at which it has been

Pl 18



previously determined to terminate the flap. By this means the extremity of the flap will be rounded. Should the knife be carried deeply and parallel with the bone the flap will contain an excess of the muscular tissues, and on the contrary should the knife be carried too superficially, approaching a parallel to the bone the flap will terminate in a point. Projecting tendons or nerves may be cut off with the scissors.

(3) It is necessary, as far as possible, to select healthy tissues for the formation of the flaps. They may, however, be cut in an engorged or even lardaceous tissue, though in such case they are of course more liable to become gangrenous. Indeed, a disarticulation may be performed when no integument remains wherewith to form a flap, the wound becoming ultimately covered with a cicatricial tissue.

PLATE XVIII

DISARTICULATION OF TWO LAST PHALANGES OF THE FINGERS AND OF AN ENTIRE FINGER.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—*Palmar view of the bones of a finger.*

a, Inferior extremity of the metacarpal bone; *b*, shaft of the first phalanx; *c*, head of the first phalanx; *d*, second phalanx; *e*, third or ungual phalanx.

The phalangeal articulations are true ginglymoid, permitting of only flexion and extension.

Each phalanx presents near the joint prominences of some size on the dorsal aspect (Fig. 2, *e*), and on the palmar aspect (Fig. 1, *c* & *e*). To the two lateral ligaments is due the solidity of the joint. The extensor tendon behind and a loose anterior ligament, complete the means of union of a phalangeal articulation. The direction of the articular interspace is nearly transverse, and corresponds to the cutaneous fold on the palmar surface, for the articulation of the first with the second phalanx, and to a line $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below the fold for the articulation of the second with the third phalanx.

Fig. 2.—*Section of the bones of a finger, to show the relations of the joints with the folds of the skin.*

a, Lower extremity of the metacarpal bone; *b b*, line of metacarpophalangeal articulation, situated at an inch or rather more above the level of the digital commissure; *d d*, first phalangeal articulation at the level of the palmar fold of the skin; *f f*, second phalangeal articulation about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below the palmar fold of the skin.

Fig. 3.—Union of the phalanges with each other and with the metacarpal bone.

a, a, a, Dorsal surface of the joints; *b*, tendon of the flexor sublimis; *c*, tendon of the deep flexor.

Fig. 4.—Bones of a finger flexed, to show the relation of the articulating surfaces during flexion.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 5.—Disarticulation of the second phalanx by dorsal incision.

First stage.—The joint is entered at once by the blade of the knife.

Fig. 6.—Same operation.

Second stage.—After having traversed the articulation the knife is turned beneath the bone, and brought forwards in order to cut a palmar flap.

Fig. 7.—Operation completed.

Flap applied to the stump by adhesive plaster. Instead, however of employing plaster, it is better to adjust the edges of the skin by wire sutures.

Fig. 8.—Modification of preceding method.

(See description of the operations.)

Fig. 9.—Disarticulation of the second phalanx by the palmar surface.

a, b, c, Form to be given to the palmar flap.

Fig. 10.—Same operation completed.

Fig. 11.—Same operation.

Second stage.—The flap *a* being raised, the joint is entered by the blade of the knife.

Fig. 12.—Disarticulation of the entire finger.

a, b, c, Wound formed by the double-flap method; *a', b', c', d'*, wound formed by the oval method.

DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS.

I. DISARTICULATION OF TWO LAST PHALANXES.

CIRCULAR METHOD.

The hand being pronated, an assistant holds all the fingers flexed, except that to be operated upon. Then the surgeon extends the finger, at the same time holding the extremity with the thumb and index-finger of his left hand, and with the knife held firmly makes a circular incision about $\frac{3}{8}$ inch below the level of the joint if the last

phalanx is to be removed, and $\frac{1}{4}$ inch if the second phalanx is to be removed. The incision having included only the skin and cellular tissue, an assistant by continued and moderate traction draws back those tissues to the level of the joint, when the operator penetrates the joint by the dorsal surface and divides successively all the ligaments.

FLAP OPERATION.

The method of two lateral flaps and that of the palmar and dorsal flap are no longer employed, the single flaps being generally substituted.

Disarticulation by the dorsal surface.

The hand being pronated, an assistant holds the sound fingers as far as possible from that to be operated upon. The surgeon seizes the phalanx with the thumb and finger of the left hand and flexes it to an angle of 45° ; then, with the knife held in the first position (Plate I., Fig. 1), he attacks the articulation by the dorsal surface, cutting perpendicularly $\frac{1}{8}$ inch below the upper margin of the inclined plane formed by the semiflexion of the phalanx—or, if this sign fails, incising at the level of the palmar fold for the second phalangeal articulation, or $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below if the terminal phalangeal articulation. At the same time that the capsule of the joint is opened, the knife, guided from heel to point, should cut from left to right a small semicircular flap. Next, the edge of the knife should be carried right and left of the articulation, to divide the lateral ligaments entering the joint easily with the whole blade (Fig. 6). At this moment the operator seizes the phalanx by the sides, and the knife, after having turned around the base of the phalanx, is carried forwards beneath the bone, with its surfaces flat, to the extent of about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, in order to cut a small semicircular flap sufficiently large to cover the stump (Fig. 7). In cutting through the ligaments the operator should avoid cutting the base of the palmar flap.

Disarticulation from the palmar surface.

The hand being supinated, an assistant holds the sound fingers flexed. The surgeon seizes the phalanx with the thumb and index-finger of his left hand, in such a manner that the thumb is applied to the end of the palmar surface, and the second phalanx of his index-finger upon the dorsal surface of the articulation to be opened. Then the operator, holding in the right hand a sharp-pointed knife in the first position (Plate I., Fig. 2), with the blade flat, thrusts through the point of the knife $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in front of the palmar fold for amputation at the third phalanx, and at the level of the fold for the second phalanx (Fig. 3). The knife now, by pressing and sawing, is carried along the anterior surface of the bone to the extent of about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, after which the edge of the blade is raised, to cut a semilunar flap

(Fig. 10). The flap being raised by the assistant, the edge of the knife is next applied perpendicularly, to divide with a single cut the anterior and lateral ligaments, when the instrument traverses the joint and removes the phalanx without making a dorsal flap. If, however, fear should be entertained lest the tissues should retract too greatly, the section of the skin on the dorsal surface might be made at $\frac{1}{16}$ inch or more below the level of the articulation.

After the above descriptions, it is easy to understand how the surgeon could make, if desirable, two equal flaps, a palmar and a dorsal, or one flap shorter than the other, or even two lateral flaps.

The rules for the disarticulation of the third phalanx of a finger are applicable to the disarticulation of the second phalanx of the thumb.

II. DISARTICULATION OF AN ENTIRE FINGER (FIG. 12).

METHOD BY TWO LATERAL FLAPS.

The hand being pronated, and the neighbouring fingers separated by an assistant, the surgeon ascertains precisely the level of the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation before commencing the operation. To such end he must recollect that the joint is habitually found at 1 inch, or rather more, above the digital commissure.

Another method, advised by Malgaigne, is to draw on the finger, when the articular surfaces may be slightly separated, and a depression between them may be recognised on the dorsal surfaces.

First stage.—Having seized the first phalanx of the finger to be removed by the dorsal and palmar surfaces, it is to be flexed to an angle of 45° . With a finger-knife held in the first position (Plate I., Fig. 1) the surgeon commences an incision over the articulation, in front of the head of the metacarpal bone, and extends it as far as the level of the digital commissure. The incision in the skin being made, the knife, drawn from heel to point, may be now made to divide in one cut all the tissues down to the bone. Arrived at the level of the digital commissure, as before said, the edge of the knife is to be turned suddenly perpendicular to the finger, so as to round off the extremity of the flap. Then the limb is to be raised, and the operator lowers the handle of the knife in such manner that the heel of the instrument may be made to cut an oblique palmar incision similar to that on the dorsal aspect.

Second stage.—In the preceding stage a single lateral semicircular flap has been cut, which should be detached from the phalanx. Then the knife, still held in the first position, is to be turned with the blade flat upon the phalanx, and the handle at right angles to the hand of the patient, and carried by sawing and light pressure along the bone towards the articulation, until an obstacle is met with. The obstacle referred to is the base of the phalanx, around which the knife is to be carried carefully and without any jerking movement, when it will be made to penetrate the joint with facility.



Third stage.—The articulation is to be traversed by the narrow part of the blade, near to the point - to simplify which some traction may be made upon the finger in order to enlarge the cavity of the articulation.

The joint being completely separated, the knife is then carried around the base of the phalanx and brought back along the opposite side of the phalanx as far as the digital commissure, and thus by a single cut the second flap is formed. When the double-flap operation is applied to the index or little finger there is only one flap in relation with the digital commissure. The other flap is more liable to retract. It is therefore convenient to give it a greater extent.

OVAL OPERATION.

The surgeon having seized the finger, as in the preceding operation, makes with the heel of the knife an oblique incision, commencing on the dorsal surface at $\frac{1}{4}$ inch behind the articulation, and extending it as far as the digital commissure. he then raises the hand, and with the finger in extension continues the incision along the palmar groove which separates the finger from the hand. once arrived at the digital commissure on the opposite side, he again lowers the hand, and flexes the finger, to make the incision join the other extremity $\frac{1}{4}$ inch below the point at which it was commenced. Then each lip of the wound is to be lightly dissected, and the joint attacked by the dorsal surface - first dividing the extensor tendon and then the lateral ligaments. The finger is now to be still further flexed and drawn upon, so as to loosen the joint, and at the same time the flexor tendons divided, as well as the surrounding soft parts.

The oval method is rarely used for disarticulation of the fingers.

PLATE XIX.

DISARTICULATION OF THE FOUR FINGERS AND OF THE FIRST AND FIFTH METACARPAL BONES.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 1.—*Disarticulation of the four fingers.*

a, b, c, Dorsal incision in front of the heads of the metacarpal bones. The knife is passed under the phalanges, to cut a palmar flap.

Fig. 2.—*a, b, c,* form of the palmar flap.

Fig. 3.—*Disarticulation of the metacarpal bone of the thumb.*

Modification of the oval method; *a, b, c,* form of incision (called racket incision).

Fig. 4.—The thumb being drawn across the palm of the hand, the disarticulation of the base (*a*) of its metacarpal bone is accomplished.

Fig. 5.—*Lips of the wound adapted.*

Fig. 6.—*Disarticulation of the fifth metacarpal bone.*

Oval method modified; *a, b, c*, form and direction to be given to the incision (called racket).

Fig. 7.—Preceding operation completed—form of the cicatrix.

DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS.

I. DISARTICULATION OF THE FOUR FINGERS TOGETHER.

FLAP OPERATION.

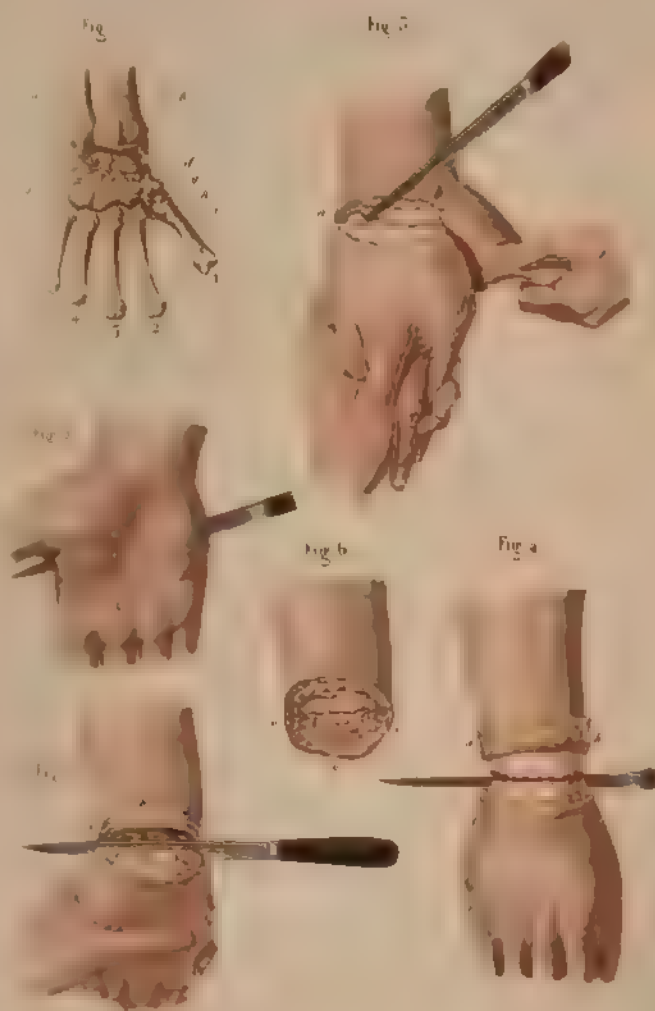
The hand being pronated, the surgeon holds the four fingers in the palm of his hand, with the thumb upon the dorsal surface of the fingers, and moderately flexes them. An assistant stretches the skin, drawing it upwards.

Then with a narrow knife a semilunar incision with the convexity downwards is made, a good $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below the extremities of the metacarpal bones. The tendons are exposed by the retraction of the tissues, and are to be cut through—the knife then successively dividing all the metacarpo-phalangeal articulations, severing first the dorsal ligaments, then the lateral, and lastly the palmar. There remains now only to glide the knife beneath the lower surface of the phalanges, in order to cut from behind forwards the palmar flap, which will be limited by the groove which unites the fingers with the palm of the hand.

II. DISARTICULATION OF THE METACARPAL BONE OF THE THUMB.

OVAL METHOD.

The hand being supinated, an incision is made along the outer border of the dorsal surface of the metacarpal bone of the thumb, commencing $\frac{1}{4}$ inch above its articulation with the trapezium, and dividing all the tissues as far as the bone. About the middle of the metacarpal bone the incision is to be turned off towards the inner side of the first phalanx, at the level of the interdigital commissure. Then, pronating the hand, the incision is to be carried around the extremity of the metacarpal bone upwards, to join the original incision on the dorsal surface at the middle of the metacarpal bone. Next, the muscles are to be detached on each side of the bone, and after conveniently dissecting back the skin, the carpo-metacarpal joint can be entered by its dorsal surface. Next, luxating outwards the metacarpal bone, the disarticulation is accomplished by dividing the soft tissues which still retain the bone.



III. DISARTICULATION OF THE METACARPAL BONE OF THE LITTLE FINGER.

OVAL METHOD.

The hand being forcibly pronated, an incision is commenced at about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the carpo-metacarpal articulation, and carried downwards in a straight line as far as the inner border of the first phalanx of the little finger, at the level of the digito-palmar groove. The operator now raises the little finger, and following exactly the digito-palmar groove, carries the knife around the base of the little finger, and again ascends to the dorsum of the metacarpal bone, there to join the first incision at its lower third. The skin and soft tissues are next detached from the bone, after which the ligaments are destroyed by the point of the knife and the disarticulation is completed.

PLATE XX.

CARPO-METACARPAL AND RADIO-CARPAL DISARTICULATION.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.

a. Lower extremity of the ulnar ; *b.* lower extremity of the radius ; *c, d, e, f, g, h, i.* bones of the carpus ; 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, first, second, third, fourth, and fifth metacarpal bones.

The *carpo-metacarpal articulation* represents a broken line, of which the two extremities are easily recognised.

Externally it corresponds to the upper extremity of the first metacarpal bone. It will be sufficient to forcibly adduct this last, in order to make the articular extremity protrude where it is received into the concavity of the trapezium (*i*) and there retained by loose ligaments.

Internally the carpo-metacarpal articulation corresponds to the articulation of the fifth metacarpal bone with the unciform bone (*f*) ; the prominence of the base of this bone may be recognised beneath the integuments by running the finger along the bone from before backwards, and immediately above the base of the bone is the joint. The unciform apophysis which presents in front the unciform process also assists in recognising the position of the joint, which is to be found immediately beneath it.

The *radio-carpal articulation* is formed by the lower extremities of the radius and ulna, which being slightly concave, receive the convexity formed by the scaphoid (*d*), the semilunar (*e*), and the cuneiform (*c*).

The pisiform, more in front, and a little below the articular line, forms on the palmar surface of the wrist a prominence, around which the knife must be carefully turned in cutting the palmar flap. The styloid processes, that of the radius externally and that of the ulna internally, serve to recognise the joint. The styloid process of the radius descends $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below that of the ulna, and the joint is found $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above a line extending from the summit of one to that of the other.

The second cutaneous fold, which is found on the palmar surface of the wrist on leaving the hand, corresponds to the level of the radio-carpal articulation, and becomes of some importance when the position of the styloid processes cannot be determined.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 2.—*Disarticulation of all the metacarpal bones except that of the thumb.*

a, b, c, Form of the palmar flap.

Fig. 3.—*Same operation.*

a, b, c, Incision of the integuments on the dorsal surface—the knife penetrating the articulation.

Fig. 4.—*Radio-carpal disarticulation—circular method.*

a, b, Sleeve of skin raised: c, c, knife dividing the tendinous structures which surround the joint.

Fig. 5.—*Flap operation.*

a, b, c, Semicircular incision on the dorsal surface of the wrist; the knife cutting the palmar flap.

Fig. 6.—*Wound and Stump.*

a, b, c, Form of the palmar flap.

DESCRIPTION OF THE OPERATIONS.

I. CARPO-METACARPAL DISARTICULATION OF THE FOUR FINGERS. SINGLE FLAP OPERATION.

(Figs. 2 and 3.)

(1) The hand being strongly supinated, recognise, on the outer side, the articulation of the trapezium with the second metacarpal bone, and on the inner side the articulation of the unciform bone with the fifth metacarpal.

(2) Thrust through a narrow knife between the bones and the soft

parts, passing it a little below the prominences of the unciform and trapezium, so as to bring it out a little below the thumb.

(3) Carry the blade of the knife downwards parallel to the anterior surface of the metacarpal bones, and cut a large palmar flap of elliptical form.

(4) Pronate the hand, and make a semilunar incision on the dorsal surface, carrying the whole blade across at about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below the articulations.

(5) Whilst an assistant retracts the skin upwards, the surgeon holds the metacarpal bones of the patient with his left hand, and proceeds to disarticulate them from behind, commencing with the metacarpal bone of the little finger, or index, according to the hand operated upon.

II. RADIO-CARPAL DISARTICULATION.

Firstly, the circular method (Fig. 4).

(1) One assistant forcibly retracts the skin of the forearm, whilst another holds the hand to be amputated.

(2) The surgeon makes a circular incision through the skin, and strikes the palmar and dorsal eminences.

(3) The skin is dissected and raised in the form of a sleeve as high as the radio-carpal articulation.

(4) A second circular incision is made, dividing the tendons.

(5) The joint is cut through from its dorsal towards its palmar surface.

(6) The styloid processes of the radius and ulna are to be sawn off.

Secondly, the single-flap method (Figs. 5 and 6).

The hand being conveniently held in pronation, and the skin of the fore-arm strongly retracted by an assistant, the operator assures himself of the position of the prominences of the radius and ulna, and embracing them with the thumb and index-finger of the left hand makes on the dorsal surface of the wrist a semilunar incision, the two extremities of which fall a little below the styloid processes of the radius and ulna.

After the division of the skin and cellular tissue, the integuments retract above and below, and leave the wrist bare. Then a second incision in the direction of the articulation divides the extensor tendons and the posterior radio-carpal ligament. The lateral ligaments are next divided, and the knife carried around the bones of the carpus to their anterior surface, in order to cut the anterior or palmar flap, which should be about 1 inch in length. In order that the knife shall not be arrested in cutting the flap, the edge should be inclined along the integument, so as to avoid striking against the osseous prominences of the carpus, and to avoid cutting away the pisiform

bone in the thickness of the flap. With the incision just indicated, the osseous angles are not liable to protrude from the wound, but it is well to saw off the styloid processes; if any tendon be inconveniently long, it may be excised.

PLATE XXI.

DISARTICULATION OF THE ELBOW.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—The articulation is formed by the extremity of the humerus (A), the upper extremity of the radius (B), and the upper extremity of the ulna (C).

Fig. 2.—The radius articulates with the humerus by juxtaposition only, but the ulna receives the trochlea into a cavity formed by the olecranon (*b*) posteriorly, and the coronoid process (*c*) in front. This anatomical disposition allows the joint to be attacked by the full knife only on its outer side.

The osseous surfaces are maintained in contact by anterior, posterior, and lateral ligaments.

Fig. 3.—To recognise the articulation the two condyles must be determined; the internal (*b*) is easily felt beneath the integument; the external (*a*) is less prominent, and indefinitely continuous with the external border of the humerus. The two condyles are situated on a nearly horizontal line (*a, b*), to which the shaft of the humerus would be perpendicular. The articular interline (*c, d, e*) lies below the horizontal line (*a, b*), and its two extremities (*c* and *e*) are unequally distant from it. In effect, the external extremity (*c*) is about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch below the lowest point of the external condyle, whilst the internal extremity (*e*) is $\frac{3}{4}$ inch below the lowest point of the internal condyle.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 4.—*Flap operation*.—*a, b, c*, form of anterior flap.

Fig. 5.—Anterior flap raised.—*a*, humero-radial articulation opened; *c*, anterior ligament not yet divided over the humero-ulnar articulation.

Fig. 6.—*Circular method*.—*a, b*, sleeve of skin raised.

Fig. 7.—Wound resulting from disarticulation by the circular method. *a*, inferior extremity of the humerus; *b*, section of the brachial artery.

Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3



Fig. 4



Fig. 5



Fig. 6





STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. *Single flap* (Figs. 4, 5).

The forearm is to be forcibly supinated and slightly flexed; then the surgeon, standing on the inner side of the limb, embraces with his left hand the lateral parts of the articulation, and lightly draws upwards the skin of the forearm. With a narrow-bladed knife he punctures the limb on the inner side, about 1 inch below the prominence of the internal condyle, and after carrying the instrument in contact with the bones of the forearm, brings it out at a point 2 inches below the external condyle, cutting an anterior semilunar flap $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length. This flap is to be reflected by an assistant, who at the same time retracts the skin of the arm in order to raise up the angles of the wound, and the surgeon carries the knife outwards at the base of the flap, dividing all the tissues, and entering the joint full blade between the humerus and the radius; then with a transverse incision he circumscribes the limb, dividing all the structures on the posterior surface as far as the internal angle of the wound. There now remains only to divide with the point of the knife the anterior and lateral humero-ulnar ligaments, and after dislocating the articulation, to divide the tendon of the triceps.

The great obliquity of the base of the flap, which would appear to result from the direction the knife takes, is effaced on the living subject by the retraction of the tissues, which is much more extensive on the outer than on the inner side.

2. *Circular operation* (Figs. 6, 7).

The arm being held as in the preceding operation, the surgeon, standing on the outer side of the limb, divides the skin in a circular manner at three fingers' breadth below the articulation, and then dissects it upwards in the form of a sleeve as high as the joint: after which he divides the anterior muscles, then the lateral ligaments; and disarticulating the joint from before backwards, ends by dividing the tendon of the triceps. In this operation the artery is cut above its bifurcation, and the form of the wound favours an early union.

PLATE XXII.

DISARTICULATION OF THE SHOULDER.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—*a*, head of the humerus; *b*, clavicle; *c*, acromion process; *d*, infra-spinous fossa of the scapula; *e*, head of the humerus, held in the glenoid cavity by the capsular ligament.

Fig. 2. *a*, glenoid cavity—an elongated pear-shaped facette which embraces one-third of the head of the humerus; *b*, acromion process; *c*, coracoid process.

The head of the humerus is attached to the glenoid cavity by a loose capsular ligament, which would permit the separation of the articular surfaces, were they not maintained in contact by the action of the several muscles which surround the joint.

The acromion and coracoid processes form an arch which protects the articulation above. The acromion, situated nearly $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the glenoid cavity, projects outwards over the joint for more than 1 inch. The coracoid, lower and more internal, is nearer to the head of the bone.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 3.—*a*, *b*, *c*, form of the posterior flap.

Fig. 4.—*a*, *b*, *c*, posterior flap reflected; *d*, head of the humerus disarticulated.

Fig. 5.—*a*, *b*, first incision, vertical; *c*, *d*, posterior incision, starting from the first; *e*, *e*, anterior incision, also starting from the first.

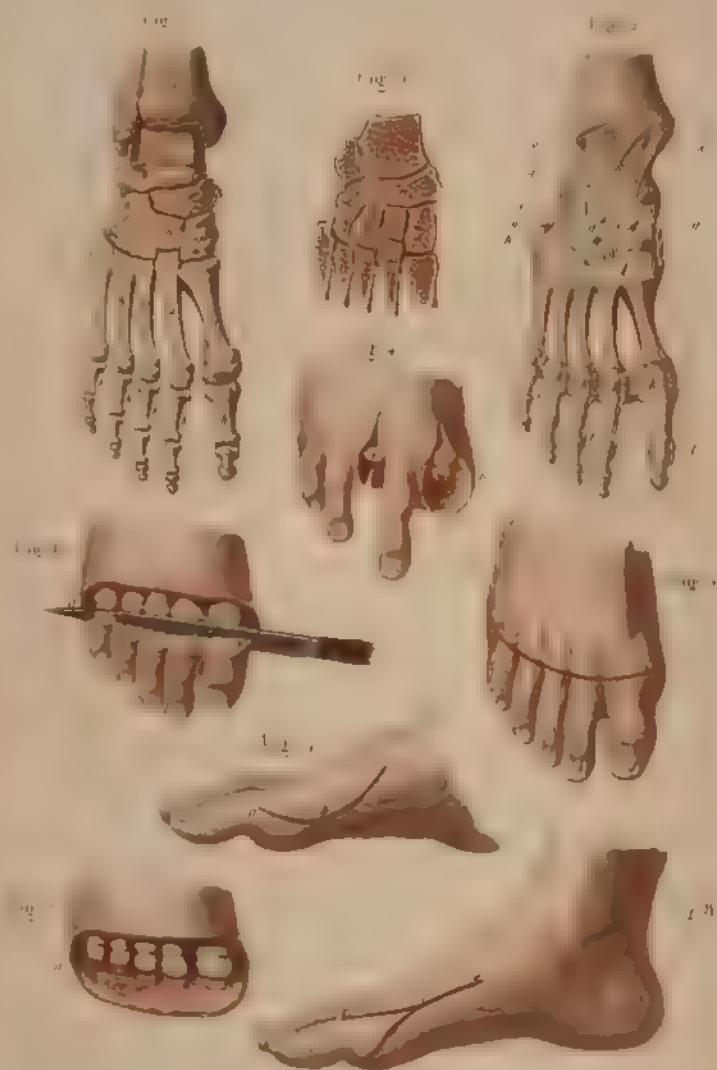
Fig. 6.—*a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, resulting wound of the amputation by preceding method; *e*, glenoid cavity and portions of the capsular ligament; *f f*, axillary vessels.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. *Disarticulation of the shoulder.*—*Double-flap operation* (Figs. 3, 4).

First step.—When the left shoulder is to be disarticulated, the arm is to be raised, and the humerus rotated inwards; then the surgeon assures himself by manipulation of the position of the acromion and coracoid processes, and with a long narrow knife, held nearly parallel with the humerus, punctures the posterior wall of the axilla at its extreme outer part, and immediately below the insertion of the latissimus dorsi and teres major. The knife now passes along the posterior and outer surface of the humerus, and arrives beneath the acromion process. Its point is now slightly altered in direction, made to penetrate the capsule of the joint, and is brought out in front of the clavicle in the triangular space between the acromion and coracoid processes and the clavicle. The deltoid is next seized with the left hand, and the knife descends full blade on the outer side of the humerus, to cut an external or posterior flap about $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length. In this flap the knife has divided the tendons of the latissimus dorsi, teres major, teres minor, a large portion of the deltoid, and the capsule of the joint.

Second step.—After cutting this flap, the head of the humerus is easily drawn away from the glenoid cavity, and may be rotated first



outwards, then inwards, in order to cut through the attachments of the subscapularis, supra-spinatus, and infra-spinatus. The blade is now passed through the joint behind the head of the bone, and is carried along the inner surface of the bone, to form the anterior or internal flap; at the same time the artery which is contained in the thickness of the flap is readily compressed by the assistant. When the right shoulder is to be disarticulated, the first section is reversed, the knife entering at the clavicular triangle, and brought out in front of the posterior border of the axilla.

2. *Oral method* (Figs. 5, 6).

(1) Make a vertical incision on the outer side of the shoulder, including all the tissues, as far as the bone commencing at the border of the acromion process, and terminating $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches below the level of the anatomical neck of the humerus.

(2) Next make two oblique incisions, starting from the first, which, the one anterior and the other posterior, shall cut respectively the integuments and fleshy parts of the anterior and posterior walls of the axilla, close to their humeral insertions.

(3) Turn aside the tissues and open the joint, at the same time drawing lightly upon the bone, so as to separate the head from the glenoid cavity. In order to separate the muscular attachments, the head of the humerus should be forcibly rotated; firstly outwards, by which means the subscapularis is brought to the front and may be severed by cutting directly downwards upon the bone; and secondly inwards, to sever the muscles connected with the great tuberosity in like manner.

(4) Luxate the bone, passing the knife behind it, and complete the operation by cutting the tissues which correspond to the pit of the axilla, and in which are contained the axillary vessels compressed by the hand of the assistant. The wound resulting from this operation is a veritable oval.

PLATE XXIII.

DISARTICULATION OF THE TOES.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—*Osteology of the foot dorsal surface*.—*a* and *b*, inferior extremities of the tibia and fibula; *c*, astragalus; *d*, os calcis; *e*, scaphoid; *f*, cuboid; *g*, internal cuneiform; *h*, middle cuneiform; *i*, external cuneiform; 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, first, second, third, fourth, and fifth metatarsal bones; *k*, phalanges.

Fig. 2.—*Ligaments in the dorsal surface of the foot*.—*a*, *a*, anterior tibio astragaloid; *b*, anterior fasciculus of external lateral; *c*, internal

calcaneo-scaploid ; *d*, calcaneo-astragaloid ; *e*, superior astragaloscaphoid ; *f*, superior calcaneo cuboid ; *g*, *g*, *g*, scapho-cuneiform ; *h*, cubo-metatarsal ; *i*, *i*, *i*, cuneo-metatarsal ; *k*, metatarso-phalangeal articulations ; *l*, lateral ligaments of the phalangeal joints.

Fig. 3.—Horizontal section of the tarsal bones ; interosseous ligaments.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 4.—Disarticulation of the first and third toe.—*a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, wound resulting from disarticulation by the oval method ; *e*, head of the first metatarsal bone ; *f*, *g*, *h*, wound resulting from disarticulation by the double-flap operation ; *i*, head of the third metatarsal bone.

Fig. 5. Disarticulation of the five toes.—*a*, *b*, *c*, form and direction of the incision to be made in front of the heads of the metatarsal bones.

Fig. 6.—The integuments being retracted, the knife glides beneath the toes to cut a plantar flap.

Fig. 7.—Wound resulting from preceding operation.—*a*, *b*, *c*, form of the plantar flap.

Fig. 8.—Disarticulation of the first metatarsal bone.—*a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, racket form incision.

Fig. 9.—*a*, *b*, *c*, incision for removal of the first metatarsal bone by disarticulation, without the toe (see Resections).

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. Disarticulation of a single toe (Fig. 4).

The description of the disarticulation of the fingers is in every respect applicable to that of the toes, so that it is unnecessary here to repeat. It may be well to state, however, that the oval operation is most commonly employed, because a toe is generally removed in its entirety, the small size and inutility of the phalanges not indicating their preservation, as in the hand.

Many surgeons advise, in the disarticulation of the great toe (Fig. 8), the removal at the same time of the head of the metatarsal bone, otherwise its prominence produces a deformity which is painfully irritated by the shoe.

2. Disarticulation of the five toes.—Flap operation (Figs. 6, 7).

(1) The operator, grasping all the toes in his left hand, makes, with a narrow knife, a semicircular incision extending on the left foot, or on the right foot *vice versa*, from the inner side of the head of the first metatarsal bone to the outer side of the head of the fifth, passing in front of their articulations with the phalanges (Fig. 5).

(2) With the point of the knife the articulations are to be successively opened, and the ligaments divided.

(3) The knife is then to be glided beneath the bases of the phalanges, to cut with a full blade a plantar flap (see Figs. 6, 7).



Fig. 3



Fig. 4



PLATE XXIV.

TARSO METATARSAL DISARTICULATION. LISFRANC'S OPERATION.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—The tarso-metatarsal articulation—formed behind by the cuboid (*a*) and the three cuneiforms (*b, c, d*): in front by the five metatarsal bones—presents an irregularly curved line, the direction and sinuosities of which should be well understood.

Externally the cuboid (*a*) articulates with the fifth and fourth metatarsal bones, the line running obliquely from without inwards, and from behind forwards. This line is slightly broken, the articulation with the fourth metatarsal being more transverse than that with the fifth. About $\frac{1}{2}$ inch more in front is the articulation of the third metatarsal bone with the external cuneiform (*b*); again, $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to the rear is the articulation of the second metatarsal bone with the middle cuneiform (*c*); lastly, about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in front of the preceding is the articulation of the first metatarsal bone with the internal cuneiform (*d*).

This anatomical disposition presents to the notice of the operator two essential points —(1) The internal extremity of the tarso-metatarsal articulation situated nearly $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in front of a line (*e, f*) drawn transversely from the external extremity. (2) The base of the second metatarsal bone morticed in by the three cuneiform bones.

The dorsal cubo-metatarsal and cuneo-metatarsal ligaments are connected with the bones at some distance either in front of or behind the articular interline, a disposition which admits of a separation at the joints when the ligaments are divided not precisely at a level with the interline. The interosseous ligaments, more powerful on the plantar than on the dorsal surface, are easily divided; those, however, which are connected with the second metatarsal bone in the mortice—the veritable key of the articulation—offer a resistance which necessitates a particular manœuvre for their division.

In order to recognise the articulations, (1) On the inner side, follow with the finger, from before backwards, the inner side of the first metatarsal bone as far as the tuberosity (*g*); $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{1}{12}$ inch behind this is the articular interline corresponding to an indentation between the tuberosity (*g*) and the tuberosity (*h*) of the internal cuneiform. Again the articulation may be found at about an inch in front of the tuberosity of the scaphoid bone (*i*).

(2) On the outer side, follow with the finger, from before backwards, the outer side of the fifth metatarsal bone as far as the tuberosity (*k*); the joint commences immediately behind and internal to this, but in some cases this tuberosity projects beyond the articulation.

OPERATION.

Fig. 1 *bis.*—*a, b, c*, Form and direction of the incision to be made in front of the tarsal bones.

Fig. 2 —*a, b, c*, Dorsal tarso-metatarsal ligaments divided.

Fig. 3.—Operative manœuvre for luxating the key of the articulation; *a, b, c*, are of a circle described by the knife; *d*, second metatarsal bone; *e*, first metatarsal.

Fig. 4.—*a*, Dorsal artery of the foot. The knife, *b*, cuts the plantar flap.

Fig. 5. *a, b, c, d*, Wound resulting from the amputation; *a, b, c*, form of the plantar flap.

STEPS OF THE OPERATION.

First step. The foot must project beyond the bed or couch on which the patient lies. The surgeon assures himself, by the anatomical points indicated, of the precise position of the joints; then, in the case of the right foot, he grasps with the palm of the left hand the plantar surface of the foot, his thumb being placed on the posterior and outer extremity of the fifth metatarsal bone, and his indicator or middle finger on the line of articulation between the cuneiform and first metatarsal bones. Then, with the knife in the right hand, he makes from without inward, on the dorsal surface, a semilunar incision, with the convexity forward, passing about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below the joints, dividing all the tissues as far as the bones, and connecting the two extremities of the articulation.

Second step. The surgeon carries the point of the knife on the outer side of the articulation, there penetrates and opens the joint as far as the external cuneiform bone. He now carries the point of the knife $\frac{1}{10}$ inch forward, incises transversely, and opens the articulation as far as the second metatarsal bone. He next attacks the articulation of the first metatarsal bone (Fig. 2).

Third step.—It remains to destroy the mortice which engages the head of the second metatarsal bone within the bones of the tarsus. For this purpose the point of the knife is introduced between the internal cuneiform bone and the second metatarsal, in such a manner that the cutting margin is turned upwards, and inclined at an angle of 45° with the toes; then the knife is raised to a right angle, at the same time passing along the inner side of the mortice to divide the internal interosseous ligament. Now the surgeon withdraws the knife, and with its point divides the posterior and external dorsal ligaments of the mortice.

Fourth step. All the means of union being divided, light pressure is applied to the end of the foot to separate the articular surfaces, and the interosseous ligaments which still remain intact are successively

divided. Next the plantar ligaments are cut through, and the knife is glided beneath the bases of all the metatarsal bones, avoiding the tuberosities of the first and fifth. There remains only to cut the plantar flap, $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches long on its inner side, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches on its outer.

HEY'S AMPUTATION.

This operation, which differs from the preceding in that the metatarsal bones are sawn through, leaving their bases in position, may be performed by the same method.

PLATE XXV.

MEDIO-TARSAL DISARTICULATION, TERMED CHOPART'S.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—The medio-tarsal articulation—formed posteriorly by the astragalus (*a*) and the calcaneum (*b*); in front by the cuboid (*c*) and the scaphoid (*d*)—presents a transverse articular line curved like an italic *S*, of which the anterior convexity is internal, and the posterior convexity external. The *internal extremity* of the articulation is about 1 inch in front of the internal malleolus (*g*), and $\frac{1}{2}$ inch behind the tuberosity (*h*), of the scaphoid.

The *external extremity* (*i*) is $\frac{3}{4}$ inch behind the tuberosity (*j*) of the fifth metatarsal bone. It corresponds to a prominence which the cuboid forms where articulating with the calcaneum, a prominence situated on the outer border of the foot, about 1 inch in front of the external malleolus (*k*).

The middle part of the articulation is immediately in front of the head of the astragalus, which can be made prominent by bearing strongly the point of the foot downwards. External to this prominence is a cavity, readily detected by the finger, between the astragalus, the cuboid, and the calcaneum. Under this is the articulation.

In order to enter the joint, it is necessary to understand the different obliquities of the articular surfaces. The pin (*l*), introduced between the astragalus and the scaphoid, indicates the direction to be taken by the knife when attacking the articulation from its inner side. The pin (*m*), introduced between the calcaneum and the cuboid, on a level with the prominence described above, indicates the direction to be taken by the knife when the joint is to be opened on its outer side.

Fig. 2.—When introduced into the joint, the knife follows the osseous surfaces between the astragalus (*a*) and the scaphoid (*b*); first obliquely forward (*c*), then raised perpendicularly (*d*).

Fig. 3.—If operating on the right foot, the knife, at first held somewhat obliquely (*c*), will be elevated a little (*d*) between the calcaneum (*a*) and the cuboid (*b*) when attacking the joint on its outer side. The internal ligament which occupies the centre of the region, and which unites three bones, and holds the four together, should be divided by the point of the knife as soon as the separation of the bones will permit. In old subjects it is sometimes ossified, a peculiarity which necessitates the use of the saw. The other ligaments require no further notice.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 4.—*Ordinary operation*.—*a, b, c*, Form and direction of the incision in front of the joint.

Fig. 5.—The joint opened, the knife cutting the plantar flap; *a*, dorsal artery of foot.

Fig. 6.—*a, b, c*, Form of the plantar flap; *d* and *d'*, dorsal and plantar arteries.

Fig. 7.—*Sedillot's operation*.—*a, b, c*, Form of the anterior incision.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

CHOPART'S MEDIO-TARSAL DISARTICULATION (Figs. 4, 5)

1. *Ordinary operation*.—(1) The line of articulation having been made out as already explained, grasp the sole of the foot with the palm of the left hand, placing the thumb on the outer side of the articulation (if it be the right foot), and the index or middle finger on the tuberosity of the scaphoid. (2) Make a semilunar incision, extending from the thumb to the index, across the dorsum of the foot, and descending $\frac{3}{4}$ inch below the joint. (3) After having retracted the integument, the knife must be carried back in the wound, to divide the tendons, and to open the articulation, the directions of the articular surfaces already pointed out must be recollected, and care must be taken to divide all the fibrous bands which unite the scaphoid with the astragalus, by the whole blade, without attempting to penetrate the joint with the point of the knife, a movement which is rendered impossible by a slender ledge of the scaphoid bone overlapping the head of the astragalus. (4) Gentle pressure with the left hand upon the foot enables the surgeon to define more clearly the line of the articulation, and also to distinguish fibrous bands which may yet remain uncut. (5) The articulation being freely opened, and all the means of union divided as far as the plantar surface, the blade of the knife is passed behind the bones, and the fore part of the foot bent at a right angle, in order that it may be glided beneath them; then returning the foot to its natural position, the plantar flap is cut, the knife being brought out at a point $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in front of the sesamoid bones. In

cutting this flap, care must be taken to prevent the blade being arrested by the projecting portions of the scaphoid, cuboid, and first and fifth metatarsal bones.

2. Operation of *M. Sedillot* (Figs. 6, 7).

After having recognised the outline of the articulation, a transverse incision is to be made, starting from a point a little in advance of the calcaneo-cuboid articulation, and terminating in the middle of the dorsum of the foot, external to the tendon of the *tibialis anticus*. From this point a second incision is to be made obliquely from behind forwards, and from without inwards, which will extend to a point two fingers breadth short of the metatarso-phalangeal joint of the great toe: this incision is now to be continued from within outwards, on the plantar surface obliquely, to join the first incision near the calcaneo-cuboid articulation. The integuments and cellulo-fatty tissue alone are to be divided. The internal flap thus formed is next to be dissected back as far as the tubercle of the scaphoid bone, behind which the joint is to be entered. There remains now to disarticulate in the ordinary manner, and to terminate the operation by cutting through the deeper tissues at the level of the plantar incision.

TIBIO-TARSAL DISARTICULATION.

Amputation at the ankle-joint, commonly called in this country *Syme's Amputation*, may be performed in the following manner :



(1) A dorsal incision somewhat semilunar in form is to be made across the dorsum of the foot from the apex of one malleolus to that of the other. This incision should make a front flap about $\frac{3}{4}$ inch long, thus allowing of the posterior flap being cut shorter, and so getting rid of the awkward bag which occurs when the posterior flap is cut long. (2) A second incision is made downwards to the posterior part of the heel, likewise commencing at the apex of one malleolus and terminating at that of the other malleolus, and carried at once deeply through all tissues to the *os calcis*. (3) The knife is now to be

carried full blade through the first incision into the ankle-joint, the foot being strongly extended in order to expose the line of the joint. When the joint is freely opened the lateral ligaments are to be severed, and the disarticulation being complete, the foot is dissected out of the posterior flap by cutting slowly and gradually with the knife on the os calcis. (4) The next step in the operation is to level the tibia and fibula by removal of the malleoli. Some prefer to remove the articulating surface of the tibia with the malleoli; but the increased risk of absorption through so large a surface of cut bone must be a sufficient objection to such a proceeding, unless, as occurs in some so-called strumous diseases of the ankle-joint, caries granulosa has taken possession of the lower end of the tibia. If the operator decides to remove only the malleoli, the knife is drawn round each separately at its base, and then each is to be sawn off separately on a level with the articulating surface of the tibia. (5) The dorsal and plantar or posterior tibial arteries being ligatured and the flaps adjusted, the operation is complete.

Prugoff's operation.

This operation may be performed in precisely the same manner as the preceding, with this exception, that instead of dissecting out the tuberosity of the os calcis that portion of bone is sawn off, the section being made vertically downwards immediately behind the astragalus in such manner that the cut surface of os calcis which looks directly forwards shall, on bringing up the posterior flap, articulate directly upwards with the under surface of the tibia.

PLATE XXVI.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—*Tibio-femoral articulation, anterior surface.*—*a*, Femur; *b*, patella; *c*, tibia; *e*, fibula; *g*, external lateral ligament; *f*, internal ligament; *d*, inferior patellar ligament.

Fig. 2.—*Antero-posterior vertical section, showing the crucial ligaments, *d*, and the popliteal artery, *e*;* *a*, femur; *b*, tibia; *c*, patella.

This articulation presents some important anatomical peculiarities. The internal condyle of the femur descends lower than the external by $\frac{3}{8}$ inch. Both are received into concave facettes on the tibia; the semilunar cartilages adherent to the tibia fill up the space of the glenoid cavity in which each condyle rolls. The popliteal artery (Fig. 2, *e*), lodged in the posterior intercondyloid space, is in immediate contact with the posterior surface of the articulation.

Pl. 26.

Fig. 3



Fig. 1



Fig. 5



Fig. 2



Fig. 4



Fig. 6



The means of union are—in front, the superior and inferior patellar ligaments ; on the sides, the external and internal lateral ; behind, the posterior ligament. Independently of the exterior ligaments, two crucial ligaments, strong and resisting, maintain the osseous surfaces in contact, and limit their movement.

In order to recognise the line of articulation, (1) the head of the fibula must be felt, the articulation is about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above. (2) The femur presents, upon the lateral surfaces of its condyles, two tubercles, the most prominent points of which may be easily felt beneath the integument ; at about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below each is the joint. Finally, (3) the lower border of the patella is at the level of the articulation.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 3.—Disarticulation of the knee—flap operation.

a, b, c, Form of the anterior incision.

Fig. 4. Same operation. Articulation opened, the knife cuts the posterior flap ; *a, b, c*, form of the flap.

Fig. 5 —Disarticulation of the knee—circular method.

a, b, c, Section of the skin ; *d, e*, sleeve of skin raised ; the knife enters the articulation anteriorly.

Fig. 6.—Disarticulation of the knee—oval method.

a, b, c, Oblique section of the skin ; *d, e*, the skin raised ; the knife enters the joint from before backwards.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. Disarticulation of the knee—flap operation.

(1) The leg being extended, make a semilunar incision in front of the knee, and below the patella, extending from one condyle of the femur to the other.

(2) Flex the knee, and make a second incision in the line of the first, freely opening the joint.

(3) Divide the lateral and the crucial ligaments.

(4) Carry the blade of the knife behind the tibia and the fibula, and cut a flap at the expense of the muscles of the calf, of sufficient length to cover the wound—about four inches.

2. Circular method.

(1) Make a circular incision through the skin and cellular tissue around the leg, three or four fingers' breadth below the patella.

(2) Dissect up the skin and cellular tissue as high as the condyles of the femur.

(3) The sleeve of skin being held up by an assistant, flex the knee, and carry the blade of the knife through the ligamentum patellæ, to open the joint; then cut through all the ligaments: and finally, with one incision, sever the nerves, vessels, and muscles of the popliteal space at the level of the articulation.

3. *Oval method* (Fig. 6).

(1) Trace a line in ink, starting from the crest of the tibia, three fingers' breadth below the ligamentum patellæ, and carrying it obliquely backwards and upwards towards the popliteal space to a point two fingers' breadth below a line exactly corresponding to the ligamentum patellæ.

(2) Continue the line behind the leg and on the other side in a similar manner, to the starting-point on the crest of the tibia.

(3) Let the knife follow this line, dividing the skin and cellular tissue only.

(4) Dissect the skin and cellular tissue as high as the condyles of the femur.

(5) Disarticulate the joint, as in the circular operation.

PLATE XXVII.

DISARTICULATION OF THE THIGH.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—*a*, Internal iliac fossa; *a'*, femoral artery; *b*, femur; *c*, head of femur covered by the capsular ligament; *d*, anterior superior iliac spine; *e*, anterior inferior iliac spine; *f*, spine of the pubes; *g*, tuberosity of the ischium; *h*, lesser trochanter. The ilio-femoral articulation is formed by the acetabulum and the head of the femur: the head of the femur is not completely received into the cotyloid cavity, but is maintained there by a large and resisting capsular ligament, and by the round ligament, a fibrous cord which attaches the head of the femur to the depth of the cavity. The capsular ligament is attached to the anterior inferior iliac spine and to the circumference of the cotyloid cavity. It must be incised very near its cotyloid attachments, cutting around the prominence of the acetabulum in order to easily disengage the head of the femur. The plane of the circumference of the cotyloid brim looks obliquely forwards and downwards, whence it results that the head of the femur is more covered behind than in front, a point which it is well to know in order not to be misled by the cotyloid prominence when attacking the joint from behind. In order to recognise the articulation, we must be guided by the following anatomical data:



1. The anterior inferior iliac spine is $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the circumference of the cotyloid cavity; the anterior superior iliac spine is nearly 2 inches above the same cavity, and $\frac{1}{2}$ inch external to it.

2. When the patient is standing, an oblique line passing from the anterior superior iliac spine to the tuberosity of the ischium traverses the cotyloid cavity at the junction of its posterior third with its anterior two-thirds.

3. The anterior rim of the cotyloid cavity is $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches external to the spine of the pubes.

4. The axis of the horizontal ramus of the pubes prolonged by an imaginary line would traverse the cotyloid cavity at the junction of its upper with its middle third.

5. The superior border of the great trochanter is on a level with the upper third of the ilio-femoral articulation.

This articulation, superficial in front, where it is only covered by the psoas and iliacus and the vessels, is protected internally and behind by a considerable mass of muscles; externally the muscular mass is less abundant.

The femoral artery (A) passes in front of the joint, on a level with the junction of the middle third with the internal third of the head of the femur; lower down it approaches the shaft of the femur, and crossing behind it becomes the popliteal artery.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 2.—*Disarticulation of the thigh—flap operation.*—The knife transixed from without inwards cuts the anterior flap, *a, b, c*.

Fig. 3.—*Same operation.*—The flap is raised by the hands of an assistant, who compresses the vessels in his grasp; the head of the femur, *b*, is luxated, and the knife passed behind it to cut the posterior flap; *c, c*, section of the femoral vessels.

Fig. 4.—*Wound resulting from the preceding operation.*—*a, b, c*, The anterior flap raised; *a, d, c*, posterior flap; *e*, cotyloid cavity; *f, f*, section of femoral vessels.

Fig. 5.—*Same operation, with lateral flaps.*—The knife, *a*, is transixed in such a manner as to cut successively two flaps, the one internal, *b, c, f*; the other external, *b, c, d*.

Fig. 6.—*Same operation.*—The internal and external flaps being cut, the head of the femur is disarticulated.

ARREST OF HÆMORRHAGE.

To arrest the flow of blood in this serious operation an elastic cord may be placed in figure-of-8 form around the hip and pelvis, and prevented from slipping—an accident very likely to occur during the operation—by means of tapes drawn upwards by assistants.

Another means of arresting hæmorrhage is the employment of

'Davy's Lever,' inserted into the rectum about 8 or 9 inches to compress either the right or left common iliac artery as the case may be. In the skin-flap operation the artery may be easily ligatured before cutting through the deeper tissues.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. *Single flap operation.*

The patient is arranged with the buttocks projecting beyond the table. If the left limb is to be operated upon, the knife is plunged in at a spot midway between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the great trochanter, and carried deeply, parallel with the fold of the groin, grazing the neck of the femur, and transfixing the capsular ligament as it passes, to be brought out at a point 1 inch below and in front of the ascending ramus of the ischium. Then the blade of the knife is carried down the limb parallel with the femur, to cut an anterior semilunar flap 3 inches in length. An assistant, who has his thumb compressing the femoral artery on the pubes, thrusts his fingers into the wound as the knife proceeds, and raises the flap as soon as it is cut, now grasping the femoral vessels in its thickness. A second assistant, who holds the leg with his right hand, and the lower part of the thigh with his left, now abducts the thigh, rotates it outwards, and forcibly extends the hip joint, so as to make the head of the femur prominent within the capsule. The surgeon next rapidly cuts through the capsule, and the head protrudes, exposing the ligamentum teres, which is at once cut, together with posterior fibres of the capsular ligament, and the dislocation of the bone completed. The second assistant now draws upon the leg so as to increase the space between the head of the femur and the haunch bone, and at the same time adducts and rotates the limb inwards, to bring the trochanter major to the front. In this position the surgeon can easily divide the muscles connecting the trochanter with the trunk, and he now carries the knife backwards between the femur and the haunch bone, and divides the soft tissues vertically, without making a posterior flap.

There are some modifications of the flap operation: thus, Larrey tied the femoral artery before commencing the operation; Ashmead cut the anterior flap from the skin downwards into the deeper tissues. Lenoir, after making the anterior flap, cut the structures behind by a circular incision before proceeding to disarticulate; Laloutte and Delpech made an internal instead of an anterior flap.

2. *Double lateral flap operation (Figs. 5, 6).*

The patient lying with the buttocks projecting beyond the bed, the surgeon proceeds to make out the exact position of the anterior and external parts of the joint according to the anatomical data above

given. He then thrusts in the knife immediately to the outer side of the articulation, with the edge of the blade towards the great trochanter, making the point to pierce immediately below the tuberosity of the ischium. As the knife is about to penetrate the posterior surface of the thigh, an assistant draws the skin outwards, in order to increase the size of the outer flap. By a sawing movement the knife is now turned around the great trochanter, and then along the outer side of the femur to cut an external flap (*a, b, c*, Fig. 6), about $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 inches in length.

To form the internal flap, the soft parts are drawn inwards by an assistant, and the knife, with the edge directed downwards, is thrust through the limb, entering in front immediately beneath the head of the femur on the inner side of the neck of the bone, and passing out posteriorly in the posterior superior angle of the former incision: care is to be taken not to strike the point of the knife against the pelvis. The knife is now carried downwards, grazing the inner surface of the bone, and avoiding the lesser trochanter, to cut an internal flap (*d, e*, Fig. 6), the same length as the outer flap. The flaps are to be pressed aside by an assistant, and the arteries tied, and the surgeon, seizing the femur with his left hand, draws the edge of the knife down the capsular ligament, over the head of the bone, and opening the joint, completes the disarticulation.

3. *Oval operation.*

The patient lying upon the sound side, (1) the point of the knife is thrust in $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the great trochanter, and cuts its way obliquely downwards and outwards to a point a little below the tuberosity of the ischium. (2) The knife, again replaced in the upper angle of the wound, is cut obliquely downwards and inwards in front of the femur to the same extent. (3) The outer muscles are divided as deeply as possible, after which the articulation is attacked on its outer aspect, and the femur luxated outwards. The joint is traversed by the knife to reach the inner side of the femur. Now an assistant compresses the vessels in the anterior flap, whilst the surgeon, having the heel of the knife in the extremity of the second incision, and the point in the extremity of the first incision a little below the tuberosity of the ischium, and the blade of the knife internal to the shaft of the femur, cuts downwards an anterior flap.

Furneaux Jordan's operation is based on these principles: Enucleate the femur where it is most thinly covered; cut across the soft parts last, and low down.

Esmarch's bandage having been applied, and suitable pressure made on the external iliac artery, the steps of the operation are as follows: (1) Through a free, vertical incision over the trochanter dislodge the head of the femur. As the operation is mostly for late hip disease

this step is usually easy. (2) Next carry the incision boldly down the outer side of the thigh nearly to the knee, then enucleate the shaft of the femur by a few longitudinal strokes of the knife. (3) Restore the bone to its bed for a few moments until the thigh is cut across low down by circular sweeps, first through the skin and then the muscles. (4) The femur and limb being now detached, attend to the vessels which have been divided last of all.

This operation is very suitable for the sub-periosteal method, but it must be remembered in the exhaustion stage of hip disease that periosteal hæmorrhage is free and not easily checked.

Skin flap operation.

In this operation all muscle is removed flush with the joint. The operation is most applicable in cases of tumour of the bone, though it may be performed in any case requiring removal of the joint. The chief objection to it is the fact that the deep irregularities have to fill up entirely with granulations, and thus are formed long sinuses which do not heal over a very lengthened period, perhaps years.

The skin being very contractile, long flaps are required.

(1) An anterior flap is raised by an incision extending from above the trochanter down the outer side and front of the thigh for a distance of 6 to 8 inches in the adult, and then upwards on the inner side of the thigh to within an inch of the body of the pubis. This flap, including all tissue down to the aponeurosis, is to be dissected up, the handle of the scalpel being of good service, and the saphenous or other large vein may be tied.

(2) A posterior flap of like size and in like manner is to be cut, meeting the incision of the anterior flap.

(3) The common femoral artery, which is now visible through the fascia, may be easily tied, and when the final cut is made care must be taken to cut the vessel below the ligature.

(4) The Esmarch cord is now to be applied, and so fixed and drawn upwards by assistants that it cannot slip downwards over the buttock, or else the common iliac artery is to be compressed.

(5) The thigh is to be extended, and the joint becomes plainly visible; this is to be entered with the full blade of the knife, and then the assistant strongly abducts the thigh whilst the knife passes rapidly round the inner side of the joint; and, gliding through the joint, severs now the mass on the outer side.



AMPUTATIONS IN THE CONTINUITY OF THE BONES.

PLATE XXVIII

AMPUTATIONS OF THE FOOT AND HAND.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 1.—Amputation of a phalanx.—*a*, A tape or small bandage to retract the soft tissues; *b*, position of the left hand of the operator seizing the extremity of the finger, whilst the right, armed with Liston's bone forceps, *c*, severs the bone.

Fig. 2.—Amputation of the fifth metacarpal bone.—*a*, The bone sawn obliquely from above downwards, and from within outwards, the hand being pronated; *b*, bandage protecting the soft parts from the saw.

Fig. 3.—Amputation of four inner metacarpal bones—circular method.—*a a*, Tapes passed between the bones in order to draw back the soft parts whilst the bones are sawn through.

Fig. 4.—Amputation of the metatarsal bones—plantar flap operation.—Tapes are passed between the bones as in amputation of the metacarpal bones.

Fig. 5.—Same operation completed—*a, b, c*, Form of the plantar flap.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. Amputation of phalanges (Fig. 1).

The circular method is generally employed. After cutting through the skin by a circular incision, it is to be dissected upwards $\frac{1}{4}$ inch; the tissues surrounding the bone are then divided, particularly the tendinous sheaths on the palmar surface; after which the bone may be cut through with a watchmaker's saw or with the bone forceps. The skin is to be drawn down over the osseous extremity, and the sutures applied to form a transverse cicatrix, a position the least exposed to injury in flexion of the fingers.

2. Amputation of the metacarpal bone, and of the finger which it supports.

It is convenient in this case to employ the oval operation, absolutely the same as in disarticulation; only when the bone is uncovered, a piece of wood or cardboard should be passed behind it to keep off the tissues, and protect them from the saw. The saw employed is one of small size, termed the metacarpal saw. The bone forceps are as service

able as the saw. The fifth metacarpal bone should be cut obliquely from within outwards, and the second obliquely from without inwards.

It is difficult to use the saw in dividing the third or fourth metacarpal bone; bone forceps are therefore substituted. Experience shows that whether the forceps or the saw is used is a matter of no import so far as concerns cicatrization.

3. *Amputation of the four metacarpal bones (Fig. 3).*

A flap is made in the palm, and the operation performed is precisely the same as for disarticulation of the four fingers (see Plate XX, Fig. 2); then with a narrow finger-knife the bones should be freed of their muscles and periosteum, after which a five-headed bandage may be arranged in the interosseous spaces to protect the tissues from the saw.

4. *Amputation of a single metatarsal bone, and of the toe which it supports.*

The operation is the same as for disarticulation of a metatarsal bone: only, instead of dissecting the bone as high as its articulation, it is denuded only as far as the point where it is intended to resect it. The oval operation is the most convenient and generally adopted. The first and fifth metatarsal bones are to be bevelled in such manner that the point of the bevel lies on the side of the neighbouring metatarsal bone, and cannot, consequently, wound the integuments.

5. *Amputation of all the metatarsal bones (Figs. 4, 5).*

The plantar flap is to be first cut. For this purpose the knife may be passed through the sole of the foot at the point at which it is intended to sever the bones, and drawn forwards to cut a flap 2 inches in length; then the two extremities of the base of the flap are to be united by a semilunar incision across the dorsum of the foot, dividing the skin and extensor tendons about 1 inch below the line at which the bones are to be cut. The flap is to be raised, the skin on the dorsum of the foot retracted, and the bones denuded, and then with a saw all the bones divided simultaneously from the dorsal surface towards the sole of the foot.



PLATE XXIX.

AMPUTATION OF THE FOREARM AND OF THE ARM.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 1.—Amputation of the right forearm—circular method.—*a*, Hand of an assistant supporting the forearm. The operator standing outside the limb, incising the muscles.

Fig. 2. Same operation—third step. A three-headed bandage, *a*, passed between the bones, serves to retract the soft parts, and to protect them against the action of the saw.

Fig. 3.—Amputation of the left arm—circular method.—*a*, Hand of an assistant raising the soft parts whilst the operator divides the deep muscles.

Fig. 4.—Appearance of the stump; the operation completed. *a*, vessels; *b*, humerus.

Fig. 5.—Double flap operation; operation completed.—*a*, Internal flap; *b*, external flap.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. Amputation of the forearm—circular method.

The forearm being held by assistants midway between pronation and supination, the operator should stand internal to the limb if operating on the left arm, external if the right, and proceed as follows.

First step.—Make a circular incision through the skin and cellular tissue as far as the aponeurosis. Dissect the skin upwards in the form of a sleeve. If the limb is voluminous and conical, it will be necessary to divide the skin laterally in order to be able to raise it.

Second step. Divide the muscles in a circular manner, following the outline of the sleeve of skin. In this incision the deep muscles escape the knife; it is therefore necessary to divide them by passing the knife through the interosseous space, first on the extensor, and then on the flexor aspect, dividing all the tissues around each bone (see Amputation of the Limb, Plate XXX, Fig. 2 and 2 bis).

Third step.—Introduce a three-headed bandage into the interosseous space, wherewith to raise the soft tissues, then apply the saw to both bones at the point where they cease to be denuded, and draw it once or twice from heel to point, guided by the nail of the left thumb, until its teeth become engaged. Now with the saw cut through both bones. It will be found that the section of the radius will be completed first. When the section of the ulna is nearly completed, the action of the saw should be directed with care, and the assistant who holds that part of the limb

to be removed should avoid all pressure on the bones, otherwise the end of the bone will be splintered instead of being cut clean, an accident very liable to result in necrosis of the stump.

Fourth step.—Ligature the arteries, which are the radial and ulnar, anterior and posterior interosseous; then, the skin being turned down, adapt it with sutures in such manner as to obtain a transverse cicatrix.

2. Double flap operation.

The arm is to be supported by an assistant almost at right angles to the body, the operator standing outside the right arm or inside the left.

The anterior flap is to be first cut by transfixion.

(1) The assistant holding the limb forcibly supinated, feel the limits of both bones with the thumb and index-finger of the left hand: then (2) transfix the limb immediately in front of both bones, and cut a semilunar flap, including the muscles, about $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 inches in length.

The assistant now forcibly pronates the limb whilst the posterior flap is cut.

(3) Do not transfix to make this flap, but with the full blade cut a semilunar flap 2 inches in length downwards from the surface to the aponeurosis, commencing from the one angle at the base of the anterior flap, and carrying the incision round to the other angle. (4) Dissect the skin and cellular tissues as high as the base of the anterior flap. (5) Let the assistant raise both flaps; then by a circular incision, and by piercing the interosseous membrane, denude the bones. (6) Cut through the bones with the saw, as explained in the preceding operation.

Amputation of the arm—circular method (Figs. 3, 4).

The arm being held by an assistant at right angles to the patient, the surgeon is to stand external to the limb, and proceeds as follows:

First step. Incise in a circular manner the skin and cellular tissue as far as the aponeurosis; the skin which is loosely connected may be easily retracted.

Second step.—With a second circular incision at the level of the retracted skin, cut through the muscles as far as the bone. The assistant now retracts the skin, and also the mass of muscles.

Third step. Another circular incision through the highest part of the deep muscular fibres denudes the bone, and cuts through the periosteum.

Fourth step.—The soft parts may now be drawn up by a two-headed handage, and the humerus is to be sawn through.

The arteries to be ligatured are the brachial and perhaps one or both profundas.

Double-flap operation.

The arm being held in the same position by the assistant, the operator transfixes the arm immediately in front of the humerus, and cuts a semilunar flap 3 inches long. Then, with the arm forcibly rotated inwards, he cuts a posterior semilunar flap, rather less in length, either by transfixion or from the surface downwards. The latter is to be preferred, as it is not always possible in transfixion to carry the knife through the angles of the first cut. A circular cut to denude the bone and its section with the saw completes the operation.

Amputation by a long and short rectangular flap. (Trede's operation.)

This operation consists of the formation of two flaps, which involve all the tissues down to the bone, the anterior being four times the length of the posterior and great stress is laid by the originator on the necessity of avoiding any large bloodvessel or nerve in the formation of the anterior flap, which it will be seen forms the main cushion beneath the cut ends of the bones.

Each flap is quadrangular, and corresponds to one-half the circumference of the limb. Two lateral incisions, one on each side the limb, are first made, commencing at the point where it is intended to divide the bone, and carried downwards to a distance measured precisely equal to one-half the length of the circumference of the limb. The lower extremities of these two vertical lines are united by a cross cut over the front of the limb, carried through all the tissues down to the bone. The anterior flap thus marked out is to be dissected up from the bone or bones as high as the point where the limb is to be amputated, and where the vertical lines commenced.

In making the posterior flap, the knife is carried in one sweep through the skin and tissues down to the bone at a point measured down the vertical lines one fourth their length, and the flap is then to be dissected up to the same level as the anterior flap, so that the posterior flap is one fourth the length of the anterior. When the skin is approximated by sutures, the anterior flap wraps around the ends of the bones, and the junction of the flaps is in a dependent position convenient for the escape of pus.

In making the vertical incisions, the main arteries can generally be avoided. For instance, in the arm or thigh, the internal incision would be immediately in front of the line of the brachial or femoral artery, whilst the external incision would be on the opposite side of the limb, half way round, measured from the internal.

In the forearm these incisions would be made along the prominent parts of the radius and ulna, and in the leg along the posterior borders of the tibia and fibula.

It will be readily seen that a serious disadvantage in this operation is the great length of the anterior flap and corresponding amount of

damage done to the soft parts, and consequently the tendency of this flap to slough.

Integumental flap operation. The thumb and index finger of the left hand being placed on the posterior limits of the two bones, a semi-lunar flap, involving only the skin and cellular tissue, $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches long, is cut on the anterior and outer part of the leg, extending from the point of the index finger round to the thumb. The flap is reflected to a level with its base. A posterior flap of the same length is now to be cut in the same manner and reflected. The muscles are to be cut and the bones severed with the saw on a level with the line of reflection of the skin flaps.

PLATE XXX AMPUTATION OF THE LEG.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 1 — *Amputation at the seat of election — circular method* — *a, b, c*, circular incision through the integuments; *d*, sleeve of skin raised. The knife commencing to incise the muscles.

Fig. 2 and 2 bis — *Saw operation* — Section of the deep muscular parts about the bone.

Fig. 3. — *Same operation.* — A three headed Landage (*a, a*) passed between the bones, serves to retract the soft parts and protect them against the saw.

Fig. 4 — *Wound resultant from the preceding operation.* The hand of an assistant (*a*) supports the sleeve formed by the integument; *b, b*, vessels of the leg.

Fig. 5. — *Amputation of the leg at the lower part — M. Lemon's operation.* — Appearance of the wound after the operation. *a, b*, angular flaps formed by the division and dissection of the skin forming a sleeve split in front; *c*, tibia; *d*, fibula.

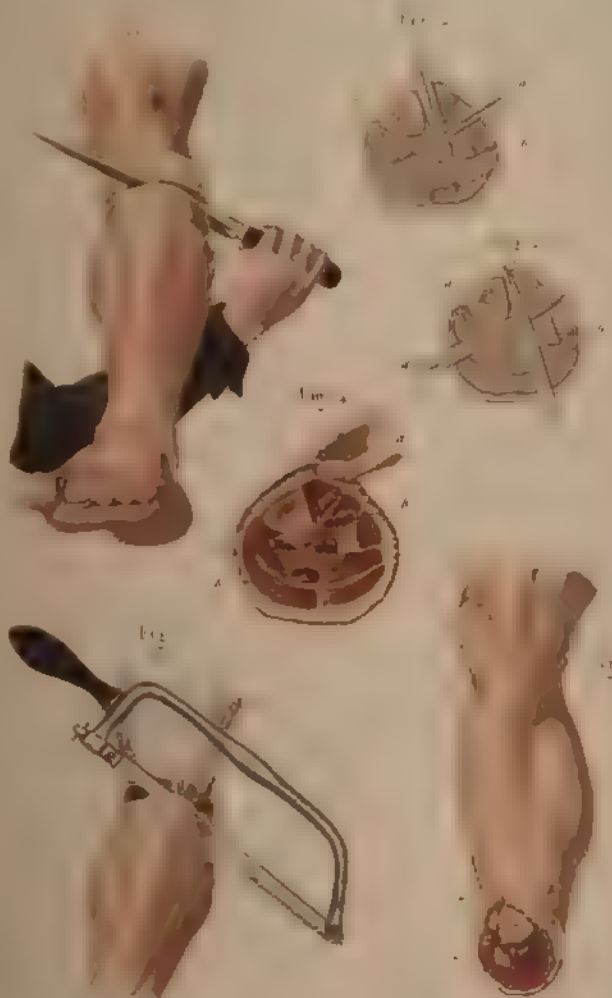
STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

(1) *Amputation of the leg two or three fingers' breadth below the tuberosity of the tibia — circular method* (Figs. 1, 2, 2 bis, 3)

The patient lies with both legs projecting beyond the table, and the assistant holding the limb to be amputated in a horizontal position.

First step. The assistant retracts the skin: then, by a circular incision, the skin and cellular tissue are to be cut through. The incision should be commenced at the crest, and completed in one sweep. The

* The term, 'seat of election' was applied to a point two or three inches below the knee joint. It was the rule to amputate at this point in patients among the working classes who would be compelled to wear the wooden peg, the object being to avoid the long stump projecting at right angles to the knee.



skin is next to be dissected upwards for about two inches, and then turned up as a sleeve.

Second step.—The knife is to be carried in a circular manner through the tissues as far as the bones on a level with the skin turned up.

Third step.—The knife is carried around each bone, through the interosseous membrane (see Figs 2 and 2 *bis*, in which a double-edged knife is used), and the three-headed bandage introduced.

Fourth step.—The saw is now to be applied to the tibia, directed by the left thumb, and drawn from heel to point two or three times, until its teeth become engaged—the section of the two bones is then to be completed, taking care that the fibula shall be divided before the tibia otherwise the former bone will be splintered.

Many surgeons saw off the projecting crest of the tibia to avoid its puncturing the integument.

The arteries to be ligatured (Fig 4) are the anterior and posterior tibial, the peroneal and sometimes the sural arteries.

M. Lenoir's operation (Fig. 5) differs from the ordinary circular operation in that he proposed a vertical incision in the skin along the crest of the tibia, before turning it back as a sleeve.

Double-flap operation. The posterior flap is to be made first by transfixion.

The thumb and index finger of the left hand are to be placed, as in the preceding operation, on the posterior limits of the two bones, the palm of the hand grasping the limb in front. The knife is now made to penetrate the tissues immediately in front of the thumb, behind the two bones—and, grazing the surface of the bones, it should come out at the point of the index finger. The knife is then carried downwards, to cut a posterior semilunar flap 4 inches or more in length according to the size of the limb, and to the part of the limb on which the operation is being performed.

The anterior flap is to be cut in the skin only. The blade of the knife is to be applied to one angle of the wound at the base of the posterior flap, and drawn across the front and outer part of the limb, through the skin and cellular tissue only, to cut a semilunar flap $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length. The integument is then to be dissected up to a level with the base of the first flap. The next step is to denude the bones, by cutting around them, and through the interosseous membrane. The bones may then be sawn through, and the crest of the tibia removed at discretion. If this operation be performed in the upper third of the leg, a superabundance of muscle is cut in the posterior flap, and it is necessary to slice away the excess after the flap is cut. For this reason it is usual to perform either the circular or the skin flap operation in this region.

Long and short rectangular flaps—Teale's operation (see description p. 81).

Double-skin or integumental flap (see p. 81).

skin is next to be dissected upwards for about two inches, and then turned up as a sleeve.

Second step.—The knife is to be carried in a circular manner through the tissues as far as the bones on a level with the skin turned up.

Third step.—The knife is carried around each bone, through the interosseous membrane (see Figs. 2 and 2 bis, in which a double edged knife is used), and the three-headed bandage introduced.

Fourth step.—The saw is now to be applied to the tibia directed by the left thumb, and drawn from heel to point two or three times until its teeth become engaged: the section of the two bones is then to be completed, taking care that the fibula shall be divided before the tibia otherwise the former bone will be splintered.

Many surgeons saw off the projecting crest of the tibia to avoid its puncturing the integument.

The arteries to be ligatured (Fig. 4) are the anterior and posterior tibial, the peroneal and sometimes the sural arteries.

M. Lenoir's operation (Fig. 5) differs from the ordinary circular operation in that he proposed a vertical incision in the skin along the crest of the tibia, before turning it back as a sleeve.

Double-flap operation. The posterior flap is to be made first by transfixion.

The thumb and index finger of the left hand are to be placed, as in the preceding operation, on the posterior limits of the two bones, the palm of the hand grasping the limb in front. The knife is now made to penetrate the tissues immediately in front of the thumb, behind the two bones, and grazing the surface of the bones, it should come out at the point of the index-finger. The knife is then carried downwards to cut a posterior semilunar flap 3 inches or more in length, according to the size of the limb, and to the part of the limb on which the operation is being performed.

The anterior flap is to be cut in the skin only. The blade of the knife is to be applied to one angle of the wound at the base of the posterior flap, and drawn across the front and outer part of the limb, through the skin and cellular tissue only, to cut a semilunar flap 2½ inches in length. The integument is then to be dissected up to a level with the base of the first flap. The next step is to denude the bones, by cutting around them and through the interosseous membrane. The bones may then be sawn through, and the crest of the tibia removed at discretion. If this operation be performed in the upper third of the leg, a superabundance of muscle is cut in the posterior flap, and it is necessary to slice away the excess after the flap is cut. For this reason it is usual to perform either the circular or the skin flap operation in this region.

Long and short rectangular flaps.—Teale's operation (see description p. 81).

Double skin or integumental flap (see p. 81).

PLATE XXXI.

AMPUTATION OF THE THIGH.

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 1 — *Circular method—ordinary plan.*—The hand of an assistant, *a*, compresses the femoral artery; *b, c, d*, circular incisions of the integuments.

Fig. 2.—*The same operation.* The muscles having been cut through as far as the bone, a split bandage, *a, a*, is applied in order to raise the soft parts and to protect them from the saw.

Fig. 3 —*The same operation finished—view of the stump.*—*a*, Section of the femur; *b*, orifices of the femoral vessels.

Fig. 4. *The flap operation—H. Sedillot's method*—*a*, The first flap raised; the knife, *b*, plunged in obliquely, cuts a second flap in the line, *c, d*.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

The circular method—ordinary plan (Figs. 1, 2, 3).

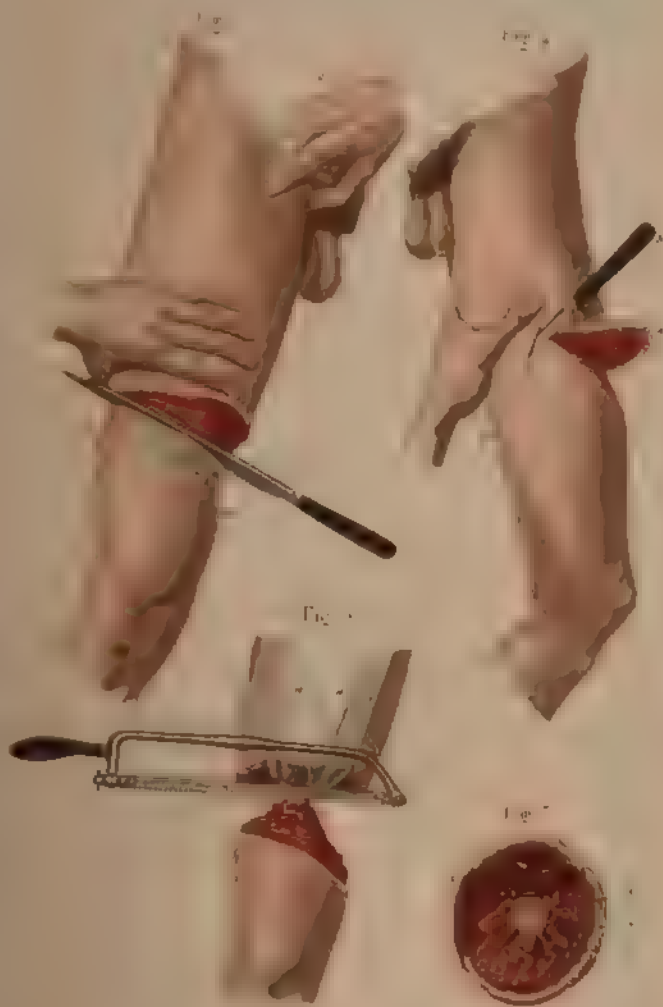
The patient lying down, the thigh, slightly flexed upon the pelvis, and uncovered throughout, should be kept sufficiently apart by assistants. The surgeon should stand on the inside of the limb.

First step. Make a circular incision in the skin as low as possible above the knee, and from four to five fingers breadth below the point where the bone is to be sawn through. The skin should be retracted by the aid of an assistant while the surgeon divides the cellular tissue which retains it, and which is strongest near the popliteal space.

Second step. The knife, following the edge of the retracted skin, makes a circular incision through the superficial muscles, and when the latter have been retracted, the surgeon then divides in a circular manner the deep muscles as far as the bone; and lastly, after applying the split bandage, for the protection of the soft parts, the bone is sawn through in the ordinary way (Fig. 2).

Third step. The arteries to be secured in the femoral, situated internally beneath the sartorius; the *superficial* and *deep muscular*, and the *perforating* arteries. The lips of the wound should be brought together in such a manner as to leave an oblique cicatrix.

Double-flap operation. The posterior flap may be made by transfixion. The point of the knife may be entered on either side, carried beneath the bone and slightly raised, to be brought out about the central part of the opposite side. If possible, it is well to keep the main vessel in the posterior flap, as less important branches would be severed by so



doing. The knife is now carried obliquely downwards to the surface, to cut the posterior flap. The anterior flap is not made by transfixion. The knife is carried from one angle of the base of the posterior flap round on the anterior surface of the thigh to the opposite angle, forming a flap in the skin and cellular tissue about the size and shape of, or slightly shorter than, the posterior flap, which has been already cut. At the discretion of the operator the integument and cellular tissue may be now dissected up to the level of the base of the posterior flap, or the knife may be carried more deeply in order to raise the muscles also in the flap. Next, both flaps are raised by the assistant, the knife carried in a circular manner around the bone, and the saw applied. The arteries that may require a ligature are the femoral, perhaps the deep femoral, according to position of the amputation, perforating and muscular branches.

Lateral flaps. Vermaak amputated the thigh by two lateral flaps, with the object of giving a more free exit to the discharges. Both flaps are formed by transfixion, the knife being entered in front of the femur at a central point passed around the bone, and brought out at a corresponding point on the opposite side. The flaps are then cut of an equal length, the outer one being the first made, because not containing any vessel of importance.

Pott's long and short rectangular flap (see p 81).

Single skin flaps have been described by Carden and Spence. In this operation a long flap is cut in the skin and cellular tissue only on the front of the thigh this flap being turned back, the knife is carried, at the base of the flap, in a circular manner, through all the soft tissues around the bone, including the skin on the back of the thigh.

Reason and practice teach us to avoid single skin flaps, owing to their tendency to slough but occasions occur in which disease or injury leave the surgeon little choice in the matter. Mr. Carden proposes the operation for amputation immediately above the condyles.

Supra condylar amputation (Gritti).—This operation consists of an anterior skin flap, carried a little below the patella, and made to include that bone, so that when the flap is applied, after the condyles are sawn off, the posterior surface of the patella, first denuded of its cartilage, is in contact with the cut end of the shaft of the femur. A posterior flap is also formed, the lower extremity of which reaches only to a level with the head of the fibula.

PLATE XXXII.

RESECTIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE UPPER
EXTREMITY

OPERATIONS.

Fig. 1. *Resection of the wrist joint*—*M. Velpeau's plan*—*a, b, c, d*. The quadrilateral flap of skin cut from the posterior surface of the radio-carpal articulation.

Fig. 2. *Resection of the inferior extremity of the ulna*—*a*, Triangular flap of skin raised up; *b*, inferior extremity of the ulna; *c*, spatula passed under the bone to protect the soft parts from the action of the saw, *d*.

Fig. 3. *Resection of the elbow joint*—*M. Moreau's plan*—*a*, Hand of the assistant raising the quadrilateral flap which has been dissected from below upwards, in order to expose the joint from its posterior aspect; *b*, spatula inserted beneath the inferior extremity of the humerus while the bone is excised by the saw, *c*.

Fig. 4. *The same operation finished*—*a, b, c, d*, The quadrilateral flap in place, and reunited by means of the twisted suture.

Fig. 5.—*Excision of the radius*.—*a, b*, Long incision made on the external surface of the forearm, in order to reach the radius; *c*, left hand of the surgeon raising the inferior extremity of the radius, whilst, with the bistoury *d*, held in his right hand, he disarticulates the bone; *e*, radial artery, accompanied by the radial nerve.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. *Resection of the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation*

Either the head of the metacarpal bone is removed, or the end of the phalanx, or both, according to circumstances.

In the middle of the dorsal surface of the metacarpal bone an oblique incision is made, commencing about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the point where the bone is to be removed, and terminating close to the commissure of the finger. A second incision resembling the first is then made, which, running in the direction of the other commissure, will thus form a V-shaped flap, with its base below. Having dissected and turned back this flap, the extensor tendon is to be drawn aside without dividing it, and the interosseous muscles detached on each side. The joint is then exposed by cautiously cutting through the lateral ligaments so as not to disturb the flexor tendons. The phalanx is then dislocated from behind, circumscribing as exactly as possible the diseased parts. At this stage of the operation, the bone, or its head, is cut with Liston's forceps, or by means of a little tail-like or metacarpal saw, taking care to pass underneath the bone a piece of wood or card-board, for the sake of protecting the soft parts. In performing this operation on

Fig 1



Fig 4



Fig 2



Fig 6



Fig 7



the index or the little finger, it will be as well to form the flap upon the free side of the finger so as not to expose the extensor tendon.

2. *Extraction of the first phalanx.*

Performed upon the thumb with success, and with the preservation of the movement of the small phalanx. This operation may also be indicated in the case of the other fingers.

An incision should be made upon the dorsal surface of the phalanx, commencing about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch above the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation, and prolonged to about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch beyond the articulation of the first phalanx with the second. The skin is next to be dissected and the tendons drawn aside, after which the metacarpal joint is exposed by cutting through the lateral and capsular ligaments, and without disturbing the flexor tendons. The phalanx is then completely dislocated, and at the same time well cleared, while its extraction is completed by exposing its inferior articular surface.

3. *Resection of the metacarpal bones.*

(1) A longitudinal or crucial incision is to be made upon the dorsal surface of the metacarpal bone to be operated on, the extensor tendons being drawn to one side.

(2) The interosseous muscles are to be divided on each side, and either the carpo metacarpal or the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation exposed, according to the intention of removing the upper or the lower half of the metacarpal bone.

(3) After having properly protected the soft parts by means of a small bandage passed under the metacarpal bones, the diseased bone is removed with Liston's forceps or with the chain-saw.

(4) The excision completed, the fragment of excised bone is to be turned round from before backwards in order to complete its separation from the soft parts.

When the first or the fifth metacarpal bone is to be removed, the section of the bone should be made in an oblique direction, so as to avoid the angular projection which would inevitably result from a perpendicular section (Plate XXVIII., Fig. 2).

4. *Resection of the wrist joint.*

In performing this operation we can either remove the lower end of the radius alone, that of the ulna alone, or the carpal extremities of both bones together with all the carpal bones and the bases of the metacarpal bones.

(a) *Resection of the lower end of the ulna* (Plate XXXII., Fig. 2).

The hand being forcibly pronated, a longitudinal incision is to be made over the internal surface of the ulna, terminated by a transverse incision made over the back of the articulation. The triangular flap thus formed is to be carefully dissected and the bone exposed, after

which the disarticulation is effected, taking care to draw aside the tendons and to avoid the bloodvessels. Finally a spatula, *c*, is passed beneath the extremity of the bone, and the operation completed with the metacarpal saw, *d*.

(*b*) *Resection of the inferior extremities of the radius and ulna*
(Plate XXXII., Fig. 1).

(1) The hand being pronated and well supported, two longitudinal incisions are made over the border of the radius and ulna, *a, b*, and *d, c*. These incisions are then to be connected on the posterior surface of the wrist by a transverse incision, *b, c*; (2) the skin is then to be dissected in such a manner as to form a quadrilateral flap which can be reflected from below upwards on the forearm; (3) the disarticulation of the joint is then to be effected by carefully detaching the surrounding soft parts, especially avoiding injury to the tendons and also to the radial and ulnar arteries which lie in front. (4) a piece of card board or a spatula passed beneath the bones will protect the soft parts whilst the saw severs the bone.

In M. Dubled's operations two longitudinal incisions are made over the radius and ulna respectively. By the internal incision he extirpates the ulna, then he passes to the end of the radius, which he disarticulates and cuts out by means of the external incision.

M. Roux joins to the longitudinal incisions of M. Dubled two transverse incisions, which extend upon the back of the wrist as far as the border of the group of extensor tendons, the two transverse incisions are thus separated by a portion of skin corresponding to the middle of the back of the wrist, which protects the extensor tendons.

M. Velpeau reunites the two longitudinal incisions of M. Dubled by a transverse one made above the wrist joint. The result is a large quadrilateral flap with its base below, and which is dissected and reflected from above downwards. In other respects the operation is the same.

Resection of the wrist joint, including the carpus and bases of the metacarpal bones—Lister's operation.—Two incisions are made on the back of the hand. The *radial incision* is planned to avoid injury to the radial artery and to the extensor secundi internodii pollicis and extensor indicis. It is commenced at a point in the middle of the lower extremity of the radius level with the styloid process, and carried with a slight obliquity outwards to the outer side of the carpo metacarpal articulation of the index finger parallel with the extensor secundi internodii pollicis; it is now turned parallel with the outer border of the second metacarpal bone for half its length. The soft tissues over the trapezium are now raised by the handle of the scalpel or with the finger-nail, and pushed outwards, and the tendons of the extensor carpi radialis, longior and brevior, are cut through as they run inwards to

their insertions. The trapezium is next to be separated from the rest of the carpus by means of the bone forceps.

The ulnar incision.—The knife is entered on the internal subcutaneous surface of the ulna, 2 inches above the joint, and carried obliquely downwards to the middle of the shaft of the fifth metacarpal bone reaching its palmar aspect. The extensor carpi ulnaris is then cut at its insertion into the base of the fifth metacarpal bone, and now the handle of the knife may be passed beneath all the extensor tendons of the hand so as to clear the posterior surface of the carpal bones. The posterior and internal lateral ligament of the wrist are now exposed and may be divided. The joint being thus opened, the knife may be carried through the joint to the anterior surface of the ulna, and the soft tissues carefully separated from that surface of the bone, then the knife is turned and carried downwards to separate the pisiform bone from its articulation with the cuneiform, the bone not being removed, but allowed to remain attached to the tendon of the flexor carpi ulnaris. In cutting through the articulation of the pisiform the knife impinges upon the unciform process of the unciform bone, and this is better removed by the bone forceps. The anterior ligament of the wrist is next to be divided, and the bones of the carpus may be now made to protrude through the ulnar incision, here they may be grasped with the forceps and drawn upon, whilst any undivided attachments may be released with the knife. By turn the ulnar and radius and the bases of the metacarpal bone, may be made to protrude through the wound, and may be sawn away according to necessity.

If the trapezium is diseased it may be dissected away, care being taken not to injure the radial artery.

5. *Resection of the elbow joint.*

In this operation we can, according to the nature of the case, either extirpate all the three bones which are included in the joint, or we can limit the operation to two or even one of them.

(a.) *Resection of the inferior extremity of the humerus* (Plate XXXII.

Figs. 3, 4). *Morcan's operation.*

(1) The arm being semiflexed, and the posterior surface of the joint turned towards the operator, two longitudinal incisions are made over the margins of the humerus, beginning from the external condyle on one side and from the internal condyle on the other, and prolonging them for about 3 inches upwards.

(2) By uniting these two incisions by a transverse one which divides the skin and the triceps muscle immediately above the olecranon a quadrilateral flap is obtained, which, after being raised from below upwards, is to be held by an assistant, *a* (Fig. 3).

(3) The bone is next to be carefully isolated from the surrounding tissues, especially from the ulnar nerve, which, having been disengaged from the bone, is to be drawn to one side by an assistant.

(4) The bone thus denuded, a spatula may be inserted to protect the soft parts, while the diseased portion of bone is cut through with the ordinary saw, *c* (Fig. 3). Lastly, the fragment of bone is removed by cutting through in succession the adherent structures, and throwing open the joint from behind forwards.

(b) Resection of the upper extremity of the bones of the forearm.

M. Moreau's plan may be made use of by prolonging the external lateral incisions along the radius as far as the point where the bone is to be excised. The radius is then to be separated from the ulna and the soft parts, a spatula or bandage applied in the usual manner; and the end of the radius excised, preserving, if possible, the insertion of the biceps.

If it is desired to remove the end of the ulna, it should be exposed in the same manner, by prolonging the internal lateral incision. Then proceed as with the radius, and if the operation permits of it, preserve the attachment of the brachialis anticus.

When it is necessary to remove the extremities of all the bones entering into the formation of the elbow joint, a single incision may be employed instead of those just indicated. This incision should be about 5 inches in length, extending longitudinally on the posterior aspect of the joint, its centre being at the olecranon process.

(c) Excision of the radius (Plate XXXII., Fig. 5).

(1) Make a longitudinal incision over the external anterior margin of the radius, *a, b*, cutting through the skin and soft parts so as to expose the bone.

(2) Then, having thoroughly denuded the bone, pass behind it a chain saw, or, if any ordinary saw is to be used, a spatula, to protect the soft parts.

(3) Isolate the fragment of the radius, avoiding injury to the neighbouring vessels and nerves.

6. Resection of the scapula-humeral articulation.

First by the simple incision.—A vertical incision is made along the anterior border of the deltoid, commencing below the acromion process; then, at each angle of the deltoid incision, a transverse cut is made through the fibres of the deltoid, but not including the integument, the object being to separate the lips of the wound, and to facilitate the opening of the capsule of the joint, without which the head of the bone cannot be drawn out.

M. Malgaigne's plan.—A similar vertical incision is made over the deltoid, but more externally than in the former operation. This incision will be opposite the apex of the coraco-clavicular triangle, by making it reach as far as that point. The skin, the muscles, and the capsule of the joint are divided down to the bone with one stroke of the knife; and then the joint is exposed at its upper and anterior

part, close to the glenoid cavity. The lips of the wound being separated with ease, the knife can be freely manœuvred so as to allow the head of the bone to be dislocated, and its excision effected with the chain-saw or the ordinary saw.

2. *The flap operation.*—As a rule, one flap only is made. Moreau and Maune make a quadrilateral flap, the former making one with its base above, the latter one with its base below. Morel cuts a semi-lunar flap with its base above. Sabatier makes a triangular one in the same direction. M. Malgaigne recommends a posterior lateral flap after the method which M. Lisfranc adopts for the disarticulation of the shoulder joint, etc. Directly the flap is cut, the joint is exposed, and the bone disengaged and drawn out, while the vessels and nerves are protected. The excision is made with the ordinary saw.

7. *Resection of the clavicle*

(a) *Resection of its scapular end.*—M. Velpeau thus describes the plan which he adopted in 1828 in the case of a woman who had long suffered from necrosis of the external third of the clavicle. 'I first, says M. Velpeau, 'made a crucial incision, the two branches of which were each about 4 inches in length. Having dissected and reflected back the flaps, and divided the acromio-clavicular ligaments, and some of the fibres of origin of the deltoid and trapezius muscles, I was able, by the leverage afforded by a piece of wood thrust into the joint, to lift up the diseased bone and to detach it from the sound parts. In case too much force is used, we should be very careful to isolate the soft parts before and behind, to pass under the lower surface of the bone the chain-saw, and to cut it from behind, in order to disarticulate and remove it.'

(b) *Resection of the sternal end.* In one instance M. Davie performed this operation by making an incision about 3 inches in length over the internal extremity of the clavicle, and in the axis of this bone. He divided the ligaments as far as possible, then he excised with Scultet's saw the end of the bone to the extent of rather more than 1 inch from its articular surface, and, to avoid injuring the neighbouring parts, he passed a piece of hard leather beneath the bone while it was being excised. After the bone had been cut through, he was obliged, in order to raise the internal fragment, to break down with the handle of the scalpel, which he used as a lever, the interclavicular ligaments, which he had not been previously able to reach, and which still retained the bone in its place.

(c) *Complete extraction of the clavicle.*—Mott, of New York, successfully performed this operation in a case of osteo-sarcoma. His operation was as follows: He made a curvilinear incision, with its convexity below, extending from one extremity of the bone to the other, he then made a second incision above, from the acromion to the external jugular vein, cut through the platysma and a portion of the trapezius,

and passed beneath the bone close to the acromion a director, which served as a guide for the chain-saw with which section of the clavicle was effected. The extraction of the ends of the bone was rendered difficult on account of the size of the tumour, and the deformity of the parts concerned.

To simplify this operation, MM. Vulpeau and Malgaigne recommend that three incisions should be made, so as to form a quadrilateral flap with its base above, and which could be dissected and reflected back in that direction.

8. *Excision of the scapula.*

Janson excised a large part of the infra-spinous portion of the scapula, which was the seat of a tumour. Two elliptical incisions were made round the tumour, and the two lips of the wound dissected and reflected.

Then recognising that the supra-spinous portion of the scapula was sound, he separated with a saw all the diseased parts, thus preserving the use of the joint.

PLATE XXXIII.

RESECTIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE LOWER EXTREMITY

Fig. 1.—*Resection of the lower end of the fibula.* The operator, by means of a chisel and a mallet, removes the external malleolus.

Fig. 2.—*Resection of the lower end of the tibia.* *a*, A linen bandage for the purpose of raising the parts lying in front of the bone; *b*, a piece of wood to keep back the soft parts behind, and protect them from the saw, *c*.

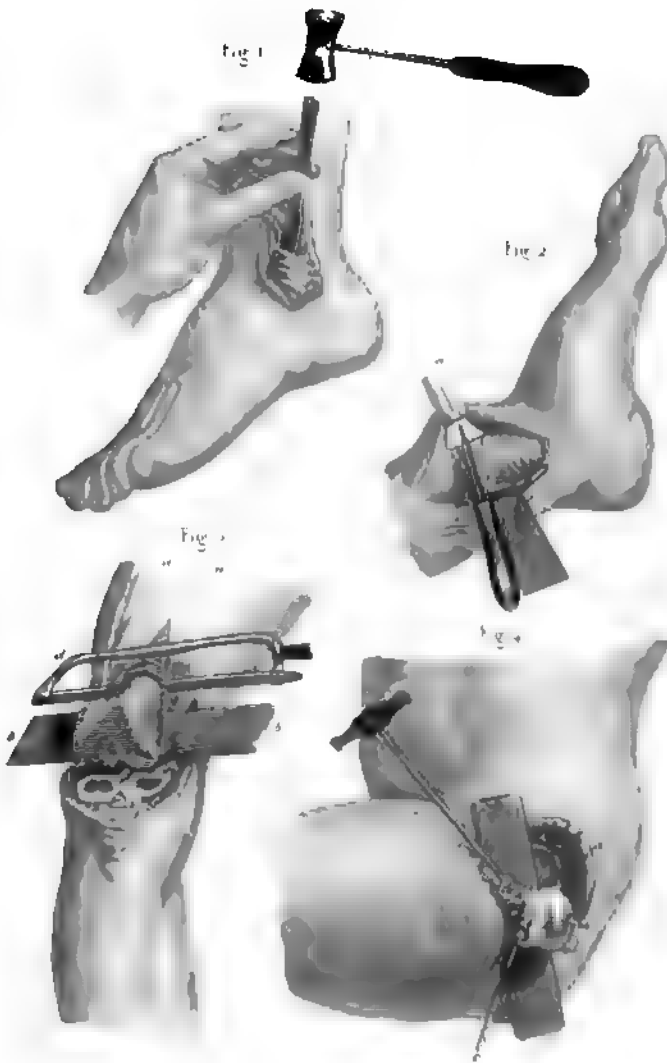
Fig. 3.—*Resection of the lower end of the femur.* *a*, A split bandage for the same purpose as above mentioned; *b*, piece of board protecting the soft parts behind from the saw, *d*; *c*, lower end of the femur dislocated forwards.

Fig. 4—*Resection of the head of the femur* *M. Sedillot's plan*.—*a, a*, A semilunar incision, with its convexity above extending around the great trochanter; *b, b*, piece of board placed under the head of the dislocated femur; *c, c*, the chain-saw, excising the head of the bone from within, outwards.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. *Resection of the first metatarsal bone.*

The first metatarsal bone is the only one on which this operation is performed. (1) *Resection of the anterior extremity of the first metatarsal bone.*—M. Blandin makes on the inside of the foot a quadrilateral flap with its base behind. The flap being dissected and the lips of the wound kept apart, the extensor tendon is drawn to one



and passed beneath the bone close to the acromion a director, which served as a guide for the chain saw with which section of the clavicle was effected. The extraction of the ends of the bone was rendered difficult on account of the size of the tumour, and the deformity of the parts concerned.

To simplify this operation, MM. Valpeau and Malgaigne recommend that three incisions should be made, so as to form a quadrilateral flap with its base above, and which could be dissected and reflected back in that direction.

* *Excision of the scapula.*

Janson excised a large part of the infra-spinous portion of the scapula, which was the seat of a tumour. Two elliptical incisions were made round the tumour, and the two lips of the wound dissected and reflected.

Then recognising that the supra-spinous portion of the scapula was sound, he separated with a saw all the diseased parts, thus preserving the use of the joint.

PLATE XXXIII.

RESECTIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE LOWER EXTREMITY

Fig. 1.—*Resection of the lower end of the fibula.* The operator, by means of a chisel and a mallet, removes the external malleolus.

Fig. 2.—*Resection of the lower end of the tibia.* *a*, A linen bandage for the purpose of raising the parts lying in front of the bone; *b*, a piece of wood to keep back the soft parts behind, and protect them from the saw, *c*.

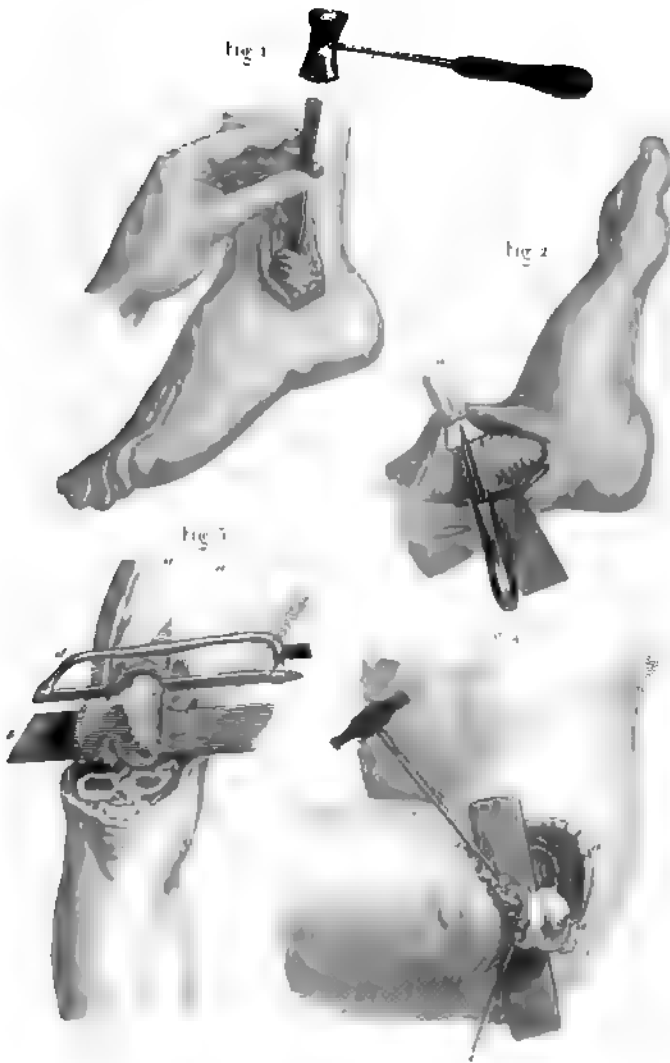
Fig. 3. *Resection of the lower end of the femur.* *a*, A split bandage for the same purpose as above mentioned; *b*, piece of board protecting the soft parts behind from the saw, *d*. *c*, lower end of the femur dislocated forwards.

Fig. 4. *Resection of the head of the femur—M. Sedillot's plan.* *a, a*, A semilunar incision, with its convexity above extending around the great trochanter; *b, b*, piece of board placed under the head of the dislocated femur; *c, c*, the chain-saw, excising the head of the bone from within, outwards.

STEPS OF THE OPERATIONS.

1. *Resection of the first metatarsal bone.*

The first metatarsal bone is the only one on which this operation is performed. (1) *Resection of the anterior extremity of the first metatarsal bone.*—M. Blandin makes on the inside of the foot a quadrilateral flap with its base behind. The flap being dissected and the lips of the wound kept apart, the extensor tendon is drawn to one



side then having opened the metatarsophalangeal joint, the head of the bone is dislocated at the same time that the bistoury separates the soft parts on each side. The latter must be protected in the usual manner, while by means of a metacarpal saw, or, what is better, of the chain-saw, the diseased part is removed by sawing in a direction perpendicular to the axis of the bone. The form of the incision can be modified according to the circumstances of the case. (2) For the complete extraction of the first metatarsal bone, a quadrilateral flap is made as before, and reflected back as far as the level of the scaphoid bone, or a curved incision may be made, with the curve upwards, extending from the tarso-metatarsal to the metatarso-phalangeal joints. At first the metatarso-phalangeal joint should be operated on, as it is looser than the other, then, raising and drawing out the head of the bone, all the adherent structures should be cut through in succession, and the operation finished by opening the articulation of the metatarsal with the cuneiform bone. M. Velpeau prefers to saw through the middle of the bone with the chain-saw, and to extract the two halves separately.

2. *Excision and removal of the tarsal bones.*

The cuneiform and cuboid bones, and especially the astragalus and os calcis, have been removed or excised in certain cases of caries, dislocation, contusion, etc.; but there are no fixed rules for the performance of these operations. They are subject to the very variable conditions under which the patient may be placed. In order to separate the bone, it is often necessary to use the gouge and mallet.

Excision of an osseous wedge at the transverse tarsal joint—*Davy's Operation*—This operation is to be recommended for the relief of intractable club-foot (varus and equinus), and it is based on the fact that, on opening the transverse tarsal joint freely in a normal foot, and driving in a wedge from the outer side of the foot, with rotation inwards, the deformity known as talipes varus is exactly imitated.

Method of operating—Apply Esmarch's bandage, map out on the skin with an aniline pencil the outline of the wedge at the transverse tarsal joint, having the cuboid and the fifth metatarsal bone as its base and the stereotyped linear crease at the inner side of the foot as its apex. Excise a quadrilateral piece of skin with the cuboid bursa



FIG. 1. BLUNT CURVED PERIOSTEAL KNIFE.

on the outer aspect of the foot, and make a short linear cut in the crease at the inner side of the foot. Keep close to the bone, and with this blunt curved periosteal knife free the tendons, artery, veins, and nerves over the dorsum of the foot, from without inwards; and pass

the kite-shaped director between the tarsus and the soft structures held aloof by it until its point emerges at the inner crease cut. Slide the saw along the groove in the director, and divide the tarsal bones



FIG. 2.—KITE SHAPED GROOVED DIRECTOR

accurately as per aniline sketch. Lay hold of the base of the wedge with these forceps, and extract the bones at the external wound.

Equinus—Remove from the outer and inner side of the foot at the



FIG. 3.—STRONG BONE FORCEPS

transverse tarsal joint a triangular piece of skin apex downwards. Insert the parallel grooved director between the tarsal bones and soft structures held out of the way by it, and use the saw, so as to cut out



FIG. 4.—SAW AND PARALLEL-GROOVED DIRECTOR

a wedge of bone, with its base at the dorsum, and apex at the sole of the foot.

Varus and Equinus—Having placed the foot into its normal position, by rotation outwards and bony contact, fix it carefully in this useful splint.

The after treatment is the same as that of any other compound fracture, and in two or three months' time a shortened but plantar progressive foot results: a small linear cicatrix at the outer edge, entirely away from the range of pressure, marks the site. The ankle-joint movements are unimpaired, and the patient walks with the aid of an appropriate boot. Since 1874, Mr. Richard Davy has operated on twenty-five cases, one died of septicæmia. The remaining twenty-four are now working in various active capacities.



FIG. 5.—SPLINT FOR VARUS AND EQUINUS

A. The two side pieces, resting between two layers of plaster of Paris bandages, ends neatly exerted. B. Line showing the distinct separation between the two layers of bandage. C. The foot plate, fixed by three thumb screws; the two outside screws permit the foot piece to be adjusted higher or lower at the surgeon's discretion; the middle screw ensures inversion or eversion also of the foot piece.

3 *Excision of the tibio-tarsal joint* (Plate XXXIII., Figs. 1, 2)—*M. Roux's plan.*

(1) Make along the outer side of the fibula a longitudinal incision down to the bone, about 3 inches in length, and extending downwards to a little below the apex of the external malleolus. From the lower end of the first incision, make another in a transverse direction, but only through the skin, and extending no further than the tendon of the peroneus tertius muscle. By this means a triangular flap is formed, which is to be raised, and afterwards the sheaths of the peroneal muscles opened, the latter pushed behind and the bone cleaned posteriorly, taking care to avoid the vessels and nerves. The chain saw is then to be inserted between the tibia and fibula so as to cut the bone from within outwards, and the lower end of the fibula can be thus removed. (2) The leg being now placed on its outside, the excision of the tibia may be proceeded with. To accomplish this, make a similar incision on the inner side of the tibia. From the lower end of this first incision make another through the skin only, and in a transverse direction as far as the tendon of the tibialis anticus. The triangular flap should be dissected and raised in order to isolate the tibia from the surrounding parts, avoiding injury

to the tendons, vessels, and nerves; the extensor tendons, and the anterior tibial vessels are pushed forward, and the excision of the bone effected with a little straight bladed saw, the soft tissues being protected by a thin wooden board. The chain-saw might also be advantageously used, as it could be inserted round the tibia without any risk of wounding the tendons, and would saw through the bone from behind forwards. After the tibia is excised, the upper surface of the astragalus may be sawn off if necessary.

4. *Extraction of the fibula.*

The operation is begun by exposing the middle of the bone for the purpose of dividing it with the chain-saw. Afterwards its upper and lower extremities are successively extracted. In some cases, moreover, merely a portion of the ends of the fragments may be excised without interfering with the joint.

5. *Excision of the femoro-tibial articulation (Fig. 3).—Syme's operation*

(1) The leg being fixed at a right angle upon the thigh, a curved incision, with its convexity above, is made above the knee-cap, extending from one lateral ligament to another, and at once laying open the joint. (2) A second curved incision, with its convexity below, is thus made beneath the knee-cap, and joining the angle of the first, so that the knee-cap is enclosed within an elliptical flap, which is to be removed. The lateral and deep ligaments are then to be divided with the point of a knife, and the femur and tibia made to project, taking care that the soft parts are carefully detached from behind, and that the popliteal vessels are not wounded. During the excision of the ends of the bones, a piece of board must be applied behind them in the usual manner, and the soft parts further protected and raised by a bandage.

Morison's plan for the excision of the knee is analogous to that for the elbow. He makes two lateral incisions up the thigh as far as the point where the bone is to be excised. These are united by a transverse incision passing below the knee-cap. After raising the quadrilateral flap the knee-cap is extirpated. The ends of the bones can then be easily exposed and excised.

6. *Resection of the hip-joint—M. Velpeau's plan*

By making a semilunar incision from the antero-superior spine of the ileum to the tuberosity of the ischium behind the joint, a large flap with its convexity below can be cut at the expense of the surrounding soft parts. Then raise the flap and divide the posterior half of the capsule of the joint at the same time that the thigh is adducted and flexed, in order to divide the interarticular ligament, to pass a knife between the head of the bone and the cotyloid cavity, and divide the remaining portion of the fibrous capsule. The head of the bone may then be drawn out and excised.

M. Sedillot's plan (Fig 4). He makes a semilunar flap about 4 inches or more in length with its convexity above, embracing the great trochanter and penetrating as far as the joint. The head of the bone is then drawn out, and its excision accomplished by means of the chain-saw.

An incision similar to *Furneaux Jordan's operation* is a very useful one, commencing an inch or two above the great trochanter, and extending in a straight line down the outer side of the shaft to a sufficient distance.

PLATE XXXIV.

RESECTION OF THE INFERIOR AND SUPERIOR MAXILLARY BONES.

Fig 1.—*Resection, through the articulation, of half of the inferior maxilla*—*M. Lisfranc's plan*—*a, b, c*, Superior quadrilateral flap thrown back; *d*, the inferior maxilla sawn through near the symphysis of the chin; *e*, the left half of the bone dislocated outwards; *f*, the internal maxillary artery; *g*, submaxillary gland.

Fig 2.—*Resection of the middle half of the body of the inferior maxilla*—*Dupuytren's plan*.—*a* and *b*, Flaps made by a perpendicular incision running in the median line through the lower lip; the surgeon placed behind the patient excises the bone, *d*, with a cock's-crest saw, *c*.

Fig 3.—*Removal of the superior maxillary bone*—*M. Velpeau's plan*.—*a, b, c*, A superior flap thrown up; the superior maxilla, *d*, has been detached by means of a chisel and mallet, or bone forceps, and the surgeon with a bistoury, *e*, divides the adjoining soft parts.

Fig 4.—*The preceding operation finished*.—*a, a, a*, Row of twisted sutures.

METHODS OF OPERATING.

1. *Resection or disarticulation of one-half of the inferior maxilla.*

First, make a horizontal incision along the inferior border of the jaw, and extending from the symphysis to the angle of the bone, and upon the two extremities of this incision let fall two vertical ones, of which let the internal one divide the inferior lip in the median line, while the external one commences at the zygomatic arch and passes behind the ramus of the jaw. There is thus formed a quadrilateral flap which is to be reflected from below upwards. Then cut through the bone in the middle, clean with the elevator its posterior surface, and detach in succession all the soft parts as far as the angle of the jaw by the same instrument. On reaching the joint, insinuate behind the coronoid process below the zygomatic arch a button-end bistoury, which will serve to divide the temporal muscle, while at the same time

the jaw is depressed in such a manner as to admit of its coronoid process being disengaged, and its condyle dislocated. Lastly, cut through the pterygoid muscle and the articular ligaments, and forcibly withdraw the bone, so as to detach the vessels of the ramus of the jaw, and avoid injuring the internal maxillary artery.

The whole or the half of the horizontal portion of the inferior maxilla may be removed, according to the extent of the disease.

The removal of the whole lower jaw has been successfully performed by Walther of Bonn.

2. Resection and removal of the inferior maxillary.—Resection of the middle part of the body of the bone.—M. Dupuytren's plan (Fig. 2).

The patient is to be either lying upon a couch with the head supported, or seated upon a chair slightly elevated, and in such a manner as not to be able to touch the ground. An assistant standing behind the patient keeps the head fixed against his chest, while, at the same time, he compresses the two facial arteries just where they pass over the jaw. The surgeon standing in front of the patient seizes with his left hand one of the angles of the lower lip, while an assistant, taking hold of the other end of the lip, keeps it clear of the jaw, and in a state of tension. The lip is then, with one stroke of the knife, divided vertically, and in the median line down to the bone, by an incision which is to be prolonged until it is on a level with the prominence of the hyoid bone, cutting only through the skin and cellular tissue. Two flaps, one to the right, the other to the left, are thus to be detached, keeping close to the bone, and to be given to assistants. The bone now being exposed as much as is required, an incision is made through the periosteum at the point where it is proposed to make the excision, and the corresponding teeth are extracted in order to facilitate the action of the saw. To effect the excision of the bone, Dupuytren stands behind the patient, and operates with a small hand saw; but the chain-saw may be more advantageously used, and then it will not be necessary to pass behind the patient. The section being completed on both sides, the bone is to be seized with the left hand, while, with a blunt-pointed bistoury, carried from below upwards, the posterior surface of the bone is cleared by dividing in succession from left to right all the muscles that are attached to it. At the same time an assistant keeps the tongue out of reach of the bistoury by means of a spatula. In some cases the tongue, having lost its anterior support, has fallen back, and produced suffocation; such an accident must be guarded against by fixing the tongue forwards with ligature silk if necessary.

3. *Resection and complete extirpation of the superior maxillary bone.*

The patient lying upon a couch or being seated upon a low chair, and his head kept slightly turned backwards, and supported against the chest of an assistant, one of two incisions may be made. Firstly a large incision with its convexity below upon the cheek, beginning at the commissure of the lips, and dissected outwards and then upwards as far as the temporal fossa. (See Fig. 3, Plate XXXIV.) This large flap is then to be dissected from below upwards, and reflected upon the temple, or secondly: an incision may be made, commencing from the inner canthus of the orbit, and extending along the ala of the nose to the nostril, then turning inwards to the septum nasi, and then downwards through the middle of the lip. All the soft tissues on the front of the bone may be separated therefrom by means of the elevator, which renders the operation almost bloodless. The angular artery is the only vessel bleeding before the application of the bone forceps, and from the latter no trouble need be anticipated. The maxillary bone being thus exposed, its connections with the other bones of the face are to be successively destroyed. (1) Divide with one blow of the chisel, or preferably the bone forceps, the external orbital process on a level with the fronto-malar suture; (2) the zygomatic arch is treated likewise—or if not necessary to remove the malar bone, one blade of the bone forceps may be inserted in the outer part of the floor of the orbit as far as the spheno-maxillary fissure, and the other blade outside the orbit between the malar bone and the maxilla, and thus all bony attachments on the outside severed; (3) in the same manner the os unguis and the nasal process are separated; one blade of the bone forceps in the orbit, and the other in the nose; (4) all the soft parts which unite the ala nasi to the maxilla are to be dissected off; (5) the palatine process and alveolar base of the bone itself are to be separated from its neighbour on the opposite side, either with the bone forceps, one blade being in the nose, and the other in the mouth, or with a little saw. (6) The bone is now free with exception of its connections with the pterygoid process. It may be now firmly grasped with the lion forceps and wrenched by a twist from these attachments. Lastly, the operation is terminated by dividing with a bistoury, or curved scissors, the velum palati, and all the other soft parts which still fix the maxillary bone.

RESECTION OF THE BONES OF THE TRUNK.

1. *Resection of the ribs.* The patient lying in a convenient position, the affected ribs are exposed by incisions of a length proportionate to the extent of diseased bone. Having thus marked out the limits of the section, a cock's-crest saw, or a Hay's saw should be used. In all

cases, however, the pleura should be previously separated from the internal surface of the rib with the end of a director and a bandage passed beneath the bone. After the rib has been divided, it should be raised with a soft elevator, and the intercostal muscles carefully divided and cleared from the border of the bone, so as to avoid injuring the intercostal artery or the pleura.

2. *Resection of the sternum.*—This is usually effected by the combined operations of trepanning and resection. We cannot beforehand lay down rules for this operation, considering the various pathological conditions in which it may be required. The essential point is to avoid the mammary vessels on the sternal end of the ribs, and the pleura beneath.

3. *Resection of the spinous processes of the vertebrae and of the pelvis.*—For the excision of the spinous processes, an incision should be made of sufficient size to fully uncover the vertebra, and the muscles lying in the vertebral groove should be separated. After the bone has been exposed, the diseased portion may be removed with a Hay's saw. The bones of the pelvis may be excised to a more or less considerable extent. The peculiarity of each case will alone suggest to the surgeon the means he should adopt.

4. *Resection of the bodies of the lumbar vertebra.*—In some cases where it is definitely determined that a particular lumbar vertebra is carious, such vertebra may be reached by the incision for colotomy, and a sequestrum removed by the finger.

PL 50

Fig 1

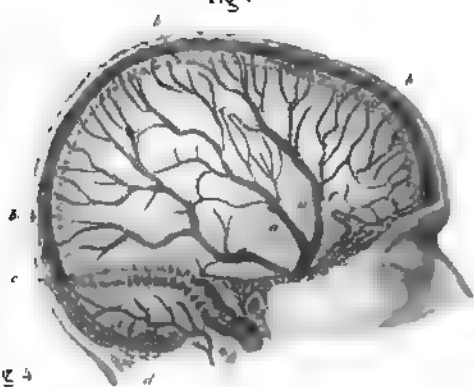


Fig 4



Fig 5



Fig 2



J B Baillière et Fils Editeurs
Paris

PLATE XXXV.

TREPANNING OF THE CRANIAL BONES.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—*A vertical and antero-posterior section of the cranium.*—A view of the cerebral hemisphere covered with its membranes, in order to show the position of the middle meningeal artery and the sinuses of the dura-mater.

a, a, a, Branches of the middle meningeal artery.—This artery enters the interior of the cranium by the foramen spinosum. Its anterior branch, which is the largest, furrows the anterior and inferior angle of the parietal bone, half its diameter being lodged in a groove in the bone. It is often entirely embedded in the bone, and only comes in contact with the dura-mater after it has run through an osseous canal of considerable extent. The posterior branch, which is not so large, runs over the squamous portion of the temporal bone. It is above the level of the anterior and inferior angle of the parietal bone that an injury to the middle meningeal artery is to be feared.

b, b, b, The course of the superior longitudinal sinus.—This sinus is lodged between the two cerebral hemispheres, and is formed by the doubling in of the falx cerebri, of which it is a process. It is not placed in any groove in the bone except behind for about a fifth part of its length. Beginning at the crista galli of the ethmoid bone, it terminates at the internal occipital protuberance on a level with the torcular herophili.

d, The right lateral sinus.—The lateral sinuses are lodged for about half their diameter in a groove which separates the superior from the inferior occipital fosse. They begin at the internal protuberance, and are directed horizontally towards the petrous portion of the temporal bone. They are situated superficially to the extent only of $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches. They turn inwards and downwards to empty themselves at the posterior lacerated foramen.

Fig 2.—*Application of the trepan.*—*a, a, a, a,* The four flaps resulting from a crucial incision into the integuments: *b,* the trepan in the act of being applied.

Fig. 3.—*Excision by means of clippers.*—*a,* Removal of the angular pieces of bone left.

Fig. 4.—*The operator armed with a lenticular knife.*—*a,* levels the edges of the wound in the bone.

METHOD OF OPERATING.

The patient should be lying down, and his head, resting on a board furnished with a cushion, should be kept in position by assistants. The surgeon should then make a V or a T shaped, or a crucial incision through the integuments which have been first shaved, and the flaps should be dissected and reflected back. The periosteum should be raised before applying the drill trepan, or the French trepan, or, still better, the English trephine. The point of the perforator, or centre-pin, is to be applied to the denuded bone, the body of the trephine being held between the thumb and the index-finger of the left hand at the same time that the teeth are pressed against the bone, and the right hand makes a rotatory movement. The perforator is the first to make an impression, but soon the teeth reach the bone, and describe a circular groove. When the latter is sufficiently well-marked, and deep enough to engage the crown of the instrument, the perforator should be removed. The operation is continued by gradually accelerating the rotatory movements, with moderate pressure. From time to time the trephine should be withdrawn in order to clear its teeth, and to examine with a quill whether it has uniformly pierced the bone. On reaching the inner table the greatest care must be taken not to perforate the dura-mater, and the quill-sounding must be constantly employed. As soon as the bone is cut through, or nearly cut through, the disc may be raised with the elevator.

When the operation is over, if the section is not quite complete, the projecting points of bone should be removed with the lenticular knife.

When it is desirable to apply the trepan more than once, the points should be at some distance from each other, while the intervening portions of bone may be removed with the cock's-crest saw. Or the crowns of the trepan may be applied in such a manner that they encroach one upon the other, the angles of bone which intervene between them being removed with the cutting forceps. If we wish to raise by means of this operation pieces of depressed bone, an elevator should be applied between the cranium and the dura-mater without disturbing this membrane. If it is necessary to let out fluid effused beneath the dura mater, a longitudinal or crucial incision should be made with a bistoury.

OSTEOTOMY.

OPERATIONS FOR GENU VALGUM.

The following operations have been performed for the relief of genu valgum :

OGSTON'S OPERATION.

In performing this operation the knee is flexed as fully as possible ; a long tenotomy knife is introduced flatly, 2 or 3 inches above the inner condyle, and pushed downwards, forwards, and outwards, until the point is felt in the intercondylar space. The cutting edge of the tenotome is then turned downwards, and the soft tissues are divided to the bone, as its withdrawal is effected. Adams's saw is then introduced along the groove formed by the knife, and the inner condyle is sawn through from above downwards, for about three quarters of its thickness. The fracture is completed by forcibly straightening the limb, the loose condyle slipping upward over the sawn surface.



FIG. 6.

DIVISION OF INTERNAL CONDYLE.
OGSTON'S LINE.



FIG. 7.

SEPARATION OF INTERNAL CONDYLE.
RESULT AFTER STRAIGHTENING THE
LIMB.

This operation may also be performed by the chisel instead of the saw. The accompanying woodcuts illustrate the line of incision and the subsequent separation of the inner condyle.

The tibia and the fibula have been operated on for the relief of genu valgum. Billroth cuts the tibia by simple section near its head, while Schede of Hamburg cuts a wedge out of the tibia and divides the fibula by simple incision. These operations are seldom practised, Schede has of late performed Macewen's operation. Ogston has renounced his own method in favour of Macewen's.

ANATOMY OF THE PARTS CONCERNED IN MACLEWEN'S OPERATION
FOR GENU VALGUM.

The accompanying schematized woodcut represents the lower part of the femur, the front inner and back aspects being brought into view. The dotted line shows the position of the epiphysis. A few fibres of the adductor magnus muscle and its tendinous insertion into the spine of the inner condyle are figured. One or two faint lines running obliquely over the inner aspect indicate the direction of the fibres of the vastus internus. The shaded somewhat triangular portion above the patellar articular surface, represents the position covered by the upward prolongation of the synovial pouch in front. On the inner side of the femur is a cross, the heavy line of which running longitudinally to the femoral axis, represents the seat of the incision in the soft parts, while the light transverse line shows the position of the osteotomy. The somewhat circular drawing, placed under the femur, is an outline of a transverse section of the femur at the seat of the operation, the portion next the condyle in the drawing being the inner side.



FIG. 8.

DISTAL EXTREMITY OF FEMUR, SHOWING POSITION OF MACLEWEN'S
OPERATION FOR GENU VALGUM

It must be borne in mind that there is a marked difference between the antero-posterior diameters of the outer and inner borders of the femur at this part. For a short distance above the condyles, the femur has a much thicker outer than inner border, in many instances, the outer is twice as thick as the inner. If the form of the bone be not borne in mind, the surgeon may think that he has divided it sufficiently, and yet he may find that it will not yield, owing, in most cases, to the posterior outer part remaining intact. The line of osseous incision is considerably above the epiphysis, and, consequently, cannot do it any harm. The only portion of the synovial pouch which is as high as the osseous incision is the narrow prolongation under the quadriceps extensor tendon. This prolongation may reach, in the adult, about 2 inches above the front part of the femoral articulating surface. It is somewhat triangular in shape, its base being at the condyles, and it gradually tapers toward the middle line as it ascends. It is attached

to the under surface of the ligament and moves with it, so that in flexing the knee it is carried well down. There is a quantity of adipose tissue separating the pouch from the bone. The point selected for the incision in the soft parts is on the inner side of the limb, posterior to the pouch. The manner of introducing the osteotome, first longitudinally until it reaches the bone, then turning it transversely, would push the pouch aside, even if it were, in any case, so much distended as to reach so far as the inner side, and the osteotomy would then be performed behind it. Regarding the arteries, the femoral passes through the aperture in the adductor magnus much above the seat of the operation, and, with ordinary care, cannot be injured in its position behind the femur, as there is a considerable quantity of adipose tissue between the artery and the bone.

The anastomotica magna runs close to and parallel with the adductor magnus: the superior internal articular runs off below the line of incision, so that neither is injured.

The incision is above the attachment of the external lateral ligaments and the popliteus tendon, and they are moved along with the external condyle, and in no way interfere, but rather help in rectifying the deformity.

The accompanying figure is a transverse section of the limb at the seat of the operation, showing the bone in relation to the soft structures. The configuration of the bone, the distance which exists between it and the upward prolongation of the synovial pouch, on the one hand, and between it and the great vessels on the other, may be easily judged of. The straight line indicates the soft tissues penetrated. The amount of adipose tissue is greater in this section than what usually met with.

Thus simple osteotomy through the femoral condyloid diaphysis in no way affects the articulation of the knee, it preserves the joint with its ligaments firm and compact, it is clear of the epiphysis, and cuts no vessel requiring ligature. The longitudinal incision in the soft parts passes through skin, cellular tissue, and a few fibres of the vastus internus, and by dividing these at one stroke a wound is made which, treated antiseptically, heals without a single drop of pus. It also answers all the requirements indicated by the pathological anatomy of genu valgum: the osseous incision being made through the inner side of the distal portion of the femoral diaphysis, the part which is most affected in genu valgum.

Besides these benefits there are other advantages in this mode of operating. In the division of the condyloid femoral diaphysis by graduated osteotomes, no bone is removed, the osseous tissue being merely condensed at each side. The canneliform hiatus formed on the inner side is only a part of the size required for the rectification of the deformity: the remaining portion is obtained from the outer side of

the bone. The incision penetrates to fully two-thirds of the femoral transverse thickness, the remainder of the bone being bent or snapped. In doing so the tissue at the apex of the wedge acts as a fulcrum, and as the bone is bent so as to fill up the cuneiform hiatus, the outer layers are either well stretched, or a wedge-shaped opening is left on the outer side, so that both outer and inner sides of the bone contribute to rectify the deformity, the quota given by the outer side being



FIG. 9.

SECTION OF LIMB AT SEAT OF MACEWEN'S OPERATION.

determined by the amount of straightening necessary. The gap made in the inner side of the limb by using graduated osteotomes has the further advantage of enabling the bone to be fractured or bent more easily than could be the case if the division were made by a simple, straight chisel. The limb being straightened, the cuneiform hiatus on the inner side is thereby immediately filled up, and a small opening or rarefaction of the osseous tissue on the outer side is quickly and firmly supplied, the periosteum being preserved, though stretched over the gap.

Reference to the woodcuts will aid the reader in following the steps of the operation. Fig. 10 is a sketch of a case of genu valgum, the internal condyle being lowered, owing to the curve of the lower third of the femur and the augmentation of osseous matter on the inner



FIG. 10.

FEMUR AFFECTED WITH GENU VALGUM.

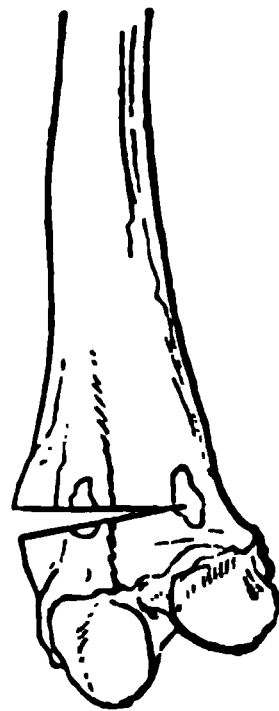


FIG. 11.

INCISION MADE IN MACEWEN'S OPERATION FOR GENU VALGUM.

distal portion of the diaphysis. Fig. 11 shows the form and direction of the osseous incision made on the inner side of the limb by the osteotomes, extending to fully two-thirds of the osseous breadth. Fig. 12 is the same limb after straightening, the cuneiform gap on the

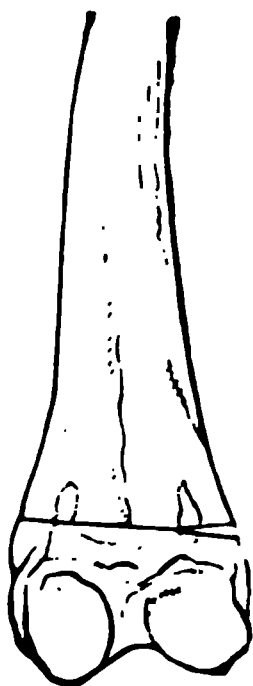


FIG. 12.

MACEWEN'S OPERATION FOR GENU VALGUM.
RESULT AFTER STRAIGHTENING THE LIMB.

inner side being now filled up by the approximation of the separate surfaces, while a slight hiatus has been left on the *outer* side of the limb, *covered by periosteum*. In many cases there is actually no gap, properly speaking, left on the outer side, the osseous tissue being

stretched or rarefied, the one portion still interdigitating with the other, as is the case in a green-stick fracture. When the bone is hard and brittle the slight hiatus is left.

MACEWEN'S OPERATION FOR GENI VALGUM.

Instruments required.—A straight sharp-pointed scalpel; a set of osteotomes, a wooden mallet.

The operation as performed by Macewen is as follows. The limb, being rendered bloodless, is placed on a sand pillow, where it is securely held by two assistants. One assistant, standing on the opposite side of the table from that of the operator, places his right hand on the thigh; while the other, standing at the foot of the table, places his right hand on the upper part of the tibia. The operator sponges the seat of operation with one to twenty watery carbolized solution, the spray is then directed on the part. A sharp pointed scalpel is introduced on the inside of the thigh, at a point where the two following lines meet—one drawn transversely, a finger-breadth above the superior tip of the external condyle, and a longitudinal one, drawn half an inch in front of the adductor magnus tendon. The scalpel here penetrates at once to the bone, and a longitudinal incision is made sufficient to admit the largest osteotome and the finger—if the operator deems it necessary. Before withdrawing the scalpel, the largest osteotome is slipped by its side until it reaches the bone. The scalpel is withdrawn, and the osteotome, which was introduced longitudinally, is now turned transversely in the direction required for the osseous incision. In turning the osteotome, too much pressure must not be exerted, lest the periosteum be scraped off. It is then convenient to pass the edge of the osteotome over the bone until it reaches the posterior internal border, when the entire cutting edge of the osteotome is applied, and the instrument is made to penetrate from behind forwards and toward the outer side. After completing the incision in that direction, the osteotome is made to traverse the inner side of the bone, cutting it, as it proceeds, until it has divided the uppermost part of the internal border; when it is directed from before backward, toward the outer posterior angle of the femur. On cutting on these lines there is no fear of injuring the femoral. The bone may be divided without paying heed to this order, but it is better that the operator should have a definite order of procedure in his mind, so that he may be certain as to what has been divided, and what remains to be done. In using the osteotome, the left hand, in which it is grasped, ought to give, after each impulse supplied by the mallet, a slight movement of the blade—not transversely to its axis, but longitudinally so as to preclude any disposition to fixity which it might otherwise assume. After the inner portion of the bone is divided, a finer instrument may be slipped over the first, which is then withdrawn; and even a third, if necessary,

may take the place of the second, when the outer portion of the bone comes to be divided.

Much depends on the resistance met with, whether one or more osteotomes be used. If the tissue is yielding, one may suffice; if hard or brittle, two, or three, will effect the division easier, and with less risk of breaking or splitting the bone longitudinally. In the adult, the dense circumferential layer of bone resists the entrance of the osteotome at the outset: but several strokes cause it to penetrate this superficial dense portion, when the instrument will pass easily through the cancellated tissue. After a little experience, the surgeon recognises by feeling and sound, when the osteotome meets the hard layer on the outer aspect of the bone. If it be considered desirable to notch or penetrate this outer dense part of the bone, in doing so the osteotome ought to be grasped firmly by the left hand, the inner border of the hand resting on the limb, so as to check instantly any impetus which may be considered too great. Macewen thinks it better to snap or bend this layer, and not to cut it. When the instrument is to be altered in position, it ought not to be pulled out in the ordinary way, as it is then liable to be removed from the wound in the soft parts, as well as from the bone. Instead, let the left hand, with its inner border resting on the limb, grasp the instrument, while the thumb is pressed under the ridge afforded by the rounded head, and gently lever the osteotome outwards, by an extension movement of the thumb. In this way the movement may be regulated with precision. It is desirable to complete all the work intended by the osteotome before removal from the wound.

When the operator thinks that the bone has been sufficiently divided, the osteotome is laid aside, a sponge saturated in one to forty carbolyzed watery solution is placed over the wound, the surgeon holding this in one hand, which he at the same time employs as a fulcrum, while the other hand grasps the limb lower down, using it as a lever, and jerks it the bone be hard, or bends slowly if the bone be soft, in an inward direction, when the bone will snap or bend, as the case may be. The limb is then brought into a straight line. A sponge saturated in one to forty watery solution is placed over the wound, and kept in position by a gauze bandage. This is retained until the neighbouring limb is operated on. After the wound is thus protected, the elastic webbing controlling the circulation is removed, and the limb is held by an assistant who practises extension meanwhile. After the other limb has been operated on, it is similarly treated, while the first is being dressed.

Before applying the dressing, any redundant cellular tissue which may protrude from the wound ought to be removed by a pair of scissors curved on the flat. The wound is then dressed antiseptically, and placed in a special splint. The splint is a modification of the half box, the outer portion being carried up like a long splint to about the

third or fourth rib, and it projects beyond the posterior splint at the foot. This projection is fixed in the clamp of a bedrest, and so the whole splint and limb are kept motionless and steady.

OPERATIONS FOR THE RELIEF OF ANCHYLOSED HIP-JOINT WHEN
AT AN ANGLE PRODUCING DEFORMITY.

ADAMS'S OPERATION.

This consists of subcutaneously severing the neck of the femur so as to enable that bone to be brought down into a straight line with the body. The left thumb is placed firmly so as to compress the soft tissues solidly against the bone at a point situated in the centre of the top of the great trochanter, and breadth of one finger above. At this point the narrow-bladed knife is pushed in till it reaches the neck of the femur at a right angle, across the front of which it is then carried. The knife is gently moved to cut a space for the easy insertion of the saw, which, traversing the course of the knife, reaches the front of the neck of the femur and gradually cuts it completely through. Mr. Adams lays stress upon not fracturing any part of the bone, but continues the sawing movement until he feels that the saw is free of the bone, and moving in the soft tissues only behind the bone. The instrument is then removed, and a pad of lint plastered over the wound.

After section of the neck, the femur, in some cases, may be moved down into the required position, and fixed with a *Laston's* splint. It is a good plan to apply an ice bag over the groin for two or three days to prevent inflammatory action.

In one case, the section has been retained for a very long time as a fibrous union by means of passive motion allowing of some movement of the hip; but such good fortune is not to be expected, for osseous tissue will be certainly developed sooner or later.

In many cases, after the neck of the bone has been severed, the femur is still held firmly in position by cicatricial tissue, by contractions of the muscles and tendons surrounding the joint, and in some cases this operation cannot be performed, or is accompanied by too great risk, in consequence of the alteration of the neck in length or shape, due to absorption or throwing out of new bone. Mr. Gant, therefore, proposed, and first performed, the following operation.

GANT'S OPERATION.

This consists of cutting through the shaft of the femur immediately below the lesser trochanter—clear of all tendons and inflammatory organizations about the joint. The femur is by this means easily reduced to a normal position, but is accompanied by shortening to the extent of about 1 inch.

Maunder, of the London Hospital, substituted the chisel for the

saw in Gant's operation. The chisel has its cutting blade central, and not, like the carpenter's chisel, on one surface; and it should be made decreasing in size upwards from the shoulder of the cutting-blade, so that it shall not act like a wedge, and fix itself in the wound of the bone.

ANCHYLOSIS OF THE KNEE-JOINT.

In many cases, section of the femur may be employed, as in genu valgum.

Barton's operation consists of cutting out a wedge-shaped piece of bone from the joint. The section of the upper surface of the wedge must be at a right angle to the shaft of the femur, and of the lower surface at a right angle to the shaft of the tibia, so that the size of the wedge will vary according to the angle at which the knee-joint is ankylosed. There will be shortening of the limb to the extent of the measurement of the base of the wedge. This operation amounts to an excision of the knee-joint with all its attendant risks, and has to be treated in all respects similar to that operation.

OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED UPON THE ORGAN OF VISION.

OPERATIONS UPON THE EYELIDS.

ANATOMY.—THE EYELIDS.

The following elements partly enter into the structure of the eyelids.

1. *The skin*, which is delicate, soft, elastic, and loosely united to the subjacent tissues.

2. *A layer of cellular tissue*, uniting the skin to the muscular layer. This tissue, being very loose, is favourable to the development of encysted tumours. It is often the seat of serous infiltrations and erysipelatous inflammation, and which subsequently give rise to traumatic lesions of the eyelids and face.

3. *The muscular layer*, composed of the most central fibres of the orbicularis palpebrarum, and forming thin pale arches over the eyelids, which are not connected at the external commissure. The upper eyelid has also its own muscle, the levator palpebre superioris, which is situated behind the orbicular muscle. This muscle takes origin within the orbit, and is attached to the tarsal cartilage by a thin aponeurosis. It receives its nervous filaments from a fasciculus of the third nerve, and it regulates the elevating movements of the upper eyelid, whilst the action of closing the lid is under the influence of the facial nerve. It is to paralysis of this muscle that blepharoptosis is for the most part due.

4. *The tarsal cartilages*, situated behind the muscular layer, and consisting of small fibrous lamellæ, constitute as it were the skeletons of the lids, which maintain them in their proper form and position. The cartilage of the upper lid is about double the depth of that of the lower one. Both are united internally and externally by a palpebral ligament, with which is connected the orbital aponeurosis.

5. *The Meibomian glands* are situated between the tarsal cartilages and the conjunctiva. They open by minute ducts on the face and border of the eyelids. Their hypertrophy gives rise to very small tumours, which are frequently noticed on the conjunctiva.

6. *The conjunctiva or palpebral mucous membrane* covers the deep surface of the eyelid and is reflected upon the globe of the eye. It is very vascular, especially at the oculo-palpebral fold.

All the elements which enter into the structure of the eyelids are intimately united at the free border; but are more loose the further they are removed from this part.

The arteries of the eyelids are somewhat distant from the free borders, and only anastomose beyond the tarsal cartilages. We can therefore raise a semilunar flap from the free border of the lids without meeting with any considerable hæmorrhage.

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



Fig 5



Fig 1 bis



Fig 6



Fig 7



Fig 8



Fig 9



PLATE XXXVI

OPERATIONS UPON THE EYELIDS.

Fig. 1.—Symblepharon—Ammon's method.—The portion of the eyelid which adheres to the globe of the eye is enclosed between two incisions, *a, b*, and *c, b*, which isolate it from the rest of the eyelid.

Fig. 2.—Same operation finished.—The two free edges of the incision are united by three sutures, the little adherent triangular flap, *a*.

Fig. 3.—Epicanthus.—*a, b, c, d*, An elliptical wound, resulting from the excision of a fold of skin taken from the root of the nose.

Fig. 4.—Blepharoptosis—ordinary operation.—*a*, Pressure or cross-action forceps seizing a fold of skin, *b*, on the upper eyelid, which is excised with the scissors, *c*.

Fig. 5.—Same operation—Hunt's plan.—*a, b, c*, Form and position of the flap that is removed. **Fig. 5.—bis**, the operation completed. The edges of the wound are brought together with the twisted suture.

Fig. 6.—Entropion—M. Janson's plan.—The surgeon seizes with Adams's forceps a vertical fold of skin, and excises it with the curved scissors, *b*; *c, d*, the same operation finished near the external angle of the eye; the edges of the wound are united by three twisted sutures.

Fig. 7.—Entropion—Crampton's method modified by that of Guthrie.—*a* and *b*, Vertical incisions carried through the whole thickness of the lid; *c, d*, transverse incision through only half the thickness of the lid. The edges of this incision are brought together with the sutures, *e, e, e, e*; a piece of plaster, *f, f*, retaining the threads on a level with the eyebrow.

Fig. 8.—Ectropion—Adams's operation.—*a*, First incision made into the lower lid; the surgeon seizes the edge of the lid outside that incision with the forceps, *b*, and with the scissors, *c*, cuts a small triangular flap.

Fig. 9.—Same operation—Dieffenbach's plan.—*a, b*, Incision made in the lower lid; the surgeon with the forceps, *c*, draws the conjunctiva into this incision, and excises it with the scissors.

PLATE XXXVII.

FURTHER OPERATIONS PERFORMED ON THE EYELIDS.

Fig. 1.—*Ectropion*—*M. Desmarres's operation*. *a, b*, First incision beginning at the external angle of the eye; *b, c*, second incision beginning at the free border of the lower lid and joining the first at *b*; *c, d*, and *a, d*, two incisions beginning at the internal extremities of the two first, and meeting at *d*, at the point of reflection of the ocular and palpebral mucous membranes.

Fig. 2.—*Same operation finished*.—Three sutures, *a, a, a*, uniting the edges of the wound.

Fig. 3.—*Blepharoplasty*—*Jones's plan*.—*Operation finished*.—*a, b, c*, Triangular flap replaced for the purpose of covering the denuded surface; *c, d*, approximation of the integuments in order to fill up the wound which the removal of the flap has left behind.

Fig. 4.—*Blepharoplastic operation by displacement*—*method of Dieffenbach*.—*a, b, c*, Triangular flap resulting from the removal of a tumour; *b, d*, and *d, e*, two incisions enclosing a flap of skin which is reflected within in order to cover the wound, *a, b, c*.

Fig. 5.—*Blepharoplasty by torsion*.—*a, b, c, d*, Elliptical wound on the upper lid; *c, e, f*, incision marking out a flap of skin from the forehead for the purpose of covering the wound, *a, b, c, d*.

Fig. 6.—*The same operation finished*.—The flap covering the wound; the sutures, *a, a, a*, fix it to the eyelid, while the edges of the wound that have been left behind are brought together with the twisted suture.

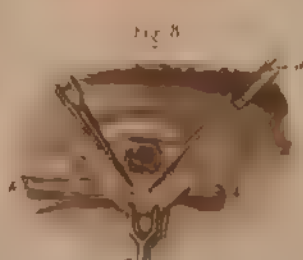
Fig. 7.—*Extirpation of tumours from the upper lid*.—Application of the round forceps of *M. Desmarres*.

Fig. 8.—*Extirpation of a tumour from the internal surface of the lower lid*. An assistant, provided with a double-grip forceps, *a*, everts the lid upon a support, *b*, while the surgeon dissects out the tumour with the forceps, *c*, and small bistoury, *d*.

METHODS OF OPERATING.

COLOBOMA.

Coloboma is a congenital or accidental division of the whole thickness of the eyelid. If the division is congenital, the edges should be pared, and afterwards brought together by means of two or three twisted sutures. If, on the other hand, it is accidental and recent, the bleeding edges of the wound should be approximated in a similar manner. The pins should be applied at a distance from the free border of the lids; they should pierce the skin and the tarsus, without,



however, extending through the whole thickness of the lid, so as to avoid the inflammation which would arise from their contact with the globe of the eye.

ANKYLOBLEPHARON.

Ankyloblepharon, or adhesion of the lids together at their free borders, is rarely congenital. It is a frequent result of ulceration of the edges, and may be either partial or complete. If it be partial, we can, according to the extent of the adhesion, divide it either with the blunt-pointed scissors, or with a bistoury guided by a director introduced between the eye and the lids. If the adhesion is entire, we must first make a small opening at the external angle of the eye, between the two lids, and then insert into the aperture a director, which will guide the bistoury in the division of the adherent parts.

In all cases we must, before operating, be sure that the lids are not adherent to the globe of the eye. If there are any fibrous bands uniting the palpebral mucous membrane to the eye, they must be previously broken down with the stylet. Directly the operation is completed, it will be necessary to prevent the formation of fresh adhesions. For this purpose the lids should be separated each day, whilst a small piece of oiled lint may be introduced between them as a dressing; strips of adhesive plaster, judiciously placed, may aid in keeping them apart. M. d'Ammon proposed to dissect a flap from the conjunctiva, and to fix it upon the wound.

SYMBLEPHARON.

Symblepharon, or the adhesion of the lids to the globe of the eye, is very rarely congenital. On the other hand, it is a frequent result of inflammation with loss of tissue, attacking the palpebral or ocular conjunctiva. The condition consists of fibrous bands more or less attenuated, uniting the palpebral mucous coat to the globe of the eye. These bands restrain the movement of the globe, and consequently it is necessary to divide them. If they are isolated, as in the bridle form, they may be divided with fine scissors: the edges of the resulting conjunctival wound should be brought together with fine sutures if they do not fall together naturally. To prevent fresh adhesions, careful daily dressing is necessary, the parallelism of the two little wounds resulting from the division of the bands may be avoided by drawing the lid outwards by means of an adhesive fillet or band. When the symblepharon consists of numerous serrated bands, rendering the eye immovable, recourse may be had to the following operation. The best method of procedure, however, is to transplant one or two flaps of healthy conjunctiva, according to circumstances, into the wound left after a careful dissection of the lid from the globe.

M. d'Ammon's operation (Plate XXXVI., Figs. 1, 2) for continuous adhesions.

He encloses within two incisions, *c*, *b*, and *a*, *b*, carried through the whole thickness of the lid, that portion of it which is adherent to the globe of the eye. As soon as this triangular flap has been removed, the eye will recover its usual movements. The two edges of the wound are then to be united with two or three twisted sutures.

EPICANTHUS.

D'Ammon gave the name of Epicanthus to a semilunar fold of skin, with its concavity externally encroaching more or less upon the inner angle of the eye (see Plate XXXVI., Fig. 3). To correct this fault, a vertical fold of skin should be seized internally, and on a level with the epicanthus, at the expense of the skin of the nose. The effect of making this fold is to uncover the angle of the eye by dragging inwards the epicanthus which conceals it. The fold of skin is excised with one cut of the curved scissors. The edges of the oval wound thus produced are then brought together with sutures with the effect of removing the epicanthus. If the epicanthus is double it will be convenient to take a fold of skin between the eyes from the middle of the nose in order to remedy the affection on both sides by one operation.

BLEPHAROPTOSIS (Plate XXXVI., Figs. 4, 5, and 5 bis).

Blepharoptosis, Ptosis, Blepharoplegia, is the partial or complete drooping of the upper eyelid over the eye. Sometimes congenital, it may result from injury to the levator palpebræ; or paralysis of that muscle, dependent upon a lesion of the third nerve, or the branch of the latter supplying the muscle; or from loss of elasticity and consequent elongation of the integument in old people: partial ptosis is also an accompaniment of long-standing granular disease of the lid. The following method is that usually practised for the relief of the condition.

Ordinary operation (Fig. 4).

Seize with the pressure or cross action forceps, *a*, a transverse fold of skin, *b*, on the upper lid. The great point is to make the fold of skin of sufficient size to admit of the lid, when lowered, covering the globe of the eye. If it is made too short, a second operation will be necessary; if too long, it may lead to the formation of an ectropion. The fold of skin should be excised with the scissors, *c*, together with a horizontal strip of the subjacent orbicularis muscle corresponding thereto, the result of which is an elliptical wound, the edges of which must be adjusted with two or three sutures. Some surgeons pass threads through the fold which has been seized by the forceps, and then excise it in front of the threads which are thus already in place for

uniting the edges of the wound. This practice has the advantage of shortening the operation, and making it less painful.

It is recommended that the skin be removed in such a position as to take advantage of the action of the occipito-frontalis or supraciliary muscle.

Hunt's method (Fig. 5, and 5 bis).

Having shaved the eyebrow, remove a semi-elliptical flap, *a, b, c*, the size of which should be in proportion to the extent to which the eyelid is relaxed, and bring together the edges of the wound in the usual manner. By this means the upper lid is elevated (see Fig. 5 bis). The cicatrix of the wound is concealed by the eyebrow.

M. Sedillot proposed to utilize the supraciliary muscle by dissecting its external insertion, which he causes to descend into the eyelid. By this means he would put the movement of the lid under the influence of those of the supraciliary muscle.

ORGANIC ENTROPION AND TRICHIASIS.

Entropion, an affection characterized by a turning inwards of the free edges of the eyelids, is the result (1) of spasm of the orbicularis, (2) or of contraction of cicatricial tissue which forms after the destruction of a considerable area of the palpebral conjunctiva, either from granular disease, or injuries such as lime-burns, etc. Both conditions may, however, coexist. When a few or all of the lashes are distorted or displaced inwards, and thus brought into contact with the cornea, the condition is known by the term 'trichiasis,' as distinguished from an inturning of the lid or 'entropion.' The indications for the surgical treatment must depend upon the causes producing the condition, and its severity.

Entropion occurring in old people, the result of 'spasm' of the orbicularis muscle with relaxed skin, may be sometimes remedied by temporarily maintaining the lid in an everted condition by means of collodion, or strips of adhesive plaster adequately applied, or by giving the patient instructions to overcome the inversion, when it takes place, by pulling upon the skin of the lid with the finger. If such means be insufficient, an oval piece of skin with the subjacent orbicularis muscle should be excised, as in the operation for ptosis, the piece removed being pinched up in the forceps as close to the margins of the lid as possible.

Should only one or two lashes grow inwards, relief may be obtained by pulling them out from time to time with epilating forceps; but if the whole, or nearly the whole row, are turned inwards, the radical extirpation of the hair-bulbs should be practised, or in cases of less severity, one of the other operations described below.

Operation for removal of the eyelashes.

The curved plate of the compressorium forceps having been placed between the lid and the globe, the metallic clamp is screwed down upon the outer surface of the lid, so holding the latter firmly and controlling the bleeding; the tarsal border thus left uncovered is rendered tense and supported by the subjacent plate. An incision is made along the margin of the lid, as if to split it (commencing just outside the punctum), in a plane parallel to the external surface, so placed that if possible all the hair-bulbs shall lie outside it, and carried to such a depth that it shall pass beyond their roots. A second incision is then carried along the outer surface of the lid in a plane at right angles to the first, at a distance of about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the tarsal margin, so passing above the bulbs of the lashes. It should divide the skin and subjacent tissue, curving gradually into the first incision at either end. The included portion of skin bearing the lashes is dissected off with the knife and forceps, exposing the tarsus; any hair-follicles remaining, which will be seen as dark points, should be removed. No sutures are necessary.

Burrow's operation.

The lid having been everted, a puncture is made close to the outer or inner canthus, according as the right or left lid is to be operated upon, in order to admit one blade of the scissors. The latter are then made to cut through the conjunctiva and subjacent tarsus along the whole length of the lid, in a line parallel to and at a distance of a line or a line and a half from its free border. All the structures beneath the skin are thus divided, a bluish line of discolouration being visible through the latter when the lid is replaced. This operation does not give permanent relief, and may be repeated, if necessary, after the lapse of a few months.

*Streatfeild's operation.**

The lid is held with Desmarres's compressorium forceps, as described in the operation for removal of the eyelashes. "An incision, with a scalpel, is made of the desired length, just through the skin, along the palpebral margin, at a distance of a line or less, so as to expose but not to divide the roots of the lashes; and then just beyond them the incision is continued down to the cartilage (the extremities of this wound are inclined towards the edge of the lid): a second incision, farther from the palpebral margin, is made at once down to the cartilage, in a similar direction to the first, and at a distance of a line or more, and joining it at both extremities; these two incisions are then continued deeply into the cartilage in an oblique direction towards each other. With a pair of forceps the strip to be excised is seized and detached with the scalpel." No sutures are necessary.

* 'Ophthalmic Hospital Reports,' vol. i., p. 125.

Suellen's operation.

The lid being fixed in Suellen's clamp, an incision is made along the whole length of, and parallel to, its free border, at a distance of three millimetres from it. A wedge-shaped piece of the tarsus with a strip of the superjacent orbicularis muscle is then removed. Three fine sutures, armed with a needle at each end, are passed through the upper edge of the groove in the tarsus at intervals of 4 or 5 mm. : both ends of each suture are then passed through the lower edge of the skin incision, so that the six points of emergence shall lie just above the cilia, at a distance of about 4 mm. apart : they should be tied over beads in order to protect the skin. No sutures are necessary to bring the edges of the skin-incision together, union being accomplished in two or three days, unaided.

Art's operation.

The lid is stretched upon a bone spatula, and an incision made along the whole length of the tarsal edge as if to split it, in a manner described in the operation for removal of the eyelashes. A semilunar piece of skin, extending completely across the width of the lid, is then removed, the lower edge of which should be parallel to, and at a distance of three or four millimetres from, the free border. The bridge of skin bearing the lashes can now be displaced upwards on to the raw surface left by the semilunar flap taken away, and maintained in that position by sutures.

Spencer Watson's operation.

An ingenious operation, as practised by Spencer Watson, Storey, Dianoux, and others, is that by which the marginal strip of skin bearing the lashes is made to change place with a strip of like size and shape, taken from the skin of the eyelid immediately above the former, both strips having been dissected up, but left attached at their ends. The upper strip is passed beneath the lower one, and maintained in its new position by fine sutures. The cuticular surface of the upper flap, which at either extremity is in contact with the deep surface of the flap carrying the lashes, unites perfectly with the latter.

Janson's method (see Plate XXXVI., Fig. 6).

In place of removing a horizontal fold of skin, he seizes with Adams's forceps, *a*, a vertical fold, which he then excises with the curved scissors, *b*. The edges of the wound are brought together, with threads passed through the fold of skin previously to its excision, or by means of the twisted suture, *c*, *d*. Sometimes the excision of one fold is not sufficient, and it is necessary to remove two or three.

Crompton's operation modified by Guthrie (see Plate XXXVI., Fig. 7).

This operation is chiefly applicable to entropion arising from a faulty condition of the tarsus ; and is performed in the following

manner: The surgeon makes with the straight scissors a vertical incision right through the lid a little to the outside of the puncta lacrymalia. A similar incision, *b*, is made near the external angle. the enclosed flap is raised, and the two incisions united by a transverse one through the mucous membrane only. The flap is then let down, a small transverse fold of skin, *c, d*, is cut from the cutaneous surface of the lid, and the threads, *e, e, e, e*, passed through the edges of the wounds to bring them together, and fastened to the forehead, *f, f*. This operation, which is both painful and difficult of execution, leaves behind a deformity of the lid which has led to its abandonment.

ECTROPION (Plate XXXVI., Figs. 8, 9; and Plate XXXVII., Figs. 1, 2.)

Ectropion commonly occurs as a result of thickening of the conjunctiva by inflammatory changes, aided in old people by a loss of elasticity and tone of the tissues of the lids. The lower lid may by virtue of its own weight become everted, owing to loss of power of the orbicularis muscle. The most inveterate forms of ectropion are caused by the contraction of cicatricial tissue consequent upon destruction of skin in the neighbourhood of the lids by such lesions as burns, lupus, abscess, caries of the margin of the orbit, etc.

Ectropion occasioned by diseases of the conjunctiva.

If acute inflammation of the conjunctiva has caused a temporary tumefaction, the ectropion thus produced may be combated by scarifications, or by the application of lapis divinis, or other caustic. But if in consequence of this inflammation the conjunctiva is hypertrophic and the seat of fungous granulations, cauterization will then be insufficient, and it may be well to excise or scarify the swelling formed by the diseased membrane. The excision is effected by seizing the conjunctiva with the forceps or hook, and cutting off the exuberant part with the curved scissors. Care must be taken not to remove too much tissue, otherwise entropion will result. The lid is then drawn up and kept in contact with the globe of the eye by means of a bandage.

Antyllus removed from the diseased mucous membrane a triangular flap, the base of which was turned towards the free border of the lid: but this plan has no advantage over the one above described.

Dieffenbach's operation (Plate XXXVII., Figs. 3 to 6)

To restore the lower eyelid to its proper position, by operating upon the conjunctiva, a transverse incision, *a, b*, is made over the cutaneous surface of the lid, beyond the adherent border of the tarsus. This incision should go completely through the lid as far as the conjunctiva. The latter should then be seized with the forceps, *c*, and drawn out through the lips of the wound, in such a manner as to turn the lid inwards. The hernial portion of mucous membrane is excised with

fine scissors, and the lips of the wound are united to the lower lip of the cutaneous wound by several sutures.

Snellen has modified the above operation, dispensing with the skin incision, by drawing backwards towards the fornix a fold of the everted and thickened conjunctiva with a stout suture, which should be entered at two points, distant half a centimetre from each other, passed deeply, and brought out on the cheek at a distance of about a centimetre apart. the two ends are tied over a piece of fine india rubber tubing, to prevent injury to the skin. The suture should remain in situ about four days.

Adams's operation (Plate XXXVI., Fig. 8).

It must always be recollected that ectropion is due to an abnormal lengthening of the eyelid. We may, therefore, remove from the lid a triangular flap comprising its whole thickness. The base of the flap should be at the free border of the lid, and be proportioned to its looseness. The two edges of the wound are then to be brought together by means of a twisted suture, as directed in the case of coloboma.

M. Desmarres's operation (see Plate XXXVII., Figs. 1, 2).

M. Desmarres, wishing to avoid the visible and objectionable cicatrix which is always left after Adams's operation, adopts the following method—One horizontal incision, *a, b*, is made from the external angle of the eye, and a second, *c, b*, commencing at the free border of the retroverted lid, meets the first incision at *b*. Two other incisions, *a, d, c, d*, describe on the conjunctiva a small triangular flap, the base of which coincides with the base of the first flap, *a, b, c*; the tissues enclosed within these incisions are then excised, while the two edges of the wound, *a, b*, and *c, b*, are united by means of sutures, Fig. 2, *a, a, a*; the resulting cicatrix is hid in the folds of the external angle of the eye.

Ectropion from contraction of the skin

The cicatrization of burns and wounds which are attended with loss of substance, is the most frequent cause of this variety of ectropion. In some cases we may resort to Adams's operation (Plate XXXVI., Fig. 8), taking care to prolong one of the incisions beyond the summit of the triangle.

If the cicatricial bridges are of small extent and have not contracted adhesions to the adjacent bones, we may cut them through transversely, and enlarge the space occupied by the cicatrization, by keeping apart the lips of the wound by means of adhesive plaster, or we may prevent immediate union by the interposition of some foreign body, or we may follow the recommendation of M. Amussat and destroy daily the cicatricial tissue as fast as it forms at the bottom of the wound.

Should the cicatrix adhere to the ridge of the orbit, we must enclose

it between two incisions, dissect freely the lips of the wound, and bring them forwards over the cicatrix on the bone.

This operation has been successfully performed by MM. d'Ammon and Desmarres.

When the cicatrices are too extensive to admit of our adopting the above measures, we must have recourse to blepharoplasty (see Plate XXXVII., Figs. 3, 4, 5, 6).

BLEPHAROPLASTY (Plate XXXVII., Figs. 3, 4, 5, 6).

This operation is one by which we repair, at the expense of the adjoining parts, eyelids which have undergone a partial or total loss of substance.

The measures which have been adopted in order to attain this object may be arranged under the four following methods: that of extension, that of displacement, or inclination (the French method), that of torsion of the flaps (Indian method), and that of skin grafting.

Operation by extension.—Jones's operation (Plate XXXVII., Fig. 3).

Having pared the edges surrounding the lost substance, two incisions, *a, d*, and *b, d*, are to be made, beginning at the lips of the defective part, and terminating in the shape of a V on the forehead, for the upper lid, or on the cheek, for the lower lid. The base of this triangular flap will generally suffice to repair the damaged lid. This first part of the operation being finished, he proceeds to dissect the triangular flap, beginning at its apex. The lid then assumes its natural form. Sutures are then to be applied in the edges of the wound, *c, d*, which is left behind in consequence of the displacement of the flap. Fig. 3 represents the operation finished, the flap, *a, b, c*, having been raised in order to compensate for the loss of substance. (The line, *a, b*, should not be an incision as represented in the plate.)

Operation by displacement.—Dieffenbach's operation.

Dieffenbach having raised a triangular flap, *a, b, c* (Fig. 4), makes an incision from the external angle, *b*, and from the point *d* he encloses by another incision, *d, e*, a flap, *c, b, d, e*, adhering by a pedicle, *c, e*. This flap is to be dissected and carried inwards upon the wound, *a, b, c*, where it is fixed by sutures. It leaves behind it another wound, which very soon heals.

Operation by torsion of the flap (Græfe and Fricke, Figs. 5, 6).

The morbid cicatrices may be removed by two incisions which enclose an elliptical wound, *a, b, c, d*. A flap is then cut at the expense of the fronto-temporal region of the upper lid, and of the cheek for the lower lid. This flap should be of the same shape as the wound, and nearly $\frac{1}{2}$ inch larger than it. It is cut by making from the point *c* an incision which must be carried as far as *e, f*, and brought back on a

level with and outside the point *c*. The flap, having been carefully dissected, must be twisted on its pedicle in order to place it horizontally on *a, b, c, d*, where it should be fastened by the sutures, *a, a, a* (Fig. 6). The edges of the artificial wound may then be brought together with the twisted suture.

Skin-grafting.

In many instances this operation is likely to supersede those above described. Many small grafts may be transplanted, after the method of Riverdin, on to the granulating surface left after thoroughly freeing the lid from the traction of the cicatricial tissue, of which as much as is useless should be removed; or the following operation may be practised.

The lid is thoroughly freed from the cicatrix, and the newly-formed tissues removed if useless; then a piece of skin taken from the arm, thigh, or other convenient spot, is transplanted *en masse* on to the raw surface so produced. The flap of skin should be of larger area than the surface it is intended to cover, thus allowing for the contraction which takes place when it is removed, and it should be completely freed from all subcutaneous fat. The graft should be accurately adjusted to the margin of the wound by fine sutures, and antiseptic dressing applied.

TUMOURS OF THE EYELIDS.

I. Encysted tumours.—With respect to their seat they are: (1) subcutaneous; (2) submuscular, beneath the orbicular muscle; (3) submucous, between the tarsus and the conjunctiva.

The surgical treatment to be adopted in these cases consists of incision, cauterization, and excision. The tumours may be reached either from the anterior surface of the lids, or from the conjunctiva, but their situation will indicate the best plan to be adopted. Incision into and extirpation of the cysts from the conjunctiva has the advantage of not being followed by visible cicatrices, this method, therefore, should always be followed when practicable.

Incision alone is rarely sufficient to prevent their return. It is chiefly applicable to those tumours which, being seated between the conjunctiva and the tarsus, are adherent to the latter, and when their dissection necessitates a loss of tissue, the cicatrization of which would ultimately lead to an entropion.

Incision combined with the application of the nitrate of silver is more efficacious, as then adhesive inflammation is set up in the walls of the cyst.

In order to cut into and excise the cysts from the conjunctiva, an assistant keeps with his fingers or with smooth-bite forceps the lid retroverted over a small rod, or other support (see Plate XXXVII., Fig. 8). The surgeon, with a pair of forceps and a small bistoury, makes an incision into the conjunctiva which should pass a little to the right and left of the tumour, and then the cyst may be dissected

and raised without being opened. To remove these cysts from the anterior surface of the lids, the lid is to be held between the fingers, and the dissection proceeded with as above described. In all cases the tumour should be cautiously isolated from the tarsus.

Desmarest's operation (Plate XXXVII., Fig 7).—This has the advantage of being more easy, by tensing the lid, and stopping the hæmorrhage by maintaining pressure all round the tumour. A pair of annular forceps, one branch of which ends in a plate and the other in a ring, takes hold of the lid. The ring in being pressed towards the plate presses around the tumour so as to stop the hæmorrhage. The forceps is entrusted to an assistant, and the surgeon dissects out the tumour in the manner already described.

II. *Chalazion* is a small, indolent, and slightly movable tumour, occupying the free border of the lids. It is not unusual to meet with a series of them, forming a chaplet from one corner of the eye to another. In order to remove such, the lid should be everted, the cyst opened by a crucial incision from the conjunctival surface, and its contents either squeezed out by pressure of the thumb-nails, or scooped out by means of a curette or small scoop devised for the purpose. The cavity remaining fills up with blood, which is re-absorbed in a few days.

III. *Erectile tumours*.—Compression, the ligature, electrolysis, and cauterization can be successfully employed in these cases. The form and extent of the tumour will show what means should be adopted. For cauterization, Carron du Villars transfixed the tumour with several needles, which he unites to a metallic ball: the ball is heated to whiteness and the cauterization is followed by suppuration, which destroys the tumour. A very convenient instrument for the purpose is the thermo-cautery of M. Paquelin.

IV. *Cancerous tumours*.—The excision of these tumours cannot be submitted to any particular rule. They may be enclosed between two curved incisions or two incisions in the shape of a V. The lips of the wound may then be brought together with sutures, provided its extent and form permit of it.

V. *Encanthus*, or tumour of the caruncula lachrymalis, may be treated by cauterization, or it may be extirpated. The latter method is to be preferred. By means of a hook, or the forceps, the tumour is drawn outwards, and is then excised either with the bistoury or the curved scissors.

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



PLATE XXXVIII

OPERATIONS ON THE LACHRYMAL APPARATUS.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1. -- Vertical antero-posterior section, showing the relations of the nasal fossæ, the mouth, and the pharynx. — *a*, The inferior turbinated bone, *b*, Laforest's probe introduced into the nasal passage through the inferior meatus; *c*, Belloc's sound for plugging the nasal fossæ; *d*, Deleau's probe introduced into the Eustachian tube, *e*; *f*, probe introduced into the internal orifice of Steno's duct.

Fig. 2. — Anatomy of the lachrymal apparatus. — This consists of the lachrymal gland and its excretory ducts, the lachrymal ducts, the lachrymal sac, and the nasal duct.

The lachrymal gland is composed of two distinct portions, one overlapping the other. The larger or orbital portion is placed in the hollow on the inner side of the external angular process of the frontal bone, to which it is tolerably firmly united by fibrous bands, its anterior surface corresponding with the orbital arch. The palpebral portion, of less size than the other, is situated a little lower and to the outside; it is covered by the upper eyelid, and by a dense fibrous membrane; its inferior border being often in relation to the upper border of the tarsus or tarsal cartilage.

The puncta lachrymalia are only the external orifices of the ducts of the same name, *b* and *c*, Fig. 2. Situated on the free border of the lids, about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch outside the internal commissure, they present the form of minute gaping holes in two small conical tubercles, the lower one looking upwards and the upper one downwards. Their calibre will allow the introduction of a boar's bristle, and among southern people, in whom they are much larger, they will easily admit a small probe. According to Janin, the lower punctum is larger than the upper, a fact which we may turn to account in catheterism of the lachrymal passages.

The lachrymal ducts, *b* and *c*, embedded in the substance of the lids, conduct the tears into the lachrymal sac. In performing catheterism, their angular direction should be borne in mind. Taking their departure from the puncta, they extend perpendicularly (the upper one upwards, and the other downwards) into the lid. After a short course of about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, they suddenly bend, the upper one being directed inwards, and a little obliquely from above downwards; and the lower one in the same direction, but from below upwards. The lachrymal ducts thus meeting each other often open into the lachrymal sac by a common duct, but more frequently they are separated by a partition.

Their texture is loose, and by means of slight traction made externally over the borders of the lids, we may make their curved form sufficiently straight to admit of our introducing straight probes. Their calibre, which is considerably greater than that of the puncta lachrymalia, is maintained by the elasticity of its walls.

The lachrymal sac, *d*, and the nasal duct form, by their union, one channel through which the tears flow into the inferior meatus, below the inferior turbinated bone. The sac which constitutes its upper portion consists of a small oblong and vertical reservoir, into which the lachrymal ducts open. Terminated above by a cul-de-sac, it is continuous below with the nasal duct. It is lodged in an osseous groove formed behind and within by the approximation of the os unguis with the nasal process of the superior maxilla and inferior turbinated bone. Its external half is membranous, and is covered by the tendon of the orbicular muscle, which the lachrymal sac causes to jut out both above and below. This relation is of some importance, the tendon of the above muscle serving as a guide in penetrating the lachrymal sac. The insertion, however, of this tendon is subject to variations, so that the surgeon is sometimes obliged to have recourse to other data. The upper orifice of the nasal duct is found behind the osseous ridge, which is met with on the inside of the base of the orbit, when following with the finger, from without inwards, the inferior orbital ridge. This bony projection, which limits the lachrymal groove below, is the most reliable landmark.

The nasal duct, which is a continuation of the lachrymal sac, is formed, as regards its bony portion, in front by the nasal process of the maxillary bone, on the inside and behind by the os unguis and the small process of the inferior turbinated bone, and on the outside by the internal wall of the antrum Highmorianum. We can, therefore, through the posterior wall of the nasal duct, reach either the nasal fossæ or the antrum.

The length of the duct varies from $\frac{3}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch; its upper orifice is elliptical from behind forwards, and its diameter in the same direction may be over $\frac{1}{4}$ inch. The lower orifice, situated beneath the inferior turbinated bone, is wedge-shaped from within outwards, at the expense of the external wall of the nose. In front it is provided with a small valve, which is often sufficiently developed to prevent the introduction of instruments, except from behind forwards.

Fig. 3. —Catheterism of the lachrymal passages through the upper punctum lachrymale.—*a*, Mejean's probe; *b*, Seton.



PLATE XXXIX.

OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE
LACHRYMAL APPARATUS (*continued*).

Fig. 1.—*Catheterism of the lachrymal passages through the lower orifice of the nasal duct—Laforest's method.*—*a*, First position of the catheter; *b*, second position; the back of the instrument is inserted in the lower orifice of the nasal duct; *c*, third position of the catheter introduced into the nasal duct.

Fig. 2.—*Temporary dilatation of the lachrymal passages—J. L. Petit's method, modified by Desmarres.*—*a*, The fingers of an assistant pulling the external angle of the lids in order to make prominent the tendon of the orbicularis palpebrarum; while the surgeon punctures the lachrymal sac with the bistoury, *b*, and introduces into the orifice the probe, *c*.

Fig. 3.—*Third step of the operation.*—A grooved director, *a*, is inserted into the lachrymal duct, and serves to introduce the piece of catgut, *a*, by which temporary dilatation is to be effected.

Fig. 4.—*Permanent dilatation—introduction of the canula.*—The duct opened by the bistoury, *a*, which presses against the posterior lip of the wound. The surgeon introduces the canula, *b*, with the assistance of mandrel forceps.

OPERATIONS.

Operations on the tear-passages are usually undertaken for the relief of epiphora, or overflow of tears, which, when caused by *stricture of the nasal duct*, is associated with an accumulation of fluid in the lachrymal sac, sometimes with lachrymal abscess. Other conditions giving rise to epiphora, and more or less remediable by operation, are *displacement of the puncta*, as seen in old people, or by reason of *ectropion* from other causes; and *partial or complete occlusion of the puncta or canaliculi*, from inflammatory changes or injury. Generally in such cases it is necessary to slit up the canaliculus (or the upper if the lower punctum be obliterated), either as a preliminary step to treatment of stricture of the nasal duct, or for the purpose of providing a new channel or trough to carry away the tears when the imperfection in the drainage system is confined to the puncta or canaliculi.

Operation of slitting up the canaliculus.

The operator standing behind the patient, who should be seated in a chair with the head thrown backwards, makes tense the lower eyelid by traction upon it with the fingers at the outer canthus, drawing it outwards and downwards. A blunt or probe-pointed knife, narrow

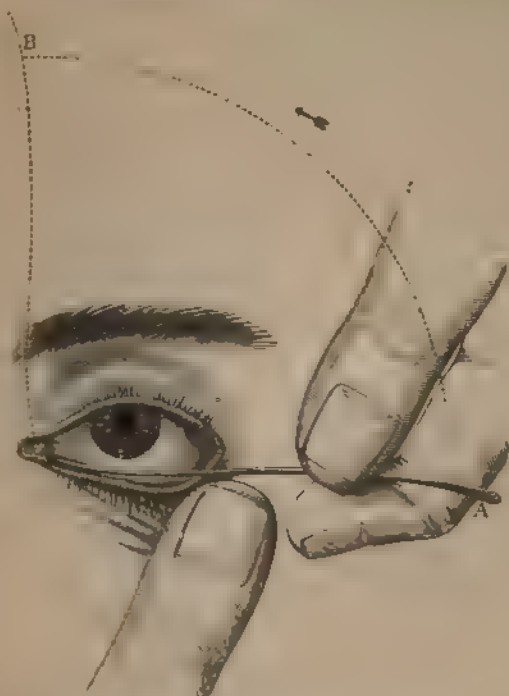
enough to enter the punctum, such as that of Weber (probe-pointed), or Bowman (blunt-pointed), is introduced vertically into the punctum. Depressing the handle towards the outer canthus, until it becomes horizontal, and keeping the edge turned upwards and somewhat inwards, the operator pushes the point along the canaliculus until it enters the sac, and is felt to impinge upon the lachrymal bone bounding the inner wall of the sac. If the knife encounters obstruction before it reaches the sac, as it often does near the point of entry of the canaliculus, it will drag upon the whole lid as it is pressed onwards, showing unmistakably that it has not entered the sac: firm pressure in the direction of the latter will generally overcome the resistance. The knife is now raised to the vertical, so cutting through the upper wall of the canaliculus in its whole length, and freely dividing its neck. The lips of the wound should be separated daily with a fine probe until they are healed, lest they reunite.

Some operators prefer a fine, grooved director, which is passed into the sac, running a slender knife along it until the canaliculus is completely slit up. Others use scissors, one blade of which is run along the canaliculus.

In cases in which the lower punctum has become obliterated, Streetfeild adopts the following ingenious procedure. He slits up the upper canaliculus, and passes a piece of wire, suitably bent, along it into the lower; a small opening can then be made into the latter, the wire acting as a guide, and the canaliculus slit up in the usual way.

Operations for the relief of stricture of the nasal duct.

1. *Catheterism.*—Having slit up the lower canaliculus, or the upper if the lower cannot be found, a medium-sized Bowman's probe, held horizontally, is passed along the floor of the canal until it encounters the bony resistance of the inner wall of the sac. It is then brought up to the vertical position and pressed downwards, somewhat backwards and outwards, into the nasal duct until it reaches the floor of the nose. The operator should be certain that the probe has entered the sac before he raises it to the vertical position and endeavours to pass it down the duct, otherwise a false passage may be easily made. If the neck of the canaliculus have not been completely incised, the probe will be obstructed in its passage at this point, and if forced onwards, will drag upon or pucker the lid; it should then be withdrawn, and the knife be again introduced so as to slit up the canal in its whole length. The probe may be known to have entered the sac if it is felt to strike against the lachrymal bone bounding the inner wall. Should the probe fail to pass down the duct, a smaller one must be used, the stricture being gradually dilated by the passage of probes increasing in size from day to day. Some operators prefer to dilate the stricture to the size of the largest probe which can be passed down the duct at one sitting.



METHOD OF PASSING A LACHRYMAL PROBE.

It has been recommended that catheterism should be performed by means of silver probes sufficiently fine to pass through the lachrymal puncta. It is best to pass them through the upper duct. Gentle traction made externally upon the upper lid will straighten the angular direction of the duct into which the probe is introduced and it can then be pushed onwards into the nasal duct.

In a few cases where the passage of a probe is rendered difficult by reason of the rapid cicatricial contraction of the parts about the entry to the sac or the patient can only be seen at considerable intervals of time, a leaden style devised for the purpose may be inserted and worn for several weeks.

Catheterism through the inferior orifice of the nasal duct—Latorrei's method—This operation is performed by means of either hollow or plain probes, the curvature of which corresponds to that of the nasal duct. The patient being seated, an assistant keeps the head in a firm position, and a little inclined backwards. The surgeon then introduces the end of the sound underneath the nostril in such a manner that it

can be passed beneath the inferior turbinated bone of the nasal fossæ, by giving to the instrument a rotatory movement (see Plate XXXIX., Fig. 1, *a*). The effect of this rotatory movement is to engage the end of the sound in the lower orifice of the nasal duct : an operation which is carried out by gentle to-and fro movements, for it is always from behind forwards that we must enter the inferior orifice ; *b* represents the second position of the sound. In order to make it enter the nasal duct, it is necessary to give the instrument a half turn, by which means its curve is carried inwards and downwards, *c*. Directly this third step in the operation is accomplished the sound easily reaches the lachrymal sac. Plain sounds are sufficient to remove obstructions, but once the passage is free, we must have recourse to the hollow sounds of Gensoul, with which it is easy to use injections from below upwards. This method is now rarely employed.

2. *Incision*.—The canaliculus having been slit up, a narrow-bladed knife should be passed up and down the duct two or three times in order to incise the stricture at several points of its circumference. The most convenient form of knife is that of Stilling. It should be passed in the same way and with the same precautions as the probe : then forced downwards several times in succession, so as to thoroughly divide the stricture. A full-sized probe can usually be passed at once, and used periodically until the cure is completed.

3. *Dilatation*.—*Mejean's operation*.—This consists in performing catheterism through the superior lachrymal punctum with a probe whose upper end is perforated and threaded with silk. The probe passes through the nasal duct as far as the inferior meatus, carrying the thread with it. Or the eyelet end of the probe may be introduced, and then, when this end has cleared the nasal fossæ, the thread may be passed and drawn through (see Plate XXXVIII. Fig. 3). By this means the lachrymal puncta will be less frayed.

4. *Dilatation by an artificial opening*.—*J. L. Petit* made at first an incision into the lachrymal sac for the purpose of introducing the foreign bodies that are intended to dilate the duct. He used a grooved bistoury, over which he passed every day into the duct a different bougie. The external wound soon heals up. *Scarpa* used a leaden style.

Lecat opened the sac in the same manner, but in place of using a bougie, or any other solid body, he inserted in the lachrymal passages a thread, by means of which he lifted up a tent into the nasal duct. This method does not differ from that of Mejean, except that the artificial opening facilitates the passage of the thread.

Poubeau, in order to spare the patient the disfigurement of a cicatrix, entered the sac from the internal surface of the lid.

Jurine introduced at first a canula, in which he placed a curved probe, passing it out by the nostrils and carrying with it the thread to draw up the tent.

Pomard passed into the canula the spring of a watch, which in virtue of its elasticity passes outside the nostrils and then recoils upwards with the thread to which the tent is fixed.

Fourmer fastened to the thread a grain of lead for the purpose of drawing it outside.

Cabanis laid hold of *Mejean's* probe previously introduced into the lachrymal passages by passing beneath the turbinated bone a plate with a hole in it, and with which he seized the lower end of the probe. A second plate, gliding upon the first, rips the end of the instrument which is then easily drawn out.

M. Hauser introduced into the nasal duct, from below upwards, a sound provided with a sharp point. The sharp point pushed up pierces from behind forward the anterior wall of the lachrymal sac, and admits through its eye the introduction of a thread, which can then be drawn downwards, and by means of which a tent can be drawn up.

M. Muel Laveller made use of a probe curved in the form of an arc, supporting a thread which is fixed by a small groove at the end of the instrument. The thread is thus easily seized with forceps beneath the inferior turbinated bone, and drawn out.

Such are the chief modifications of the operations of *J. L. Petit* and *Lecat*, in order to facilitate the passage of the thread through the lachrymal passages. Whatever plan is adopted, the rules of cutting into the sac are the same.

M. Desmarres's operation (see Plate XXXIX, Figs. 2 and 3).

The instruments required for this operation are a bistoury, a director, a hollow sound, and cord made of catgut.

First step. Puncture.—An assistant should keep the head of the patient still, and with his finger draw aside the external angle of the eye in order to make prominent the tendon of the orbicularis muscle, as this tendon is a guide in finding out the upper orifice of the nasal duct (see Anatomical Indications). The bistoury being held in the right hand, the little finger of which rests upon the malar bone, is plunged into the lachrymal sac from before backwards in the direction of the os unguis; then, the handle of the instrument being depressed a little inwards and backwards, until it nearly touches the eyebrows, the blade is made to penetrate about two or three lines into the lachrymal sac and the nasal duct.

If there has been previously a fistulous opening a little distance off, the incision should be carried up to it in order to completely divide the fistulous tract.

Second step. Introduction of a probe, over which is passed a hollow sound. The bistoury is half withdrawn, and along its blade a probe passed and thrust into the nasal duct (Fig. 2). This probe serves the purpose of conducting a grooved sound.

Third step. — Introduction of the catgut cord (Fig. 3). — The sound being inserted in the nasal duct, the catgut cord, which is to effect the dilatation, is passed through the sound, which is afterwards withdrawn. This cord presents above two small wings, as it were, which prevent it from falling into the nasal duct. It should be changed every day for one of larger size, and soon Scarpa's style may be substituted for it. The introduction of the cord is often followed by a pretty active inflammatory reaction, occasioned by the swelling of the cord in the interior of the duct. It is therefore necessary to withdraw it at the end of twenty-four hours, and to introduce a very fine Scarpa's style, which can be every day replaced by other nails which gradually increase in size.

5. Permanent dilatation — Introduction of a permanent canula. Vesalius was the first to apply the canula to the treatment of lachrymal affections. This method, revived a long time afterwards by Foubert, Wathen, and Pellier, was adopted and modified by Dupuytren. Dupuytren's operation consisted of two stages — puncture of the sac, and introduction of the canula. The first step in the operation is the same as for temporary dilatation described above (M. Desmarres's method). To introduce the canula the lips of the wound should be separated by pressing upon their posterior edge with the handle of the bistoury. Then the canula should be inserted into the sac and duct, and directly it has entered the duct the bistoury is to be withdrawn, and the canula pushed down until its upper edge disappears in the lachrymal sac. In order to ensure the proper position of the canula in the sac and duct the following experiment should be made. The nose and mouth of the patient being closed, he must be directed to make a strong expiration; if the canula is in a proper position a little blood mixed with air will exude from the external wound. As a dressing for the wound we may apply to it a small piece of court plaster.

MM. Bernard and Cloquet dilated the duct with a tent before the introduction of the canula. This precaution is useful, as the walls of the duct are thus habituated to the contact of foreign bodies, and are less exposed to the inflammatory reactions which so often occur after the immediate introduction of canulas.

The form of the canula has been variously modified. That adopted by Pellier had two enlargements, one above and one in the middle. Dupuytren designed a canula with an enlargement above, in order to facilitate its extraction when required. M. Gerdy extols canulas with a projecting rim so as to prevent their rising up. For the same purpose Ritterick, of Leipzig, and afterwards Mill, Petrequin, and Lenoir used cleft canulas, the lappets of which fly back directly the instrument is in place. For the insertion of this kind of canula M. Lenoir designed a very ingenious mandrel, which closes the lappets.

The introduction of canulas is not always free from danger. It is often followed by accidents of an inflammatory nature, which oblige the surgeon to extract the instrument. Forceps are designed for the purpose of withdrawing canulas from the nasal duct.

Cauterization.—*Harvey* opened the sac in the ordinary way, and cauterized its interior, either with a small cautery heated to whiteness, or by introducing from above downwards, through a canula, a small tent covered with nitrate of silver.

M. Gienoul cauterized the duct from below upwards, by means of curved catheters, armed with the *porte caustique*.

M. Lallemand, of Montpellier, opened the duct, inserted a morsel of nitrate of silver, about the size of a millet seed, and closed up the wound with a piece of court plaster. An eschar is formed inside the sac and the duct, and is then discharged from above downwards. *M. Lallemand* adopted this plan with success in several obstinate cases.

b. Injections.—Often employed with success in cases of obstruction, injections at the same time permit of our conveying into the lachrymal ducts medicated fluids. An *Auel's* syringe is used for the purpose. The patient being seated in a chair, with his head kept in position by an assistant, the surgeon places himself in front of him, holding the syringe in his right hand for operating upon the left eye, and (unless he is ambidextrous) standing behind the patient, when operating on the right eye. The fingers of the other hand should gently evert the lower lid, so as to project forward the orifice of the inferior punctum lachrymale, which is to be chosen because it is shorter and larger than the upper one. The end of the syringe should be introduced perpendicularly to the palpebral border. It often happens that the punctum contracts, and prevents the introduction of the syringe; but by gentle and careful pressure we may easily overcome the momentary resistance set up by the contraction of the puncta. The nozzle being introduced to a depth of one or two lines, we must depress the syringe externally so as to engage the nozzle in the horizontal portion of the duct. Once the lachrymal sac is reached, the surgeon should gradually propel the fluid in order to overcome the obstruction in the duct. This will have been effected when the fluid flows pretty freely from the nostril.

The operative procedures described under the headings of 'Dilatation' and 'Injections' are chiefly of historical interest, being but rarely utilized.

The formation of an artificial duct.

The following operations have been performed in cases in which the duct has become entirely obliterated.

Wolhouse made a large opening into the lachrymal sac, by means of a semi-elliptical incision, and plunged a pointed stylet through the os

unguis, having previously extirpated the sac. A tent of charpie or a small canula was then introduced to keep the perforation open.

Hunter made use of a punch to perforate the os unguis: but his operation requires special instruments, and is no longer performed.

Watson made with a drill a new passage in the direction of the natural duct, and then fixed a permanent canula.

M. Laugier proposed to perforate with a curved trocar the wall of the maxillary sinus, and to place a canula in the opening.

Obliteration of the lachrymal passages.

1. *Nannoni* destroyed the sac. To do this he made a large opening, filled it with charpie, and then cauterized it either with caustic or the actual cautery.

Bosche, relying upon the fact that the puncta lachrymalia may be congenitally obliterated without the patient suffering from watering of the eyes, cauterized the puncta by introducing into them a small piece of nitrate of silver.

2. *Removal of the lachrymal gland.*—The following operation is that adopted by Mr Zachariah Lawrence. An incision is made through the skin immediately below the upper and outer third of the bony margin of the orbit, the fascia uniting the tarsus to the periosteum of the orbit is then divided to a corresponding extent. The gland should now be carefully sought for with the finger, and having been caught by hooked forceps, is pulled forwards and dissected out by cutting through its connections with a scalpel. The wound should not be closed until the bleeding has ceased, and this can usually be arrested by a stream of iced water.

The obliteration of the lachrymal passages, and the removal of the lachrymal gland, ought only to be resorted to after the measures described above have failed. We must therefore consider these two operations as offering the last chance of curing those cases which have proved rebellious to other modes of treatment.

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



Fig 5



Fig 6



PLATE XL.

OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE
MUSCLES OF THE EYE.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—Antero-posterior and vertical section of the orbit, showing the muscles of the right eye. *external view*—*a*, Globe of the eye; *b*, the levator palpebre superioris; *c*, the superior rectus; *d*, the external rectus; *e*, the inferior rectus; *f*, the inferior oblique; *g*, the origins of the muscles of the eye.

Fig. 2.—Represents the aponeurotic sheaths formed by the orbital aponeurosis—*a*, Globe of the eye; *b*, sheath of the elevator of the upper lid; *c*, sheath of the superior rectus; *d*, sheath of the external rectus; *e*, sheath of the inferior rectus; *f*, sheath of the oblique.

Fig. 3.—The disposition of the muscles and of their insertion into the sclerotic.—The eye is seen in front and the muscles are lifted up from behind forwards. *a*, Superior rectus; *b*, external rectus; *d*, internal rectus; *e*, inferior rectus; *f*, the superior oblique muscle passing over its pulley, *c*.

Fig. 4.—The operation for strabismus.—*M. Sedillot's plan*.—The lids are kept away by a blepharectome, *a*; *b*, a tenaculum entrusted to an assistant; *c*, forceps raising a fold of conjunctiva; *d*, scissors cutting the fold in order to expose the muscle.

Fig. 5.—A blunt hook, *a*, is passed beneath the muscle, *b*.

Fig. 6.—*a*, The blunt hook; *b*, the scissors cutting through the internal rectus muscle.

The movements of the globe of the eye are regulated by six muscles—the four recti and the two oblique.

The four recti have a fixed point of origin behind the globe around the optic foramen, whence they diverge and embrace the globe from behind forwards, being inserted into the anterior hemisphere by short membranous tendinous expansions about two or three lines behind the circumference of the cornea, an attachment that is very favourable for those rotatory movements of the globe which they determine. These four muscles are—

1. The *superior rectus*, situated in the upper part of the orbit beneath the elevator of the upper lid, turns the pupil upwards and inwards.

2. The *inferior rectus*, moves the globe upon a horizontal axis, turning the pupil downwards and inwards. It passes between the globe and the inferior oblique, which is inserted above its external border.

3. The *internal rectus*, situated on the internal wall of the orbit, moves the eye on its vertical axis, and carries the pupil inwards.

4. The *external rectus*, placed on the external wall of the orbit, antagonises the preceding muscle. Its insertion into the sclerotic is a little further from the edge of the cornea than that of the internal rectus.

The two oblique muscles move the globe of the eye on a horizontal axis.

1. The *superior oblique* takes its origin from around the optic foramen: thence its direction is forwards and inwards as far as the internal orbital margin of the frontal bone, where it is received into a fibro-cartilaginous ring, from which it is reflected as from a pulley. On leaving this ring it is directed from within outwards, passes beneath the superior rectus, and is inserted into the posterior hemisphere of the globe. When it contracts it carries the pupil a little downwards and outwards.

2. The *inferior oblique* arises from the anterior inferior angle of the floor of the orbit. It turns below the globe of the eye and inferior rectus from within outwards, to be inserted by a large tendon into the posterior hemisphere under cover of the external rectus and below the insertion of the superior oblique. Three different nerves supply these muscles: the motor oculi, or third nerve, which supplies the superior, internal, inferior recti and inferior oblique; the fourth, or supra-trochlear, for the exclusive supply of the superior oblique, and the sixth nerve, for the supply of the external rectus.

The space in the orbit unoccupied by the eyeball, its muscles, vessels, nerves, etc., is filled up with soft fat and delicate connective-tissue. Covering the greater part of the sclerotic is the fascia or capsule of Tenon. This is connected with the subjacent sclerotic by fine bundles of connective-tissue, and separated from it by a large lymph-space, which serves the purpose of a synovial membrane or socket in which the globe can readily glide when in movement. The muscles pierce the capsule near their insertions, and receive reflections from it in the form of sheaths, that of the superior oblique being the strongest and most marked. Expansions are given off from the sheaths, which are closely adherent to the muscular substance, and to the margin of the orbit, so limiting the range of their movements. Posteriorly the fascia invests the optic nerve as far as the optic foramen.

STRABISMUS.

OPERATIONS.

Squint, as defined by Donders, is 'a deviation in the direction of the eyes, in consequence of which the two yellow spots receive images from different objects'. The condition may result from paralysis of

one or more of the six ocular muscles (paralytic strabismus), or be due to irregular action, chiefly of the internal or external recti muscles, giving rise to abnormal convergence or divergence of the eyes, and generally associated with and secondary to some error of refraction: hypermetropia, myopia, or astigmatism. Only cases coming under the second category are susceptible of relief by operation, the indications for which cannot be given here. Division, and advancement or readjustment, of the tendons of the internal or external recti, are the operations most frequently required.

Tenotomy of the internal rectus.

The operator stands on the right of the patient, who is placed in the recumbent position. A stop speculum, introduced closed, is used to keep the lids widely apart. The conjunctiva, and sub-conjunctival tissue is caught by toothed forceps, held in the left hand at a point on a level with the lowest portion of the cornea, and midway betwixt it and the caruncle. With straight, blunt pointed scissors, held in the right hand, a small opening is made through the conjunctiva and sub-conjunctival tissue close to the points of the forceps, so exposing the capsule of Tenon. The latter is then pinched up with the forceps, and snipped through to an extent corresponding to the conjunctival wound, thus bringing into view the white shining sclerotic. Still maintaining the hold of the forceps, the point of a strabismus hook is passed through the wound, and insinuated between the tendon and the globe, by depressing the handle downwards and bringing the concavity of the hook forwards: a movement easily accomplished if it be kept on the flat, and close to the sclerotic. The tendon thus caught in the hook is dragged forwards by bringing the handle to the vertical. The hook is now to be transferred to the left hand; with the right the operator gently pushes the scissors through the wound into the interval between the hook and the globe, one blade being directed above the tendon, the other below. The tendon is then divided by a few snips. If this has been done completely, the hook can now be brought outwards nearly to the corneal margin, nothing intervening between the two but conjunctiva and sub-conjunctival tissues.

A pad and bandage should be placed over the eye for a few hours. The pad may be kept wetted with cold water advantageously.

Liebreich, by means of scissors introduced through the conjunctival wound, separates the conjunctiva from the capsule of Tenon 'as far as the semilunar fold, also separating the latter, as well as the caruncle, from the parts lying behind.' The capsule is then opened, and the tendon cut through as described above. This procedure, he affirms, gives greater effect and causes less deformity than the operation first mentioned.

Tenotomy of the external rectus.

The steps of the operation are the same as those followed in division of the internal rectus, except that the incision through the conjunctiva and capsule of Tenon should be made somewhat farther from the cornea, the insertion of the external rectus being farther back than that of the internal rectus.

Re-adjustment or advancement of the tendon of the internal oblique.

This operation is applicable to cases in which the tendon of the internal rectus has become attached too far back after division, or weakened, as in myopia, so leading to a considerable degree of divergence, such divergence not being curable by tenotomy of the external rectus alone. Its object is to advance the tendon to a new attachment nearer the cornea, in order to overcome the deviation outwards of the eye.

There are many different ways of accomplishing this, but the following operation, as recommended by Nettleship, is perhaps one of the simplest and best.

The operation being both painful and tedious, an anæsthetic should always be given. The position of the operator and the patient is the same as given under the operation of tenotomy, and the spring-stopped speculum used to keep the lids apart. The whole width of the tendon is exposed by a vertical incision through the conjunctiva and subconjunctival tissues, at a distance of 4 millimetres from the cornea. The tendon is then divided in the way previously described. Three sutures of fine silk, armed with needles at each end, are passed from within outwards through the tendon with the fascia and conjunctiva covering it, at some little distance from its cut edge (about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch). The muscle flap so constituted is shortened to the extent desired, by cutting off its free edges beyond the sutures, the deep ends of the latter should then be passed through the fascia and conjunctiva close to the corneal margin. The external rectus tendon is now divided in the usual manner, and a thick silk suture passed through the ocular conjunctiva on the outer side of the cornea. Finally, the three sutures are tied, and the globe rolled inwards as far as possible by traction on the stout suture, which can be maintained in position by fixing it to the nose with strapping. The traction suture is not always necessary: if used, it will cut its way out in two or three days. The three sutures should be left in a week. Cold-water pads may be used to combat the resulting pain and swelling.

Pl. 41

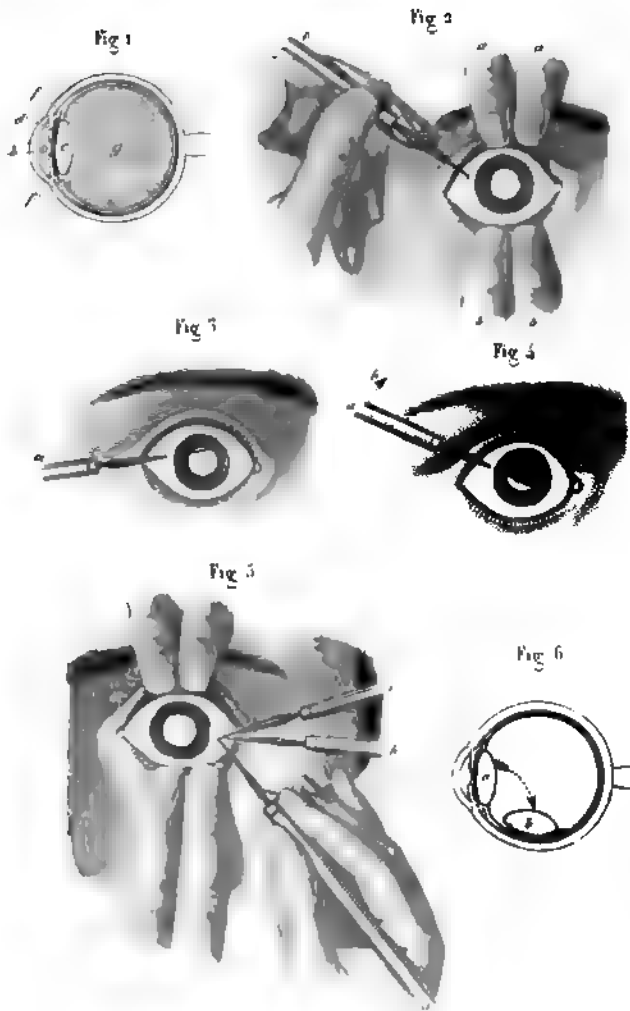


PLATE XLI.

OPERATION FOR CATARACT BY DEPRESSION.

Fig. 1.—*Antero-posterior section of the eyeball.*—*b*, Cornea ; *c*, anterior chamber ; *d*, iris ; *e*, crystalline lens ; *f*, capsule of lens ; *g*, vitreous humour.

Fig. 2.—*Depression of cataract.—First stage (right eye).*—*a, a*, Assistant's fingers raising the upper lid ; *b, b*, operator's fingers pulling lower lid down ; *c*, instrument held in left hand and passed through the sclerotic. The operator's third and fourth fingers are steadied by resting on the cheekbone.

Fig. 3.—*Same operation.—Second stage.*—The needle, *a*, is passed between the lens and the iris ; the concavity of its point is occupied by the upper edge of the lens.

Fig. 4.—*Same operation.—Third stage.—Depression.*—The handle of the needle, *a, b*, being raised, the point is lowered, and presses the lens down into the vitreous humour.

Fig. 5.—*Same operation on the left eye.*—*a*, Position of the needle in the first stage ; *b*, in the second stage ; *c*, in the third stage.

Fig. 6.—*Reclination.*—The lens, *a*, is displaced, *b*, into the vitreous humour.

PLATE XLII.

CATARACT AND ARTIFICIAL PUPIL.

Fig. 1. *Extraction of the cataract. First stage.—Inferior keratotomy.*—*a, a*, Assistant's fingers raising the upper lid; *b, c*, middle and index fingers of operator depressing the lower lid; *d*, right hand of operator holding the cataract knife. The figure represents the instrument when it passes out of the cornea.

Fig. 2.—*Same operation.* The inferior flap completed.

Fig. 3.—*Same operation. Second stage.*—Opening of capsule by cystotome, *a*.

Fig. 4. *Same operation.—Third stage.* Expulsion of cataract. The handle of an instrument presses lightly on the upper lid, while the operator pushes the lower lid gently upwards with his finger, *a*.

Fig. 5.—*Finger armed with Desmoures's ring.* *a*, The ring; *b*, little claws which are fixed into the sclerotic.

Fig. 6. *Oblique keratotomy.* The knife, *a*, is introduced obliquely from above downwards, and from without inwards.

Fig. 7.—*Superior keratotomy.*—The knife, *a*, passed transversely inwards, its edge turned upwards, cuts a superior flap.

Fig. 8. *M. Furnari's operation.*—*a*, Instrument passed from without inwards, into the anterior chamber.

Fig. 9.—*Same operation.*—Crystotrite seizing the opaque lens.

Fig. 10.—*Madden's operation for artificial pupil.*—Crucial incision of iris, and removal of the four resulting angular flaps by angular scissors.

Fig. 11.—*Closure of pupil—Beer's operation.*—A small incision is made in the cornea, a little hook tears the iris and draws the flap into the corneal wound.

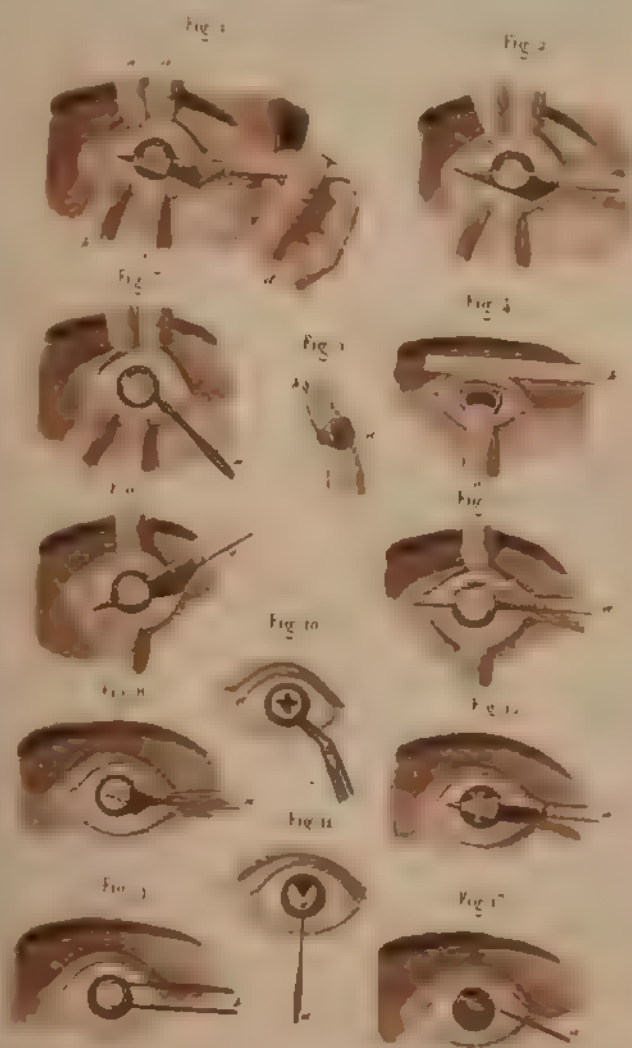
Fig. 12.—*Closure of pupil.—Incision of iris. M. Velpeau's operation.*—A lance-shaped knife, *a*, first pierces the cornea, and then the iris from before backwards, then, coming forwards, passes through the iris and cornea again. The edge of the instrument being brought out below forms a flap of iris and cornea.

Fig. 13. *Detachment of iris.—Scarpa's operation.*—A needle, *a*, introduced through the sclerotic, detaches the iris from above downwards.

OPERATIONS ON THE EYEBALL.

ANATOMY.

We shall confine ourselves to mentioning and shortly describing the parts forming the eyeball, which are of importance as concerning the operations performed on that organ. Passing from the circumference of the organ towards its centre, we find first—



The conjunctiva, a thin vascular membrane : which, having lined the inner surface of the lids, passes over the eyeball to invest all the visible parts of the cornea and sclerotic. At the inner angle of the eye it forms a rather deep cul de sac before passing on to the sclerotic.

The transparent *cornea* is intimately connected with the sclerotic. It is formed of successive layers, between which an instrument may easily slip, if not introduced with decision. It is hard and firm : incisions in it need to be made with very sharp instruments.

The sclerotic stretches from the nerve to the cornea. It is white and tough, resisting and elastic, and must be penetrated by a sudden and confident movement, the point of the instrument being perpendicular to the surface. The muscles of the eyeball are inserted into it.

The choroid lines the inner surface of the sclerotic, and is slightly adherent to it. The membrane is composed of two distinct parts, the inner one formed entirely of pigment, the outer essentially vascular. Between the sclerotic and choroid the ciliary vessels and nerves pass.

The long ciliary arteries are internal and external, passing towards between the choroid and sclerotic in the plane of the transverse diameter. Hence, to avoid wounding them, it is best to pierce the sclerotic above or below the transverse diameter of the eye.

Between the sclerotic, choroid, and iris at the level of the margin of the cornea, is the greyish ring of the ciliary body. It is essentially vascular, containing also a network of nervous, besides muscular fibres. Instruments passed into the eyeball should keep clear of this structure. *The ciliary processes*, folds formed by the inner layer of the choroid, are found behind the iris, they surround the lens, and are in contact with its equator.

The iris, the diaphragm placed between the cornea and the lens, divides the front part of the eye into two chambers—the anterior between itself and the cornea, the posterior between itself and the lens. The lens and the iris are in contact, hence the passage of an instrument between the iris and lens is dangerous to both.

These two chambers communicate by the pupil a circular opening placed in the centre of the iris. The outer margin of the iris is connected with the ciliary circle. The iris floats freely in the eye, directly the pressure of the fluids keeping it in place is disturbed. Care is necessary to avoid wounding the membrane, as, for instance, when penetrating the anterior chamber for extraction of a cataract.

The crystalline lens has the form of a bi-convex lens. It is made up of concentric layers varying in density, becoming more solid on approaching the centre. The external layer is nearly fluid, and is known as '*Morgagni's humour*,' while the innermost part, or nucleus, is of a gummy consistence, easily crushed by the finger. The lens, under pressure, easily separates into triangular segments, the apices being directed to the centre : as these segments may be separately affected

with cataract, or have varying degrees of opacity, in certain forms of this disease, the lens appears stellate, or marbled. The ease with which this organ splits up renders the operation of declination very difficult. It is surrounded by a transparent elastic membrane, known as the capsule of the lens. In cases of milky or lenticular cataract, it is only necessary to lacerate the capsule, to allow the escape of its contents.

Behind the lens is the *vitreous body*, the gelatinous mass which fills the posterior four-fifths of the eyeball. An exceedingly thin membrane (the hyaloid membrane) envelops the vitreous body, except in front, where it divides into two layers, the anterior continued forwards in front of the lens, and known as the zonule of Zinn, or suspensory ligament of the lens: the posterior passing behind the lens.

CATARACT.

Cataract is a total or partial opacity of the crystalline lens, resulting from structural alterations in its component fibres. Such changes rarely affect the whole lens at once, but, beginning in certain regions, may remain limited to them, or spread gradually throughout it. The various forms of cataract are conveniently classified as follows. (1) nuclear: (2) cortical (3) lamellar or zonular: (4) anterior polar or pyramidal: (5) posterior polar. Up to the age of thirty-five all cataracts are 'soft' in consistency, and are so termed; beyond that age the nuclear portion of the lens becomes increasingly firmer, therefore after that period they are said to be 'hard.'

Operations for the removal of cataract are mainly of three kinds, viz.

(1) *Extraction of the whole lens, with or without its capsule, through an incision, limited to the cornea, sclerotic, or involving both those structures.*

(2) *Discission and gradual absorption (needle operation), the anterior portion of the capsule being incised (discission), so allowing access of the aqueous fluid to the lens fibres, thereby rendering them susceptible of absorption.*

(3) *Removal by a suction syringe or curette, after the whole lens has been freely broken up by the operation of discission.*

The last two methods are applicable to soft cataracts only, the hard varieties should always be removed by extraction. The operations of *depression* and *reclination* are obsolete, and should never be practised.

I. OPERATIONS FOR THE REMOVAL OF CATARACT BY EXTRACTION.

The flap operation.

The incision in the cornea, made by a Beer's or Sichel's knife, forms a flap, which may be inferior, oblique, or superior—the three varieties are called inferior, oblique, or superior keratotomy.

Inferior keratotomy (Plate XLII., Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4)

First stage—Incision of cornea (Fig. 1). The patient should be placed on a couch in the recumbent position, with the head somewhat raised—no anæsthetic is required. The operator stands behind the patient's head, holding the knife in the right or left hand, according as the right or left eye is to be operated upon; if, however, he be not ambidextrous, he should stand in front of the patient in order to make the corneal section in the case of the left eye with his right hand. The surgeon raises the upper lid, and controls it with the forefinger, pressing it firmly against the margin of the orbit, using his left hand for the right eye of the patient, and *vice versa*; at the same time, by placing the tip of his middle finger upon the sclerotic on the nasal side of the cornea, he prevents the eyeball from rolling inwards. An assistant depresses the lower lid, maintaining it in that position by holding it firmly against the edge of the orbit, and carefully avoiding any pressure upon the globe. The point of the knife is brought against



the cornea at the level of its equator at $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ inch in front of the sclerotic; a sharp and decided puncture is made into the anterior chamber, then a pause is made to ascertain that the iris is not wounded, after which the handle is carried backwards a little and the point is pushed from without inwards, in the equator of the globe, until a counter-opening of exit is made exactly opposite the point of entrance, the blade of the instrument is to be kept parallel to the plane of the iris all the while. When the point has passed from one side to the other of the cornea, the knife is to be handled most gently, without any sudden movement, that the flap may be cut with its edges exactly parallel to the border of the sclerotic. Too much precipitancy in this stage of the operation leads to risk of wounding the iris and expulsion of the aqueous humour. The muscles, which have contracted spasmodically at the puncture, must, during the completion of the flap, have time to relax, the knife must exactly close the wound it gradually forms, so that it may prevent the escape of the aqueous humour (Fig. 2). When the flap is made the lid is closed, and the patient allowed to rest a while, if not under chloroform.

Second stage.—Division of the capsule (Fig. 3).—The cystotome, held like a pen, is introduced from below upwards, through the corneal wound—then the point, being turned towards the capsule, is made to divide it. This is done gently and without force enough to push back the lens. The ordinary needle can be used in this operation.

Third stage.—Expulsion of the cataract (Fig. 4).—It sometimes happens that after the incision of the capsule, the lens escapes of itself, the globe being compressed by the contraction of the ocular muscles, an accident to be avoided. If this does not happen, it is enough to

press the finger or handle of a knife on the upper lid, when the lens will pass through the pupil into the anterior chamber and slip out through the corneal wound. The escape of the lens can be further assisted by double pressure: one finger on the upper and one on the lower lid. There are sometimes fragments of the lens or capsule remaining in the pupillary field; these must be removed with fine forceps or a curette, lest secondary cataracts should be formed.

Oblique keratotomy.

Wenzel's operation (Fig. 6) —The point of the knife is to enter the cornea at the middle point of the outer and upper fourth, and to make exit at the centre of the inner and lower fourth. This form of operation is more difficult than the last; but the cicatrization of the wound is more rapid, the lower lid is less likely to catch under the flap, and there is less risk of wounding the nose and internal caruncle when making the corneal wound.

Superior keratotomy.

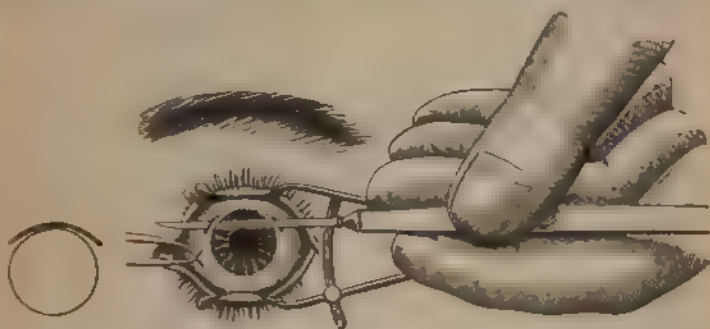
Richter, Wenzel, and Jaeger's operations (Fig. 7) —This is performed just like the oblique and inferior operations. The base of the flap corresponds with the equator of the cornea, and its free edge is upwards. The difficulty of this procedure is greater than that of the two preceding operations; but it has the advantage of less frequently allowing the aqueous humour to escape. Cicatrization is rapid, the flap being supported by the upper lid.

Furnari's operation.—Furnari used a double edged knife, ending in a point slightly curved on the flat, which is employed for opening the capsule. The anterior chamber is opened at one side by the knife, with which the capsule is then incised; then by the corneal wound a pair of fine forceps is passed in, the lens seized and removed (Plate XLII. Figs. 8, 9).

Von Graefe's 'modified linear' or 'peripheral linear' operation.

1—*The Incision.* The patient, fully anesthetized, is placed in the recumbent position, with the head slightly raised. The operator, standing as in the preceding operation, makes the incision with the right or left hand, according as the right or left eye is to be dealt with. The lids are kept apart by a stop speculum, care being taken that no pressure is made by it on the globe. Keeping the eyeball steady by means of fixation forceps or a double hook, which should grasp the conjunctiva at a short distance below the centre of the lower margin of the cornea, the point of a Von Graefe's knife, held with the edge upwards, is made to puncture the sclerotic 1 mm. from the upper and outer margin of the cornea, and 2 mm. below a tangent drawn at the upper end of its vertical meridian. The point is directed towards the

centre of the eyeball until the anterior chamber is reached; then, maintaining the plane of the blade parallel to that of the iris, the operator thrusts the point downwards and inwards until it reaches a spot a little below and internal to the centre of the pupil. The handle should now be depressed to the horizontal: then, inclining it somewhat backwards, a counterpuncture is made at a point on the



THE 'PERIPHERAL LINEAR' INCISION.

inner side of the sclerotic in the same horizontal line with, and exactly corresponding to, the puncture on the outer. Directing the edge slightly forwards, the incision is completed by a series of gentle sawing movements, so that its centre corresponds with the sclero-corneal junction. In dividing the conjunctiva a small flap may be cut from it, which covers the sclero-corneal wound.

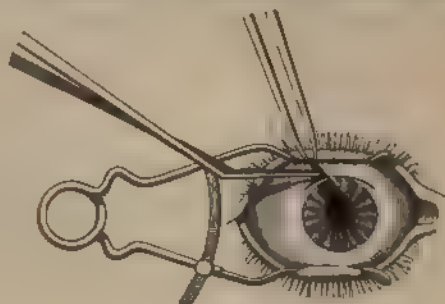
De Wecker makes the section exactly at the sclero-corneal junction, so that it has a height of from 3 to 4 mm.

Streatfield uses a Nischel's knife, and confines the incision to the sclero-corneal junction. He punctures the anterior chamber on the right side, and enlarges the wound from right to left to the required extent by a series of gentle sawing movements; the knife is held in the right hand, and the procedure similar for both eyes.

Other operators make the incision so that it falls below the summit of the cornea, its extremities lying in the sclerotic or sclero-corneal junction.

2. *The Iridectomy.*—In the next stage of the operation a large piece of iris is excised. For this purpose the fixation forceps are given to an assistant, who, if necessary, steadies the eyeball and gently rotates it downwards therewith. The operator, taking the iridectomy forceps in his left hand, introduces them closed, allowing them to open when their points reach the pupillary margin; then, seizing a portion of the iris near the inner edge, he draws it out at the right end of the incision, cuts through the right branch

of the loop vertically with the scissors, and tearing away the iris from its ciliary attachment by gently pulling the loop over to the other angle of the wound, completes the excision by dividing the remaining or left branch of the loop in a similar fashion. If any



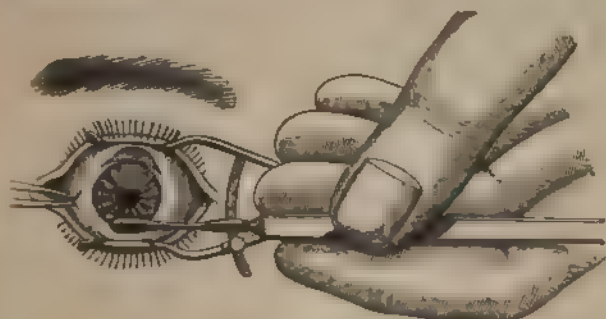
THE IRIDECTOMY.

portion of the iris be caught in the wound, it should be most carefully replaced with the curette. The iridectomy is often performed some weeks prior to the removal of the lens: a *preliminary iridectomy*, the parts being allowed to heal completely in the meantime.

3 *The Laceration of the Capsule*.—To open the lens capsule, the operator again takes the fixation forceps in his left hand, and steadying the eyeball, passes the cystotome on the flat through the wound into the anterior chamber, tears the capsule by drawing the point of the instrument across it in the following manner:—Firstly, from a point on a level with, or a little below, the lower margin of the pupil upwards and inwards towards the periphery of the lens; a second incision to a corresponding extent from the same point upwards and outwards; and lastly, one joining the extremities of the others along the upper border of the lens exposed by the iridectomy, in the direction of the external wound. In using the cystotome the least possible pressure should be made on the lens, otherwise it may very easily be displaced backwards into the vitreous.

4. *Removal of the Lens*.—The final stage of the operation, that of removal of the lens, is accomplished by making gentle but continuous pressure with the back of the curette upon the sclerotic between the fixation forceps and the lower margin of the cornea, in a direction towards the centre of the eyeball. The upper edge of the lens should now make its appearance between the lips of the corneal incision, and then, still maintaining the pressure, the curette must be made to glide upwards over the cornea, following up the lens, as it were, and so facilitating its exit. Small fragments of lens matter remaining may be coaxed out by gently stroking the cornea from below

upwards, or, as recommended by Graefe, the speculum being removed, the operator lightly rubs the lower lid over the cornea in a circular direction, thus loosening the marginal portions of the cortex and expelling them.



REMOVAL OF THE LENS.

If the corneal wound be too small to give exit to the lens, it may be enlarged to the requisite extent with the iris scissors. Should the vitreous escape before the expulsion of the lens, the latter should be lifted out in its capsule by means of a Crichton's scoop passed behind it: if this accident occur directly the section is completed, as it may when the humour is abnormally fluid, it is best to proceed with the iridectomy before using the scoop, unless by so doing the loss of a large quantity would be incurred.

Liebreich's operation. The section is made downwards at an angle of 45 with the horizontal, its lowest point being situate a little below the junction of the middle with the inferior third of the cornea: the puncture and counterpuncture lie in the sclerotic 1 mm. from the margin of the cornea. Iridectomy is not required.



Worland and Lebrun's operation differs from Liebreich's, in that the section is made upwards, and the puncture and counterpuncture lie in the sclero-corneal junction.

Pagenstecher's operation—A large sclerotic incision is made 1 mm. behind the corneal margin, and a wide piece of the iris excised. A scoop is then introduced behind the capsule of the lens, and the latter removed, together with the capsule, by traction.

Macnamara's operation.—A large incision is made just within the corneal margin on the temporal side with a short wide-bladed triangular knife. A scoop is then passed through the wound as far as the outer margin of the pupil, its lower rounded extremity thus resting upon the anterior capsule of the lens immediately within the pupillary

edge. The scoop is now withdrawn slightly, still keeping its extremity in contact with the lens capsule, so drawing outwards the edge of the iris, and allowing pressure to be made on the outer edge of the lens. The pressure being continued, the lens tilts over, and as the scoop is again passed inwards, is caught in the concavity of the instrument. The lens with its capsule can then be drawn into the anterior chamber, and removed through the corneal incision.

II. OPERATIONS FOR THE REMOVAL OF CATARACT BY DISCUSSION AND GRADUAL ABSORPTION.

The needle operation.

Anæsthesia is usually unnecessary except in the case of young children. Previously to the operation the pupil should be fully dilated by atropine. The position of the operator and patient are the same as described in the foregoing operation for cataract.

The lids are kept apart by a stop-speculum. Steadying the globe with the fixation forceps, which should be made to seize the conjunctiva and sub-conjunctival tissues just below the margin of the cornea, or at a point opposite to that at which the needle is introduced, the operator plunges the cataract needle somewhat obliquely through the



THE NEEDLE OPERATION.

cornea, at a point 2 to 3 mm from its margin, preferably at the upper and outer part. The point of the needle is then directed towards the centre of the pupil, and the anterior capsule of the lens with the subjacent superficial portions of the latter incised and broken up to the required extent, by a series of short superficial incisions converging towards the centre of the lens. The needle is then quickly withdrawn. Care should be taken not to wound the iris or the posterior capsule of the lens. The cataract must not be too freely delacerated at the first 'needling,' since it is safer to repeat the operation several times at intervals of two or three months, than to do too much at one sitting. Subsequent 'discission' operations are performed in

a similar way and with like precautions, but the needle may be used more freely. A small round nebula marks the site of each needle-puncture of the cornea. Should the operation be followed by severe iritis or irido-cyclitis with increased tension, set up by the irritation of the swollen lens, the cataract should at once be removed either by the method of linear extraction or suction.

The needle operation is resorted to when the pupil has become occluded by false membrane formed after the extraction of a cataract, the false membrane and capsule being simply torn across by means of a fine needle. If the false membrane be very tough, two needles may be used instead of one, an expedient devised by Bowman. The false membrane is steadied by one needle held in the left hand, the second needle being utilized to tear it across and open up a central aperture: or the points of the two needles may be made to cross each other, and then be gently forced as under, so making a rent in the membrane: by this method all traction on the ciliary body is avoided.

The linear operation (Gibson).

This operation, most conveniently described here, has for its object the evacuation of the bulk of a soft cataractous lens through a small corneal incision. The procedure may be divided into two stages, the cataract being freely broken up with a needle some days previously to its evacuation through a corneal incision, or the operation may be completed at one sitting. If after the discussion the eye remain quiet, the softened lens matter may advantageously be left to itself up to about the sixth or eighth day; but should inflammatory symptoms appear, or the eyeball-tension become increased, the lens matter should be evacuated without delay.

Prior to the operation the pupil should be fully dilated with atropine. An anæsthetic should be administered, the lids kept apart by a stop-speculum, and the globe steadied by means of fixation forceps. An incision is made on the temporal side of the cornea with a keratome or broad needle, well within its margin, and from 4 to 6 mm. in length. If the bulk of the lens still remain within the capsule, the latter may be incised, and the lens broken up by means of the broad needle before withdrawing it. Then by gentle pressure upon the outer lip of the wound with the curette, the aqueous fluid mingled with the softened lens matter is caused to flow out through the incision. Small remaining particles of lens matter not flowing away with the stream should be followed up with the curette, the point of the instrument being dipped beneath them, so that they may escape along its groove. The operator should be cautious in manipulating the curette, lest he rupture the posterior capsule of the lens, an accident which is followed by a protusion of the vitreous into the anterior chamber, and maybe through the wound. If the iris should be caught between the

edges of the latter, it must be gently replaced with the curette, or, if this cannot be accomplished, an iridectomy including the prolapsed portion should be performed. Some operators prefer to excise a portion of the iris in any case.

III. OPERATION FOR THE REMOVAL OF CATARACT BY THE METHOD OF SUCTION.

Suction operation.

This operation is of a similar nature to that of *linear extraction*, but an exhausting syringe is used for the purpose of drawing off the softened lens substance from the anterior chamber. The form of syringe most commonly in vogue is that of Bowman, in which the suction-power is obtained by raising a sliding piston, so contrived that it can be worked by the thumb of the right hand, whilst the tube is steadied by means of the first three fingers. In Teale's syringe, the suction-power is supplied by the mouth applied to a piece of flexible india-rubber tubing, to which a glass mouthpiece is attached. Both kinds of syringe are fitted with a fine metal canula, slightly curved, having a free opening in its concave side close to its point.

The patient should be anesthetized, the eye fully atropised, and fixed as in the preceding operation. An oblique puncture is made in the cornea on the temporal side 2 to 3 mm. from the sclerotic, with a broad needle or keratome; and if a needling operation has not previously been done, the capsule freely incised therewith. The nozzle of the syringe or canula is then passed into the anterior chamber, and the broken-up lens matter gently sucked into it. Whilst following up the fragments of lens, the instrument must in no case be passed behind the iris, and the same precautions must be taken in manipulating it as are given for the use of the curette in *linear extraction*. The lens may be broken up with a needle some days before the suction operation, and in lamellar cataract this should always be done; but if inflammatory changes are set up by the dissection, the softened lens matter should at once be evacuated, for reasons already assigned.

OPERATIONS FOR ARTIFICIAL PUPIL.

Cheselden first made an artificial pupil in 1728; since that time the operation has undergone many modifications. The fact is accounted for by the number of different conditions calling for this treatment. The surgeon will be guided in his choice of operation by the affection he has to treat.

IRIDECTOMY.

The operation of iridectomy, or excision of a portion of the iris, is usually performed:—(1) with the object of making a new or artificial

pupil for the direct improvement of vision; (2) as a part of the treatment of certain forms of actively progressing disease, *e.g.* glaucoma, ulcer of cornea with hypopyon, iritis, etc., (3) with a view to establishing a channel of communication between the anterior and posterior chambers in cases of occlusion or exclusion of the pupil; or (4) as a step in the operation for cataract by extraction.

The position and size of the portion of iris to be removed vary with the object to be attained by the operation. Thus, in glaucoma it is usual to remove a large portion of the upper segment of the iris, quite up to its ciliary attachment (the resulting gap being under cover of the upper lid, through a sclerotic incision 1 to 2 mm. from the corneal margin. If for the purpose of making an artificial pupil for visual purposes, the portion excised should be small, and often the pupillary or inner portion only is taken away, the ciliary attachment being left intact. The most favourable position for a new pupil designed for the improvement of vision is downwards and inwards, or directly downwards downwards and outwards less so, and directly upwards the most unfavourable. If the new pupil is intended to be but slightly eccentric, the pupillary portion of the iris being alone excised, the incision should be confined to the cornea; but if marginal, so necessitating the removal of the ciliary attachment, the incision should lie in the sclerotic, just outside the sclero-corneal junction.

Operation.—The patient, fully anesthetized, is placed in the recumbent position, upon a table or couch of convenient height to the operator, who stands behind the patient's head. The lids are kept



IRIDECTOMY FOR ARTIFICIAL PUPIL.

apart by means of a stop-speculum, and the globe steadied with fixation forceps, which should grasp the conjunctival and sub-conjunctival tissues near the cornea, at a point diametrically opposite to that at which the puncture is to be made. A keratome is gently plunged through the cornea or sclerotic, as the case may be; pushed onwards into the anterior chamber until the incision is of the length required, then

steadily withdrawn. When the point of the keratome appears in the anterior chamber, the handle should be somewhat depressed, so that the blade is tilted forwards and brought into a plane in front of and parallel to that of the iris, otherwise both the latter and the lens may be wounded. Laying the fixation forceps aside, or entrusting them to an assistant, who, if necessary, gently rotates the cornea downwards, being careful not to make any pressure with them upon the globe, the operator passes the iris forceps closed into the anterior chamber, until their points approach the margin of the pupil, when they are allowed to open and made to grasp or fold the iris near the pupillary edge. The loop of iris is then drawn out through the wound, and cut off close to the cornea by a single snip with the iris scissors; or if it is desired to excise a larger segment, as in glaucoma, the loop is divided first on the right side, then gently drawn over to the left angle of the incision, so tearing away its ciliary attachment, and finally the remaining portion or left branch of the loop is cut through vertically with the scissors. If any portion of the iris be caught between the edges of the wound, it must be carefully replaced by the curette.

Some surgeons prefer a Graefe's linear cataract knife to the keratome, especially when the anterior chamber is shallow, the risk of wounding the lens being thus lessened. Streetfeild uses a Sichel's knife.

Tyrrrel's hook may be used instead of the iris forceps, especially in those cases requiring a small artificial pupil for the improvement of vision. The hook is passed into the anterior chamber 'on the flat,' until its point reaches beyond the margin of the pupil; then the extremity is turned backwards and withdrawn a little, so catching the edge of the iris. When this is accomplished, the end of the hook is turned towards the cornea, and with the engaged iris drawn out of the wound. As soon as the hook is clear of the latter, the loop of iris is snipped off close to the globe with the scissors held in readiness for so doing.

Brudenell Carter cuts out a V-shaped piece of the iris, having its base towards the natural pupil, its apex towards the ciliary border of the iris. De Wecker's scissors, with closed blades, are introduced through a very small corneal incision, immediately in front of the plane of the iris; as soon as the blunt extremities of their blades reach the pupillary area, they are suffered to expand. As the blades open, an escape of aqueous lifts a plait of iris between their edges, this being excised as they are closed. He has found no difficulty in removing the detached portion of iris from the anterior chamber.

IRIDODESIS.

The object of this operation, devised by George Critchett, is to make a small pear-shaped artificial pupil, having its broader end

towards the margin, its narrower towards the circumference of the natural pupil, this being regarded as the most favourable shape and position of a new pupil intended for the direct improvement of vision. With this view, a plaît of iris is drawn out through a small corneal incision placed just in front of the sclero-corneal junction, and through a loop of fine silk encircling the wound. Whilst the operator holds in position the portion of iris so drawn out, an assistant tightens the silk loop, and completes the knot, the two ends of which are cut off short. The strangulated loop of iris soon shrinks, and finally drops off. A new pupil of the required shape and position is thus obtained; the inclusion of the iris in the scar of the corneal wound, however, often leads to severe irritation or irido-cyclitis, and has been followed by sympathetic ophthalmia of the other eye.

IRIDOTOMY (IRITOMY).

By this operation, as practised by De Wecker in certain cases of lamellar cataract, a small slit-like pupil may be made by cutting the iris across radially with scissors specially devised for the purpose, which are introduced through a small corneal incision. The latter must be diametrically opposite—usually upwards and outwards—to the spot at which it is proposed to divide the iris. The scissors are introduced closed into the anterior chamber, and passed across the pupil until that portion of the pupillary margin of the iris is reached, which is to be incised. The scissors are then allowed to open, and the blunt-pointed blade is insinuated between the iris and lens, the remaining blade lying in front of the iris. The latter is incised to the required extent, and the instrument withdrawn. The wound in the iris gapes considerably, leaving a V-shaped notch or slit, admirably adapted for the object intended. The danger of wounding the lens, however, is so great, that by some surgeons the operation is deemed unjustifiable, and its applicability limited to cases in which the lens is absent. Such cases are those in which the pupil is occluded by false membrane, or excluded, the iris being dragged upon by the cicatrix, as a result of secondary iritis after the extraction of cataract. For the purpose of making a new pupil under these circumstances, the iridotomy scissors are introduced through a corneal incision, preferably placed in the upper and outer parts, and 2 or 3 mm. from the sclero-corneal junction, and the sharp-pointed blade thrust through the iris and false-membrane as far as may be necessary. The latter are then divided by a single snip and the scissors withdrawn. The incision in the iris should, if possible, be at right angles to the direction of the radial fibres, so that the cut edges may retract, leaving a slit like aperture. In other cases a second cut may be made at an acute angle with the first, so as to include a V-shaped piece of the iris, which may be removed or allowed to atrophy and shrink.

The following operations conveniently described here are applicable to some forms of glaucoma.

SCLEROTOMY.

The pupil is contracted completely by the instillation of eserine solution: an anæsthetic is administered, and the lids kept apart by means of a stop-speculum. A linear cataract knife is thrust through the sclerotic at a point from 1 to 2 mm. distant from the upper and outer part of the corneal margin, passed across the anterior chamber in front of the iris, and a counterpuncture made at a point exactly opposite and corresponding to the first puncture, as if it was intended to make a sclerotic extraction flap 2 mm. in height. The puncture and counterpuncture are then enlarged in a direction upwards by a series of gentle sawing movements very slowly executed, and without displacing the iris, over which the flat of the knife glides, until the length of each incision equals one third of the circumference of the flap, the middle third, together with the conjunctiva and sub-conjunctival tissues covering it, being left undivided. The fixation forceps are now laid aside and the knife slowly withdrawn, the iris being maintained in position by very gentle pressure upon it with the back and 'flat' of the instrument during the escape of the aqueous. The whole operation must be done very deliberately, otherwise a rapid escape of the aqueous from the punctures will give rise to a permanent prolapse of the iris: if this accident occur, the prolapsed portion should be excised, the operation being converted into a peripheral iridectomy.

PARACENTESIS OF THE VITREOUS CHAMBER.

Cowell inserts the point of a Beer's cataract knife to the extent of 5 mm. through the conjunctiva, sclerotic, choroid, and retina, in the interval between the ocular attachments of the superior and external recti.

OPERATIONS PRACTISED UPON THE CORNEA.

INSPECTION OF THE CORNEA.

If an adult, the patient should be seated in a chair, exposed to a good light, the operator standing behind, and supporting the patient's head against his chest: if a child or baby, he should be seated, so that he may grasp the little patient's head between his knees, whilst a nurse holds the body of the child in her lap, and restrains its movements. In either case, if owing to spasm a good view of the cornea cannot be obtained by separating the lids with the fingers, they may be held apart by means of Desmarre's retractors, the use of which prevents any pressure being made upon the globe. A few whiffs of chloroform will often be found useful in quieting the child, and facilitating the proceeding.

REMOVAL OF A FOREIGN BODY FROM THE CORNEA.

The position of the operator and the patient as for inspection of the cornea. If an adult, the patient should be directed to look towards some distant object, so that the position of the cornea may be such that a clear view of the foreign body is obtained. If the latter, a particle of iron or steel for instance, be but partly imbedded in the cornea, it may often be easily removed by means of a little roll of blotting paper. If it be situated deeper in the substance of the cornea, the lids should be kept apart by the index and ring fingers of the left hand, whilst the globe is steadied by the tip of the middle finger; the foreign body is then picked out by means of a sharp needle or spud. If the particle has penetrated so deeply that it lies close to or has wounded Descemet's membrane, an attempt to remove it in this way may result in a perforation of the anterior chamber, or the foreign body may be pushed onwards until it falls into the latter. To avoid these contingencies, a broad needle should be passed into the anterior chamber, and pressed against that part of the cornea in which the foreign body is impacted, so as to support it from behind, whilst the particle is being pricked out with a needle, spud, or forceps, from the front.

When a foreign body is lodged in the anterior chamber, it should be removed in all recent cases, and in those of old standing if its presence causes irritation. The original wound should be utilized for the purpose if possible and desirable; if not, a fine pair of forceps should be introduced into the anterior chamber through a suitably placed corneal incision. It is often necessary to excise the portion of iris on which the foreign body lies.

Particles of iron or steel can often be most conveniently removed from the anterior or posterior chamber, the iris, the lens, or other parts of the eye, by means of Snell's electro-magnet. When possible, the point of the instrument should be introduced through the original wound; but if this has closed or is inconveniently placed, a fresh incision through the cornea or sclerotic, as the case may be, must be made for the purpose.

PARACENTESIS OF THE ANTERIOR CHAMBER.

This operation is frequently indicated in certain cases of ulcer of the cornea with hypopyon: the purulent contents of the anterior chamber are evacuated, the intra-ocular tension diminished, and immediate relief from the severe pain common to such cases often afforded.

Operation.—The patient should be anaesthetized if necessary, and the lids kept apart by a stop-speculum. The globe is steadied by fixation forceps, which should catch the conjunctival and sub-conjunctival tissues near the edge of the cornea, at a point directly opposite to

that at which the puncture is to be made. A paracentesis needle, or triangular keratome, is then thrust through the lowest part of the sclero-corneal junction into the anterior chamber. The puncture should be made at right angles to the surface of the cornea, otherwise the blade of the instrument may be pushed between its lamellæ: when the point becomes visible in the anterior chamber, it should be directed towards the posterior surface of the cornea, so that the plane of the blade may lie parallel to, but in front of, that of the iris, or both the latter and the lens may be wounded. The keratome should be thrust onwards into the anterior chamber until the external wound is 3 or 4 mm. in length, then slowly withdrawn, its point being still directed towards the back of the cornea. If the contents of the anterior chamber do not readily follow the withdrawal of the needle or keratome, the lips of the wound may be gently separated by means of a small blunt probe. The latter should be used daily, as long as it may be necessary to keep the wound open. Should a portion of iris prolapse into the wound, it should be gently replaced by means of a blunt spatula or curette, if this cannot be accomplished, the prolapsed portion should be seized with the iris forceps and cut off.

Saemisch's operation.—This operation is practised in cases of corneal ulcer, with or without hypopyon, but accompanied by a considerable amount of surrounding purulent infiltration, and in certain cases of localized abscess of the cornea.

Operation.—The patient, if necessary, is anesthetized; placed in the recumbent posture, the eyelids being kept apart by a stop-speculum, and the globe steadied by fixation forceps. A horizontal incision is made, passing through the whole thickness of the cornea, traversing the base of the ulcer, and extending about 1 mm. into the comparatively healthy tissue on either side; so facilitating the escape of pus infiltrating the cornea around, and evacuating the contents of the anterior chamber. This is accomplished by puncturing the sound corneal tissue on one or the other side of the ulcer with a Graefe's or Beer's cataract knife, the cutting edge being directed forwards. As soon as the point of the knife has entered the anterior chamber, the handle is depressed to the horizontal, so that the back of the blade lies in a plane in front of and parallel to that of the iris. The point is then carried across the anterior chamber beneath the floor of the ulcer, and a counter-puncture made in the sound tissue on the side opposite to that of the puncture, the section being completed by cutting through the affected corneal tissue between the puncture and counter-puncture. The wound may be reopened daily, by means of a blunt probe, until suppuration ceases.

SCRAPING CORNEAL ULCERS.

Frequently good results are obtained by scraping away the sloughing tissues of the floor and edges of the ulcer by means of a small scoop. This method of treatment may be employed in conjunction with Saemisch's operation, or that of paracentesis.

TATTOOING THE CORNEA.

An anæsthetic is necessary. The eyelids are held apart by a stop-speculum, and the globe steadied by a fixation forceps. To prevent the tears from flowing over the cornea during the operation, a sponge is pressed firmly over the upper and outer portion of the globe. A number of closely set scratches or punctures are made over the leucoma or portion of the cornea to be tattooed, with a needle, or a bundle of needles; indian ink, in the form of a powder or a thick fluid, is then thoroughly rubbed over the part scarified. A single sitting is usually sufficient, but in the case of a large leucoma, the operation must be repeated at intervals of a few days, until the whole of its surface is dyed black.

CONICAL CORNEA.

Operations for the relief of this condition are practised with a view to diminishing or flattening out the abnormal curvature of the cornea, so lessening the high degree of accompanying irregular myopic astigmatism. This object is accomplished by making a wound at the apex of the cone, of such a kind that the scar tissue resulting therefrom shall, by its contraction, reduce the sharpness of the corneal curvature to the required extent.

1. *Graefe's operation*.—Graefe excised or shaved off the apex of the cone without entering the anterior chamber; he then applied a fine crayon of mitigated nitrate of silver to the wound, at intervals of a day or two for a variable period, the resulting ulceration being followed by the formation of contractile cicatricial tissue. Soelberg Wells scraped off a circular area of the epithelium and the superficial layer of the cornea at the apex of the cone with the point of a broad needle, thereby avoiding the risk, inseparable from Graefe's procedure, of penetrating the cornea. Mitigated nitrate of silver was subsequently applied to the raw surface at intervals of from three to six days, until 'a slight, faintly yellowish infiltration was formed, with but a moderate degree of pericorneal injection.' In either case, if the resulting opacity interferes with vision, an artificial pupil must be made.

2. *Bateman's operation* consists in the removal of a circular piece, comprising the epithelium and superficial layers from the apex of the cone, by means of a small drill or trephine* especially devised for the

* Soelberg Wells, "Diseases of Eye," p. 144, 3rd edition.

purpose. He directs that the trephine should not be 'carried quite through the cornea,' but 'withdrawn when it has nearly reached the membrane of Descemet.' The circular piece included by the trephine is then seized with fine forceps and dissected off with a broad needle. 'The floor thus left immediately bulges like a herma, and it is then either punctured at its centre, or a small central portion of it is excised, the object being to allow temporary drainage of the aqueous, and thus promote contraction of the cornea, without the risk of anterior synechia, for the small orifice made ought to correspond with the centre of the pupil, and, to ensure accuracy in this respect, he suggests the use of eserine ("Calabar bean") before operating. If during the ensuing two or three weeks the aqueous is found to have reaccumulated, the central point is again opened at intervals of a few days, no pain or irritation being thereby occasioned.'

3. The operation now most commonly practised is to cut off the apex of the cone, the anterior chamber being entered and to leave the wound to close. The small piece of cornea may be removed by means of small trephines, or by knives of various shapes. One of the simplest methods of accomplishing this purpose is that recommended by Brudenell Carter. He uses a sharp, narrow iridectomy knife, the point of which is made to transfix the summit of the cone, and as the knife is pushed on, its sides will complete the excision of the portion of cornea which remains in front of the blade, and which, if left partially attached, may be completely removed by scissors. The opening into the anterior chamber should not, at the outside, be a line in diameter, and should seldom exceed half a line. Prior to the operations, and subsequently, the eye should be thoroughly atropised. After all such operations, an iridectomy should be performed behind that portion of cornea which is clearest, and approaches nearest to the normal in curvature. The resulting leucoma, if unsightly, may be tattooed with Indian-ink.'

PERITOMY.

The object of this operation, applicable to certain cases of pannus, is to divide and obliterate the dilated and tortuous vessels continuous with those of the limbus conjunctivæ, which ramify in the sub-epithelial tissue of the cornea, and are characteristic of the condition.

Operation—The patient being anaesthetized, the lids are kept apart by a stop speculum, and the globe steadied with the fixation forceps. With a knife or a pair of curved scissors, a circular incision is made through the conjunctiva all round the cornea, concentric with and at a distance of 3 to 4 mm. from its margin. The zone of conjunctiva thus included between this incision and the margin of the cornea, together with the sub-conjunctival tissue corresponding thereto, is dissected up with scissors and forceps as close as possible to the edge

of the cornea, so as to completely bare the surface of the subjacent sclerotic. Small portions of sub-conjunctival tissue remaining adherent to the latter may be scraped off with the edge of a cataract knife or keratome.

The raw surface is left to heal, a ring of comparatively avascular cicatricial tissue replacing that removed, so obliterating the vessels extending from the limbus into the cornea, and preventing, to some extent, the formation of new vessels having the same course.

PTERYGIUM.

Operations for Removal.

1. *Transplantation (Dexmaur's operation).*—The pterygium is first dissected up from its apex, detaching it from the cornea, and separating it from the conjunctiva as far as its base. It is then transplanted into a cleft or incision in the conjunctiva of corresponding dimensions, placed near and parallel to the lower edge of the cornea, and fixed in its new position by fine silk sutures. The cut edges of the conjunctiva are also united by fine sutures.

2. *Excision.* The pterygium may be completely excised after carefully abscising the corneal portion, the lines of incision running along the upper and lower margins of the mass should converge towards each other beyond its base, so that the resulting wound assumes a rhomboidal shape. The edges of the wound are united by fine silk sutures.

3. *Removal by ligatures.*—Two needles, each threaded with a double silk ligature, are passed beneath the pterygium, one near the base, the other as close to the margin of the cornea as possible. The ligatures are then tied tightly and left in situ; the greater portion of the pterygium, namely, that between the base and the margin of the cornea, is strangulated thereby, and in due time falls off, or may be removed with the forceps.

ENUCLEATION OF THE EYEBALL.

Operation.—The operator stands either behind or in front of the patient's head, as may be most convenient. The patient, lying in the recumbent position, should be anesthetized, and the eyelids kept apart by a stop-speculum. With curved scissors and forceps the conjunctiva is cut through all round, and as close as possible to, the margin of the cornea. The capsule of Tenon is then opened, and the strabismus hook thrust in turn beneath the tendons of the recti muscles, which are divided between the hook and the globe by a free use of the scissors. The speculum should now be pressed backwards to some extent into the

cavity of the orbit, a manoeuvre which causes the globe to start forwards, so facilitating the division of the optic nerve. This is accomplished by passing the scissors deeply into the orbit, either from the inner or the outer side of the globe, but with their concavity towards the latter; as the scissors pass round the posterior surface of the globe, their blades are opened a little and pushed onwards until they are felt to grip the optic nerve—easily recognised by its resistance and thickness—which is divided by a single snip. The operation is completed by dividing the tendons of the oblique muscles and any other strands of tissue remaining attached to the globe, close to the sclerotic. Another method, which has the advantage of being quicker in execution, but does not leave so good a stump as the foregoing operation, is practised as follows.—the conjunctiva and sub-conjunctival tissues are cut through over the attachment of the external rectus muscle, and the tendon divided; the scissors are carried through the incision with their concavity towards the globe, and the optic nerve severed; the posterior pole of the globe can then be brought forwards by seizing it with a pair of hooked forceps, and the remaining conjunctival, fascial, and tendinous attachments cut through with the scissors as close as possible to the sclerotic. Bleeding is readily stopped by the firm pressure of a small sponge stuffed into the cavity of the orbit; this is removed after a few minutes, and replaced by a tight compress or pad of small sponges overlaid with cotton-wool, which should be allowed to remain in position for six or eight hours.

It is a point of importance not to remove any more of the conjunctiva than is absolutely necessary: some operators unite the cut edges of the conjunctiva with fine silk sutures. The difficulty of the operation is enhanced when the eyeball is ruptured, shrunken, or flaccid; or when old inflammatory adhesions unite it to surrounding parts. Should the globe be enlarged to such an extent that it will not pass through the palpebral aperture, it will be necessary either to widen the latter by dividing the outer commissure of the lids, or to lessen the bulk of the eyeball by evacuating some of its fluid contents. In cases of malignant disease of the globe, the optic nerve should be divided as far back as possible.

FITTING AN ARTIFICIAL EYE.

The stump left after an extirpation having completely healed, a well-fitting enamel or celluloid eye is obtained. The upper lid is raised while the most convex part of the enamel eye is passed underneath it, then the lower lid is drawn down till the lower edge of the eye slips over it. It should not be left in place for a long time at first; the stump becomes in time accustomed to its presence. If the orbit holds it too loosely, it must be replaced by a larger one.

The enamel eye is removed by means of a blunt gold or silver probe

Pl 45

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 2 bis

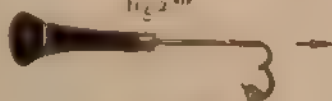
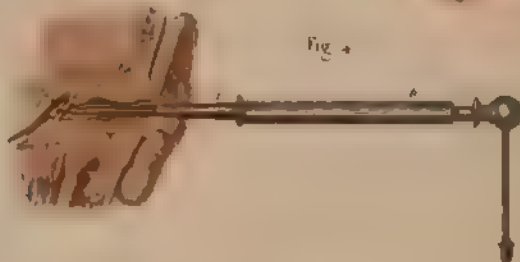


Fig 4



APPENDIX

bent into a hook; the instrument is passed between the eye and the lower lid drawn down at the time); a gentle lever movement raises the eye, and it glides out of the orbit by its own weight. To avoid breakage, it may be caught in a pocket-handkerchief held to receive it.

PLATE XLIII.

OPERATIONS ON THE EAR.

Fig. 1.—Section showing the (angular) relative direction of the Eustachian tube and external auditory passage. *a*, inferior turbinated bone; *b*, middle turbinated bone; *c*, opening of the Eustachian tube at the level of the attachment of the lower bone; *d*, first angle in the Eustachian tube, which from this point turns more directly outwards; *e*, membrana tympani; *f*, external auditory canal, which, passing from within outwards, completes in the horizontal plane the arc of the course of the Eustachian tube; *g*, internal carotid.

Fig. 2. *Perforation of the lobule of the ear.*—*a*, Trocar; *b*, cork applied behind the lobule to make counter-pressure.

Fig. 2, *bis*.—Trocar for this operation, and for introducing the rings.

Fig. 3.—*Excision of a polypus of the external ear.*

Fig. 4. *Perforation of the membrana tympani.*—*a*, *b*, Deleau's perforator; *c*, membrana tympani.

OPERATIONS ON THE EXTERNAL EAR.

Perforation of the lobule.

This operation, of which the object is to attach earrings, may be performed with a lady's stilette or other pointed instrument. It is customary to use a small trocar (Fig. 2, *bis*), whose canula bears a small movable point; a cork is also required. First deaden sensation in the lobule by pinching it sharply with the finger; then place the cork behind the lobule, holding both with the left hand, and pass the trocar through the ear into the cork. The cork is then removed with the point of the trocar in it, the canula is withdrawn after it has received a lead wire or silk thread, which is thus drawn through the wound, tied in a loop, and left until the opening has healed and become a permanent one.

Wounds of the external ear, and ofoplasty.

Simple wounds unite very well by first intention with the support of sutures carried through the whole thickness of the ear.

Otoplasty is seldom applicable, except when wounds of the ear have been attended with much loss of substance (see 'Blepharoplasty'). In all cases the repairing flap of skin will be so arranged that its dermal surface is outwards.

Foreign bodies in the auditory canal.

It would be hard to name all the foreign substances which may be found obstructing this canal, but they come under two classes :

1. Those which form in the ear, hard or soft wax, pus, blood-clots, etc.

2. Bodies from without.

Extraction of foreign bodies may be effected by syringing with warm water ; the auricle should be drawn upwards and outwards, and the stream of water injected along the upper wall of the external auditory meatus. The water thus gets behind the foreign body, and in most instances easily removes the obstruction. Sometimes, however, it is necessary to use curettes, or forceps, whose curves and whose sizes are suitable to the direction of the auditory canal. The surgeon will choose his mode of proceeding according to the form, hardness, or softness, etc., of the foreign substance. By drawing the external ear (with the left hand) upwards and outwards the curves of the canal are somewhat straightened, and the entrance of instruments rendered easier. The canal should also be well oiled, and the introduction of a speculum will help to dilate the soft parts and facilitate the use of instruments for breaking up the impacted body more easily. It is well to remember that in the adult the vertical diameter of the canal is greater than the transverse. We must, therefore, pass instruments along the floor to insinuate them more easily under the foreign body. In children, on the other hand, the horizontal diameter is greater than the vertical. In the second place, the tympanic membrane slopes downwards and inwards, which must be remembered, that the drum may not be wounded, and that the foreign body be not pushed back into the angle which the membrane makes with the anterior wall of the passage.

Thickened wax and similar substances can be softened and expelled by injections of lukewarm water.

Polypus of the auditory meatus.

Aural polypi are, as a rule, the result of long-standing otorrhœa, often following scarlet fever, measles, or injury to the drum-head. These growths arise in most cases from the walls of the tympanic cavity, making their way through a perforation in the membrana tympani. They vary in structure ; the mucous most frequently occur, the firm fibromata are less common, and the rarest are gelatinous myxomata.

Polypi may be removed or destroyed by ligature, excision, torsion and cauterization. The nature, colour, and size of the polyp will indicate to the surgeon which proceeding to adopt.

Ligature can be done directly or by means of Desautel's aëriseur, a slip-knot being passed over a pedunculated polypus, but perhaps the best instrument to use, is the snare introduced by Sir William Wilde. But after removal, as the growths are liable to recur, it is necessary to apply some strong caustic, such as nitrate of silver (480 grains to ℥i.), to the pedicle or root of the polypus.

It is necessary also to get rid of the viscid matter poured out from the spongy mucous membrane of the tympanic cavity, for until this is removed the constant irritation caused will prevent healing, and tends to the rapid growth and return of the polypus. Perfect and frequent cleansing is necessary in the treatment of these cases.

Absence and obstruction of the auditory meatus.

Congenital absence of the canal, resulting from contact of the bony walls, is beyond the surgeon's powers to relieve. But when a membrane (of variable density, situated more or less deeply in the canal, obliterates it, the obstacle may be removed by puncture, incision, or cauterization. It will always be prudent to begin with an exploratory puncture, to prove the presence of a canal behind the membrane: if then the hearing is improved by that puncture, it should be enlarged by a crucial incision and the flaps dissected off. Some dilating body, or sponge tent, should be afterwards passed into the artificial opening, to keep it from closing while the wound heals.

Hurd and Bonafond have successfully used cauterization with nitrate of silver to destroy deeply-placed membranes.

If the duct be stopped up by the thickness of the lining membrane, it should be opened by dilators, such as catgut, sponge, and tangle tents, etc., which are subsequently replaced by a gold or ivory tube, to keep the canal properly expanded.

Whatever method is used, the surgeon should proceed with care, to avoid injury to the middle ear.

Enlargement of the osseous wall.

The introduction of small ivory bougies, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch long, is very useful in these cases.

Ossæous tumours of the meatus.

Aural exostoses are not uncommon, several forms are met with. The most common is a pedunculated growth of bone, arising as the result of some inflammatory process, it often is associated with otorrhœa, and occasionally is found after the removal of a polypus.

This exostosis may be removed by wire. Ivory exostoses are found

more commonly in men than in women. They arise generally as round tumours with a broad base; their development is slow, and they occur in healthy subjects. They resemble ivory in consistence, and are covered with white smooth skin. They are made up of extremely hard and dense bone, and the American dental engine is the only instrument capable of penetrating them. This instrument can now be used with safety, but the greatest caution is necessary. A steel guard should be placed in position behind the growth to prevent any risk of the drill slipping when in motion.

OPERATIONS ON THE MIDDLE EAR.

(Plate XXXVIII., Fig. 1, and Plate XLIII., Figs. 1 and 4.)

Perforation of the membrana tympani.

This operation is intended to admit air to the middle ear when deafness is caused by permanent stoppage of the Eustachian tube. It may be performed by puncture, excision, or canterization.

1. *Puncture*.—See *A. Cooper's operation*.—A small curved trocar is passed along the floor of the external meatus, up to the tympanum. When the point has reached the membrane it is pushed sharply through it.

2. *Excision*.—Puncture as performed in the above way is liable to close up again. To avoid this failure, Himly punctured the membrane and excised a portion by means of a punch, which has since been improved by Falrizi and Deleau. Deleau's perforator consists of a canula, whose extremity has a circular cutting edge; the canula encloses a point whose base has also a cutting edge. A spring, when turned, causes the point to protrude, and perforate the membrane; directly afterwards another spring causes its return; a circular piece is cut out of the membrane by the contact of the cutting base of the point and the cutting edge of the canula (Plate XLIII., Fig. 4, shows the application of this instrument).

Tenotomy of the tensor tympani muscle is sometimes recommended to overcome ingrowing of the membrana tympani and consequent intra labyrinthine pressure. It is said to relieve especially those cases which are only benefited for a short time by the use of the Politzer air-bag.

Perforation of the mastoid cells.

The communication which exists between the mastoid cells and the tympanic cavity has suggested to surgeons the idea of opening a passage to the external air by perforating the mastoid process. The operation can be done with a little trephine, a trocar, or a perforator. The most favourable spot is a little in front of the process $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch above its point (Malgaigne).

Perforation of the mastoid cells is sometimes of use to afford an outlet to pus and other fluids contained in the cells or the middle ear, resulting from abscess or organic lesions. The operation is indicated by pain, redness, inflammatory œdema over the mastoid bone, and with the usual constitutional disturbance accompanying necrosis.

Catheterism of the Eustachian tube (Plate XXXVIII., Fig. 1).

This duct is about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch long, with an opening (shown at *c*, Plate XLIII., Fig. 1) looking downwards, inwards, and forwards; the aperture being behind the inferior turbinated bone, *a*. The orifice can therefore be reached either through the mouth or through the nasal fossa. Fig. 1 in Plate XXXVIII. shows Deleau's probe, *a*, lying on the floor of the nasal fossa, its point within the Eustachian tube at *e*. The object of this procedure is to clear the tube, which result is obtained by injecting air or medicated fluids.

Guyot, postmaster at Versailles, in 1724, was the first person who successfully attempted to catheterize this passage. He passed his probe through the mouth. Many followed his example, but in 1741 (*Yéland*) reached the opening and passed his catheter through the nose, and since then *Guyot's* method has been given up.

Ordinary method.—A silver catheter of small size is used. The patient is seated, his head kept in position against the back of a high chair, the operator holds the catheter in his right hand, and passes it through the nostril of the side affected, slipping it along the floor of the fossa till it has reached the level of the soft palate. In this first stage of the operation the catheter point is turned downwards and slightly outwards. The point must then be turned slightly outwards and upwards by rotating the shaft of the catheter, which is to be kept all the time close to the outer wall of the nostril; it is then gently passed into position, and the catheter is caught in the orifice of the Eustachian tube. To inject the passage, the catheter is kept steady by pinching the nostril through which it has been passed, and the jet of a syringe is placed in the external opening of the catheter. Air or fluid may in this way be passed into the Eustachian tube with great benefit by means of an india-rubber ball syringe.

These air douches afford in certain cases valuable means of diagnosis. If the air current passes through the middle ear, and out at the external ear, there is a perforation of the tympanic membrane. And rattling or gurgling sounds heard in the above described manner indicate the presence of pus or other fluids in the middle ear.

When the nostril of the same side as the obstructed tube is itself affected, catheterism may be practised through the other nostril, taking care that the instrument has a longer curve, and that the length of the bent part is proportioned to the greater distance to be traversed to reach the opening of the canal. To assist the introduction of the

catheter, it will be well to turn the tip backwards a little, on the convex side of the curve.

The Politzer air-bag.—This instrument is now so well known that it hardly requires description. In a great many cases it has rendered the Eustachian catheter unnecessary. For young children it is not essential to make them swallow water when the bag is used. By this method a simple obstruction of the Eustachian tube is easily overcome, and many cases of deafness are thus relieved.

OPERATIONS ON THE LIPS.

A fold of mucous membrane under the upper lip is seen in some persons while laughing, like a cushion stretching across, and, as it pushes forwards, lifting the lip and everting it. To cure this deformity, it is enough to seize the fold with forceps, and cut it off with scissors curved on the flat. Compresses, soaked in cold water or alum lotion, tucked in between the lip and the alveolar process of the jaw, usually suffice to arrest the slight hæmorrhage which sometimes follows.

Hypertrophy of the upper lip—If hypertrophy of the lip co-exists with a scrofulous habit, it is necessary to direct treatment against the strumous condition, and to abstain from any operation. But when the swelling appears in a healthy individual, we may have recourse to the operation practised by Paillard. This consists in reducing the lip by taking a strip of mucous membrane from its whole extent. To accomplish this an assistant seizes one of the labial commissures and inverts the lip, drawing it slightly forwards, while the operator takes hold of the other commissure with his free hand, and then with a bistoury he raises a mucous flap from the whole length of the lip, and about half its width. The same after-treatment is employed here as in the last operation.

Fig. 1

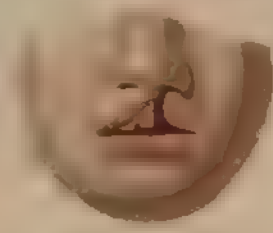


Fig. 2

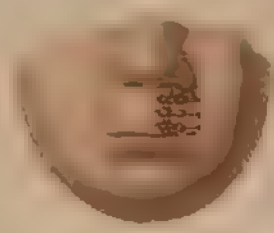


Fig. 3

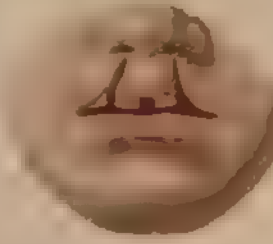


Fig. 4



Fig. 5

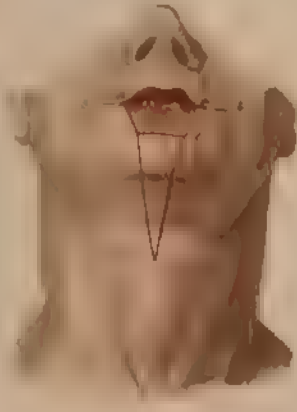


Fig. 6



Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



Fig 5



Fig 6



Fig 7



Fig 8



PLATE XLIV.

HARE-LIP, CHEILOPLASTY. CONTRACTION OF THE
BUCCAL ORIFICE.

Fig. 1. *Simple hare-lip.*

Fig. 2.—*The same after operation.*—Three points of twisted suture unite the edges of the wound.

Fig. 3.—*Double hare-lip.*

Fig. 4.—*The same after operation.*

Fig. 5.—*Cheiloplasty.*—The cancerous mass, *a, c, d, a*, is contained between two incisions, *a, c, e*, and *a, d, e*. The commissures are extended by two incisions, *a, b*, and *a, b*; the two edges, *a, d, e* and *a, c, e*, will be opposed and united in the median line by points of suture.

Fig. 6. *Chopart's method.* Two incisions, *a, e* and *d, f*, bound a quadrilateral flap, *a, e, f, d*, from which the diseased structure is cut away by the incision *b, c*. The flap, *b, c, e, f*, should be raised to the level of the commissures *a* and *d*.

PLATE XLV.

HARE-LIP, ETC. (*Continued.*)

Figs. 1 and 2. *Malgaigne's method of treating hare lip.*

Fig. 1.—Two incisions, *a* and *b*, detach two little flaps from the edges of the fissure, which are turned down, that their open surfaces may be opposed, the object being to prevent the little gap which remains after the ordinary operation, at the edge of the lip.

Fig. 2.—*The two flaps turned down before the application of the sutures.*

Figs. 3 and 4.—*Method adopted by M. Mirault, of Angers.*—A flap, *a*, on one of the borders of the fissure, is preserved. This little flap is intended to fill up the gap at the edge of the lip.

Figs. 5 and 6. *Contraction of the buccal orifice.*—*Dieffenbach's method.*

Two incisions, *a, b*, and *c, d*, through half the thickness of the lip, form two sides of a triangular flap, whose base is the contracted mouth orifice, and whose apex is at the labial commissure.

Fig. 6.—The flap is raised, the mucous membrane, *a*, alone remains, and forms the floor of the wound.

Fig. 7.—The mucous membrane is divided horizontally; the two membranous flaps, *a* and *b*, will cover the raw surfaces and form the mucous covering of the new lips.

Fig. 8 — A diagram showing the mode of introducing the suture, which is to be done before dividing the mucous membrane.

REPRODUCTION OF THE BUCCAL ORIFICE.

This operation is performed in cases of adhesion of the lips, or of contraction of the orifice. If the abnormal adhesion is congenital, and complete, the opening must be made at once by cutting through the closing membrane. In order to do this, a puncture with a straight bistoury must be made at a point answering to one of the commissures of the lips; a director is passed through this opening to guide the cutting instrument (bistoury or scissors) in order to form the new mouth. The two raw surfaces are to be then covered with linen and simple cerate, to prevent contact during cicatrization.

When the contraction of the buccal orifice is produced by vicious cicatrices, resulting from burns or ulcers, it is more difficult to obtain a good result than in cases of abnormal adhesion. The process of cicatrization brings about new adhesions, which re-establish the contraction. To prevent this re-establishment of the deformity, methods have been devised which we are about to describe.

Berger's method.—The buccal orifice being formed by two incisions carried as far as requisite—but in all cases ceasing inside the labial arteries—the two commissures are pulled apart by two blunt silver hooks, acting in opposition to one another. A suitable bandage fixes the two hooks at a proper distance from one another while the lips cicatrize. This procedure has been successful in some cases.

It has also been proposed to make a trepan puncture at the site of each commissure, then, passing a leaden wire through each puncture, to twist up the ends day by day until the included skin, etc., are cut through by the gradual tightening. But there is danger that the divided tissues will cicatrize and unite behind the wire loop.

Kruger Hansen's method. The leaden wire is here not intended to cut the tissues—it is left in place without being tightened; and when the little holes first made are cicatrized and converted into permanent apertures, the buccal orifice is completed by the bistoury, the two cicatrized perforations forming the commissures. By this procedure the results of the healing process are less to be feared than in the former case. Instead of the leaden wire, a little silver canula might be used, or Scarpa's leaden style—the head of the style being in the mouth, and the bent point outside on the skin.

Dieffenbach's operation (Plate XLIV., *bis*, Figs. 5 and 6).—To prevent the reunion of the edges of the wound, this surgeon devised a mode of

operation by which the buccal mucous membrane is preserved, so as to re-cover the raw surface of the newly-formed lips.

The operator passes into the patient's mouth the index-finger of the left hand, to fix the cheek; the other hand, carrying a sharp-pointed pair of scissors, or better, a straight and very sharp bistoury, introduces the point of the instrument a little above the intended labial commissure; the blade must not perforate the cheek, but be passed from without inwards, half-way through the tissues, till it reaches the contracted buccal orifice. When the point appears, turn the blade with its edge forwards, and cut at once from behind forwards the entire superficial half of the tissues. A second incision is made in exactly the same manner just below the first, and these two incisions are connected by a semilunar cut just at the point where the new commissure is to be. It only remains to cut out the triangular flap *a, b, c, d*, contained between the incisions, taking care to avoid cutting the mucous membrane which forms the floor of the wound.

The second step of the operation consists in utilizing the said mucous membrane. It is to be separated as much as possible from the other tissues, then divided horizontally up to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch from the commissure. The two flaps serve to cover the raw surfaces, and are fastened to the skin by points of suture.

Velpeau's operation.—Before dividing the mucous membrane horizontally, M. Velpeau introduces the threads destined for the sutures. Each thread, with a needle attached, passes through the skin and mucous membrane from within outwards. A series of threads for each lip being in position, the mucous membrane is divided and the sutures are tied.

Operation of M. Serre, of Montpellier.—M. Serre divides skin and mucous membrane at the same level; then he brings the two membranes together and connects them by sutures. This method is simpler than the preceding, but it has not the same chances of solidity.

HARE-LIP.

The operation of hare-lip has two chief stages.

1. *The preparation of the edges of the fissure.*—The patient, if an adult, may be operated on while sitting in a chair, his head slightly thrown back, and supported by an assistant. If the patient is a young child, he must be wrapped in a sheet and entrusted to an assistant, who holds him on his knees. The assistant, whose duty it is to support the head, should press the patient's cheeks as much forward as possible, and compress the facial arteries on the upper jaw in front of the masseters. The operator begins by raising the upper lip to divide with a bistoury or scissors the frænum which binds it to the gum. The angle of the left edge of the fissure is then seized with forceps or

with the fingers and drawn downwards and forwards; then, with strong and yet slender scissors, the whole red margin of the fissure on one side is removed at one cut, extending to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the fissure. The right margin is then excised by a similar cut, which is made to meet the upper extremity of the first incision. These two incisions then form an inverted V, whose limbs enclose the hare-lip. Both lips should be freely severed from their deep attachments, to enable them to be brought together without tension.

2. *Union*.—The two raw surfaces of the wound are next brought together and joined by two or three points of twisted suture in this manner: the lower angle of the left flap is seized as before the first incision, and is transfixed obliquely from below upwards, and from without inwards, by a pin which passes in at the mucous edge of the lip, and out at the raw surface. The pin should appear at a point between the two anterior thirds and posterior third of the thickness of the lip, entering $\frac{1}{8}$ inch external to the fissure, and making its exit in the wound $\frac{1}{8}$ inch above the mucous edge of the lip. The angle of the other flap is next pierced by the pin, but from above downwards, and from within outwards, entering at the wound and coming out on the mucous surface of the lip.

The first pin describes a curve whose concavity is below, in order to make the two angles of the fissure project downward, to prevent, as much as possible, the little gap which almost always remains in the edge of the lip. Some surgeons, instead of passing the first pin through the mucous edge of the lip, pass it through the skin a little above.

The first pin being in place, and the apposition of the flaps maintained by the help of a thread applied like the figure 8, the second pin is passed horizontally at a little distance above the first. Then the third pin is placed a little above the second. (See Plate XLIV., Fig. 2.) Between the pins it is well to place slips of plaster to draw the cheeks forwards and support the sides of the wound. Lastly, the points of the pins are cut off and the skin protected by small strips of plaster from contact with their ends. (See Plate II., Fig. 6.) A dressing of simple cerate on linen and a little lint will complete the affair.

During the first few days the patient should be kept as much as possible alone, to prevent any tendency to excitement, either to crying or laughing, which, by traction on the flaps, would endanger the union of the wound. Fluid nourishment should be allowed only: and if the patient is an infant, it should be fed with a spoon. The wound should also be carefully watched in the case of an infant, who might suck in and swallow blood, and thus hæmorrhage might go on unsuspected.

From the third to the fourth day the lowest pin may be taken out, taking care to do it by a twisting motion, to avoid all painful traction on the flaps, which might separate the newly united parts. On the next day take out the middle pin, and on the day after take out the

top one. Let the plaster stay on till the ninth day. Many surgeons remove all the pins after about fifty four hours, leaving the plaster and the silks, which still remain glued to the part by the blood.

Malgaigne's operation (Plate XLIV., *bis*, Figs. 1, 2). After operations conducted in the usual manner a gap remains in the edge of the lip, even when the pin is introduced, so as to make the two angles project. To remedy this defect, M. Malgaigne has proposed the following procedure: 'The preliminaries being arranged as in the usual operation, the edges are to be made raw, either with scissors or bistoury, carried downwards from above, describing a curve, and ending $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch from the real edge of the lip, at the spot where the lip becomes horizontal. These flaps are only held by their pedicles, which allow them to be inverted, being turned down till their raw surfaces are in contact. The first pin, which should be a strong one, is passed at the base of the lip, to bring into contact at once the two retreating angles produced by the turning down of the flaps. Then one or two pins are placed above the first. The body of the lip is thus united, and it remains to give its edge a suitable form.

'To accomplish this, press together the pedicles of the two flaps. Sometimes the incision has not gone low enough; the flaps, when turned down, do not lie in the same horizontal line as the edge of the lip; the incision must then be prolonged until a good line of lip is obtained. Then, with scissors, cut off all unnecessary length of the flaps, leaving only that which is essential to filling the gap up well, it is as well to keep a little too much, to allow for retraction of the cicatrix. They are fastened together either with entomological pins or with interrupted sutures. If the hare-lip do not extend the full height of the lip, it will be well to prolong the incisions towards the nostril, to make exact adaptation at the upper end of the wound. If the labial frænum comes down too low, it should be divided.'—*Manual of Operative Surgery.*

Operation of M. Mirault d'Angers (Plate XLIV., Figs. 3, 4).—One of the edges of the fissure is completely stripped; but on the other side a pedunculated flap is left at the lower angle. When the edges are brought together, the said flap comes in to prevent any notch.

Mr. Francis Mason, in an interesting and full article on hare-lip, in the *St. Thomas's Hospital Gazette* for 1875, remarks: 'It is of importance thoroughly to free the lip from the jaw on each side, so that the edges of the wound may be brought into contact without any strain on the pins or sutures, and in doing this the surgeon should remember to apply his knife quite close to the maxillary bone, for in so doing the risk of hæmorrhage is diminished. Moreover, a sufficient quantity of the edge of each cleft should be taken away. As a rule too little is removed, hence an unsightly vertical dip is left. Then the incision should be made somewhat concave, with the concavity directed towards

the fissure, and a sufficient amount of the prolabium should be taken away, which obviates the V-shaped dip so often noticed after the operation.

DOUBLE HARE-LIP (Plate XLIV., Figs. 3, 4).

When the central tubercle is so small as to be removable without inconvenience, it is simpler to excise it, and complete the operation as in simple hare-lip. But if the median tubercle must be kept, then its edges must be pared as well as those of the outer borders of the fissures. Apposition is obtained by pins passed through the outer flaps and central tubercle. The cicatrix has the form of a V or a Y. It may be that the central piece is too large for a single pin to go through both wounds at once, in which case twisted sutures may be used in each branch of the V. The notch remaining in the edge of the lip is larger in these cases than those of simple hare-lip, and modifications of Malgaigne's and Mirault's operations may be employed to meet this defect.

COMPLICATED HARE-LIP.

The most common complications of hare-lip are : 1. The presence of teeth protruding in front ; 2. Considerable prominence of the intermaxillary bone ; 3. Malformation of the median tubercle and irregularity of the lip ; 4. Cleft palate.

1. *Protruding teeth* are to be pushed back and drawn into position by threads fastened to the neighbouring teeth ; if replacement cannot be effected, the teeth must be extracted.

2. *Intermaxillary protrusion* is a complication for which different modes of treatment may be tried. If the bone is movable, push it back ; if it is fixed, cut it out.

Desault has replaced the osseous tubercle by the aid of a tight bandage passing over the prominence and fastened behind the head. The patient is to keep the bandage on until the malposition of the bone is rectified enough to allow the operation to be performed.

M. Gensoul has corrected projection of the piece of bone by breaking it and bending it into position. Whatever method be adopted, the hare-lip operation must be delayed until the intermaxillary bone is set aright.

Blondin, with strong scissors, cut out a triangular piece from the base of the septum nasi. The intermaxillary, deprived of its support, could then be pushed back into place.

3. *Abnormal connection of the labial tubercle* (attachment to the tip of the nose) occurs often, with projection of the osseous tubercle supporting it. In this case the labial tubercle is to be utilized to form the division between the nostrils.

Dupuytren with a bistoury divided the adhesions which united the

labial tubercle to the osseous tubercle, removing from this latter all that projected beyond the upper jaw. Then the cutaneous tubercle has its edges pared, the edges of the fissure are also pared, and the treatment proceeds as in simple hare-lip. The cutaneous tubercle is then bent up, and kept in position under the nose by suture.

4. *Cleft palate*—*Phillips* has operated as follows where the bony fissure has interfered with the treatment of a hare-lip. He passed a silver wire through the base of the nose behind the alæ, small plates of cork having been placed on each side of the nose, and being traversed by the silver wire. The wire is then bent over the corks, which serve as points of support, and the nose is thus fixed between two buttons, which throw together the parts whose separation hindered the process of union.

REMOVAL OF CANCERS OF THE LIP AND CHEILOPLASTY.

Canceroid excrescences and superficial tumours growing from the free edge of the lip may be cut off with scissors curved on the flat. The little tumour is seized and raised with forceps, and then cut off, care being taken that some sound tissue is removed with it. The wound generally heals readily.

Cauterization may be employed as well by covering the wound with arsenical paste or other caustic.

Larger tumours, involving a greater depth of tissue, should be limited by two incisions, made with scissors or the bistoury, in the shape of the letter V. After the ablation of the tumour, the edges of the V-shaped wound are brought together by suture. This operation is, however, only suitable for tumours of a moderate size. It may happen that difficulty is found in bringing the wound together; in that case it will be necessary to dissect up the edges of the wound from the subjacent parts in order to oppose them more easily. Large and irregular tumours will demand special ingenuity and skill on the part of the surgeon. The removal of these tumours will involve loss of substance, which can only be made up by cheiloplastic processes.

CHEILOPLASTY OF THE LOWER LIP.

The Italian and Indian methods are now abandoned. Whatever method may be used, a most important indication is to keep as much mucous membrane as possible to cover the new lip.

Chopart's operation (Plate XLIV, Fig. 6).—The tumour is isolated by two parallel vertical incisions commencing at the fore edge of the lip, and going down to the sub-hyoid region.

These two incisions are the boundaries of a quadrilateral flap which is to be dissected downwards. This dissection accomplished, all the diseased tissue is removed from the flap by a horizontal incision. To make up for the loss of substance incurred in the ablation of the

tumour, it is necessary to proceed thus: lower the head of the patient while the upper edge of the flap is raised to the level of the labial commissures, or of the portion of lower lip which has been preserved. The flap is fixed in position by sutures in the vertical incisions. If it has been possible to save any mucous membrane, that will be used to cover the new lip. In cases where the free edge of the lip is sound, it should be preserved by cutting through the skin between it and the diseased part, and, finally, the upper edge of the quadrilateral flap is to be fastened to it by sutures.

Operation of M. Roux. The tumour being removed by a semilunar incision, passing from one commissure to the other, M. Roux dissects the integuments downwards, freeing them from the lower jaw: he carries the dissection as low as the sub-hyoid region, the extent of the wound being proportioned to the loss of substance which must be made up. The skin of the chin forms, in this case, a mobile pouch in front of the lower jaw—a veritable apron, which can be raised to the level of the lip; it is to be kept in position by adhesive strapping and bandages until cicatrization is complete. If the tumour extends to the cheek, the buccal opening is extended by cutting the angles of the mouth, and bringing one of the extremities of the semilunar incision up to meet it.

Morgan's operation.—To render the dissection of the flap which is to be raised easier, Morgan has modified the preceding operation by cutting through the integument vertically downwards from the centre of the semilunar incision. We thus have two flaps, easily dissected up, and which can be brought up to the level of the commissures, and united in the middle line by suture.

M. Malgaigne's operation.—All the diseased parts should be taken away at once, either by a V-shaped incision or by two vertical incisions descending as low as the lower edge of the maxilla, connected there by a transverse incision. In the first case the lost substance is in the shape of a triangle; it will then be convenient to prolong the angles of the mouth on each side by a transverse incision, and to dissect up two triangular flaps. The vertical edges are then to be brought together in the middle line by means of sutures; the upper edge of the flaps is disposed of thus: part is wanted for the lip, and the remainders on each side are to be stitched to the upper edge of the horizontal incisions.

In the second case the lost structure is four-sided, and to the incisions springing from the commissures two others must be added, extending down to the lower edge of the jaw. We can thus dissect up two four-sided flaps, which are joined in the middle line, and to the edges of other incisions, where suitable points can be found.

The result of this proceeding is that the cheeks alone contribute the tissues for the lip, whose free border is formed by the raw surface of

the horizontal incision. Consequently the new lip contains muscular fibres belonging to the orbicularis and its antagonists ; it is covered behind by natural mucons membrane, and sometimes the free edge of the lip is covered with mucous membrane by Dieffenbach's method.'

It is rarely necessary to practise cheiloplasty of the upper lip. Losses of tissue are made up by flaps borrowed from the cheeks : the nature of the case will indicate the operative measures needed.

GENOPLASTY.

'When the operation is called for by inconsiderable lesions, the surgeon confines himself to paring the edges of the wounds and dissecting them up from the surrounding tissues, then bringing them together with sutures.'—*Roux*.

If the loss of substance is too great to be repaired in this way, it will be necessary to borrow a flap from the cervical region, and restore the cheek by the Indian or French method.

The operation must depend on the size and situation of the diseased parts ; and the surgeon will be guided by the general principles laid down in treating of blepharoplasty and cheiloplasty.

PLATE XLVI

OPERATIONS ON THE NOSE AND NASAL FOSSÆ.

RHINOPLASTY.

Rhinoplasty originated in India where the Brahmins sometimes employed it to remedy the deformities which had been caused by punishments for crime. About the fifteenth century it was introduced into Italy, and established as a regular operation by Branca and Tagliacozzi. In 1813 it was performed in England, later by Græfe in Germany; then by Delpech in France.

The object is to repair partial or total loss of the nose. Three principal modes of operation are now adopted, those which consisted in borrowing a nose, or portions of integument, from another person are not now used.

1. *The Indian method.*—(*Common operation.* Plate XLVI, Fig. 1). It consists in taking from the patient's forehead sufficient skin to repair the loss of tissue. The first step is to make a pattern of the lost nose with wax or paper. This pattern is next laid on the forehead, base upwards; its exact outline is traced with ink on the skin, and the operator dissects up that skin, $\frac{1}{4}$ inch outside the tracing. The dissection is to be carried as far as the root of the nose, taking great care that the pedicle, *d*, is left large enough for the nutrient vessels not to be compressed. The flap is twisted on its pedicle in such a way that the raw surface is towards the nasal fossæ, and its edges are stitched to the previously pared edges of the lost nose. To keep the nostrils open, and support the new structure, may be inserted in the nostrils some plugs of lint, or pieces cut from a gum elastic tube, *c, c*. When union has taken place the sutures are removed, and the pedicle cut through on a director, to remedy the torsion. The wound in the forehead will cicatrize, and only calls for the simplest dressings.

Delpech's method.—This consists in cutting a flap with its base, as represented in Fig. 1, with three points, *a, b*, and *c*. The two lateral parts form the alæ nasi, and the median point, *b*, constitutes the separation of the nostrils.

Lufbauer, wishing to avoid twisting of the pedicle, which might lead to gangrene of the flap by interfering with the circulation, advised that one of the incisions should be carried lower than the other, and twisted the flap to the side of the longer cut. But the advantages to be obtained from this step do not always make up for the inconveniences which may arise from carrying incisions too near to the injured part whose substance is to be restored.



Fig. 1



Fig. 2

2. *The Italian method.*—*Garcke's operation.* This is but a modified form of the operation described and performed in Italy by Tagliacozzi. As the new nose has to be borrowed from the skin of the arm, the patient should be accustomed for some time before the operation to the fatiguing position which must necessarily be maintained during cicatrization.

The second figure in *Plato XLVI.* shows the kind of bandage which the patient will have to bring his mind to endure while the arm is kept up to the face.

A flap, nearly six inches long by four broad, is marked out on the arm, and dissected up in such a way that the root of the nose and the lateral parts can be fixed directly by sutures to the edges of the facial wound, while the base remains adherent to the arm. Union in the opposed edges having taken place the base of the flap is cut across and the arm released. This base of the flap is then to be cut into the three-pointed shape directed in *Delpech's* operation.

Tagliacozzi dissected up the flap, and let it suppurate before he fixed it to the face. He thought that the suppurative process caused the flap to become more fleshy, and rendered it more suitable for the purpose in view.

3. *French method.*—This consists in making up for lost tissue by borrowing new substance from the adjoining parts. It has been already described under the head of '*Blepharoplasty*' *Plate XXXVII.*).

The steps of this operation, which is especially adapted for the repair of partial loss of the nose, cannot be described with exactitude. The *ala nasi* can be restored by a flap taken from the cheek; the cartilaginous septum by skin from the upper lip, care being taken not to use more than half the thickness of the lip, and to leave the mucous membrane intact.

Remarks.—*Rhinoplasty* is always a serious undertaking. It rarely affords encouraging results, and noses formed in this way often shrivel up and form tubercles, which sometimes result in a deformity more hideous than that which it has been intended to cure. Nowadays such successful noses have been made of wax and pasteboard, and cleverly attached by means of spectacles, and by adhesive materials, that it is only in extreme cases *rhinoplasty* is employed, and the surgeon should not yield to his patient's request until he has warned him of the dangers to which the operation will expose him. Few people will endure the Italian operation. In most cases the Indian plan is preferable, and *Delpech's* method is perhaps the best.

CONTRACTION AND OCCLUSION OF THE NOSTRILS.

The operations already described for the treatment of other occlusions are applicable in this case; incision or excision must be supplemented

by the introduction of tubes adapted to prevent the return of the deformity during cicatrization, or else mucous membrane and integument must be approximated.

FOREIGN BODIES IN THE NOSTRILS

Two routes are open for extracting or expelling foreign substances—the one in front through the nostrils, the other backwards into the pharynx. The size and character of the body and the depth at which it lies in the nasal passages will tend to indicate what course to pursue. Forceps may be employed as in the extraction of bodies from the auditory meatus, or it may be practicable to push it into the pharynx. In cases where simpler treatment fails, we may bring it forward to the nostril by means of a pledget of lint (used as in plugging the nose from behind).

POLYPUS NASI.

The surgical treatment of these polypi depends on their nature, seat, and form. Classified according to their nature we have—1. Soft, or mucous polypi. 2. Vascular polypi. 3. Hard, fibrous, cartilaginous polypi. 4. Fungous or cancerous.

1. The *mucous polypi* are commonest and of least importance, they are of a grey colour, sparingly vascular, and consisting of fibromyxomatous tissue containing serous fluid. They are generally pedunculated, and non-adherent, and are therefore easily removed by twisting. They generally spring from the roof or from the turbinated bones.

2. The *vascular polypi* are rich in bloodvessels. They grow to a large size, and push out the bony walls which confine them and oppose their expansion.

3. The *hard fibrous polypi* are less common than the preceding, and consist of a dense tissue, almost devoid of vessels. They may absorb the bony walls, and they may have tough pedicles of some length, the point of origin being at a distance from the bulk of the tumour.

4. Under the names of *fungous* or *malignant polypi* are described the sarcomatous tumours.

The *operative measures* employed at the present day are: 1. Cauterization. 2. Torsion. 3. Evulsion. 4. Excision and Ligation.

1. *Cauterization*.—Solid or fluid caustics of all kinds may be used. Sulphuric acid, acid nitrate of mercury, butter of antimony, etc., may be applied with a brush. A small speculum should be employed to protect the sound tissues from contact with the caustic, and the applications must be repeated more or less frequently, according to the extent and nature of the malady. Under the name of *Kusck's caustic*, a mixture of sulphuric acid, butter of antimony, and nitrate of silver

has been highly thought of in Germany. Nitrate of silver and the red hot iron are sometimes efficacious; the latter is especially applicable to mucous polypi which are to be reached in the pharynx, but it is not to be passed into the nose without extreme care, as inflammatory results may arise, and may extend to the brain.

2, 3. *Torsion and evulsion* are often combined. They are accomplished by means of polypus forceps. It is advantageous to use very strong forceps, the blades of which are armed with teeth from the joint to the tips, so as to seize firmly the bulk of the tumour. Curved forceps are employed to reach polypi from the posterior nares. The patient is seated in a chair opposite a window, the head being thrown back and supported by an assistant. The surgeon opens the nostril with one hand, and with the other introduces the forceps with the blades closed up to the polypus. On reaching it the forceps are opened and passed on in such a way that the tumour is enclosed by the blades. Then the torsion is begun by turning the forceps several times on its long axis; this often suffices to disconnect the polypus. A peculiar sensation indicates to the surgeon that his object is attained. The forceps must then be withdrawn with the blades firmly closed to remove the whole or part of the tumour. Sometimes a single operation of this sort completely clears the nasal fossa: but in the great majority of cases it is necessary to introduce the forceps again for a fresh torsion to crush the remainder of the polypus, and by successive evulsive attempts to remove all obstruction from the passage. During the operation much blood may be lost, and the patient must have a few moments of rest between each attempt.

Some polypi are so soft and so slightly adherent that they can be turned out with the fingers: in other cases the pedicle is so distinct that a thread may be passed round it and the removal effected by strangulation.

Hard and large-sized polypi often require such forceps as can be dis-jointed, each limb being passed separately; sometimes to effect extraction the orifice must be enlarged by an incision into the edge of the nostril or upper lip; or sometimes the soft palate must be cut through.

When polypi are approached by the posterior nares the tumour must be pushed back by the little finger passed through the nostril, and the forceps used must necessarily be bent. In such cases the string *ecraseur* is to be preferred.

Hæmorrhage will perhaps occur after the operation. Astringent injections are usually sufficient to meet this difficulty; if not, then plugging must be resorted to.

4. *Excision* is chiefly applicable to pedunculated polypi situated near the nostrils. Fibrous polypi, with large pedicles, and inaccessible to the ligature, should also be excised.

This operation is performed either with scissors or with a probe-pointed bistoury. The polypus, having been seized with forceps or a valseulum, is drawn as near as possible to the nostrils and firmly held in position while the cutting instrument divides the attachment.

Wately succeeded in removing a large and deep-seated polypus by first passing a ligature round the pedicle, one of the threads served to guide a sheathed bistoury, having an eye near its point, through which the thread was passed. The instrument, thus led up to the pedicle, excised the tumour. In all cases we make choice of such scissors or knife as by its shape will best suit the case in hand.

5. *Ligature.*—Ligation has three principal steps 1. To pass a loop of thread, silk or wire, through the nostril into the pharynx, or *vice versa*. 2. To place the loop round the pedicle which it is to strangle. 3. To complete the constriction by means of a knot-fastener.

First proceeding. A properly curved forceps can be passed through the nostril backwards into the pharynx, where the two ends of the wire or thread, passed into the mouth, will be seized by the jaws of the forceps and by them withdrawn from behind forwards through the nostril. Or a sound with an eye carrying a loop of thread can be passed through the nostril into the pharynx, where the thread may be taken by the fingers or a pair of forceps.

Or, lastly, Belloc's canula (Plate X., Fig. 15) affords a more sure and prompt means than the preceding. It is to be used as in plugging.

Second proceeding.—The loop of thread or wire is to be passed round the pedicle in such a way as to prevent it from slipping, using either the fingers or a fitting instrument so constructed as to expand the loop to such a size as will allow it to pass easily over the tumour.

Third proceeding.—The loop being well placed and drawn tight, the operator removes the last instrument to make use of the knot-fastener. The thread is tightened every day until the separation of the polypus, which usually happens on the eighth or tenth day.

But few surgeons would now employ the ligature. Having adapted the thread or wire they would at once remove the tumour either by the *écraseur* or by electro-cautery through the wire.

PLUGGING THE NOSE (Plate XXXVIII.)

This operation should only be performed in case of hæmorrhages which resist ordinary means. Cold or astringent injection, cold affusions on the back and head, foot and hand baths, should all be tried first. If the bleeding persists, we must plug. The operation does not procure direct compression on the bleeding point, but it closes behind and before the points of issue by which the blood escapes, and thus forms a clot which stops the hæmorrhage.

Franck's method.—He makes use of a piece of pig's intestine dried ;

it is moistened, and then tied at one end and passed into the nose by means of a probe. Water is then injected into this bag, and the free end tied up.

Martin St. Auger employs an apparatus similar to that of *Franck*, under the name of *Rhinophyon*. A little bladder is fixed to one end of a silver tube which has a tap, the bladder is passed to the back of the nasal fossa, blown up and kept distended by turning the tap. The distended bag plugs the pharynx, a dosail of lint is used to close the nostril, and the canula is kept in place by a clamp which slides in it and fits against the nasal opening. Indiarubber bags are now made.

Martin Salom has simplified the last operation by using a gum elastic tube in place of a silver one; a double thread attached to the tube where the bladder is tied on is left hanging out of the nostrils, and serves to keep in place the pledget of lint after the insufflation of the bladder: a little peg stuck into the tube prevents the escape of air, and keeps the bladder distended.

The ordinary operation is commenced by making a plug with a roll of lint which shall block up the posterior nares. It is then tied in the middle of a piece of strong silk about 18 inches long. *Belloc's* sound is then passed through the nostril or else a very flexible gum elastic catheter is used. The instrument having reached the pharynx, the button is pushed in, or the end of the catheter is seized with forceps and drawn forwards through the mouth, and to the end protruding from the mouth the threads attached to the plug are tied; next the instrument is withdrawn from the nose, and in drawing the thread through the nose a small plug is first pulled into the posterior nares, completely closing it, and then the thread in front is used to tie a plug into the anterior nares. The nasal openings are thus effectually stopped up, both behind and before, and the arrangement may be left for two or three days.

The anterior fastening is then cut, and the posterior plug may be either seized by curved forceps passed through the mouth or pushed back into the pharynx by means of a probe passed through the nose.

OPERATIONS ON THE FRONTAL AND MAXILLARY SINUSES.

PERFORATION OF THE FRONTAL SINUS.

Trephining of this part may be required in cases of fracture, caries, necrosis, abscess, foreign bodies, and polypi. A semilunar incision whose concavity looks upwards and inwards is made at the level of the upper edge of the eyebrow: the flap is raised, a small trephine applied. The operation is always a serious one, and to heal the fistula which frequently results we have recourse to compression, or to autoplasty.

CATHETERISM AND PERFORATION OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

Catheterism.—The opening into the sinus is situated above the inferior turbinated bone, *a* (Plate XLIII., Fig. 1), and below the middle bone, *b*; to reach it one uses a little curved probe, slipping it under the middle bone, and about half-way along it the probe will reach the opening into which it is to be passed.

Jourdain has succeeded in curing retention of mucus by means of emollient injections. If the orifice of the sinus cannot be found, or if it is stopped up, an artificial opening may be made with a curved trocar, perforating the bony wall of the sinus under the middle turbinated bone, from within outwards. *Jourdain's* method is not often adopted.

Perforation of the sinus is the treatment generally adopted, and there are three or four methods of doing it. *Lamorie* entered the sinus between the zygomatic process and the third molar tooth. *Desault* operated in the canine fossa after cutting through the cheek. *Desault's* operation has been modified; the gum is incised and the perforation is made $\frac{1}{4}$ inch or so above the gingival margin. The wound bears no visible scar. *Cheselden* opened the sinus through the mouth. All these proceedings have their advantages and inconveniences; certain special cases may call for their employment, but the following proceeding is that which is generally preferred:

The ordinary operation is attributed to *Meibomius*. It leaves no visible scar, and it consists in perforating the alveolus and entering the sinus at a low point, easily accessible by instruments. All the molar teeth correspond to the sinus, and it is through the socket of one of them that the cavity is reached. If a tooth is wanting, its alveolus is made use of; if a molar is carious, whichever it is, it is to be extracted (*Malgaigne*). If all the molars are sound the second is extracted.

The operation can be done with a punch, or a trocar, or a small trephine. The nature of the disease will decide the size of the opening to be made. *Belloc* put a wooden peg into the opening to prevent the admission of food. Other operators have left a canula in the passage.

It is difficult to determine the relative value of these procedures; but perforation through the tooth-socket is usually easy, and appears to be the method adopted by nature, since, in certain cases, fluids escape from the sinus by a socket which a tooth-extraction has left empty.



Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3



Fig. 4

PLATE 47



Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3



Fig. 4



Fig. 5



Fig. 6



Fig. 7



Fig. 8



Fig. 9

PLATE

PLATE XLVII.

LIGATURE OF A NASAL POLYPUS.—REMOVAL OF
TONSILS.

Fig. 1.—Vertical section of face from before backwards.—*a*, Loop of thread passed round a nasal polypus by means of M. Chaussier's *porte liguature*.

Fig. 2. Anatomical position of the tonsils between the pillars of the fauces.—*a*, Tongue *b*, *c*, tonsils.

Fig. 3. Tonsil seized with vulsellum forceps, *a*, is cut off with a probe-pointed bistoury, whose cutting edge is covered with tape.

Fig. 4.—*a*, Tonsil removed by the guillotine, *b*.

PLATE XLVIII.

CANCER OF TONGUE.

Fig. 1.—Anatomy.—Arrangement of lingual arteries, *a* and *b*, Hypoglossal nerve, *c*.

Fig. 2.—The cancerous portion is seized with clawed forceps, *d*. Two incisions, *a b*, *c b*, forming a V, whose apex is in the middle line, bound a triangular flap which bares a wound whose edges are brought together by two sutures (Fig. 3), *a* and *b*.

Fig. 3.—Sutures

Fig. 4.—The cancerous portion is comprehended between two ligatures, *b c*, and *b a*, which are drawn tight by means of two headed crasseurs, *e*, *e*.

Fig. 5.—M. Vidal's operation.—A straight needle, *a*, mounted in a handle, is passed in above the hyoid bone, *b*, and transfixes the tongue from below upwards; *c*, loop of thread carried up by the needle.

Figs. 6, 7, 8.—Same operation.—Transverse section of tongue to show the course the needle ought to take Fig. 6.—*a*, Needle One end of the thread, *b*, pulled out; the other end, *c*, hangs down ~~over~~

Fig. 7.—The needle, *a*, *a*, has been withdrawn and passed ~~run~~ ~~in~~ tongue again, laterally, so that the point appears at the edge ~~of~~ ~~the~~ diseased organ, the extremities, *b*, *c*, of the thread are drawn ~~to~~

Fig. 8.—The two ends of the thread, *a* and *b* (whose loop, *a* ~~is~~ ~~drawn~~ half the tongue), are drawn together by the craseur, *c*.

Fig. 3.—Section of *genio-glossi*.—*M. Blandin's* operation. —A tenaculum, *a*, is fixed in the mucous membrane, and the maxillary origin of the muscles cut through with scissors carried on the flat.

CANCER OF THE TONGUE.

OPERATIVE MEASURES.

Before having recourse to such operations as remove part or the whole of the tongue, the surgeon must remember that certain tumours are wholly superficial, and that it is then sufficient to take away the morbid tissues either by scissors or by thermo-cautery—that in other cases encysted tumours seated in the substance of the organ can be easily extracted by enucleation. But some affections call for ligature or excision.

Excision. In excision it is necessary to remove a certain portion of sound tissue some distance beyond the edges of the tumour. The mouth may be kept open by Fergusson's or Smith's gag; the tongue is drawn as far as possible out of the mouth. The tongue may be most readily drawn out of the mouth by perforating the organ with a very coarse silk, and tying a loop for the assistant to hold. In making the section scissors may be used instead of the knife, and the wire or whipcord écraseur instead of ligature. and in order to make the wires bite at the proper lines, instead of slipping as they are apt to do, a tenaculum may be inserted, and the wires adjusted behind the tenaculum. When the écraseur is employed it cuts through the soft tissues of the tongue, and gathers the strong vessels into a mass together, not severing them until last. It is well to remember this fact, and either to tie the last portion or to be prepared to grasp the vessels at the proper moment. The movements of the screw should be very slow, not more than three half turns in the minute. The incision is to be made according to the form and seat of the cancer, sometimes straight across the tongue, sometimes in a curve. If the diseased part cannot be removed by a single cut, it is best to begin on the under side of the organ, not to be hampered by the hæmorrhage when operating on the upper surface. *Boyer* included the tumour between two incisions (Fig. 2, *a, b, c, d*), meeting like the letter V. Two or three points of suture draw the edges together.

In removal of the whole tongue, laryngotomy may be first performed and the pharynx then blocked with a large sponge. the operation may then be performed at leisure by scissors or écraseur or whatever method may be selected, without fear of hæmorrhage interfering with respiration, and in order to loosen the tongue the maxillary origin of the *genio-hyoglossus* may be severed.

Ligation. Mayor's operation. This consists in separating the diseased tissue from the sound parts, by means of threads carried through the whole thickness of the tongue.

For a cancer only affecting half the organ, Mayor transfixed the organ near its base, with a bistoury, which was then carried forwards, splitting the tongue. The diseased part was then strangulated by means of a ligature. One could, without any incision, include the diseased tissues between two ligatures (Fig. 4).

M. J. Cloquet's operation—In a case of cancer which had affected the whole of one side of the tongue, and had so extended about the base that ligation could not be performed by the mouth, Cloquet adopted the following mode of operating. A curved needle in a handle, having the eye at its point, was passed in at the middle line of the neck, above the hyoid bone, and transfixed the tongue from below upwards.

The eye of the curved needle—by means of a rocking movement imparted to the handle—is made to appear in the mouth; two ligatures are then passed through the eye. The operator then withdraws the needle, and with it the threads, so that one end of them remains in the mouth, and one end is hanging out of the wound in the neck.

The needle is passed again through the neck wound; but this time it is made to issue at one side of the tongue instead of penetrating it, where the eye receives the ends of the first threads which had remained in the mouth. The needle, again withdrawn, brings out these last threads through the neck wound. The ligatures thus introduced are employed, one to constrict half the tongue (transversely), the other, received into a vertical slit in the middle of the tip of the tongue, completely isolates and strangulates the cancerous tissues.

The operation of M. Mirault of Angers is a modification of Cloquet's. The needle is passed first upwards through the tongue, and then downwards at one side of the organ.

Vidal's operation (Figs. 5, 6, 7, 8)—This is the author's own description of his operation: 'I use a large straight needle in a handle (Fig. 5, *a*). It has a spear-headed point, with an eye. If only half the tongue is to be removed, a single very strong thread is used. The tongue being held by its tip and drawn forward as far as possible, the needle is introduced just above the hyoid bone, *b*. The farther back the disease has gone, the farther back the needle must go. Having passed it upwards through the tongue—the point appears in the mouth with the loop of thread it carries, *c*, the two ends hanging out of the neck, held by an assistant. The surgeon takes the needle-handle in his left hand, and with forceps draws one-half the loop out of the mouth, giving it to another assistant (Fig. 6, *b*). There is now one thread in the neck wound, *c*. The needle is then half withdrawn until the point has reached the base of the tongue, when it is pushed upwards and outwards, and the spear head appears between the anterior pillar of the fauces and the edge of the tongue (Fig. 7). With the forceps the end of thread which had hung from the neck is drawn out of the needle-eye,

and the instrument is completely withdrawn. The two ends of the thread are tied or passed through a *neud serré*, *c* (Fig. 8). If the cancer occupies the whole tongue, a double ligature is made to encircle both halves of the organ. Then two threads are passed through the needle-eye—one black and one white—the difference of colour rendering the constriction of each side more easy of accomplishment.

SECTION OF THE FRÆNUM LINGUÆ.

If it extends too far forward the frænum is troublesome to the newborn infant in sucking, and in later years it impedes speech. Before cutting the frænum, it should not be forgotten that the ranine veins run under the tongue on each side. The infant is placed on the knees of an assistant, who holds the child's head back, and pinches his nose to make him open his mouth: the surgeon lifts the tongue with the thumb and finger of the left hand to stretch the membrane; then with scissors, curved on the flat, he makes the incision as far as possible from the tongue, and with the point of the scissors turned down wards, away from the ranine veins. To raise the tongue the split flat end of a director may be used. The wound requires no special attention.

Two accidents are to be feared in this operation: (1) The tongue being turned back into the pharynx, which might cause suffocation: (2) hæmorrhage, when the vessels are wounded. In the first case the index-finger can set the tongue right; in the second case, one has recourse to astringents or cauterization by wire heated to whiteness, or the wounded vessel may be closed with a ligature.

We sometimes see in young infants sublingual tumours in the form of a fleshy pad. They may be removed by excising them with curved scissors.

ABNORMAL ADHERIONS OF THE TONGUE.

These may be congenital or acquired. In the first instance they appear as bridles of cellular tissue, easily divided with scissors; in the second they are often the result of suppuration; they are then extensive, and sometimes are very tough.

The patient is seated in a chair, the head thrown backwards, the mouth kept open by a gag between the molar teeth; the operator, standing behind the patient, separates the buccal wall and the free parts of the tongue, and then with a bistoury divides the adhesions.

The wound cicatrizes of itself. To avoid fresh adhesions, the patient is advised to move the tongue frequently, and to pass the finger between the cut surfaces.

Excision of the uvula.—The patient being seated in a chair, and held as in the operation for removal of tonsils, the operator seizes the uvula with polypus or torsion forceps, and cuts it off with one stroke of the bistoury or scissors.

The hæmorrhage is usually trifling : and to check it, it is only necessary to squeeze the cut end with the forceps, or touch it with lunar caustic.

OPERATIONS ON THE TONSILS.

ABSCESS OF TONSILS.

When quinsy ends in suppuration, the collection of pus may require to be let out, pass the index-finger of one hand up to the tonsil, and with the other hand slip a sharp bistoury, its blade wrapped in linen nearly to the point, along the finger parallel with the cheek, and puncture the tumour where the fluctuation is most evident.

EXCISION OF TONSILS (Plate XLVII.).

It is performed either with tonsil forceps and a probe-pointed bistoury, or with guillotines invented for the special purpose.

Excision.—The patient is seated opposite the light, with his head leaning against the chest of an assistant, who keeps the jaws open by means of a gag. If the assistant is in front of the patient, he will keep the tongue down with a spatula or handle of a spoon. The operator stands before the patient, and seizing the tonsil with the vulsellum forceps, draws the gland from between the pillars of the fauces, and slightly forwards, thus making it more prominent, and at the same time farther from the carotid artery. In the disengaged hand he holds a probe-pointed bistoury, whose edge is protected by tape to within an inch and a half of its extremity. Bringing the blade parallel to the wall of the mouth, under the tonsil with the edge upwards, the operator cuts off the hypertrophied gland. As a rule, it is best to remove as much of the tumour as possible. The operation is rarely followed by much hæmorrhage, and astringent gargles, or powdered alum placed on the wound, will stop it, if it occurs.

Should there be any reason to fear bleeding, on account of the large size of the gland, or of any abnormality of growth, the operator must take the precaution to have an iron heated to whiteness in readiness to apply to the wound. It has been said that deep inspirations help to check bleeding from these parts.

Should the carotid artery be wounded in the operation, the operator will at once compress the common carotid with his fingers : at the same time a plug of lint fastened to one blade of straight forceps is applied to the bleeding spot, and the other blade is placed outside the cheek to form a point of support ; the two rings in the handles are then securely tied to each other, thus exercising pressure sufficient to stop a slight bleeding, or control a more severe one while the artery is tied.

It is unnecessary to describe here the instruments specially devised for this operation. By Fahnestock's tonsillotome modified by Velpeau

the tonsil is made to pass through its two rings, and is fixed by a sliding prong (single or double), or by a twisted claw; it only remains to make the rings slide one over the other, in order to cut off the redundant gland. These instruments, which are certainly very ingenious, will be used with advantage in the case of infants: but have the inconvenience of not being applicable to all cases, and effect only an incomplete excision. The histoury operation is therefore generally preferred (Plate XLVII, Fig. 3, *a*, *b*).

PLATE XLIX.

OPERATIONS ON THE SALIVARY APPARATUS.

FISTULA OF THE PAROTID GLAND AND STENO'S DUCT. ANATOMY.

Fig. 1. *The parotid gland, a*, whose shape is almost pyramidal, is bounded above by the zygomatic process and maxillary articulation; behind by the sterno-mastoid muscle, it lies over the mastoid process and the digastric muscle. It surrounds the internal maxillary artery, and sends glandular processes into the condyloid fossa and beneath the temporal bone, its deep or reflected part being traversed by the carotid artery, and the facial nerve, whose relations with the glands we will consider farther on.

In front, the gland is thin; it spreads over the outer surface of the masseter muscle, in irregular processes, whose inner surface lies upon the *transverse artery of the face* and some branches of the facial. It also has on its outer surface some lymphatic glands (occasionally lodged in its substance); usually, however, they are found in the meshes of the fascial capsule of the gland. These glandulæ may be the seat of morbid affections (abscess, etc.), while the parotid itself is perfectly healthy.

Fig. 2. -The deeper relations of the parotid are of great surgical interest. The gland has here been removed, and the nerves and vessels connected with it are shown.

The facial nerve, a, buries itself in the gland, and then divides into branches, the chief of which are almost horizontal, which must not be forgotten when opening abscesses in this region.

Incisions made at right angles to the course of the nerve have often caused facial paralysis by dividing branches of the nerve.

The external carotid artery, c, almost always runs up through the deeper part of the gland.

The temporal artery, and its important veins, also pass through the gland in different directions.

Do not these anatomical data show how difficult and dangerous an operation is extirpation of the gland?



Steno's duct, b (Figs. 1 and 2), passes horizontally forwards upon the masseter, in a line drawn from the *tragus* to the angle of the mouth; at the anterior edge of the masseter it changes its course and passes perpendicularly into the substance of the cheek, going through the buccinator; and after a short oblique course between this muscle and the mucous membrane it opens in the mouth almost exactly opposite the separation between the first and second molar. This canal is accompanied by branches from the transverse facial artery, and by a branch of the facial nerve.

The *submandibular gland, c* (Fig. 1), is placed under the body of the lower jaw, in relation with the fossa which bears its name, it is covered below by the cervical fascia, and the platysma. Within it is related to digastricus, mylohyoideus, hyoglossus, and the lingual nerve. The most important of its relations is with the facial artery, *d* (Fig. 1), which passes through a groove on its upper and inner surface.

Wharton's duct, b (Fig. 1), arises in the gland, and opens by the side of the frenum lingue.

Fig. 3.—*Morand's operation.*

Fig. 4.—*Horizontal section of Fig. 3.*—*a*, Upper row of teeth; *b*, Steno's duct; *c*, fistula; *d*, angle of mouth; *e*, seton tied outside the mouth.

Fig. 5.—*Deguir's operation.*

OPERATIVE MEASURES.

Salivary fistulæ are of two kinds, some, affecting the *parotid* directly, are situated over the gland itself, or over the branches of the salivary duct, while others are caused by lesions of the *duct*.

§ 1. There are various modes of treating parotid fistula

1. *Irritating injections*, proposed by Louis, with astringent or caustic fluids.

2. *Cauterization* with the red-hot iron, or with caustics.

3. *Vesication* has been successfully used by M. Velpeau.

4. *Compression*, proposed by Desault, with the intention of causing atrophy of the parotid. M. Malgaigne, instead of this, attempts to prevent the flow of saliva and favour cicatrization, by the application of a piece of gold-leaf covered with a patch of Burgundy pitch.

5. *Excision*, which consists in making two elliptical incisions to remove the edges of the ulcer, and then uniting the raw surfaces by means of sutures.

6. *Ectirpation* of the parotid is nowadays seldom attempted on account of its danger.

§ 2. *Fistula of the duct* may be treated in many ways; the operations are classed according to their object, *e.g.* :

1. Cicatrization of the fistulous opening. 2. Dilatation of the natural opening. 3. The formation of a new buccal opening. 4. Procuring atrophy of the gland.

First Class. -1. Compression exerted on the fistulous opening, or on some point in the duct—between its opening and the gland—favours cicatrization of the wound by hindering the passage of saliva which helps to keep the fistula open. This procedure is indicated specially in cases where the buccal orifice is large, and the fistula is susceptible of rapid cicatrization.

2. *Cauterization* may be employed here as well as in fistulæ of the gland.

3. *The twisted suture* may be successfully employed after the edges of an old fistula have been pared.

Second Class. 1. *Re-establishment of the natural passage.*—*Morand's operation* (Figs. 3 and 4).—A seton is passed through the buccal opening by means of a small probe, and made to come out through the fistula, or *vice versâ*. When the canal is sufficiently clear to allow a free discharge of saliva, the seton is withdrawn, a short piece being left for a time in the duct. Then the edges of the fistula are pared, and cicatrization assisted by common methods.

Third Class.—*The formation of a new canal.*—To accomplish this end, *Deroy* passed a red hot iron through the cheek, just in front of the masseter. The operation has been modified by later surgeons, and at present the following method is usually adopted.

Dequise's operation.—Fig. 5 represents a horizontal section of the cheek, showing the disposition of the parts concerned: *a* is Steno's duct, *c* the fistulous opening. A trocar is passed into the fistula, and as far as possible along Steno's duct, and then backwards and inwards through the cheek in the direction of *c, b*. Two fingers passed into the mouth keep the cheek steady, and enable us to know the point of perforation. The trocar is withdrawn, the canula remaining, and through it a lead wire is passed (*c, b*): then the canula is taken out, and with the trocar passed in an opposite direction to the first puncture (*d, e*). Then a silk thread is put in through the canula, which is next withdrawn. The silk is intended to be tied to the end of the leaden wire, in order to pull the wire into the mouth in the line *d, e*, that its two ends may be fastened into a ring, *f*, which encircles the soft parts at the bottom of the fistula. It only remains to pare the edges of the fistula, and bring them together with sutures. When the wound has healed, the leaden ring is cut, and the saliva runs through the artificial opening into the mouth.

M. Roma modifies this operation by using silk instead of lead wire. *M. Malgaigne* uses a strong silk thread with a needle at each end. The first needle is passed into the cheek in the line *c, b*, the second in the line *d, e*. The silk loop then encircles the soft parts, when its ends are tied in the mouth. This operation is as speedy as it is easy.

Fourth Class.—*Desault* extolled compression to atrophy the gland. *Viborg*—for the same purpose—ligatured the duct. But the result of

experience has gone against these procedures, and those of the third class are preferred.

EXTIRPATION OF THE SUBMAXILLARY GLAND. (See explanation of Plate XLIX.)

Operation.—A crucial or semi-lunar incision is made through the skin covering the gland. The vessels are tied with two ligatures, and cut between. The gland is seized, drawn out, and isolated from the hypoglossal nerve and lingual artery by careful dissection. After the operation immediate union may be tried, if the wound allows, or dressings may be employed, to allow the parts to heal by second intention.

RANULA.

Ranula is a tumour developed on each side under the tongue, between the jaw and the tongue, above the suprahyoid muscles. Surgeons are not agreed as to the nature of these tumours, they are seated either in the sublingual gland, or are produced by dilatations of Wharton's duct, or are encysted tumours of the duct. Whatever their origin may be, they sometimes are of such size as to interfere with deglutition, and to call for surgical aid.

Puncture and incision.—The original modes of treatment are nowadays rejected as insufficient.

Cauterization with the hot iron was employed by Ambrose Pare; liquid caustics and injections of iodine have been employed successfully, but the resulting inflammation is often severe.

The *seton* has been used with the view of bringing about adhesive inflammation of the walls of the cyst. Dupuytren incised the tumour and inserted a double button, which was allowed to remain, in order to favour a continual flow either of saliva or of the fluids secreted by the cyst. This treatment has often been successful.

One of the simplest and most reliable treatments for ranula is a silk-thread seton. A coarse silk thread may be passed through at one side of the ranula and out at the other, and tied in a knot. The contents of the cyst are then to be pressed out and the thread moved backwards and forwards about twice a week. It should be retained for several weeks, as it causes no inconvenience, until it is evident that no further collection is taking place.

Excision is often adopted at the present day. The upper wall of the tumour is raised by forceps or a tenaculum, then that wall is cut away with a bistoury or scissors; the tumour empties itself, and cicatrization soon takes place. Malgaigne's practice of cauterizing the part after the excision renders the result more certain.

Jobert, under the name of *batrachosiotomy*, has described a modified mode of excision. The flaps produced by a longitudinal incision of the tumour are turned back, and fixed to the mucous membrane of the mouth by sutures. The operation is delicate, and takes time.

PLATE L.

STAPHYLOGRAPHY.

Fig. 1.—*Roux's operation*. The first and second sutures, *d, d*, and *c, c*, having been put in, the third is placed half-way between them. The free edge of the cleft is held with the forceps, *b*, and the needle held in the needle-holder, *a*, is passed from behind forwards through the margin of the cleft.

Fig. 2.—The three threads, *a, a, b, b, c, c*, being in position, the operator pares the edges of the fissure with the probe pointed knife, *e*.

Fig. 3.—Tightening the knots, *c, c, b, b*, with the instrument, *a, a*.

Fig. 4.—*Staphyloplasty*.—*Dieffenbach's operation*.—*a, b*, and *u, b*, longitudinal incisions made parallel to the edges of the fissure.

Fig. 1



Fig. 2

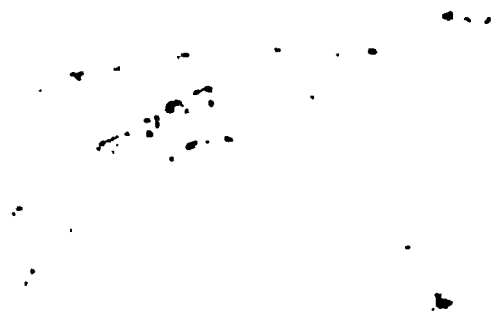


Fig. 3



Fig. 4





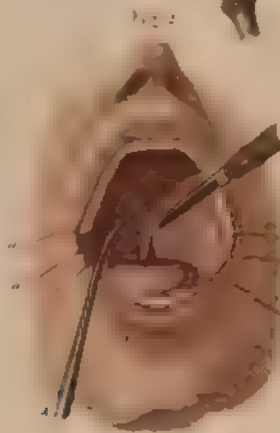
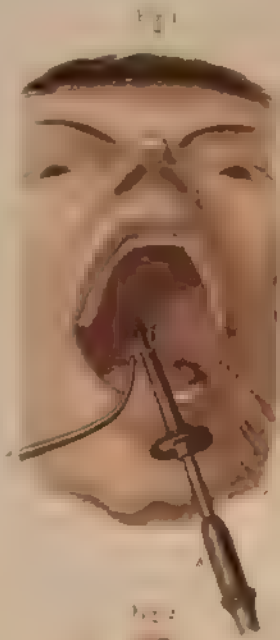


Fig. 4



Fig. 5



Fig. 6



Fig. 7



PLATE LI.

STAPHYLORAPHY.

Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.—*Bérard's method*.—Fig. 1.—The operator seizes one edge of the fissure with a pair of forceps, *a*, and passes a loop of thread, *c*, from before backwards with a needle carrier, *b*.

Fig. 2.—The ligatures, *a, a, a*, being in position, the surgeon pares the edges of the fissure with a bistoury, *c*.

Figs. 3, 4, 5.—*Diagrams of the above operation*. Fig. 3.—Passage of the first single thread, *b b*, through one lip of the fissure, *a, a*.

Fig. 4.—Passage of the loop of thread, *c*.

Fig. 5.—The loop of thread, *c*, drawing forwards the end, *b*, of the first thread, *b, b*.

Figs. 6, 7, 8, 9.—*Pierre's method*.—Fig. 6.—*Application of the instrument behind one lip of the fissure*—*c*, Movable cap holding a loop of thread, *a*; *b*, hooked needle contained in a canula.

Fig. 7.—*The canula pushed up to the front of the fissure*.—*b*, The sliding needle at the moment when it is about to pass through the edge of the fissure.

Fig. 8.—The needle, *b*, pushed on by the operator after having traversed the lip and pushed back the cap, *c*, receives in its hook the loop of thread, *a*.

Fig. 9.—The needle drawing the loop of thread, *a*, forwards.

CLEFT-PALATE.

OPERATIONS (Plates L. and LI.).

Cleft-palates are almost always congenital, and appear in three forms.

1. *Simple Cleft-palate*, affecting only the velum palati, is a median fissure without loss of substance, and limited to soft parts.

2. *Incomplete fissure of the palatine arch*, with some osseous separation.

3. *Complete fissure of the palate*, in which the bones and soft parts are completely separated the whole length of the palate. The fissure may reach the lips, and be complicated with harelip (Plates XLIV. and XLV.).

The surgical operations by which these deformities are remedied are: 1. *Staphyloraphy*, in simple cleft-palate. 2. *Staphyloplasty*, a modification of the last, applicable to incomplete fissure. 3. *Palatoplasty*, or *uranoplasty*, for the repair of loss of structure in the palatine arch.

Staphyloraphy was practised in the last century by a French dentist,

Le Mounier : in 1817 Graefe tried it unsuccessfully. Roux, in 1819, organized the operation, drew up rules, and practised it successfully. Staphyloraphy is always a long and delicate operation, requiring endurance and docility on the part of the patient : hence the practice of postponing the operation until the patient knows what he is about.

The operation consists of three stages. 1. Paring the edges of the fissure. 2. Passage of threads intended to unite the edges. 3. Tying the threads.

Roux's operation.—The apparatus consists of : 1. The sutures formed of two or three wax threads. 2. Six little flat-bent needles ; the suture threads have a needle at each end. 3. A needle-holder. 4. Dressing forceps. 5. A probe-pointed bistoury. 6. Roux's bent scissors.

First stage.—*Introducing the sutures* (Plate L., Fig. 1).—The patient is seated opposite the light, the head leaning and back supported against the chest of an assistant ; the mouth is kept wide open by a gag ; the surgeon in front of the patient, with forceps in his left hand, seizes the right lip of the fissure, and by a needle-holder, *a*, held in his right hand passes the point of the needle behind the velum, to bring it forward through the soft-palate, $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the edge of the fissure. The needle, passed as far as its eye, is loosened by the needle-holder, and its point seized by a pair of forceps drawing it forwards, with the end of thread which is in its eye. After some moments (to rest the patient), the same manœuvre is performed on the left lip with the other needle on the first thread, the two ends of which are now in position. When three sutures are used, the lowest is put in first, then the highest, and, lastly, the third is put in the middle. Fig. 1 shows the introduction of the third suture.

The ends of the thread, *c, c, d, d*, being drawn outside, and the loop which each forms being drawn down in the pharynx, the next stage of the operation is begun.

Second stage.—*Paring the edges* (Fig. 2). To pare the surfaces which are to be opposed, each margin is seized with the forceps, *a*, held in one hand, while with bent scissors, or a probe pointed bistoury, in the other hand, the edge is cut off from behind forwards, keeping clear of the sutures, *a, a, b, b, c, c* ; then with a probe-pointed bistoury the fragment is separated by an incision carried a little beyond the angle terminating the fissure. The other edge is next treated in the same way, the second incision being made to meet the first, a little beyond the angle of the fissure.

Third stage.—*Tying the knot* (Fig. 3).—M. Roux begins by drawing up the hindmost thread with his fingers, and after a simple knot he hands the threads over to an assistant, who keeps the thread, *b, b*, in place with ring forceps ; while the second thread is made tight, and then the third is treated. The sutures must not be drawn closer than

used are different: To detail all the devices for passing the sutures, or paring the edges more easily, would be wearisome: but their mechanism explains itself to the surgeon. We will, therefore, only allude to the more established instruments.

Bourquignon has devised a needle with a movable point, with which the puncture can be made from behind. Other needles of the same kind, straight and curved, have been effectively used for perforating from the front.

Smith has devised a needle consisting of a steel rod in a handle, curved towards the point in a half circle of about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch radius. The point has not an eye, but is a little expanded, and has a notch in the side to catch a suture in. The thread being attached, the needle is passed from behind forwards through the palate, and when the loop of thread (in the notch) appears in front it is seized, and the needle is drawn back, the other end of the thread is then attached, and passed through the other lip of the cleft.

Leroy d'Etiolles has devised an instrument which makes the three punctures at once, and pares the edge at the same time.

Forayser and *Pierri* use needle-holders, which retain the edge of the fissure while a needle pushed from before backwards through the palate conducts the suture or brings it back. (For a description of *Pierri's* instrument see Plate LI, Figs. 6 to 9.)

STAPHYLOPLASTY.

The loss of substance which constitutes cleft-palate is often so great as to render it impossible to bring the edges together by staphylo-raphy. We then have recourse to staphyloplasty, which has three varieties.

M. Roux's operation — In order to make the parts easier of approximation, *Roux* made two transverse incisions on each side of the fissure the length of the palate bones. The rest of the operation is as usual.

Dieffenbach's operation (Plate L, Fig. 4) — *Dieffenbach* made a longitudinal incision on each side, *a, a, b, b*, about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch from the cleft.

Donfilz cut from each side a flap, which he dissected from before backwards, turned it on its pedicle, and applied over the solution of continuity. The operation, derived from the Indian method, is not so easy as the two former.

PALATOPLASTY.

When the palatine arch is divided by a considerable fissure, we may have recourse to *M. Roux's* plan of dissecting up the soft parts outside of each set of sutures, separating them from the bones, and thus easily drawing them together. For this purpose *M. Roux* used little two-

edged knives, straight in the blade, but with the blades bent at right-angles, or nearly so, to the shaft.

Krauer detached two lateral flaps, reversed them, and brought them together across the cleft with points of suture.

It is difficult to estimate the value of these various modes of operating—the case will suggest the operation most suitable.

Dieffenbach's method.—The method proposed by Dieffenbach in 1826 is available in some cases, and is thus described by that surgeon: 'The edge of each palate-bone is pierced with a strong, straight, three-cornered punch, and a thick, soft silver wire put through the opening, the ends of which are twisted together. The mucous membrane is divided near the part where the palate-bone joins the alveolar processes; a thin, smooth, concave chisel is applied to the bone, and it is cut through on both sides. The wires are then twisted again till the edges of the bony cleft approach each other a little, or altogether (the first alone can generally be done); the ends of the wire are then cut off. The effect of the closer approximation of the edges of the cleft in the bone is immediately perceptible in the soft palate. The side-shifts in the bone, which are at first filled up with lint, close themselves by granulations. When the space in the bone is either closed or considerably lessened, the sewing of the palate may then be undertaken according to the direction already given, and side incisions made in the soft palate before the sutures are put in. The operation may be continued from time to time until the cleft is removed.'

The late Sir William Ferguson, without being aware that this procedure had been previously resorted to, employed it with considerable success. It is, however, frequently followed by necrosis of the palate-bones, which may to some extent be obviated by making a series of small holes with a brad-awl in the line of division of the bone prior to using the chisel, after the manner suggested and practised by Mr. Francis Mason of St. Thomas's Hospital. The 'muco-periosteal' operation attributed to various surgeons is perhaps the best, provided the complete thickness of the soft parts be stripped off freely from the bony palate in the direction from the alveolar border towards the fissure. A properly made raspatory should be used, and its edge should not be too sharp: hence it is preferable to the rectangular knives employed by some surgeons.

PLATE LII.

CATHETERISM OF THE AIR-PASSAGES AND OF THE
ŒSOPHAGUS.

Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4 represent *ant ro-posterior vertical sections*, showing the anatomy of the parts concerned.

Fig. 1.—*Catheterism of the air-passages*.—*Chaussier's method*.—*a*, Tongue; *b*, floor of nasal fossa; *c*, laryngeal tube, whose end is in the larynx; *d*, œsophagus.

Fig. 2.—*Catheterism of the œsophagus for feeding the insane*.—*a*, Tongue; *b*, floor of nasal fossa; *c*, tube with upper end expanded into a funnel; *e*, pharynx.

Fig. 3.—*Catheterism of the œsophagus*.—*Baillarger's method*. The point of the instrument is passed into the upper part of the pharynx; *c*; *d*, iron stilette; *e*, whalebone stilette.

Fig. 4.—*Same operation*.—The instrument, *d*, passed into the œsophagus; *c*; *e*, *e*, *e*, the end of a syringe to inject fluid nourishment.

CATHETERISM OF THE ŒSOPHAGUS.

ANATOMY.

The œsophagus is a long muscular tube extending from the pharynx to the stomach, flattened from before backwards, and $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches across. This canal lies on the spine; in front lies the trachea, slightly to the left, so that the left side of the neck is usually selected for œsophagotomy. The pharyngeal end is at the level of the cricoid cartilage, and at this point there are often spasmodic contractions which interfere with the passage of bougies, etc.

OPERATIVE MEASURES.

Catheterism of the œsophagus is used for artificial feeding, or for evacuating the stomach; it is also employed to recognise the presence of foreign bodies in the passage, to extract them or push them down into the stomach.

The stomach is evacuated in poisoning cases. In these instances the first thing is to inject a quantity of tepid water, or of some other liquid, to dilute the toxic matters. After this previous measure the fluid is to be pumped out with a suitable sized pump.

The operation may be done through the nose or mouth.

Catheterism by the nose.—*Desault's method*.—A gum-elastic catheter with an iron rim stilette is used; a slight curve is imparted to the point of the instrument, which is held like a pen, the concavity down-

Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3



Fig. 4



wards, and passed with the point sliding along the floor of the nasal fossa. When the point encounters the posterior wall of the pharynx, the stylette is withdrawn with one hand while the catheter is passed on with the other. The point of the instrument being then in the upper part of the pharynx, it is only necessary to push it on in order to make it descend the œsophagus as far as the stomach. When certain of the position of the sound, and when the catheterism has been done with a view to inject food into the stomach, a syringe is fitted to the outer opening for the purpose (Fig. 4). Should the tube have slipped from the pharynx into the larynx, it is indicated (1) by the convulsive cough and suffocative spasm which immediately follow, (2) the purpling of the face, jugular dilatation, and violent spasms, and the impossibility of articulating a single word on the part of the patient. The last symptom is the most valuable, because it is the only one which does not appear more or less when instruments are passed into the œsophagus. Therefore let it be a rule to make a patient say some words before any alimentary matter is injected through the tube.

Baillarger's method (Plate LII., Fig. 3). This is especially applicable to the insane, because it allows us to direct the end of the sound with more certainty in a class of patients whose opposition may cause mistakes on the part of the most skilful. This surgeon uses a catheter with a double stylette. One stylette is of iron wire, *d*; the other, *e*, is of whalebone. The two stylettes passed into the catheter take the curve given to the tube itself; but the iron wire keeps its curve, while the whalebone tends to become straight. The catheter is passed through one of the nostrils, and when the end touches the posterior wall of the pharynx (Fig. 3) the wire stylette, *d*, is withdrawn; then the whalebone stylette, *e*, acting alone, pushes the bent end of the catheter against the vertebral column by straightening its curve. This action on the part of the whalebone stylette keeps the end of the catheter from the laryngeal opening, and consequently saves the patient from the dangers of a slip.

Blanche's method.—To attain the same end with a more simple apparatus, and one more under the surgeon's control, M. Blanche uses a jointed stylette, in which there is a central stem ending in a ring, in which the operator puts his thumb; in two other rings the index and middle fingers are placed; the central stem, being either pushed in or drawn out, imparts to the jointed stylette all the curves necessary for passing the catheter. This very clever instrument enables the surgeon to act with rapidity and precision, and thus spares the patient much peril and distress.

Falret and Ferrus's method. In the great majority of cases of obstinate lunatics it suffices to convey aliments into the pharynx, when the sensation they produce excites instinctive movements, and deglutition is completely effected. Falret and Ferrus have succeeded in

feeding unruly patients by means of a female catheter, whose orifice is expanded into a funnel. The instrument is passed through the nose (Fig. 2), and fluid nourishment, poured spoonful by spoonful into the funnel, reaches the pharynx through the catheter, and descends into the stomach.

STRUCTURE OF THE ESOPHAGUS.

The causes which may bring about stricture are numerous, and we cannot here detail them all. When the disorder is discovered, the first thing to be done is to facilitate the passage of alimentary matters into the stomach. Catheterism is then employed with a larger or smaller catheter, which may be left in if necessary. Several forms of dilators have been devised, and cauterization with nitrate of silver has been used. These measures may be applied to cases in which the malady has been clearly made out.

Dilation obtained by bougies of gradually increasing size, as is usual in treating urethral strictures, affords a convenient and safe method to be used in strictures of this tube when resulting from chronic inflammation. Cauterization is not always applicable.

Extraction of foreign bodies.

Foreign bodies which may become lodged in the esophagus are of two kinds: those which are capable of being softened by digestion, and which will gradually go into the stomach, or by passing an instrument can be pushed down: other bodies, which are hard, angular, or pointed, and may stay for an indefinite time, and bring about most grave symptoms. In all cases the passage of a sound will furnish valuable information as to their nature, form, and situation, and the simplest means will often determine their removal. Swallowing oily and mucilaginous fluids facilitates the passage of firm and rounded substances. Bodies of large size and soft, like bread, a plum without its stone, etc., expand the canal as they pass down, and may take with them little irregular and pointed things, like fragments of bone or fish-bones. But it is often necessary to use a sound of some sort to make them pass into the stomach: either a bougie or an ordinary probang may be employed.

Extraction by the mouth.—This may be done: 1. When the foreign body is impacted in the pharynx or commencement of the esophagus: it may then be seized with the fingers or with long curved forceps. 2. When the foreign body is arrested lower down, but from its form or its nature cannot be pushed on without danger. The instruments invented for extracting foreign bodies are too numerous to be described here. We shall therefore confine ourselves to showing their mode of action, and to enumerating the most valuable kinds. They are all intended to act from below upwards, and to bring the body into

the mouth : such as hooks which can be introduced, closed, between the foreign body and the œsophagus. When below it they are opened in such a way that when drawn up the substance is withdrawn also. In this category may be placed probangs, whose sponge tips are contracted and dry when introduced, which are allowed to remain below the foreign body till they have swollen, and then are pulled up. Delahaye's bundles of tow ; Ollenroth's chaplets ; Baudens' umbrella, etc., etc. Dupnytren's prehensile sound is employed in France ; it has at one end a loose hook, which can be easily passed down. Drawing it back, the wings of the instrument fall and catch the foreign body. It is impossible to estimate the relative value of these contrivances in particular cases : the surgeon will be guided by the nature of the case, and will use the usual simple methods, or will devise something new.

When the methods now described have failed, and by its presence the foreign body is causing inflammation of the œsophagus, the surgeon must resort to œsophagotomy.

CATHETERISM OF THE AIR PASSAGES (Plate LII, Fig. 1).

The object of this procedure is to keep up respiration, either by insufflation or with the tube left in, to keep the laryngeal passage open. It is used in œdema of the glottis, in asphyxia, and most of all in the newly-born. The instrument can be used by the nose or mouth.

1. *Introduction of the tube through the nose. Desault's method*—A gum elastic catheter, of large size, with a stilette suitably curved, is introduced through the nasal fossa as far as the pharynx. The jaws of the patient are kept open by a gag, to enable the operator to seize, with his fingers or forceps, the end of the catheter. The stilette is withdrawn, and the end of the catheter is held against the tongue while the catheter is pushed on well into the larynx. When the operation has succeeded, the hand holding the instrument feels that an obstacle has been overcome ; the patient has a sudden cough, and there is spasmodic raising of the larynx ; air comes out of the open end of the catheter at each expiration. All these signs are wanting when the catheter is in the œsophagus. Withdraw it a little, and pass it again. The nose operation is only used when the catheter is meant to be kept in. For new-born infants the following proceeding is better.

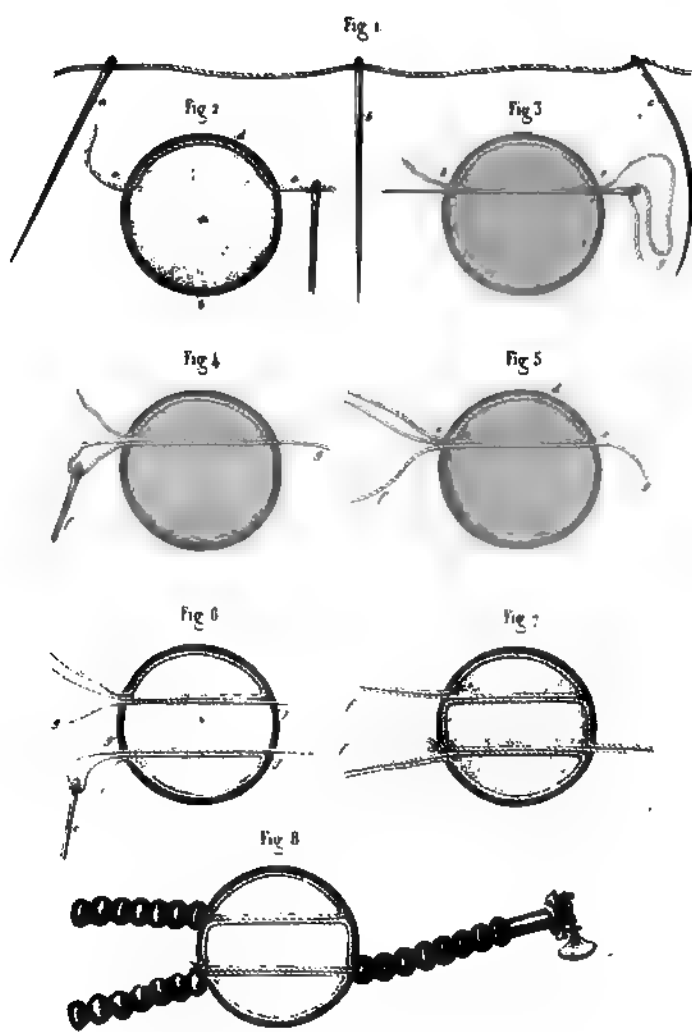
2. *The mouth operation.—Chaussier's method* (Plate LII., Fig. 1) —Chaussier used a silver tube, eight inches in length, bent near the end, and pierced with two lateral holes for the passage of air. Above the holes is a piece of sponge or of agaric, which is intended to completely obliterate the upper orifice of the larynx above. Depaul has substituted one terminal opening for Chaussier's two lateral ones.

The child lies on its back, the chest higher than the pelvis, the head leaning back, the neck bent in front. The operator begins by clearing

the mouth and throat of any mucus which may be present ; then slips the little finger of the left hand over the tongue as far as the epiglottis ; then taking the laryngeal tube in the right hand, he passes it along the left finger as far as the epiglottis. Moving the point of the tube about, the epiglottis is raised, and the instrument is passed on until it is well in the larynx, and then the disk of sponge closes the laryngeal opening around the tube.

If the tube is in the glottis, the chest is at once dilated by blowing in. To ensure success, we are counselled to firmly press the child's lips round the tube with the thumb and forefinger of each hand, while the second and third fingers compress the nostrils and close the nose. First of all, the operator should suck out all mucus from the trachea and bronchi ; then blow in air with the mouth, imitating the equal periods of natural breathing. After each insufflation, the free end of the tube is left open. The insufflations must be made gently not to rupture the air-cells, by the sudden and violent ingress of a quantity of air. Twelve or fifteen insufflations a minute are enough. After each of them the hands are pressed gently on the chest, to give the walls the movement of natural expiration.

It is often not till the expiration of an hour that the artificial respiration re-animates the infant and stimulates the heart. It must therefore be continued gently and patiently. The operation should not be given up until the heart beats 120 to 130 times in a minute.



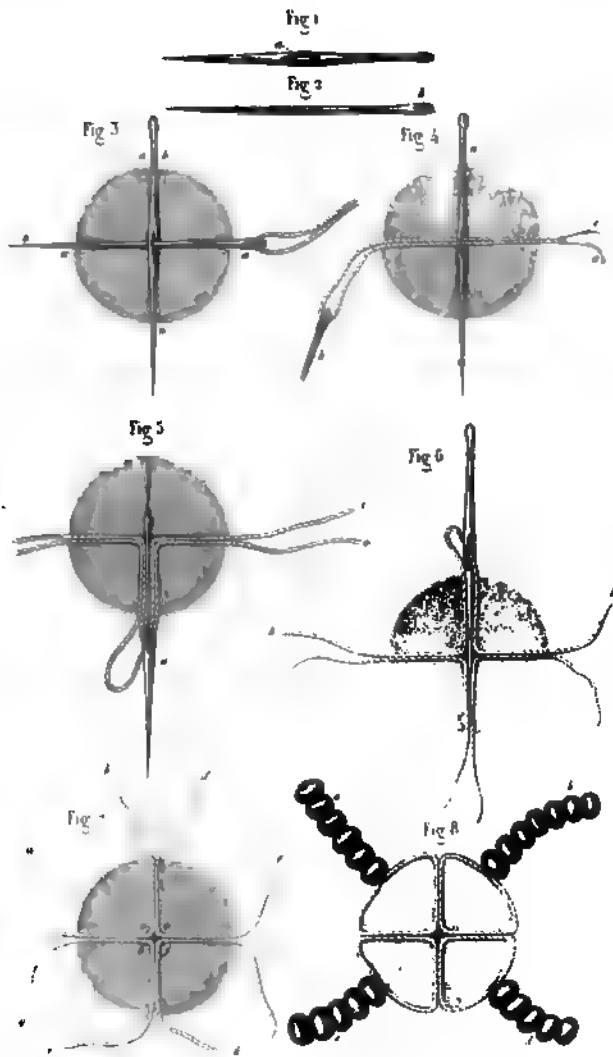


PLATE LIII.

LIGATURE OF VASCULAR TUMOURS.

Ballard and Rigal's method.

The figures show a section of the base of the tumours, to indicate the course of the needles.

Fig. 1. *A long and strong thread with three needles.*—*a*, Straight and sharp-edged needle; *b*, straight and round needle. *c*, curved needle.

Fig. 2. *a*, Base of the tumour; *b*, skin. A vertical roll of skin has been raised from the level of the upper third of the tumour: this fold, pierced by the cutting needle and its thread, and then let go, will encircle the upper third with the thread, *c, d, e*, whose extremities protrude from the skin at the punctures, *c, e*. The round straight needle remains for the present outside the tumour.

Fig. 3. The round needle transfixes the tumour at its base entering at the point *e*, and issuing at *b*, it brings with it a loop of thread, *g*.

Fig. 4.—The loop being cut, the needle, *f*, is removed.

Fig. 5.—The upper third of the tumour is thus surrounded at its base by the thread, *c, d, e*, whose ends hang out of the same puncture, *e*; and further, a second thread, *f, g*, having its ends free, is placed above the middle third.

Fig. 6.—With a second thread the same manœuvre is practised for the lower third of the tumour, by which means the middle third is comprised between two parallel threads, *f, g*, and *f', g'*, each of these threads being threaded on a curved needle, *c* (Fig. 1). One of the needles is passed in at *j*, and under the skin, and out at *j'*; so also the end of thread *g*, similarly treated, is made to come out at *g'*; and at this point, *g*, the two threads *g* and *g'* are to be firmly tied, thus forming a loop which will encircle the middle third of the tumour, as is shown in Fig. 7.

Fig. 8.—The ends of the ligatures are passed through a bead or craseur, and tied over a small piece of wood.

PLATE LIV.

GOITRE LIGATION.

Mahe's operation.

Fig. 1.—Female needle, having an eye, *a*, near its centre.

Fig. 2.—Male needle, with an eye, *b*, at one end to receive a very strong double thread

Fig. 3.—*a, a, a*.—Section passing through the base of a tumour to show the disposition of the needles. The female needle, *b*, is put in first: the male needle, *c*, passes through the tumour and the eye of the female needle.

Fig. 4.—The female needle, *a*, in place. The male needle, *b*, has passed right through the tumour, and the double thread, *c, c*, remains engaged in the eye of the needle, *a*.

Fig. 5.—The female needle, *a*, pushed from above downwards, brings the double thread, *c, c*, out of the tumour. One of the threads is then cut, and removed from the eye of the needle, *a*.

Fig. 6.—The female needle is pulled back, bringing with it the loop of the thread, *b, b*, which is cut, and the needle completely removed from the tumour.

Fig. 7. The tumour is thus divided into four parts, isolated by four loops of thread, *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l*, whose ends are drawn up by four bead crasneurs (Fig. 8, *a, b, c, d*).

GOITRE.

The name Goitre, or bronchocele, denotes enlargement of the thyroid body. It often acquires considerable size, and hinders respiration and swallowing.

In the great majority of cases goitre is only produced by hypertrophy of the thyroid, but it may also consist of erectile, tuberculous, calcareous, cancerous, etc. tumours. Before having recourse to operation, then, it is most important to make out the nature of the disease, that suitable treatment may be applied.

In general, iodine preparations are of use in simple or recent hypertrophy: puncture would be indicated in the case of serous or purulent cysts. But when the tumour is solid, the operations to be described are called for. Cantharization, setons, ligation of the thyroid arteries, extirpation, and ligation of the tumour *en masse*, have all been employed.

Setons have been successfully used by Monro, by Adisson, by Flajani, Maunoir, Dupuytren, and the author. Setons set up suppuration, which causes the hypertrophy to contract. When used they should be passed through each lobe of the tumour, and the thread withdrawn when the tumour begins to diminish.

Ligation of the thyroid arteries.—This is suitable in erectile tumours, in simple hypertrophy, and in cases where development of the thyroid has rendered the arteries superficial. Both sides must be tied, for any prospect of success. Carlisle and Chehus have employed this treatment.

Ligature en masse was first performed by Moreau in 1779. Mayor, of Lausanne, has since described the operation more fully.

Mayor's method.—The tumour is laid bare by a double elliptic incision, which permits the skin to be turned back right and left; then a ligature, consisting of two threads of different colours, is passed through the base of the tumour; the two ends of each thread are then drawn tight, to strangulate each half of the tumour. If the goitre is of large size, and lobulated, a ligature could be applied to each lobe by traversing the tumour in different directions with long needles armed with double threads, so as to strangulate each lobe separately.

Ballard and Rigal's method.—Three subcutaneous ligatures were applied to the base of a large goitre. To give an idea of this proceeding, a series of diagrams are given in Plate LIII., to show the courses of the needles and the disposition of the threads.

Manec's method (Plate LIV.).—By a shorter and simpler plan than the last, Manec has tied the pedicle of a large tumour by means of four ligatures acting from the centre of the tumour towards the circumference.

The apparatus needed consists of two straight needles, whose length should be some centimetres greater than the larger diameter of the tumour. One of these needles, called 'the female,' for simplicity's sake, should be flat, sharp-edged, and pierced at its middle with an eye large enough to be freely traversed by the other, 'the male' needle. This last needle has an eye at one end which receives two threads of different colours. The tumour is first transfixed at its base by the female needle, so that the eye of the needle is in the centre of the tumour, and the needle stays there while the tumour is transfixed afresh by the male needle carrying its threads in a direction rectangular to the direction of the female needle, and through its central eye. Having ascertained that the male needle has passed through the female, the male is removed, leaving the threads running across the base of the tumour and protruding on each side of it.

The female needle is then pushed on until one of the threads in its eye can be seized and cut. Half the tumour is thus divided into two parts, each comprised in a loop of thread. The same proceeding is

repeated in the opposite direction to form loops of thread for the other half; and the tumour will thus be strangulated at its base by four ligatures acting from the centre towards the circumference.

Extirpation.—This operation, one of the most serious in surgery, ought not to be attempted except in an extreme case, as when the patient is threatened with suffocation.

The surgical anatomy of the thyroid region shows the perils which attend extirpation of goitres, such as hæmorrhage, and entrance of air into the veins. Few successful results have been recorded; and only under great pressure should the surgeon attempt the operation. Careful attention to the anatomical relations of the thyroid (Plate LV.) will enable the surgeon to avoid some of the vessels and nerves, and thus lessen the danger. The combination of ligation with extirpation as employed by Mayor is the safest.



Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3

PLATE LV.
ŒSOPHAGOTOMY.

Figs. 1, 2. — ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—The œsophagus diverging a little to the left, it is chiefly on the left side of the neck that operations are undertaken.

Under the skin and cellular tissue we find the sterno-mastoid, *g*, and the hyoid muscles, *e*, *f*; the external jugular vein, *h*, *h*, which crosses the sterno-mastoid is scarcely ever found within the area of the incision. At the level of the hyoid bone, *C*, in the cellular tissue between the inner edge of the sterno-mastoid and the hyoid muscles, we find the laryngeal nerve, and the lingual, *b*, and thyroid, *d*, arteries. Thus the incision should not be carried higher than a point from $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch below the hyoid bone.

Fig. 2. Beneath the sterno-mastoid, *g*, *g*, we find the carotid artery, *j*, and the jugular vein, *i*, contained in a cellular sheath. These vessels cross the œsophagus, *I*, in a line passing from behind forwards and without inwards. Drawing the laryngeal muscles forwards, we find the trachea, *G*, which is in front of the œsophagus; lower down is the inferior thyroid artery, *f*. The lowest point of the incision must not come nearer the sternum than two or three fingers' breadth, on account of that vessel. Above, at the level of the hyoid bone, *C*, are found the facial, lingual, and superior thyroid arteries mentioned in Fig. 1.

Fig. 3.—*Œsophagotomy*.—*a*, *a*, Incision following the line of the anterior border of the sterno-mastoid. The left hand of the operator, *b*, pulls the edge of the sterno-mastoid outwards and backwards, with the carotid vessels, *c* and *d*; the muscles of the larynx and trachea are pulled aside by the blunt hook, *f*, and the operator opens the œsophagus with a bistoury, *h*.

OPERATION.

The patient lies on his right side, his head turned to the right and thrown back, the neck slightly raised and supported.

The operator stands on the patient's left, so as to be able to make the incision with the right hand, while the left hand separates and protects the structures which have to be avoided.

An assistant on the patient's right side, supplied with blunt hooks, draws aside the right edge of the wound, the hyoid muscles, and the trachea.

The operator then with a convex bistoury makes an incision three inches long, parallel to the trachea, and in the groove which separates the sterno-mastoid and thyroid muscles. The incision will pass



Fig. 3



Fig. 4



Fig. 1

PLATE LV.
ŒSOPHAGOTOMY.

Figs. 1, 2. ANATOMY.

Fig. 1. —The œsophagus diverging a little to the left, it is chiefly on the left side of the neck that operations are undertaken.

Under the skin and cellular tissue we find the sterno-mastoid, *g*, and the hyoid muscles, *e*, *f*; the external jugular vein, *h*, *h*, which crosses the sterno-mastoid is scarcely ever found within the area of the incision. At the level of the hyoid bone, *C*, in the cellular tissue between the inner edge of the sterno-mastoid and the hyoid muscles, we find the laryngeal nerve, and the lingual, *b*, and thyroid, *d*, arteries. Thus the incision should not be carried higher than a point from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch below the hyoid bone.

Fig. 2. —Beneath the sterno-mastoid, *g*, *g*, we find the carotid artery, *j*, and the jugular vein, *i*, contained in a cellular sheath. These vessels cross the œsophagus, *L*, in a line passing from behind forwards and without inwards. Drawing the laryngeal muscles forwards, we find the trachea, *G*, which is in front of the œsophagus; lower down is the inferior thyroid artery, *f*. The lowest point of the incision must not come nearer the sternum than two or three fingers' breadths, on account of that vessel. Above, at the level of the hyoid bone, *C*, are found the facial, lingual, and superior thyroid arteries mentioned in Fig. 1.

Fig. 3. —*Œsophagotomy*. —*a*, *a*, Incision following the line of the anterior border of the sterno-mastoid. The left hand of the operator, *b*, pulls the edge of the sterno-mastoid outwards and backwards, with the carotid vessels, *c* and *d*; the muscles of the larynx and trachea are pulled aside by the blunt hook, *f*, and the operator opens the œsophagus with a bistoury, *h*.

OPERATION.

The patient lies on his right side, his head turned to the right and thrown back, the neck slightly raised and supported.

The operator stands on the patient's left, so as to be able to make the incision with the right hand, while the left hand separates and protects the structures which have to be avoided.

An assistant on the patient's right side, supplied with blunt hooks, draws aside the right edge of the wound, the hyoid muscles, and the trachea.

The operator then with a convex bistoury makes an incision three inches long, parallel to the trachea, and in the groove which separates the sterno-mastoid and thyroid muscles. The incision will pas-

through the skin, cellular tissue, and cervical fascia: the cellular tissue in the intermediate groove will be carefully divided on a director; the inner border of the sterno-mastoid muscle will be kept out of the way by the fingers of the left hand, while the assistant gently presses aside the laryngo-tracheal mass.

The trachea must be handled carefully not to interfere with the respiration. Accessions of dyspnoea will cause sudden movements which are dangerous to the patient. The omo-hyoid muscle crosses the wound diagonally; when it does not interfere with the operation seriously, it is to be moved out of the way upwards, otherwise it must be divided on a director.

At the bottom of the wound and behind is the cellular sheath of the great vessels, which must be pulled away from the œsophagus: in front the assistant removes the trachea with a blunt hook. The œsophagus then appears at the bottom of the wound in the form of a broad muscular band lying on the cervical vertebrae. The foreign body often helps to distinguish the organ by the swelling it causes. The patient may be made to swallow, which will make the muscular band contract and become firmer.

The œsophagus being clearly defined, the bistoury is used to make a puncture, which will serve to begin an incision at first of small extent, but afterwards enlarged with a probe-pointed bistoury to give exit to the foreign body.

If the operator cannot distinguish the œsophagus in the wound a tube or probang must be passed down to assist in defining it. This step is especially necessary when the foreign body is below the wound, and cannot therefore give any indication of the gullet by expanding it. A bougie is enough to serve as an index of the position of the tube, and to act as a point of resistance for the incision. *Colie's* dart wound may be employed; making the dart puncture the point selected, a passage is procured for a probe-pointed bistoury. But the most convenient instrument is *Vacca's*. This is a catheter penetrated in part of its length; a channelled stilette is made to protrude from the opening, when a button is turned. The bulging caused by the protrusion of the stilette will guide the operator in making the incision.

The incision made, the foreign body is to be extracted; polypus forceps, tenacula, hooks, etc., will be useful for this purpose. No general rules for extractive manœuvres can be given. The nature and form of the foreign body, the depth at which it lies, will help to indicate what course is to be pursued. After the operation the edges of the wound are brought together by simple dressing. Union by first intention is not to be tried. If the incision in the œsophagus is sufficiently extensive it will be prudent to leave a hollow sound in the canal for some days, to conduct the food to the stomach, and avoid its escape into the wound.

Fig



Fig



Fig



Fig

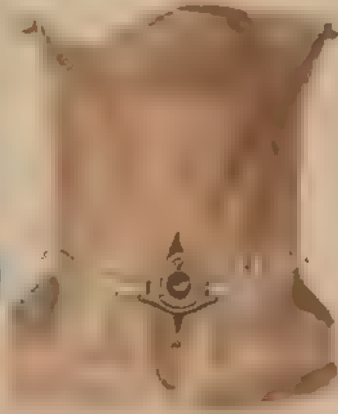


PLATE LVI.

BRONCHOTOMY.

Figs. 1, 2, 3.—*Surgical anatomy of the front of the neck.*

Fig. 1.—*Subcutaneous layer of front of the neck* :—*a, a*, Lower jaw ; *B*, hyoid bone ; *C, C*, thyroid cartilage ; *d, d*, carotid vessels ; *e, e*, infra-hyoid muscles ; *g, g*, external jugular veins ; *f, f*, anterior jugular veins ; *h, h*, sterno-mastoid muscles.

The larynx and trachea are covered in front by skin and superficial fascia enveloping the platysma. Some anastomosing branches of the anterior jugular vein are found here. The sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles, sometimes meeting in the middle line, hide the larynx and trachea under a thin muscular layer : lastly, deeper and at the level of the cricoid cartilage is the thyroid body, whose size and position are variable.

Fig. 2. Below this superficial layer we find the hyoid bone, *A* ; the thyro-hyoid muscles, *C, C*, separated in the middle line, and exposing the thyro-hyoid membrane, and the thyroid cartilage, *B* ; the crico-thyroid muscles, *d, d*, the thyroid gland, *E*, and the trachea, *F*. A dotted line, *g, g*, shows the upper edge of the sternum and clavicles. By the sides of the larynx and trachea are the carotid vessels : *h, h*, the common carotid ; *i*, superior thyroid-artery ; *j*, inferior thyroid vessels ; *k, k*, internal jugular veins ; *l*, innominate vein ; *m*, inferior thyroid veins ; *n*, innominate artery. The thyroid veins when divided in tracheotomy often bleed severely. The incision must not be carried too low, lest the innominate veins be wounded ; the finger-tip in the wound will perceive the pulsations of the large arteries. In describing the operation we shall have to insist on the importance of these anatomical data.

Fig. 3. *Anatomy of the larynx*.—*a*, Hyoid bone ; *b*, thyro-hyoid membrane ; *c*, thyroid cartilage ; *d*, crico-thyroid membrane ; *e, e*, cricoid cartilage ; *f*, trachea ; *g, g*, internal jugular veins ; *h*, innominate vein ; *i, j, j*, thyroid veins.

Fig. 4. *Operation of tracheotomy*.—*a, a*, Incision in the middle line in front of the trachea ; *b, b*, tape to keep the canula in the trachea. Under the generic name *bronchotomy* are included those operations which are intended to obtain an artificial passage into the larynx or trachea, to extract foreign bodies or to admit air when the upper part of the larynx is obstructed.

The incision may be made (1) *into the larynx by the thyro-hyoid membrane* (sub-hyoid bronchotomy) ; (2) *through the hyoid cartilage* (laryngotomy) ; (3) *into the larynx and upper rings of the trachea* (laryngo-tracheotomy) ; (4) *into the trachea* (tracheotomy).

OPERATIONS, ETC.

Bronchotomy ought to be used in all cases where the life of a patient is threatened by a mechanical obstacle to respiration.

The obstacle may arise from the presence of a foreign body, or from disease of the air passages.

1. *Foreign bodies.* The accidental entrance of foreign substances is the most common case which may call for bronchotomy. Not only can such bodies produce suffocation, but they may set up ulcerations in the larynx and trachea, perforate their walls, causing emphysema and cellulitis; there is, therefore, good reason for operation when the body is not soon expelled by the cough.

Foreign bodies in the œsophagus, about the level of the larynx or trachea, may so compress those organs, and produce such a degree of apnoea as to demand immediate bronchotomy.

2. *Organic lesions of the air passages* - *Tonsillar affections.* (Edema of the throat can usually be controlled by free scarification, and this mode of treatment should be employed before having recourse to the more dangerous measure. The tumefaction of *Glossitis* is usually rapidly relieved by deep incisions.

The glottis may be scarified with the point of a curved bistoury conducted by the finger; but the punctures thus made on the œdematous enlargement do not always permit sufficient serum to escape: it then becomes urgent to perform bronchotomy.

Laryngeal diseases, as chronic inflammation, tuberculosis or wounds, may produce suffocation by causing contraction of the calibre of that organ through œdema or cicatrization. In these cases bronchotomy may be successfully employed.

Tumours. Bronchotomy may be called for when asphyxia is threatened by the pressure of tumours in parts adjoining the larynx.

Croup. Others had successfully used bronchotomy in croup, but Bretonneau regularly adopted this mode of treatment, and gave indications demanding its use.

Not only does bronchotomy, by enabling the false membranes to be removed, snatch the patient from imminent death, but, prolonging life, the diseased parts have a better chance of regaining a healthy condition. When the false membranes extend into the trachea the operation succeeds in fewer cases, and is almost useless when the disease extends to the bronchi. Nevertheless, the precise seat of croup being difficult to ascertain, we should, in all circumstances when asphyxia is threatened, decide on performance of the operation.

INTRA-HYOID BRONCHOTOMY.

This operation has been proposed by Malgaigne (though it is rarely advisable to perform it) in cases where foreign bodies or grave disease are seated in the larynx.

In this operation we divide the fibrous membrane, *b* (Plate LVI., Fig. 3), which extends from the hyoid bone, *a*, to the thyroid cartilage, *c*, and thus descend directly upon the upper orifice of the larynx.

Malgaigne's operation.—A transverse incision 2 inches long is made directly below the hyoid bone, along its lower edge. The second step is to divide the platysma and the inner half of each of the sterno-hyoid muscles; then, directing the point of the bistoury backwards and upwards, the thyro-hyoid membrane and its fibrous extension to the epiglottis are cut through transversely. We thus reach the mucous membrane, which is protruded at each expiration. It is held with forceps, and divided with the bistoury or with scissors; the epiglottis then appears, driven into the wound by expiration; it is held out of the way with forceps or a hook, and the whole larynx is exposed to view, so that instruments are easily guided.

THYRO-LARYNGOTOMY.

The superficial position of the thyroid cartilage renders this operation very easy. The thyro-arytenoid muscles and the vocal chords which are attached to its posterior surface, in the lower third of the median line of the cartilage, alone demand the consideration of the surgeon.

Operation.—An incision is made extending from the hyoid bone to the cricoid cartilage, if the isthmus of the thyroid body interferes with reaching the crico-thyroid membrane, it is to be pulled down; the infra-hyoid muscles are separated, and, after having determined the exact position of the crico-thyroid artery, the bistoury is passed through the membrane which unites the two cartilages. This puncture permits the employment of a probe-pointed bistoury or strong scissors to divide the thyroid cartilage from below upwards. The division must be made exactly in the middle line, not to interfere with the insertion of the vocal chords. In the adult the cartilage is very hard, and the left thumb will be needed to assist the passage of the blade. In the aged the cartilage, being bony, will need perhaps to be sawn.

LARYNGOTOMY.

An incision is made through the integument commencing at the prominence of the thyroid cartilage and extending an inch below the lower margin of the cricoid cartilage. The cervical fascia is then divided, and the infra-hyoid muscles separated from each other in the middle line, together with any veins which may there appear; next, the tissue beneath the muscles is separated, and the isthmus of the thyroid gland pushed downwards, if in the way of the operator, and the crico-thyroid membrane is thus exposed. If the crico-thyroid artery is large, it is seen crossing the membrane, and must be avoided

in opening the larynx. Some surgeons advise that the membrane shall be opened by a longitudinal incision, and enlarged, if necessary, by a crucial incision. The author makes only a transverse incision, and of sufficient size to enable the tube to be inserted without inconvenience.

LARYNGO-TRACHEOTOMY.

This operation was performed successfully by Boyer. The incision extends from the lower edge of the thyroid cartilage to the first three rings of the trachea (inclusive). The muscles are separated, the thyroid gland and the crico-thyroid artery pulled upwards, and the bistoury, passed in just below the artery successively divides the crico-thyroid membrane, the cricoid cartilage, and the first rings of the trachea.

The divided cricoid turns forcibly inwards, and it is difficult to separate the edges. The passage of a canula is almost impossible, except through the rings of the trachea.

TRACHEOTOMY.

In some cases, for this operation, trocars of various sizes, straight or curved, have been used : they are passed at once into the trachea. This mode of operation and these instruments are now abandoned, and it is preferred to freely open the trachea in the middle line, in order to easily introduce canulæ, which answer the purpose to be attained better than those used with the trocar.

Anatomy (Plate LII. and explanation) It is only necessary here to remark that the lower we go the deeper is the trachea, and that it is crossed at the level of the sternum by the innominate artery, and that in the case of croup or impaction of foreign bodies the soft parts may be infiltrated with serum or air.

The instruments (supposing the case to be one of croup) needed are (1.) A straight bistoury. (2.) Dissecting forceps. (3.) Blunt hooks or retractors, with which the assistants are to separate the edges of the wound. (4.) A sharp hook or rat-tooth forceps to hold the trachea firm whilst the rings are cut. (5.) Dilating forceps, or a dilator. (6.) Single or double canulæ ; a hair probang to clean the canulæ, and sponge probangs to clean the trachea. In extracting foreign bodies long curved forceps are needed, in order to reach a substance impacted above or below the point of the incision.

Operation — We here insert the description given by Trousseau :

'The child lies on a table, a rolled pillow under the nape of the neck, to make the front of the neck curve well forward — an important condition ; the surgeon (having at least three assistants) cuts quickly through the skin, then more carefully penetrates to the trachea until the tracheal rings are exposed. The trachea is then sufficiently opened. If possible the venous trunks should be avoided ; if they cannot be

avoided, cut them through without stopping to tie them, as the bleeding will stop directly the tube is placed in the trachea.

'When the trachea has been opened, the branches of a dilating instrument must be passed between its edges; lift the child, and wait for a few moments until breathing has become regular and the bleeding has stopped.

'If, in spite of the opening, the child remains in a state of partial asphyxia or syncope, cold water must be thrown on the child's face, and the plumed end of a pen must be passed down the trachea to excite contraction of the inspiratory muscles.

'Should there be orthopnea, some drops of cold water are thrown into the trachea, or the latter is cleared with a probang, which consists of a small sponge fixed to the end of a flexible whalebone stem. This will help to clear the windpipe of blood or false membranes, which may be present in it or in the bronchi.

'I advised above that wounded veins are not always to be tied. This precept is supported by the experience of Bretonneau and myself.

'If we slowly and successively cut through the tissues between the skin and trachea, we see in each inspiratory movement the expansion of the thyroid veins in the wound.

'When they are situate on the sides of the opening made by the bistoury, cut above them; but if they are just under the edge of the instrument they may be separated by blunt hooks, which can be done without difficulty.

'However, the thyroid veins of the two sides sometimes anastomose across the trachea, in which case they must be cut. Much blood flows, which can usually be stopped by pressure with the tip of the finger by the surgeon on one side or by an assistant on the other side. In the meantime the incision is continued, guiding the knife along the finger-nail (deep in the wound), and taking care to sponge often, until the trachea is seen, when it is quickly opened, and the dilator inserted; the bleeding then stops at once.

'I advise, then, that the veins be not tied, because, having performed the operation 121 times, I have never found the need of doing so. Besides which, the ligature may prove hazardous, partly by inducing phlebitis, which is particularly dangerous in this region, and partly by protracting an operation which is often done under circumstances when it is most important not to lose any time.

'*Accidents during operation.*—One of these is hemorrhage. We have seen how rare and how very seldom this is serious. But if we are obliged to cut several thyroid veins and the blood pours out in a stream, the trachea must be taken between the ulnar edge of the first finger and the radial edge of the middle finger (passed deeply into the wound till the spine is touched), then cut the trachea open quickly from below upwards, and at the same instant pass in the dilator, and

the bleeding will stop. I do not speak of hæmorrhage from the thyroid artery or the innominate; it is clear that such vessels must be tied at once to save the patient's life. I don't know that such an accident has ever happened; but I have many times felt under my finger the beating of the innominate artery, which I should certainly have cut if I had moved my bistoury carelessly in the lower end of the wound.

'I have many times seen asphyxia arise and breathing stop during the operation; the patient was in a state of apparent death. I finished the incision as quickly as possible, passed the canula in; then, the patient being placed on his side (if blood has run down the trachea, or on his back if not), I made alternate pressure on the stomach and chest, which initiated respiratory movements, and all my patients have returned to life.

'Syncope is a more common accident, appearing usually just after the operation, at the moment when, the breathing becoming easy, cerebral congestion ceases suddenly. I once saw it last nearly an hour; still it was not fatal. I merely throw cold water on the face, and some drops into the trachea, mopping it out briskly, and I keep the patient lying flat.

'As to the passage of blood into the trachea, much has been said about it, but I have never seen serious results from it, provided that the dilator is used at once, and the lips of the tracheal wound are kept open, or that, by some means or other, a good-sized canula is promptly put in; for if after having made the opening the surgeon fumbles, and cannot introduce the canula, a lot of blood passes into the trachea at every inspiration; and the air not being able to enter, asphyxia may be the immediate result; the hæmorrhage is also kept up by the continued obstruction to the breathing.

'If, on the other hand, the dilator keeps the tracheal wound open, the air passes in easily, and blows out the small quantity of blood which has entered, and the return of normal breathing checking the hæmorrhage, there is no longer any influx of blood; if by chance some blood finds its way down into the bronchi, the patient can usually expel it himself; if there be any difficulty in the matter, the use of the probang will generally effectually clear the passage.

'The respiration is usually relieved directly after the operation. If it continues embarrassed, then there are some clots of blood, or false membranes, in the chief bronchi. When we are concerned alone with blood-clots, it suffices, the trachea being kept open by the dilator, or by the canula already in position, to throw a few drops of cold water into the passage, and sponge it out.

'When there are false membranes in the trachea, it is convenient to leave the dilator in the wound till they are expelled, which is assisted by dropping cold water into the trachea, and then by repeatedly using the little probang. Yet, in spite of these measures, sometimes the

false membranes remain fixed by the attachments they have formed to prolongations into the bronchi, while the upper part is broken and movable. Then one can, in some cases, seize them with forceps passed through the opening, and by gentle traction remove them.

• If the child is strong, and has energetically expelled the false membranes from the air-passages, and if after the operation the breathing is easy, then, before introducing the canula, fifteen or twenty drops of a solution of nitrate of silver (five grains to the ounce) are to be dropped into the trachea in two portions; or if there is reason to suppose that the larynx alone has been invaded by the diphtheria, then a probang soaked in a strong solution of nitrate of silver (eighty grains to the ounce) is passed along the trachea.

• The canula is then introduced; but this should take place immediately in the case of children operated on in the last stage of croup. And a few drops of cold water in the trachea, followed by sponging out, will be the only measure practicable.

• *Canula.* The canula should be of such length that at the moment it is introduced into the trachea, it passes along the canal to a distance of nearly an inch. This is indispensable, for the day after the operation the skin and adjacent tissues will be swollen to such a degree that the canula will not penetrate more than $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch. If the canula is not long enough, it starts from the trachea in the attacks of cough, and the child may be suffocated.

• If it is essential to have a canula of good length, it is still more important to have it large enough. For infants from six months to two years old the tracheal opening of the canula should be $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in diameter; for those of two to four years old, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch; for youths, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch; for people of great stature, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch.

• The canula must be withdrawn whenever the respiration is embarrassed, if there is reason to think that the obstruction is in the artificial air-passage. In general it is enough to change the canula twice in twenty-four hours. The expulsion of false membranes, which would obstruct the passage, and abundance of mucus would demand more frequent attention.

• When, instead of the single canula, a double one is used, the inner one must be withdrawn every three hours and replaced at once; this is done without the patient's perceiving it, and renders the blocking of the tubes almost impossible.

• During the first two or three days, when the canula is withdrawn, the tracheal wound closes directly, and to such an extent as to cause symptoms of asphyxia; therefore another canula or a dilator must be passed in at once, and the dilator is very useful when the canulae are changed, preventing a great deal of suffering on the patient's part.

• The moment when the canula is removed, or the wound is held open by means of the dilator, is that which should be chosen for

touching the mucous membrane with solutions, or sponging out the trachea with a probang.

'At the end of two or three days the wound in the trachea remains open for some minutes after the removal of the tube, which can then be easily replaced without the aid of the dilator. On about the eighth day the tracheal wound will keep open for nearly an hour; later on the patency will last through a whole day, or even longer.

'When, about four or five days after the operation, the patient seems to be going on well, the tube should be allowed to remain out for a short time, that the air going into the larynx may displace the mucous and false membranes, and clear its way through the organ. The permeability of this air passage may be measured in this way. This is so much the more important, as it is considered the first rule in tracheotomy to withdraw the tube as soon as possible.

'If the air has appeared to pass through the larynx, a perforated canula should be introduced, and the orifice should be stopped with a cork.

'For some minutes the breathing seems to be easy, though perhaps the amount of air passing is insufficient; but gradually the respiration becomes excited, and the child would die of suffocation if the obstacle were not taken away. But if there is little trouble in the breathing, the cork may be left in, and some coughing effort drives the air with any false membranes through the larynx, and the passage becomes more clear. From day to day the size of the canula may be gradually lessened, and the instruments are finally abandoned when the patient can breathe with the orifice closed.

'When the canula is taken away, the edges of the wound are to be drawn together with court-plaster. This dressing, renewed two or three times a day, is sufficient in most cases. In a very short time usually the trachea closes completely, the wound in the other soft parts also soon closes, and the cicatrix is not important.

'On one occasion I was able to remove the canula finally at the end of four days; sometimes it has been from the sixth to the eighth, usually from the sixth to the thirteenth; once on the forty-second day; once on the fifty-third. When no accident arises, then the larynx clears itself in from four to thirteen days. I have never yet seen an "aerial fistula" after tracheotomy.

'*Treatment after operation.* When a child has reached the extreme stage of croup, some physicians consider that there is only one treatment indicated—do tracheotomy and put in a canula. For my part, tracheotomy appears to be the means to ward off asphyxia, which will kill the patient, and afterwards to convey to the mucous membrane of the trachea and bronchi applications capable of stopping the reproduction or extension of false membranes. I know that many of my *confères* have been successful while they have been satisfied with frequently changing

the canula, and sponging from time to time, but I have preferred to keep up local medication. I tracheotomized in succession twenty children, and applied no lotions to the mucous membranes, and the results were so unfavourable that I returned to the topical medication which had been so beneficial previously in my hands.

• The topical treatment which I have adopted is the following ; it is that of Bretonneau :

• As has been said before, if the child is strong, if he has forcibly expelled the false membrane from the air-passages, and if after the operation the breathing is good, then, before introducing the canula, at two or three times the following solution is dropped into the trachea : fifteen or twenty drops of a solution of nitrate of silver, five grains to the ounce. This application is to be made four times the first day, three times the second and third day, once or twice the third day, and then it is given up. At the same time a probang is used in the trachea, consisting of a very small sponge fixed to the end of a very flexible whalebone stem, and soaked in a strong solution (one part in five of water) of nitrate of silver.

• This last method is enough, if there is reason to believe that the larynx alone is affected. Cauterization in this manner is to be repeated as often, and for the same length of time, as the probang application above mentioned. The use of the probang alone, and the dropping in of water, are important additions to the above treatment.

• If the cough is loose, and the expectoration free, there will be no need of the water. On the other hand, eight or ten drops of lukewarm water dropped in once or twice every hour will mix with the mucus, soften it, and assist its ejection.

• Water should always be injected or dropped into the canula after using caustic solution to break up the coagulated mucus and help its expulsion. The use of water should be many times in an hour ; and if the respirations are rapid and "serratic," that is, if they resemble the sound of a saw cutting stone, every use of the probang should be followed by dropping in water.

• The canula and trachea must be sponged whenever respiration appears embarrassed : and the operation will be more efficacious if preceded by the use of water. If a sound of a clackvalve is heard in the trachea, or a peculiar whistling gives reason for thinking that there are movable false membranes, then frequent use of the probang must be made until the membranes are detached and expelled, and the most important time for using the sponge is when the canula has been removed, the lips of the trachea being separated by the dilator. It is all the more needed when the progress of the patient is not favourable. It never causes any harm, and is always followed by easier breathing, even when the child is at his last gasp, and possibly there are no membranes nor mucus to be removed.

'With this mode of treatment, carefully employed by Bretonneau and myself, success has not been very striking; but lately Bretonneau has saved six out of twenty children operated on, and I have had twenty-seven recoveries out of 112 cases. Leclerc has successfully operated on two children, treating them in the same manner. Velpeau, a pupil like myself of Bretonneau, has saved two children out of ten. Petel, following the same course of treatment, has had three recoveries after six operations. Thus out of 150 cases there have been thirty-nine recoveries, that is to say, rather more than one-fourth. I should like to have been able to compare the cases whose after-treatment was according to my method, with those treated more simply. But we know that there are now living in Paris nearly fifteen children tracheotomised in the last stage of croup, and in whom our method was not followed.'



PLATE LVII.

EXTIRPATION OF THE BREAST. -EMPHYEMA.

Fig. 1.—*Amputation of the breast.*—*a, b, c*, First curved incision made at the base of a cancerous mamma, *c', b' a*, second incision, which with the first includes the breast in an elliptic flap.

Fig. 2.—*Dressing after operation*—*a, a', a, a'*, etc., Adhesive strips keeping the edges of the wound together. A strip of lint, *b*, is fastened in the angle of the wound for drainage.

Fig. 3. *Anatomy of the chest-walls and intercostal arteries.* These arteries divide into two branches about the posterior third of the rib. The upper branch (which is the larger) runs in the groove on the under side of the rib above, and leaves it about the anterior third. The inferior branch runs along the upper edge of the rib below.

Fig. 4.—*Operation for emphyema.*—*Sedillot's operation.*

EXTIRPATION OF THE BREAST.

The scirrhus or sarcomatous tumours, which are developed in the breast, most commonly call for this operation. Many surgeons have objected to the operation on account of the tendency to recurrence of the tumour.

OPERATIONS.

The patient lies on the table, the body turned to the side opposite to that affected, the arm held away from the chest, so as to stretch the fibres of the Pectoralis Major. The surgeon stands on the side he is going to operate upon; many assistants are arranged round the patient so as to lend intelligent help to the operator.

Two semi-elliptic incisions, one below, with the concavity upwards, the other above, with the concavity downwards, will comprise in an elliptic flap all the diseased parts and some healthy tissue. The incisions should be made obliquely from above downwards, from within outwards.

The tumour is held with the fingers, or with a hook which is to be held by an assistant if the growth is of large size; and the operator first dissects from below upwards, then from above downwards, taking care to remove a layer of sound tissue. Commencing the dissection at the lower part of the tumour, we are not troubled by the blood which would run over the parts to be cut if the operation began above. Yet some operators prefer dissecting downwards, not to catch the bistoury under the Pectoralis. When the tumour is very large, it is to be raised by strokes of the knife made alternately above and below, so as to gradually isolate the mass from the periphery towards the centre.

Frequently the tissue can be torn through with the fingers, and thus a good deal of hæmorrhage prevented. Much of the bleeding may be prevented by applying Spencer Wells's artery-compressors.

When the tumour has been removed, the arteries tied, the wound sponged, we proceed to examine the subjacent tissues. All the parts which appear changed should be taken away, either with the knife or with the curved scissors. Suspected glands must be exposed to view by lengthening the incision, or twisted out with the fingers. It is generally at the level of the thoracic vessels—below, on the *Serratus Magnus*; and above, under the *Pectoralis Minor*—that affected glands are found. (The anatomy of the axilla is given at page 25, Plate IX.) The operation ended, it is necessary to dress the wound at once. The author employs strict Listerian dressings, but, instead of inserting the drainage-tube through the original incision, prefers to completely close that incision, and make a small opening for the tube in the most dependent portion of the wound. Over the wound a large flat sponge made antiseptic may be applied, to catch and render aseptic any escaping blood. If the edges are capable of easy extension, they may be brought together by means of twisted sutures. In cases where the approximation of the edges is difficult, the edges may be dissected up to a movable distance to separate them from the subjacent parts. The cicatrix of the wound will be watched carefully, and if any buds of malignant growth appear they must be at once removed.

FLUIDS IN THE CHEST (Figs. 3, 4).

Pus, serum, or blood contained in the thoracic cavity may require removal. In the normal state the lungs fill the chest, but when there is a collection of fluid in the cavity of the pleura, it presses upon the lungs from without inwards. The effusion may be so great as to compress the lung, and thus to obstruct respiration. We have already remarked that blood, pus, serum, and even gas may collect in the pleura, and necessitate an operation: and the nature of the effused fluid, its quantity, its situation, the different complications to which it gives rise, constitute so many indications for the operation, either at any spot which the operator chooses to select, or at some particular spot where the operation is alone feasible.

Effusion of blood.—If the effusion of blood is the result of an injury, the surgeon should not be in a hurry to evacuate the fluid, the presence of which tends to close the ruptured vessel and to arrest the hæmorrhage. Care must be taken to place the patient in a proper position, to close the wound which has given rise to the hæmorrhage, and to moderate the flow of blood by appropriate general treatment. Several days should elapse before any attempt is made to give vent to the effused fluid by a counter opening.

Suppuration within the pleura may terminate (1) by ulceration of the parenchyma of the lung, and evacuation of the pus through the bronchi, trachea, and mouth: (2) the pus may escape externally by ulceration through the parietes of the chest.

Effusion of serum.—Surgical interference is uncalled for at the beginning of pleurisy, and when the inflammation is still in its acute stage, unless a fatal issue from compression is feared. Nor should an operation be ventured upon in those chronic pleurisies where the effusion continues long after the attack, and where the lung, driven back upon itself, is no longer able to exert its elasticity, unless all other treatment has failed.

Effusion of gas.—Air or gas effused in the pleura, unless associated with suppuration, is so quickly reabsorbed when the cause of the effusion is slight, that it is quite unnecessary to resort to an operation.

OPERATIONS.

According to Galen, the Greeks perforated the chest with a red-hot iron—a method which was adopted by Paulus Ægineta. The operation for empyema sometimes practised in the form of cauterization, at other times by an incision into the intercostal spaces or trephining the ribs themselves—has been attended at various times by very different results. After having been more than once abandoned and again revived, it was finally established as a legitimate operation by Dionis, Ledran, Foubert, and Morand.

The pathological considerations above mentioned sufficiently indicate the relative value of the operations that have just been described. Serious effusions will require small tapplings with the aspirator, so as to favour the slow and progressive discharges of the fluid, great care being taken not to allow air to enter the chest, or suppuration will follow. Collections of coagulated blood, or of pus, necessitate larger openings.

In *hydrothorax* it is wrong to completely empty the chest at one tapping. Many cases have died at the moment in consequence of such a proceeding. It is better to remove the fluid by the aspirator slowly, repeating the tapping if necessary.

M. Stanski's operation.—According to M. Stanski, the most essential indication is to fill up and to obliterate the sac, to prevent the entrance of air into the thorax, and to exhaust the source of the secretions. To attain these objects he makes use of a complex instrument consisting of a cupping glass fitted to a trocar, and in which a vacuum can be formed by means of a pump, which completes the apparatus. By this method of aspiration the fluid can be easily removed from the cavity of the pleura. The air, on entering the lungs, now no longer compressed, dilates them, and approximates the visceral and parietal sides of the pleura.

1. *Where the spot to be selected for the operation is optional.* As a rule the opening is best made at some dependent spot in the lower part of the chest, and where there are no adhesions. The ninth or tenth intercostal space should be preferred, as lower down the diaphragm might be wounded. In thin subjects it is always easy to mark with precision the place where the opening is to be made, as the ribs can be felt and counted. If the obesity of the patient does not admit of the intercostal space being exactly determined, the puncture can be made about five fingers' breadth below the inferior angle of the scapula, or about the breadth of three fingers above the cartilaginous border of the ribs. The puncture should be made more behind than in front, close to the union of the posterior third with the two anterior thirds of the circumference of the thorax.

2. *When the place chosen is not optional.*—This is indicated by the seat of the effusion. Generally the adhesion can be best avoided by performing the operation about the centre of the effusion.

In *empyema* M. Sedillot recommends an opening large enough to allow of a free discharge of the fluid, that the wound should be kept open by the introduction of some foreign body.

With this view he makes through the skin an incision about an inch in length at the place chosen for the operation. The deep parts are cut to a less extent, and layer by layer. When the effusion is not considerable, or when it is circumscribed by adhesions, or when the walls of the sac can be easily approximated and brought into contact, the complete evacuation of the pus is not attended with any danger. But where the empyema occupies the whole pleura, and is very abundant, it is advisable to arrest the discharge of the fluid directly the jet fails at each inspiration, and there is risk of air entering the chest. This fact shows that the pus is not sufficient to fill the cavity of the chest during its expansion, and that a vacuum may be formed. The surgeon should then place in the wound the middle of a piece of lint, in the cul de sac of which some pellets of charpie should be inserted, while some cotton-wool and a thick compress and a bandage nicely adjusted to the body complete the dressings.

Two hours afterwards the pus may be again discharged, and the operation repeated at the same intervals. A little air often penetrates the chest when the dressings are removed; but this accident need not create any uneasiness, provided that it does not again take place during their reapplication. Where, either from want of care or from some other cause, the collection of pus discharges itself and is replaced by air, the air may be removed with M. Stanislavsky's air-pump or some other aspirator, and the chest injected with an antiseptic fluid.

English operation of the present day.—A free incision may be made into the pleura under the spray, and a short metal drainage-tube inserted. The wound should be then covered by a large absorbent sponge, and

dressed with the gauze dressing. This dressing should be changed as often as the fluid shows itself upon the surface.

M. Reybard's operation.—This operation, which is both simple and ingenious, permits of the continual discharge of the effused fluid without allowing the air to enter the pleural cavity. M. Reybard perforates a rib with a trocar, and he allows a canula, or the barrel of a quill-pen, to remain in the wound. The free extremity of the canula consists of catgut, or of a tube made of gold beater's skin, which can be made soft, and the advantage of which is that the fluid in the pleura easily escapes externally at each inspiration, while the air is prevented from entering the chest by the soft walls of the skin tube collapsing one against the other and closing up the end of the canula. M. Trousseau plunged the free extremity of this instrument into a vessel full of water, a proceeding which makes the introduction of air an impossibility.

An ingenious instrument has been introduced by Dr. Ward Cousins, in which the trocar slides within an indiarubber bag, so that after perforating the pleura and inserting the canula, the trocar is slid back to prevent injury to the lung, and the canula remains surrounded by the indiarubber tubing.

PARACENTESIS OF THE PERICARDIUM.

A dangerous operation: which is not very often necessary. When, however, the operation is deemed to be justifiable, the pericardium may be opened in three situations: (1) between the fifth and sixth intercostal space; (2) through the sternum; and (3) through the space which lies between the xiphoid cartilage and the cartilage of the seventh rib.

1. *Desault's operation*—This surgeon made an incision between the sixth and seventh left ribs, on a level with the apex of the heart. The muscular structures were divided layer by layer, until his finger, plunged into the wound, felt a pouch full of fluid. This Desault opened; but the autopsy made four days afterwards showed that he had only opened a cyst, beneath which he found the pericardium.

2. *Skinner's operation.*—This consists in trepanning the sternum in a line with the mediastinum. By this means a triangular space is reached, the base of which is formed by the diaphragm, and whose summit is on a level with the fifth rib. There is not much resistance met with in trepanning the bone until the internal periosteum is reached. This is very hard, and therefore the surgeon should proceed carefully for fear of wounding the pleura. The opening being effected, the patient should be made to lean forward, so that the pericardium may come within reach of the finger of the operator. A straight bistoury guided by the finger will serve to open the sac.

3. *Larrey's operation.*—In passing through, from below upwards, the

space which separates the left border of the xiphoid cartilage from the cartilage of the last true rib, we come upon the most depending part of the pericardium. By this method, which is preferable to those described above, it is easy to avoid the pleura, the peritoneum, the diaphragm, and the internal mammary artery.

LESIONS OF THE INTERCOSTAL ARTERIES.

The only wounds that can do much injury to the intercostal arteries are those which are seated in the posterior third of the chest. When the wounded vessel is visible it must be tied. The operations which, independently of the ligature, have been undertaken with the view of arresting the hæmorrhage, are even more numerous than the recorded observations of these wounds. Before operating it is necessary to discover the source of the hæmorrhage. It has been proposed to introduce into the wound a card bent into the form of a gutter.

If the blood escapes beneath the card, it proceeds from some injury to the lung, if above the card, an intercostal artery is the source of the hæmorrhage.

In cases where the wound of the artery is easily recognised, the finger, covered with a fine compress, like the finger of a glove, should be inserted into the wound. Then the cul-de-sac of this compress is to be filled with charpie so as to form a kind of cushion to the pleura. Lastly, by drawing out the compress, not only can pressure be made upon the thoracic borders of the wound, but the intercostal artery will also be compressed against the groove of the rib.

It is not necessary to describe here the different instruments that have been contrived for the treatment of these wounds. They all have the disadvantage of being little or not at all applicable to the cases, and they always irritate the pleura.



Fig. 201



Fig. 202

Fig. 203

PLATE LVIII.

OPERATIONS WHICH ARE PERFORMED ON THE ABDOMEN.

PARACENTESIS OF THE ABDOMEN. ANATOMY.

Figs. 1 and 2.—It is generally over the middle of a line *a, c*, (Fig. 1), extending from the umbilicus to the left anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, that French surgeons plunge in their trocar in the operation of paracentesis. By this means it is easy to avoid the fleshy parts of the abdominal wall, or any injury to the deep epigastric artery (*b*, Fig. 2) which courses beneath the rectus muscle.

In England this operation is performed in the course of the linea alba (*a, b*, Fig. 1).

The object of abdominal paracentesis is the evacuating of a collection of fluid in the peritoneum. Ascites is the disease in which it is usually practised; but this affection may be complicated (1) with pregnancy; (2) with an ovarian cyst; (3) by partitions constituting encysted dropsy; (4) with a congenital hydrocele. These various complications will indicate the place where the operation should be performed. In the case of pregnancy care must be taken to avoid the uterus. It is under this latter circumstance that Scarpa proposed to make the puncture in the left hypochondrium, a little below the third false rib. The umbilicus was selected by Ollivier d'Angers. M. Velpeau thought the puncture might be made without any risk in any part of the left flank. With regard to the best method to be adopted, the surgeon should likewise take into consideration the state of pregnancy, the situation of the uterus, etc. In the case of congenital hydrocele, Morand and Lédran tapped the hydrocele. In encysted dropsies, and in doubtful cases, fluctuation and the swelling formed by the fluid will indicate the spot where the operation should be performed.

The ordinary operation—*Puncture with the trocar*—The instruments required for this operation consist of a trocar, a bandage for the body, and a bandage by means of which pressure is made upon the abdomen while the fluid is being drawn off.

The patient lies upon the edge of the bed, and the operator finds out, by percussion, the level and the extent of the effusion in order that he may not plunge the trocar into that part of the abdominal wall which lies over the coils of intestine. An incision $\frac{1}{2}$ inch long is made through the integument to assist the passage of the trocar. An assistant makes with both hands methodical pressure on the opposite parts to that operated upon.

Taking, then, a good hold of the handle of the trocar, with his fore-

finger so placed on it as to limit the length of the instrument which is to enter the abdomen, the surgeon, with one thrust, plunges it into the peritoneal cavity. The canula is then held in its place with one hand, while the trocar is withdrawn with the other. Flocculi floating in the serous effusion, or even a coil of intestine, may close the internal aperture of the canula, and thus obstruct the evacuation of the fluid; but this obstacle may be overcome by inserting a probe into the canula, or by turning the latter about in different directions. The evacuation of the fluid should be effected slowly, while an assistant at the same time maintains a progressive pressure with the bandage. The object of this pressure is to prevent the too rapid dilatation of the mesenteric vessels, and to avoid the syncope which might result from the too sudden depletion of another part of the vascular system.

When enough fluid has been drawn off, the canula is removed, and a small compress is applied over the wound, and is kept in position by a strip of plaster and by the bandage round the body.

M. Fleury's (of Val-de-Girée) operation.—This consists in introducing into the canula a gum-elastic catheter, and then withdrawing the canula while the catheter is maintained in situ. It is said that the catheter follows better the retraction of the abdominal walls, and can be inserted farther into the cavity than the canula, an advantage which permits of its being allowed to remain several hours.

If hemorrhage should occur, which very rarely happens, the canula should be left in the wound, or it should be replaced by a piece of wax or gum-elastic bougie. The wound may also be raised into a fold of skin, on which pressure is maintained.

M. Baudens' operation.—It sometimes happens that the effusion, having distended and ulcerated the skin, makes for itself an opening on a level with the umbilicus. This accidental and fistulous opening allows the fluid to escape continuously. With the view of imitating this accident, M. Baudens designed a canula which, being allowed to remain in the side, and having a self-closing action, permits of the patient drawing off the fluid as fast as it collects. The umbilicus is the place selected by M. Baudens for the application of his canula. This method, which necessitates the use of a special instrument, is an ingenious modification of that adopted by M. Fleury, but is not unaccompanied by danger.

Southey's operation.—In many cases of ascites the fluid is thin and clear, and without flocculi. In such cases Dr. Southey's fine trocar may be inserted with tube attached, and allowed to remain until the abdomen is sufficiently evacuated.

We shall not here dwell upon the different plans, injections, foreign bodies, etc., that have been proposed for the radical cure of ascites. They are all attended with danger, and it is better to resort to the operation of paracentesis as often as the disease requires it.

GASTROTOMY AND GASTROSTOMY.

Gastrotomy signifies cutting into the belly, but the term is generally applied to the operation of cutting into the stomach.

This operation is justifiable when a foreign body is present in the stomach, but only when the foreign body, not being able to pass through the pylorus, gives rise to some serious mischief, or threatens to make its way out externally.

Gastrostomy.—This term, which signifies a stomach-mouth, is applied to the operation for cutting into the stomach with a view to retain a fistulous orifice in that organ for the introduction of food. It is performed in cases of obliteration of the œsophageal passage by cancerous and other growths.

An incision should be made over the tumour or over the abscess that has been formed. But if there are no external signs of the presence of a foreign body, an incision of 3 inches in length may be made in the epigastric region, over the middle line. The peritoneum should be cautiously divided, the transverse colon drawn to one side, and the anterior surface of the stomach drawn out and exposed. Now the peritoneum is to be turned outwards, and the stomach made to protrude a little from the wound, stitched with its surface applied to the peritoneum by sutures, which pass only through the outer walls of the stomach, but do not enter its cavity. For convenience in subsequently finding the cavity of the stomach, a thread of a different colour may be passed through the length of the piece of the stomach which protrudes, but also without entering its cavity. Now all the unnecessary part of the wound may be stitched together, the sutures passing through the abdominal peritoneum, drawing the surfaces of peritoneum to face each other. Complete antiseptic dressing should then be applied, and the part left until by adhesion or granulation all communication with the abdominal cavity is obliterated. When the surgeon is satisfied upon this point, the coloured thread may be sought, and directed by it a needle may be made to penetrate the cavity of the stomach, which may then be opened to the required extent.

Nédlér's operation.—This surgeon makes crucial incisions 3 inches in length, the vertical arm of which is on the left side of the middle line of the body, two fingers' breadth from the costal cartilage, and commencing immediately below the level of the ensiform cartilage. The muscular fibres are cut through by these incisions. On opening the peritoneum, the border of the left lobe of the liver is sought for, and the stomach, which lies below it, can be seized and drawn forward by means of the thumb and finger.

Mr. Bryant makes the incision from the linea semilunaris, near the xiphoid cartilage, obliquely downwards and outwards, parallel with the line of the ribs.

ABSCESS OF THE LIVER, TUMOURS FROM BILIARY CALCULI, AND HYDATID CYSTS.

When the abscess points externally, and when there is distinct fluctuation, the visceral and parietal layers of peritoneum are probably adherent, so that an opening may be made into the abdomen without fear of any escape taking place into the peritoneal cavity. An incision of small extent, so as not to exceed the area of adhesion, should be cautiously made, when, if the diagnosis is correct, immediate exit will be given to the pus. When the diagnosis is doubtful, and the existence of adhesions uncertain, it is advisable to employ the aspirator.

M. Recamier's operation. M. Recamier reaches the peritoneum by repeatedly cauterizing the parts with caustic potash. The sloughing sets up the adhesive inflammation, and the tumour can be opened with the bistoury or trocar. The walls of an abscess in a parenchymatous organ like the liver cannot become approximated, and a cavity remains behind in which air may collect. It has therefore been proposed to substitute for the pus an injection of some emollient fluid.

CHOLECYSTOTOMY.

An incision is made 3 inches long over the notch of the liver, and the gall-bladder is at once seen. If the gall-bladder be distended, it may be emptied by an aspirator, and then an incision made into its base. The wound of the gall-bladder is to be stitched to the wound of the abdominal wall, and a drainage-tube inserted into the gall bladder. After a few days the drainage-tube may be removed, and the wound entirely heals.

There is no reason why cholecystotomy should not be performed in two operations as described in the operation for gastrotomy (see page 227).

WOUNDS OF THE ABDOMEN.

Simple penetrating wounds.

When these wounds exceed an inch or so in length they are almost invariably followed by a hernia of the intestines, or of the great omentum. If the protruding parts are not injured, it will be sufficient to wash them with a little tepid water and to return them. It is sometimes necessary to unravel them before their reduction can be effected. The edges of the abdominal wound may be then accurately brought together, either with the twisted or the interrupted silver wire suture. The sutures should be carried through the peritoneum so as to approximate at least $\frac{1}{4}$ inch of peritoneum to peritoneum, the tendency of which to adhere rapidly is of the highest service.

Wounds attended with strangulation of the viscera.

The protruding parts may be strangulated by the wound, the result of which may be so serious as to call for the prompt assistance of the surgeon. The nature of the parts implicated and the severity of the injuries inflicted will indicate what course should be pursued.

STRANGULATION OF THE GREAT OMENTUM.

The exposed portion of omentum should be unfolded in case it should enclose a small portion of bowel. When only the omentum is engaged in the wound, and when the patient feels no dragging pain in turning round, it is better not to disturb it. Adhesions form on a level with the wound, the external portion of omentum sloughs and falls off, and the wound itself cicatrizes. If, however, the hernia is so large as to be exposed to injury, or to prevent the patient standing upright or turning round, it must be set free and returned. The omentum, being directed from above downwards, the rule is to disconnect it towards the inferior angle of the wound (see below).

When the protruding omentum is gangrenous, it will be prudent to ligature it and cut the slough away from below, leaving the pedicle in the wound.

STRANGULATION OF THE INTESTINES.

The first thing to be done is to diminish the volume of the protruded bowel by gentle methodical pressure. A very fine trocar may be inserted in a valvular manner into the intestine in order to let out the gas. When these means fail, the wound must be divided before the reduction is attempted.

The patient being placed on his back, with his thighs flexed so as to relax the abdominal muscles, the operator presses down the hernia with his left hand, while with the right he introduces a hernia-director into the upper part of the wound. The director is then passed beneath the peritoneum, and guides the blade of the hernia-knife in the division of the stricture. The operator should take care that the protruding bowel does not overlap the groove of the director, and that the knife does not wound the non protruding portion of bowel. The left index-finger may serve as a guide to the knife instead of a director.

When the director cannot be introduced, the integument should be divided layer by layer as far as the peritoneum. The surgeon, pressing the bowel down with his left hand, passes the finger of the same hand up to the superior angle of the wound, and by careful and repeated incisions reaches the peritoneum, which is then divided.

PLATE LIX.

WOUNDS OF THE INTESTINE.

Fig. 1.—*M. Gély's quilted suture.*—The surgeon takes a silk thread that is well waxed and armed with a needle at each end. One of the needles is passed through point *b*, above, and $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, external to the upper angle of the wound, and is brought out, from within outwards, at point *c*, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below. The second needle enters at point *b'*, and comes out at point *c'*. The figure illustrates this first step of the operation. The ends, *a*, *a'*, of the thread are then crossed in front of the wound, in such a manner that the thread from point *c'* re-enters at *c*, and the thread from point *c* re-enters at *c'*. The needles then make their exit at *d* and *d'*. Another crossing of the threads is made: that issuing from *d'* re-enters the bowel at *d*, as was done above at *c'* and *c*. This proceeding is continued as far as $\frac{1}{2}$ of an inch below the wound, where the threads are tied in a knot. Externally, the closure of the wound is secured by a double thread, which crosses it in the direction of *b*, *b'*, *c*, *c'*, *d*, *d'*, *e*, *e'*, and approximates the serous surface of its edges; internally, two threads run parallel with the direction of the wound, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, and *b'*, *c'*, *d'*, *e'*, thus making the union still more secure.

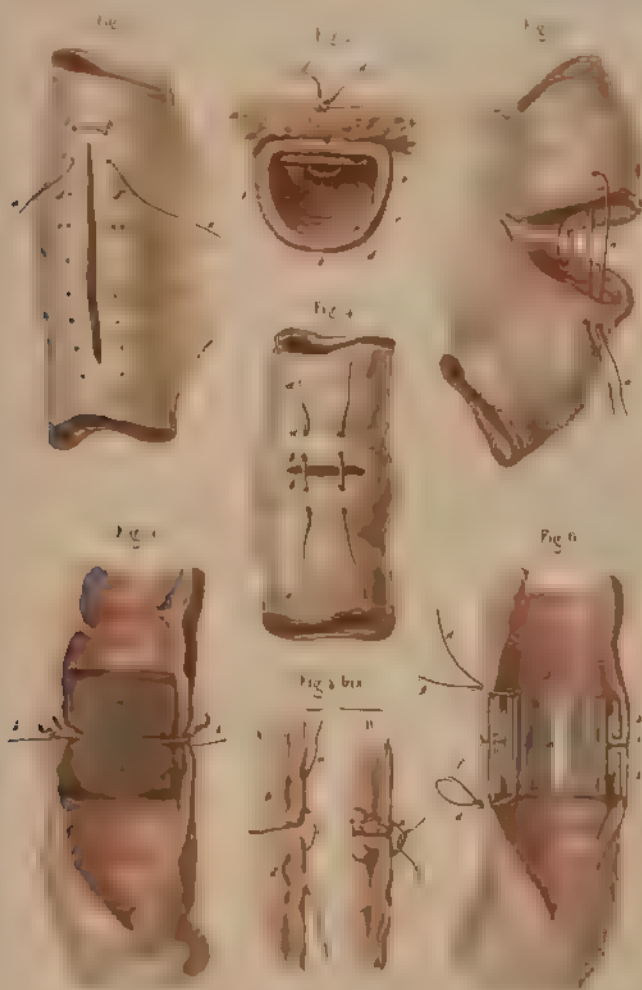
Fig. 2.—*M. Reybard's operation.*—The illustration shows a transverse section of the bowel, and of the abdominal wall on a level with the wound: *a*, *a'*, wall of the abdomen; *b*, *b'*, bowel; *c*, tablet introduced into the bowel; *d*, *d'*, suture of thread passing through and keeping in apposition the tablet, the bowel, and the abdominal wall.

Fig. 3.—*Transverse wound of the bowel—M. Jobert's operation.—Apposition of the serous surfaces.*—Two silk threads, *a*, *a'*, and *b*, perforate the upper end of the bowel. At the lower end, the edge of the bowel has been turned inwards, while the thread, provided with a needle at each end, passes through this inverted edge, and maintains the inversion. When traction is made upon the threads, *a* and *b*, the upper end of the bowel is invaginated within the lower portions, and by this means the serous surfaces are brought into contact.

Fig. 4 and 4 bis.—*M. Lembert's operation.*—The number of needles and thread required in this operation must be in proportion to the number of sutures to be applied. One thread, *a*, is inserted at *a'*, and drawn out at *b*; it then passes over the transverse wound, re-enters the bowel at *b'*, and again makes its exit at *c*. The other threads are applied in the same manner.

Fig. 4 bis represents the course of the thread, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, through

Pl 59



the wall of the abdomen, *A*. It is only necessary to pull the thread and to tie it, in order to bring the serous surface of the edges of the wound into contact with each other, *B*.

Fig. 5.—*M. Amussat's operation*.—Longitudinal section of the bowel, showing the cork, *a, a*, over which the two ends of the bowel are bound by the thread, *b, b*, the mucous surface of one end being brought into contact with the serous surface of the other.

Fig. 6.—*Denan's operation*.—Longitudinal section of the bowel and of the collars or rings, showing the disposition of the apparatus employed: *a*, central collar; *b, b*, the two eccentric collars, less deep, but broader than the central one, *a*. One thread, *d, d', d'', f, f', g*, keeps it all in position.

The edge of the upper portion of bowel, *c'*, is folded round the upper collar, *b*, and that of the lower portion, *c'*, is folded in the same manner over the other collar, *b'*.

The central collar, *a*, keeps the edges of the wound inverted, and presses them against the internal surface of the two collars, *b, b'*. By this means the serous surfaces of the intestinal wall are brought into contact. The thread, *d, d', f, f', g*, keeps the collars in place.

If the wounded bowel remain within the abdominal cavity, it will be only necessary to prevent the occurrence of inflammation by antiphlogistic measures. But when the abdominal wound is large and permits of the coils of intestine being easily drawn out, there is nothing to prevent a search being made for the wound in the bowel, which, if more than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in length, may be closed with a suture.

Hereafter a description will be given of the operations by means of which an artificial anus may be established. At present it will suffice to mention those measures which are usually adopted to obtain an immediate cure by bringing together the edges of the wound, without interfering with the intestinal tube.

These measures will vary according as the wounds are longitudinal or transverse.

1. Longitudinal wounds.

Palfyn's method.—This consists in fastening the lips of the intestinal wound to the peritoneal surface of the abdominal wound. For this purpose a silk thread passed through the edges of the wound keeps them in apposition, while the ends of the thread fastened outside support the bowel against the external wound. This plan, though easily carried out, may lead to the formation of an artificial anus.

Ledran's operation.—More complicated than the preceding, it involves the same principle. Several pieces of thread, about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch apart, are passed in the same manner as in Palfyn's operation. The ends of the thread are then united, and twisted in such a manner as to ensure the approximation of the edges of the wound, the contraction of the intes-

tinal wall, and the ultimate closure of the wound. The bundle formed by the ends of the threads is fixed outside the abdomen.

Operation of M. Reybard (Fig. 2, Plate LIX.).—This operation has also for its object the adhesion of the visceral to the parietal peritoneum. A small longitudinal piece of wood, rounded at its angles, is taken, and a thread passed through two holes made in its centre about $\frac{1}{8}$ inch apart. This little plate thus suspended by the thread is introduced into the wound of the bowel, like a button through a button-hole. The two ends of the thread are outside the intestine. Each is then passed through a needle, and one lip of the intestinal wound is to be perforated from within outwards with one of the needles, while the other needle is to be passed through the other lip. The coil of thread thus includes the plate and the two edges of the wound in the bowel. The threads are then carried through the edges of the abdominal wound, from within outwards, in the same manner as they were passed through the intestinal wound. The bowel is then reduced, and in tying the threads externally the wooden plate keeps the external surface of the bowel closely applied to the abdominal peritoneum.

M. Reybard cuts the thread two days after the operation. The plate of wood, being released, passes along the bowel and is rejected *per anum*.

Fig. 2 represents a transverse section of the bowel applied against the parietal peritoneum by M. Reybard's plate: *b, b, b*, bowel; *c*, wooden plate; *d*, coil of thread, *d, d*, external knot of the thread which passes through the abdominal wall, *a, a*.

A. Cooper's operation. When the intestinal lesion is very slight, it may be seized with a pair of forceps, and a ligature applied to it as if it were a bloodvessel.

M. Jobert's method.—The edges of the wound are perforated by several pieces of thread, then reversed in such a manner that by tying them the serous surfaces are kept in apposition.

M. Moreau-Boutard's operation. The mucous membrane of the bowel being everted, is excised, and interrupted sutures are applied, so as to keep in contact the cut surfaces. One end of each thread is cut near the knot, while the other end should be passed through the abdominal wall, in order to ensure the immediate union of the edges of the wound and their adhesion to the wall of the abdomen.

The *continued suture* is applicable to wounds of the intestine. The thread serves the purpose of fixing the bowel to the external wound, and at the end of five or six days it can be gently withdrawn.

The operation of M. Reybard.—This is a modification of the continued suture. A sewing-needle is used, with a double thread, to the free loop of which is fixed a small plug of lint. The operation is commenced by piercing the parts from within outwards near the angle of the wound. The small plug fixes one end of the thread, and afterwards

serves the purpose of drawing the thread along with it in the motions. When the continued suture has been applied the whole length of the wound, the doubled thread is separated, the free ends of the threads are tied, and are then cut close to the knot. The bowel is then returned, and the thread cuts its way through the parts to which it is applied, and falls into the bowel, where it is expelled with the stools.

M. Gély's operation.—*The quilted suture* (Plate LIX., Fig. 1).—In order to understand this operation the reader should refer to the description of the above plate. A waxed thread is armed at each end with an ordinary needle. One of them is thrust into the bowel parallel to the wound outside and behind one of its angles, and about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from it. The other needle is applied in the same manner to the opposite edge of the wound. The threads are then crossed; the needle on the left side passing over to the right, and *vice versa*. With each thread another stitch is made exactly like the first, taking care to enter each needle at the point from which the other escapes. This manœuvre is afterwards repeated as many times as the extent of the wound renders necessary. That being done, each stitch should be properly tightened before the threads are tied. This may be done by seizing with a pair of dissecting forceps each transverse stitch, and even each of the two threads which compose it, making slight traction, and at the same time pressing down the edges of the wound. There is nothing to prevent their being so exactly adjusted that it is impossible to perceive externally any trace of the threads by means of which the union has been accomplished. When the operation is over, it only remains to tie the two threads, and to cut them close to the knot. The needles used should be a little larger than the thread, so that the latter may easily follow the needle. The bowel on each side should be perforated at least $\frac{1}{2}$ inch outside the wound—that is to say, at such a distance that the two lines formed by the lateral stitches should be $\frac{1}{2}$ inch apart. The distance between the apertures where the needle respectively enters and leaves the bowel should be at the most $\frac{1}{2}$ inch. M. Gély recommends the suture to be tightened as soon as two stitches have been made on each side, and at once to fasten them off with a small knot. Sewing silk of moderate thickness is what M. Gély chooses for this purpose.

2. *Transverse wounds.*—*Invasion.*—*The approximation of serous and mucous surfaces.*

Randohr's plan.—This consists in introducing the upper margin within the lower margin of the wound, and keeping them in contact by means of a few sutures. This plan has been modified by Hermans, Sernale, and Richter.

Direct union of the edges of the wound.—*Duvergier's operation.*—

Duverger made use of a portion of a bullock's trachea furnished with pieces of thread disposed at equal distances, each end of which was provided with a curved needle. The trachea was introduced into the two ends of the bowel, and the needles, passing through the intestinal tube from within outwards, ensured the edges of the divided bowel being fixed and approximated over the trachea, while the fastening of the threads preserved the union.

M. Jobert's operation.—When the omentum gets in front of the wounded bowel, a fold of it may, as M. Jobert recommends, be interposed between the approximated edges of the bowel, and united by a few sutures applied in the manner adopted by Ledran.

Union of the serous surfaces.—Adhesion between serous membranes is readily effected, provided the surfaces are kept sufficiently long in contact. Mucous membranes, on the other hand, unite with more difficulty, and the adhesion of mucous and serous membranes cannot be directly accomplished. These facts, which are demonstrated by Richat and Richeraud, led to further researches, and gave origin to the following operations :

M. Jobert's operation (Fig. 3).—The two ends of the bowel are separated from the mesentery for the space of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, in order to facilitate the invagination of the upper within the lower portion of the bowel. The hæmorrhage resulting from the cut mesentery, if slight, need not be interfered with, and at all events a temporary ligature will be sufficient to arrest it. The surgeon then seizes with his left hand the upper portion of the wounded bowel, while with his right hand he passes from within outwards a needle (bearing a thread of sufficient length) through the wall of the intestine about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch from the wound. The thread thus passed through the upper portion of the bowel is held by an assistant. A second thread is passed in the same manner into the upper portion of the bowel, at a point exactly opposite the first.

The surgeon then turns in the border or edge of the lower portion of the bowel, the result of which is to turn inwards the serous surface. Each of the two ends of the threads held by the assistant is passed through a needle, which the operator, using his finger as a guide, introduces into the bowel in such a manner as to perforate from within outwards the double or inverted edge of the lower portion. The other end of the same thread is passed through the gut in the same manner, about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the first end (Fig. 3, *a*).

The same operation is gone through with the free extremities of the second thread, *b*, and then all that is necessary to secure the invagination of the bowel is to make slight and methodical traction upon the threads. The latter drag the upper portion of the bowel within the lower one, and the invagination being completed, the threads may be fastened off, or a few sutures may be applied. Finally the bowel is

returned into the abdominal cavity, and the threads, brought together in the lower angle of the wound, are kept externally in position by means of a small piece of diachylon.

M. Lambert's operation (Fig. 4 and 4 bis; see description of Plate LIX.).—This operation allows of the serous surfaces being approximated by means of a corrugation and inversion of the edges of the wound. For this purpose as many threads should be taken as the number of sutures required, and each thread should be provided with a needle. The latter, having been inserted from without inwards about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the wound, should make its exit about $\frac{1}{2}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ inch above the wound, and then, having again entered the bowel $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below the wound, should be brought out $\frac{1}{2}$ inch further down. (The figures 4 and 4 bis show the course of the thread.) The edges of the wound should then be turned in, the thread tied, its ends cut off near the knot, and the bowel returned.

M. Denan's operation (Fig. 6) —The adhesion of the serous surfaces is here secured through the medium of a foreign body. M. Denan provides himself with three silver or silver plated collars. One, the central collar, is about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in depth, and the same in width. The two others are scarcely $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in depth; but their diameter is greater than that of the first, so that the bowel can be interposed and kept in position between the central collar and the two others.

The two ends of the bowel are separated from the mesentery to the extent of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch. The two narrow collars, the diameter of which is the largest, *b, b*, are separately introduced within each end of the bowel, the free border of which is turned over the collar, *b, b*. Whilst one of the collars is thus covered all round by the borders of the bowel, the collar *a* is inserted, which keeps the bowel turned inwards, and by its pressure prevents the border of the intestine slipping out of place. The collar *a*, which is only introduced in its half, is then engaged in the other collar *b*, where it also keeps the bowel inverted.

In order to fix this apparatus and keep the collars in position, an intestinal suture must be applied. The surgeon above mentioned uses a needle and silk thread. He passes the needle above the collars, and brings it out below them, *f*, having passed it beneath the central collar, *a*. In the next place the needle re-enters its point of exit, *f*, is passed between the bowel and the external collars, *f*, and brought out at *g*. Fig. 6 represents the course of the thread, *d d, d' d', f, f, g*. The two ends are then tied, cut off short, and the bowel returned. This proceeding leads to the mortification and separation of the two inverted edges, the serous surfaces of which adhere between the outside collars. The latter are set free within the bowel, and are passed *per anum*. The central collar may consist of a spring of elastic steel, which can be taken hold of with a pair of forceps, and easily introduced within the silver collars.

M. Amussat's operation (Fig. 5).—M. Amussat introduced into the bowel a cork, *a a*, enlarged at each end, and having a hole through its centre. He then invaginated the two ends of the bowel, and tied them over the cork with the thread, *b b*. The foreign body sets up inflammation and subsequent adhesion of the serous surfaces. The ligature, after cutting its way through the tissues which cicatrize over it, falls into the bowel, from whence it is expelled along with the piece of cork.

Remarks.—The operations that have just been described have not been all performed. To judge of their relative value we must study the conditions on which the success of the operation essentially depends. On one hand, the facility with which serous surfaces unite when brought into contact—on the other hand, the impossibility of securing the direct adhesion of two membranes that differ in their nature, permit of our drawing a well-marked line between the value of one operation and that of another, and all we have to do is to consider which kind of operation offers the most chance of success. The great point is to bring into apposition the serous surfaces of the edges of the wound. Moreover, the surfaces must be brought into exact contact throughout the whole extent of the wound, and the contact should be maintained in such a manner as not to allow of any matter escaping into the abdomen. The diameter of the bowel must at the same time be diminished as little as possible, and no projection of the parts should offer any obstacle to the passage of its contents. Lastly, the fewer the sutures, the less constriction there will be, and the less chance of any accidents occurring afterwards.

M. Gely's operation, applied to longitudinal wounds, fulfils better than any other operation the conditions which are so essential to the exact closure of the wound; the only drawback to it being that it exposes the bowel to the accidents which a number of stitches frequently entails. The simple suture and M. Reybard's operation (a modification of the glover's suture) are perhaps exempt from the inconvenience of the quilted suture.

The same principles are applicable to transverse wounds. The operation of M. Gely may be recommended; and that of M. Lembert has been performed on the living subject by M. J. Cloquet.

M. Denan's operation, which is easy of execution, has been performed on the living subject by M. Guersant. The autopsy showed that the most perfect cicatrization of the bowel without any constriction had taken place. The inconvenience which may result from the pressure of metallic bodies in the bowel, has induced M. Bourguery to use collars, made with some substance of sufficient consistence or solidity to remain in its place just so long as to secure the formation of peritoneal adhesions, and, on the other hand, sufficiently changeable and hygrometric as to become afterwards much softened, and even to

Pl. 60

Fig 1



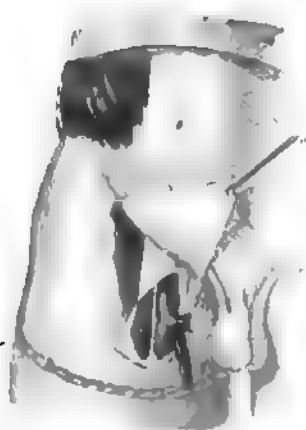
Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



be converted into a paste that can be easily expelled by the bowel. Collars of gelatine that have been hardened by means of a coating of some sedative oil answer the purpose very well.

PLATE LX.

HERNIA.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE INGUINAL REGION.

Fig. 1. The skin and the subcutaneous cellular tissue have been raised throughout the whole extent of the region *a, a*, the superficial layer of the subcutaneous fascia. Superficial vessels, *e, e*, perforate the meshes, *i*, of the fascia.

Fig. 2.—Deep layer of the superficial fascia; the meshes, *b, b*, are large, *d, d*, fibres of the dartos; *e, e, e*, superficial vessels converging towards the crural arch, and passing through the apertures with which the superficial fascia is riddled.

Fig. 3.—The superficial fascia is removed. Below this layer is seen, in the abdominal region, the external oblique, *a*, and its aponeurosis, *b*; and in the crural region, the fascia-lata, *c, c*. The cribriform fascia still remains; numerous glands, *e, f*, are scattered over this layer, which covers, moreover, the femoral sheath. The subcutaneous fascia of the thigh, *d, d*, has been turned back. It covers the ganglions, and becomes united at the crural arch with the subcutaneous fascia of the abdomen. The cribriform layer of cellular tissue, which joins externally the aponeurosis of the fascia-lata, *c*, is a part of the deep layer of the superficial fascia.

Fig. 4.—The cribriform layer is separated from the fascia-lata, *c*, and raised with a tenaculum, *d*. Beneath this layer lie the femoral vessels, the vein, *f*, and artery, *g*, enclosed in a cellular sheath of funnel shape, *e, e*. The cavity of the funnel-shaped sheath is divided into three compartments by partitions, which separate the artery from the vein. The internal compartment containing a femoral gland is that which is the seat of crural hernia.

PLATE LXI

CONTINUATION OF THE SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE
INGUINAL REGION.

Fig. 1. —A part of the external oblique, with its aponeurosis, *a*, is removed. Beneath is seen the internal oblique, *b*. The aponeurosis of the external oblique, *c*, detached from its upper part, *a*, is turned down over the thigh. This portion of the aponeurosis is inserted at Poupart's ligament, or the crural arch, which will be described presently, Figs. 5 and 6).

Fig. 2.—After the removal of the external and internal oblique muscles, the transversalis muscle, *a*, is exposed; and the inguinal canal, *b*, commences beneath the inferior fibres of this muscle; *d*, spermatic cord seen in the inguinal canal. The aponeurosis of the external oblique, which contributes to the formation of the inguinal canal, being removed, the relations of the cord with the inferior fibres of the transversalis muscle are brought into view. The femoral vessels, *c*, leave the iliac fossa below the fibres of the transversalis, and enter the crural region after they have passed beneath Poupart's ligament (see Fig. 5).

Fig. 3.—All the muscles of the abdominal wall are removed, and the aponeurosis of the external oblique, *a*, as shown in Figs. 1 and 2, is turned down over the thigh. The transversalis fascia, *b*, is next exposed, and on removing the lower portions of this, the peritoneum, *c*, will be seen covering the coils of intestine. The spermatic vessels and the vasa deferentia unite to form the spermatic cord, *d*. Fibres of the transversalis fascia are prolonged over the cord, and form one of its coverings, the proper fibrous tunic of the cord; *e*, the track of the epigastric artery (see Pl. XVII., Fig. 1).

Fig. 4. This represents the posterior or peritoneal surface of the abdominal wall, the anterior surface of which has, from before backward, been described above (Figs. 1, 2, and 3, layer by layer. This surface of the peritoneum shows the small fossæ, which are produced by the projection of the viscera beneath it: *a*, the bladder drawn down with a tenaculum; *H, H*, cut vessels.

The *external inguinal fossa*, *e*, corresponds to the abdominal ring, or to the abdominal orifice of the inguinal canal, through which passes the spermatic cord. Internally this fossa is bounded by the epigastric artery, which courses between the peritoneum and the abdominal muscles. This artery (see Pl. XVII.) passes beneath the cord, and is consequently found internal to the hernias, which commence at the

Pl. GI

Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3



Fig. 4



Fig. 5



Fig. 6



external fossa ('External or Oblique Inguinal Hernias,' see Pl. LXIV. Fig. 1).

The *internal inguinal fossa*, *d*, is situated between the projection of the epigastric artery, *f*, and the projection formed by the obliterated umbilical artery, *g*. This fossa corresponds to the inguinal canal, and *internal inguinal hernia* (see Pl. LXIV., Fig. 2), which, pushing the peritoneum in this direction, appear internal to the epigastric artery.

A third fossa, or *vesico-inguinal fossa*, formed by the projection of the umbilical artery, and the projection of the external border of the rectus muscle, corresponds to the external ring or orifice of the inguinal canal. Hernias which commence at this fossa are *direct*. *H*, *H*, crural vessels.

Fig. 5.—*Poupart's ligament, or the crural arch*.—*Gimbernat's ligament*.—*a*, Anterior-superior spinous process; *b*, horizontal ramus of the pubis; *c*, *c*, Poupart's ligament, or the crural arch; *f*, anterior-inferior spine of the ilium.

Poupart's ligament, or the crural arch, is formed by a strong aponeurotic bridle extending from the spine of the ilium, *a*, to the spine of the pubis.

Gimbernat's ligament, *c*, is formed by the lowest fibres of the crural arch, which are reflected from before backwards, and are inserted close to the pectineal line, *b*. This ligament, the aponeurotic expansion of the crural arch, by its reflected direction from before backwards, forms a sort of partition which separates the fossae, described above, from the crural canal. Another ligament, *d*, associated with the crural arch, becomes separated from it, and is inserted upon the ileo-pectineal line. This ligament, the *ileo-pectineal band*, bounds on the outside an orifice that is bounded above by the crural arch, inside by Gimbernat's ligament, *c*, and below by the ramus of the pubis, *b*. This opening gives passage to vessels and nerves, and crural hernia begins at this spot. If the reader bears in mind that crural hernia always follows the internal compartment of the femoral sheath, he will understand its relations to Gimbernat's ligament, relations of which we shall have more to say hereafter.

Fig. 6.—A tenaculum, *a*, raises the crural fascia; *b*, Poupart's ligament, or the crural arch. The anterior wall of the crural canal is removed, by which the crural artery, *d*, on the outside, and the crural vein, *e*, on the inside, are brought into view; *f*, the spermatic cord coming out of the external ring of the inguinal canal. The explanation of Plates LX. and LXI. will make the following description of the inguinal and crural canals more intelligible.

The inguinal canal.—This canal is a hollow passage through the substance of the abdominal wall, and gives passage to the spermatic cord in the male, and to the round ligament in the female. Its direction is oblique from above downwards, from without inwards, and

from before backwards. In it are to be seen two openings, one internal and above, the *abdominal* or *internal ring*; the other external and below, the *external ring*.

The internal ring is formed by an opening in the transversalis fascia for the passage of the cord. We have seen that this fascia is prolonged upon the cord, and forms one of its coverings (Pl. LXIV., Fig. 2; and Pl. LXI., Fig. 3). It is in the external inguinal fossa of the peritoneum (Fig. 4, c, Pl. LXI.) that this passage lies.

After the transversalis fascia has given passage to the cord by the internal ring, it is connected with the crural arch, where is likewise attached the aponeurosis of the external oblique, which, in its turn, gives passage to the cord by the external ring. It follows, therefore, that the inguinal canal lies between these two membranes, the fascia and aponeurosis, and in the furrow formed by their union at the crural arch. This furrow, indeed, constitutes its lower wall or floor. The upper wall is formed by the lower fibres of the internal oblique and transversalis. The external ring is formed by the separation of the fibres of the aponeurosis of the external oblique. It is between the pillars formed by the separation of these fibres that the spermatic cord escapes.

The external pillar is inserted into the spine of the pubis, and the internal pillar into the symphysis pubis. The separation of these pillars is bridled over above and below by transverse fibres, the *intercolumnar fibres* arising from a prolongation of the aponeurotic fibres of the external oblique of the opposite side. The result is, that the positions of the body in which the abdominal muscles are contracted, tighten the external ring by the tension of the aponeurotic pillars.

The length of the inguinal canal varies from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 inches. Its direction is parallel to that of the crural arch, which forms its lower wall, and from which it is about half an inch distant. The orifice where the external ring is situated is about an inch external to the symphysis pubis.

In the infant the two rings are closer together, and almost in juxtaposition; and, further, the peritoneum often communicates with the tunica vaginalis. Hernias may in that case commence in the canal, and descend into the scrotum without having a proper sac. This anatomical disposition of the peritoneum always places hernias external to the epigastric artery.

In females the inguinal canal only contains the round ligament of the uterus and a few vessels. Its abdominal opening is reduced to a simple cleft, a circumstance which explains the rarity of inguinal hernia in women, and the frequency of crural hernia.

PLATE LXII.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE SCROTUM, AND OF THE SPERMATIC CORD.

Fig. 1.—*a*, Penis drawn to the left ; *b, b, b*, skin of the scrotum ; *c, c, c*, the superficial fascia lining the skin ; *d*, the dartos ; *e*, the fibrous tunic or intercolumnar fascia ; *f*, the aponeurotic fibres of the external oblique ; *h*, the fibrous or proper covering of the cord ; *g*, the spermatic cord cut close to its exit from the ring.

Fig 2 —*Anatomy of the spermatic cord.*—*a*, Aponeurotic fibres of the external oblique ; *b, b*, the intercolumnar fascia arising from the circumference of the inguinal ring ; *c, c*, cremaster muscle ; *d, d*, the proper fibrous covering of the cord derived from the cremasteric fascia ; *e*, a wound passed beneath the spermatic vessels ; *f*, vas deferens.

Fig 3.—*a*, The testicle ; *b, b, b, b*, the tunica vaginalis ; *c, c*, the fibrous covering of the cord.

The dissection of the scrotum from without inwards, exposes the coverings of the testicle in the following order :

The *skin of the scrotum* (Fig. 1, *b, b, b*) is thin, elastic, susceptible of being relaxed under the influence of heat, and of contracting itself under the influence of cold. It is lined with a layer of cellular tissue, forming a superficial fascia, *c, c*, which is continuous with the superficial fascia of the abdomen. The skin, and the fascia which lines it, form one pouch for the two testicles. This pouch is grooved externally, and in the middle line by a well-marked raphe.

The *dartos*, *d*, then forms two distinct pouches, composed of reddish and very contractile fibres. These fibres appear to arise from the circumference of the ring over the fibrous tunic.

The *fibrous tunic*, or intercolumnar fascia, *e*, is an expansion of the aponeurosis of the external oblique. It quits the tendinous fibres of that muscle at the margin of the external inguinal ring, and provides the cord and the testicle with a strong covering.

The *cremaster* (Fig. 2, *c, c*) is situated beneath the fibrous tunic. This muscle, which is very thin, and which is formed, according to M. J. Cloquet, of the lower fibres of the internal oblique dragged down by the descent of the testicle, forms for the spermatic cord a covering composed of muscular loops, with their concavity above, commencing with a fasciculus of fibres at the circumference of the ring, and joining another fasciculus which is inserted into the pubis.

The *proper fibrous coat* (Fig. 1, *h*, and Fig. 2, *d*) follows next. It is a prolongation of the fascia transversalis and sub-peritoneal tissue.

In the midst of these coverings are situated the *spermatic vessels* and the *vas deferens*. The vessels are in front of the *vas deferens*. The walls of the latter are strong, thick, and resisting. In the operations that are performed with the view of tying the vessels it is necessary to recognise this duct, and to carefully isolate it.

The *tunica vaginalis* (Fig. 3, *b, b*) covers the whole testicle except above and behind. Sometimes this pouch, as it may be called, communicates with the peritoneum, of which it is a prolongation. It is often the seat of a considerable effusion of serum (hydrocele), and when there is a communication with the peritoneum, by making pressure upon the swelling the fluid can be made to flow back into the abdomen. The surgeon should always make sure that there is no such communication before he injects any irritant fluids into the tunica vaginalis for the purpose of radically curing the hydrocele.

PLATE LXIII.

A THEORETICAL EXPLANATION OF THE FORMATION OF HERNIAS.

The drawings represent a section passing through an opening in the abdomen, and also hernius of the bowel.

Fig. 1.—*a*, Abdominal opening ; *b, b, b*, the bowels pushing before them the peritoneum, *c, c, c, c*, and having a tendency to enter the opening, *a*. Only the peritoneum has commenced to enter the opening, *a* ; it is the first step in the formation of the sac.

Fig. 2.—The bowel, *b, b, b*, and the peritoneum, *c*, have cleared the opening, *a, a*. Here the process is more advanced than in the first figure ; but the sac, *c, c, c, c*, has not yet become narrow or contracted at the opening ; its neck is not yet formed.

Fig. 3.—*b, b*, The *herniated coil of intestine* enclosed in the *peritoneal sac, c*. The sac is dilated into a pouch or bladder, *c*, and is narrowed on a level with the opening, *a, a*. This contracted part of the sac is called its *neck*.

Fig. 4.—*Formation of the sac by the peritoneum*.—On a level with the opening, *a, a*, the walls of the sac, *d*, forming its neck, become considerably thickened ; *c, c, c*, the body of the sac.

Fig. 5.—Sometimes there is more than one sac, one above the other, *e* and *d*. When the sac has been pushed down along with its organized and thickened neck, a second sac, situated above the other, may be formed with a neck equally organized. The peritoneum forming the sac is thickened all round the necks.

Fig. 6.—But when the first neck is not completely detached from the abdominal opening, *a, a*, a second sac, *d*, may form by the side of the first, *d*.

Fig. 7.—*a, a*, The opening in the abdomen completely strangulating a coil of intestine, *b*.

Fig. 8.—The abdominal opening strangulating only a portion of the bowel.

PLATE LXIV.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF HERNIAS.

Fig. 1.—*External inguinal hernia and its coverings*.—The incision through the skin, the subcutaneous cellular tissue, and the superficial coverings, *a, a*, bring into view the aponeuroses of the external oblique. *b*; the fibrous coat, *c*, covered by the origin of the fibres of the cremaster. Below is the hernial sac, *d*, formed by a portion of peritoneum, in which is seen the epiploon, *e*, with a coil of intestine, *f*.

Fig. 2.—*Internal inguinal hernia*.—The skin and the subcutaneous cellular tissue has been removed, *a*; along with a portion of the aponeurosis of the external oblique, *b*, the peritoneum, *c*, is exposed; the commencement of the spermatic cord, *d*; the epigastric artery, *e*, passing beneath the cord, a hernial sac laid open, *f*, situated internal to the artery, and enclosing a coil of intestine, *g*.

Fig. 3.—*Cruial hernia*. The skin of the abdomen, *a*, being to a great extent removed, the aponeurosis of the external oblique, *b*, is exposed, as well as the spermatic cord, *c*. Below the cruial arch will be seen the femoral vessels, *d*; and internal to these vessels a hernial sac, *e*, laid open, and containing a coil of intestine, *f*. To complete the anatomical description of the inguinal region, see Plates XVI. and XVII.

PLATE LXV.

RADICAL CURE OF HERNIA.

Figs. 1, 2, and 3.—*M. Gerdy's operation.*

Fig. 1.—The operator introduces the index finger of his left hand into the inguinal canal, and folds back the skin of the scrotum. A needle-carrier, *a*, passed over the finger as far as the bottom of the cul de-sac perforates, from within outwards, both it and the anterior wall of the inguinal canal, and at the same time carries outwards the first loop of thread, *b*.

Fig. 2.—Having passed the first double thread, *a*, the needle-carrier, *b*, is inserted in another direction, carrying the same thread through a little lower down, *c*.

Fig. 3.—The threads are tied over two quills, *a* and *b*, and the loop which they form maintains in the inguinal canal the organic plug produced by the skin of the scrotum, folded back like the finger of a glove.

Figs. 4, 5, and 6.—*The operation of Bonnet, of Lyons*

Fig. 4.—One pin, *a*, passed beneath the spermatic cord, pierces the hernial sac.

Fig. 5.—Two pins, *a*, *b*, passed through the sac, one beneath, and the other above the cord.

Fig. 6.—The skin has been raised, in order to show the position of the pins, *b*, *c*, with respect to the cord, *a*.

THE OPERATIONS.

Compression.—This should only be practised by means of a bandage, which the patient attends to day and night. It is capable of producing a progressive contraction of the neck of the sac, and of the hernial opening, so as to prevent the reproduction of the hernia. It is only when the patient is young that we can expect this practice to be successful.

The treatment should be persevered in for at least a year, and sometimes it will take two or three years to obtain a good result. The surgeon should give particular attention to the choice of the

bandage and the form of the cushion. It is an essential point to close the hernial orifice exactly, but without forcing it in, and without pressing too much upon the skin.

It may be worth while here to mention *cauterization* of the neck of the sac, as formerly practised by the Arabian surgeons; *incision* of the sac, condemned by J. L. Petit and by Potts; *incision* of the sac, described by Celsus; *ligature of the neck* of the sac in order to produce the mortification and separation of the covering of the hernia, etc. These operations, however, have been long abandoned; in this place only the more modern methods will be described.

Mitchell Banks's operation.—*Ligature at the neck of the sac and closure of the ring with silver wire, which is left in position*—A vertical incision is to be made along the whole length of the hernial tumour, which in the inguinal variety should extend sufficiently high thoroughly to expose the pillars and upper end of the external inguinal ring. The structures are then steadily divided until the sac is reached. In femoral, umbilical, or ventral cases, this is easily done; but in large inguinal hernia of old standing, it is most difficult to tell when the sac is arrived at, on account of the formation of numerous layers of condensed inflammatory tissue which resemble it. As a rule the operator in such cases generally thinks he has arrived at the sac long before he has really done so. In male inguinal hernia, great care must be taken to isolate the vas deferens and the other structures of the cord, while an assistant should retain the testicle in its position in the lower part of the scrotum, from which point it is very apt to slip out into the wound. In separating the sac the firmest adhesions will be found at the lower part, close to the testicle. The sac, having been cleared well up into the abdominal orifice, should be opened, and its contents reduced, except in the case of adherent omentum, which should be separated, tied with catgut and cut off. The sac should then be tied as high up as possible, using two catgut ligatures in case of one slipping. If very big, it had better be stitched across transversely, and then ligatured above the stitching for security's sake. It is then to be cut off. In inguinal hernia the pillars of the external ring should then be drawn together with strong silver wire, carried by a stout curved needle in a handle. Two or three stitches suffice, just leaving room for the cord at the lower end of the ring. The wire should be so thick that one knot will suffice to hold each stitch, while the ends should be cut very close off. The skin may then be sutured, and drainage-tubes introduced. The following points contribute much to the safety of the operation: 1. Careful shaving of the parts in inguinal or femoral hernia, with subsequent purification; 2. Arrest of all hæmorrhage before the sac is opened; 3. Avoidance of much tearing of the tissues in inguinal hernia, which leads to sloughing of the cellular tissue of the scrotum; 4. Secure ligature of

1892

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



1892

the stump of omentum, which may require to be cut away, as the ligatures are apt to slip. 5. Use of a sponge as dressing for the first few days, to absorb fluids and give pressure and support.

M. Belmas's operation.—The object of the operation proposed by M. Belmas is to obliterate the hernial opening by setting up inflammation of the walls of the sac through the introduction of a foreign body within its cavity.

The first method adopted by M. Belmas consisted in introducing into the interior of the sac, by means of particular instruments, a small pouch of gold-beater's skin, which he inflated. This pouch, by filling up the sac, kept the hernia reduced and set up adhesive inflammation, which was followed by the complete obliteration of the hernial opening. For this operation, which is rather difficult of execution, M. Belmas substituted an analogous but much more simple one. He used gelatine threads in place of the pouch of gold-beater's skin, the presence of which suffices to inflame the sac; the threads then become absorbed, and the adhesions remaining, the obliteration was complete. Out of ten operations, five were successful, three were partially successful, and two were failures.

M. Gerdy's operation (Pl. LXV., Figs. 1, 2, and 3) —This operation is only applicable to inguinal hernia. It consists in obliterating the opening with an organic plug formed out of the skin which covers the hernia, and fixed with sutures. The operator pushes up the skin of the scrotum into the ring and into the inguinal canal with the index-finger of his left hand (Fig. 1); while, with his right hand, he takes a particular kind of needle-carrier, and passes it over the finger which keeps the skin pushed up into the inguinal canal. The point of the needle is carried up as far as the bottom of the cul-de-sac, and then a see-saw movement is given to the instrument in order to make it appear through the skin of the abdomen. The loop is then entrusted to an assistant, and the needle is then withdrawn. A second puncture is now made below the first (Fig. 2), and the second head of the coil of thread, *c*, is disengaged from the needle, which is withdrawn.

A double thread fixes in the highest part of the inguinal canal the organic plug formed by the skin of the scrotum pushed up, like the finger of a glove, into the hernial opening. The whole is fastened by tying the heads of the double thread over the ends of a gum elastic sound (Fig. 3).

In order to effect the obliteration of the cutaneous sac, pushed up into the inguinal canal, M. Gerdy introduces into it a pencil dipped in ammonia, so as to inflame and produce adhesion of the epidermic walls of the cul-de-sac. Simple dressing is then applied, and the patient keeps his bed for two or three months. One of the dangers of this operation is the wounding of the peritoneum. Some patients have died from the operation. It is needless to say that at

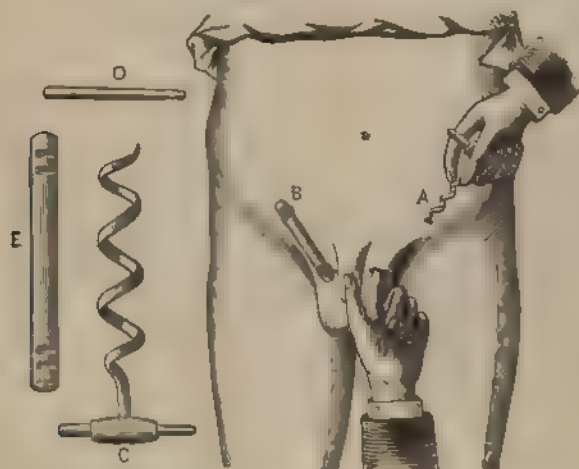
the present day no surgeon would invaginate the skin, which might readily be detached from the tissues beneath if desirable to perform this operation.

The operation performed by M. Bonnet, of Lyons (Pl. LXV., Figs. 4, 5, and 6). The obliteration of the sac is effected by passing pins through its walls. Having reduced the hernia, he seizes the root of the sac, and raises the spermatic cord between his two fingers. One pin, provided with a small cork head or button, is passed beneath the cord. The point of the pin is then furnished with another cork head, and is bent round so as to hold the parts tight between the two cork buttons. A second pin is passed in the same manner above the cord. Inflammation is set up in about four hours' time. The pins are withdrawn on the sixth or twelfth day, and the obliteration of the sac is effected in the course of two or four months.

Injections of iodine have been tried by M. Velpeau, as well as scarifications of the sac.

Spanton's operation.—After proper preparation, and under the influence of an anæsthetic, in the case of an oblique inguinal rupture an incision is made in the skin of the scrotum over the fundus of the hernial sac, usually $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 inches below the spine of the pubis, and the skin separated from the subcutaneous tissues for an extent proportionate to the size of the rupture and the length of the inguinal canal, as shown in the woodcut. The operator, standing on the patient's left, passes his left forefinger up to the internal abdominal ring, pushing before it and so invaginating the fascia and hernial sac to the same extent. After examining carefully the condition of the parts within reach of his finger, and the forefinger being retained in the hernial canal to protect the spermatic cord which lies underneath, and at the same time to close the internal ring against any descent of the bowel, the screw instrument (strephtome) is with the right hand passed into and through the skin of the groin so as to transfix the outer pillar of the internal ring at a point a little above that at which it has to pass through the conjoint tendon. Having given the screw a turn, it is next made to pierce subcutaneously the conjoint tendon as high as it can safely be reached the left forefinger of the operator carefully guarding the point of the instrument throughout. Another turn is now made, causing the screw to pass through the invaginated tissues, and again across from the external to the internal pillars as many times as the nature of the case will permit. It is sometimes more convenient to transfix the internal pillar first, but in this the operator must be guided by the nature of the case. The point of the instrument then appears through the scrotal opening, and is protected by a ball of solid indiarubber—the handle lying flat on the abdomen. A pad and bandage is then applied carefully and firmly over the whole. Several of the operations have been performed under Lister's spray

method, and in some of them catgut or tendon ligature has been employed instead of allowing the screw to remain *in situ* (see Fig. B); but the latter have not given such good results as the method with the screw alone. After a few days—usually seven to ten—sufficient irritation is excited to effect consolidation of the parts, and the screw is then removed, a light pad and bandage being kept applied until the tissues become firm, usually two to three weeks. In those instances in which a ligature is employed, the ends are cut off level with the skin as soon as consolidation takes place; and usually in a few days both of the wounds close. After that, a truss is unnecessary, though



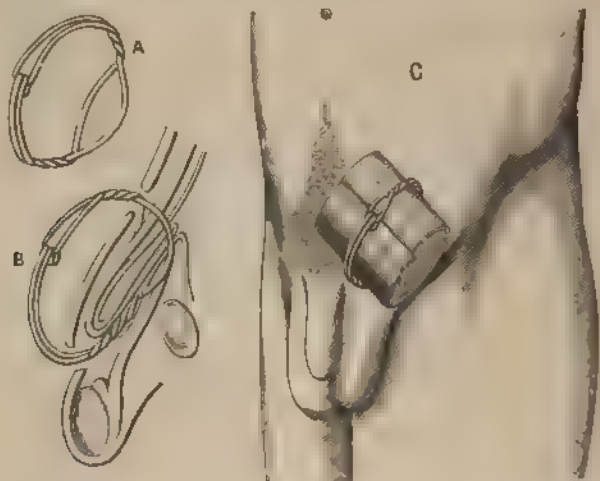
- A. Strephotome being applied.
- B. Strephotome replaced by ligature and glass rod.
- C. Strephotome.
- D. Handle applied to strephotome during the operation, but removed when *in situ*.
- E. Glass rod to fix catgut ligature.

it is well to use a pad truss without a spring for a time to give support in case of any undue strain while the cicatrices are weak.

The number of cases on record is nearly 100 without a death, and without any condition to call for serious anxiety.

Wood's operation.—An incision is made in the skin of the scrotum, about 1½ inches in length obliquely downwards and outwards over the fundus of the sac. The integument is then raised from the subjacent fascia, for an area of about 2 inches in diameter. The detached fascia and sac of the hernia is now invaginated in the inguinal canal, as high up as the internal abdominal ring, by means of the forefinger of the operator. The forefinger which is supporting the invaginated struc-

tures raises the lower border of the internal oblique muscle and conjoined tendon, and in front of them the inner pillar of the superficial ring; the needle being passed along the finger behind and through the conjoined tendon and internal pillar, the skin is next drawn inwards, and the needle pushed through it, so that the aperture in the skin is somewhat external to that in the conjoined tendon. One end of a piece of stout *copper wire, silvered*, about 2 feet in length, is then engaged in the needle and drawn through to the scrotal wound. The needle, being disengaged from the wire, is passed along the outer side of the forefinger, nearly as high up as the internal abdominal ring; it is then pushed through the external pillar of the external ring, that is to say, through the aponeurosis, close to Poupart's liga-



ment, and, by drawing the skin outwards to meet it, brought out through the same cutaneous opening. Here the other end of the wire is engaged, and the needle again withdrawn, so that a loop of the wire then appears in the single cutaneous aperture, and the two ends of the wire in the scrotal wound, one perforating the conjoined tendon, the inner pillar of the ring, and the invaginated fascia, the other perforating the external pillar of the ring and the invaginated fascia.

The sac of the hernia and the fascia covering it opposite the scrotal aperture is now to be pinched up between the finger and thumb, and the spermatic cord is slipped back from their grasp. The needle is then passed from without inwards, and a little upwards in front of the spermatic cord, so as to include the sac, and all structures in front of the cord. Either end of the wire is then engaged in the needle and drawn through, either puncturing the sac, or, if possible,

Pl. 63

Fig 1



Fig 2

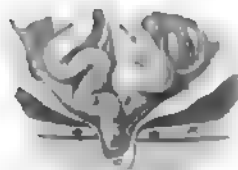


Fig 3



Fig 4



Fig 5



Fig 6



Fig 7



Fig 8





Fig 1



Fig 2

Fig 3



Fig 4

passing altogether behind it. The loop above should be twisted, and the two free ends below should be twisted several times, so as to contract the space enclosed within the wires, *A B* (woodcut): and lastly, a pad of bandage being placed over the spot, the twisted ends are passed through the loop and drawn over the pad, and a spica bandage is applied over all, so as to press firmly upon the wire. *C*

Mr. Wood records 240 cases operated upon by his subcutaneous wire method, of which 70 per cent. were radically cured. Of the earlier cases three died from hospital causes, pyæmia and erysipelas, but since adopting the use of the wire only two deaths have resulted.

Latterly he has used carbolized kangaroo or ox tendon applied instead of the wire, but in the same way, and left in the tissues, the sac and sometimes the omentum being removed altogether. In 16 cases there was one death. Of irreducible hernia he has had 14 cases, with two deaths. Of operations for radical cure immediately after the relief of strangulation he has had 11 cases, with one death and one failure. Of crural hernia he has had 20 cases, 14 of which were after strangulation and 3 irreducible from other causes. Fifty-six cases have been kept under observation from two to twenty-one years without return of the hernia, proving the durability of the cure. Sixty-two more cases have been watched for two years. Altogether 400 cases have been operated on.

GENERAL STUDY OF HERNIAS.

The following remarks apply to inguinal, crural, and umbilical hernias only:

Every hernia presents for consideration: (1) the protruding parts: and (2) the coverings of these parts, or hernial sac.

The *omentum* and the *small intestine* form the majority of hernias which enter the inguinal canal, the crural canal, or the umbilicus.

If the bowel alone is displaced (*enterocele*), the hernia forms a rounded tumour of variable consistence, according as the bowel is full or empty. It is elastic, tympanitic on percussion when the gut is full of gas, more or less soft when it is full of fecal matter.

When the hernial tumour is composed of the omentum (*epiplocele*) alone, it is soft, doughy, and unequal on pressure. This kind of hernia is not often attended with symptoms in the region of the digestive passages, as is the case in hernias of the bowel. Lastly, the tumour sometimes consists of both bowel and omentum (*entero-epiplocele*).

We have already noticed (Plates LXIII. and LXIV.) the formation of hernias and the different anatomical layers that form the envelope.

The true *sac* then consists of those layers folded over the displaced parts. The number and nature of the different coverings vary

according to the seat of the hernia ; while the whole of the sac undergoes certain structural changes according as the hernia is recent or old. The various layers which constitute the whole of a hernial sac have been already described seriatim ; but when the hernia has lasted for a considerable time, the different parts are glued together by the inflammatory process, and form one dense hard whole, in which two parts only can be distinguished—the *neck of the sac*, or the portion embraced by the abdominal opening, and the body of the sac, which constitutes its most developed portion. Inside, the sac is formed by a serous membrane, the peritoneum, which is smooth in appearance, and is sometimes filled with serum. Externally the sac is more or less confounded with the subcutaneous cellular tissue. In time hernial sacs may undergo changes of such a nature as to embarrass the operator. They may be thickened, ruptured, and full of serum : they may be adherent to surrounding parts ; and their walls may be the seat of cysts.

Hernias are *reducible* or *irreducible* and *strangulated*, with or without adhesions. A hernia is reducible when it is easy to push the displaced organs back into the abdomen. In this case the neck of the hernial sac is sufficiently large to admit of the return of either the bowel or the omentum, which do not then contract any adhesions either with the neck or with the wall of the sac. Hereafter we shall study the operative measures by which hernias are reduced.

Irreducible hernia is that in which the sac or the neck of the sac has contracted adhesion with the protruded organs, or in which other alterations have taken place such as to prevent the return of the hernia though not strangulated.

OBSTRUCTION.

When fecal matters collect in a coil of protruded bowel and distend it, the hernia is said to be *obstructed*. Obstruction is very apt to occur in old men, and when hernias are old and much dilated. Obstructed hernias are very painful ; and to the touch they closely resemble a fatty tumour. The *taxis* will generally succeed in reducing them ; but when the obstruction is persistent, and the hernia remains for a long time irreducible, it may then end in actual strangulation.

STRANGULATION.

A hernia is said to be *strangulated* when the opening through which it passes is too tight or narrow to admit of its reduction. Inflammation or congestion which is the result of strangulation becomes a further cause of constriction by increasing the volume of the parts involved in the hernia. Then follows a secretion of fluid, with adhesion to the neck and in the interior of the sac. The inflammatory process may take its usual course, and may terminate in mortification of the hernia.

Before, however, this takes place, the surface of the bowel always presents a smooth appearance, with a violet tint occasioned by a stagnation of venous blood. Later on, this colour turns blackish, and, when the mortification has commenced, of a grey ashy colour, with fibrinous deposits.

SEAT OF THE STRANGULATION.

Attentive study of the morbid anatomy of hernias has shown that in the great majority of cases strangulation takes place at the neck of the sac. Nevertheless, the aponeurotic rings are also a cause of strangulated hernias, a cause which does not exclude the constriction occasioned by the neck of the sac, except in recently-formed hernias, where the neck of the sac is not thickened.

It may happen that the neck causing the strangulation is free in the abdominal opening; and in that case, if the hernia is reducible, the strangulation may continue after the hernia has been returned into the cavity of the abdomen. This is termed reduction *en masse*.

The neck of the sac and the aponeurotic rings are not the only causes of the strangulation. Bridles may be present in the interior of the sac, omental adhesions, etc., which may be of such a nature as to form constricting bands and to interrupt the passage of the contents of the bowel.

Diagnosis.—As strangulated hernia may necessitate the performance of a very serious operation, we shall briefly notice the principal symptoms that characterize the three periods of this accident.

1st period.—An irreducible swelling, not very large, and painful to the touch. Colicky pains radiate from the swelling to the abdomen. Emetation and vomiting of the contents of the stomach take place first, then vomiting of bilious, and, lastly, of fecal matter. Constipation and borborygmus are also present.

The duration of these symptoms may vary from an hour to several days.

2nd period.—A more or less abundant effusion of serum into the interior of the sac, inflammation, and more acute pain. The abdomen is painful on pressure, and flatulent croakings are more audible. Nausea and vomiting continue to increase; the pulse is small and frequent; and the pinched appearance of the features indicates the extreme uneasiness of the patient.

3rd period. The inflammation is at this stage succeeded by gangrene. The pain now ceases; the vomiting is replaced by hiccoughs; the body is covered with a cold perspiration, and the temperature declines to about 96°; the features undergo a change, and the face becomes livid, the pulse becomes small, thready, and intermittent the voice is trembling; and the swelling assumes a reddish appearance, and often crepitates under the finger. The bowel may then return into the abdo-

men, and a rapid and fatal effusion of fluid takes place in the peritoneal cavity. At other times, the swelling ulcerates and bursts externally : in this case the open bowel remaining adherent to the external wound may give rise to an *accidental artificial anus*.

The symptoms above mentioned will enable us to form a differential diagnosis between a hernia that is simply obstructed and one that is strangulated. Whatever may happen, the surgeon should always try the taxis before resorting to the division of the stricture, especially if the strangulation is recent. But if the hernia is old and very painful, it is better not to increase the inflammation by unseasonable manipulation, but to resort at once to an operation which, if put off, may be no longer serviceable.

TREATMENT OF HERNIAS.

The treatment of simple hernia is either palliative or curative.

The palliative treatment consists in preventing any accidents occurring, by keeping the hernia reduced by means of a bandage.

The object of the curative treatment is to radically remove the condition.

Another chapter will be devoted to the consideration of the different plans and operations (taxis and kelotomy) which are called for by the accidents to which hernias are exposed.

Trusses.—The application of a truss keeps the parts reduced, and thus prevents the accidents with which hernias may be complicated, such as irreducibility, obstruction, strangulation, etc. Trusses may also, under certain conditions with regard to the age of the patient and the character of the hernia, be the means of effecting a radical cure.

It is therefore of importance to duly recognise what their size and form should be, in order to derive the greatest possible benefit from them. The only trusses now used consist of a steel band, well lined, covered with wash-leather, and terminating in a fixed or movable cushion, and of a shape that is most suited to the nature of the case. Formerly a soft kind of truss was in use, made of leather, cloth, or some other non-metallic substance. These trusses were fixed on by a soft girdle, while a spring fastened to the cushion kept up the necessary degree of pressure.

The cushion of the truss should be made of rather soft material : but sometimes it is made of wood, ivory, indiarubber, spring-pads, water-pads, air-pads, etc. The union of the spring or the body of the truss to the cushion is called its neck. On the plate which supports the cushion there are hooks or buttons, to which is fixed the leather strap which completes the girdle. A strap, made of leather or cloth, is fixed to the posterior part of the truss, and runs from behind forwards, along the fold of the thigh, to be attached to one of the hooks belong-

fig. 1



fig. 2



fig. 3



fig. 4



fig. 5



fig. 6





ing to the cushion-plate. This strap keeps the truss in position, and prevents it mounting up. There are also double hernial trusses of different shapes.

The conditions of a good truss are : that it is fitted to the stature of the patient ; that it keeps up a gentle and constant pressure upon the aponeurotic opening without causing any inconvenience.

Application of the truss—Make the patient lie on his back and pass the truss round his pelvis. Then, having reduced the hernia, keep up the reduction by applying one hand over the inguinal or crural ring, while the cushion of the truss is adjusted to this spot, and fixed there by fastening the strap, which is continuous with the spring, to the hook or button that is fixed to the plate of the cushion. Lastly, pass under and fix the thigh-piece. The patient should then stand up, walk a few paces, and move the body in different positions, so as to see whether the truss fits well to the hernia.

When the truss is applied to a crural hernia, the cushion should be carried below Poupart's ligament. M. Malgaigne thinks that movable cushions have, in a certain number of cases, an advantage over fixed cushions ; that in oblique inguinal hernia the cushion should press over the course of the canal and over the internal opening, resting very little or not at all upon the pubis, according to the nature of the case ; that in direct hernias the cushion should be more voluminous, fixed and adjusted to the pubis ; and that hard cushions are more useful for maintaining pressure upon the canal, and soft cushions for direct hernias.

REDUCTION OF HERNIAS.

Taxis.—By taxis is meant a series of manœuvres by which the surgeon is enabled to return the displaced parts into the cavity of the abdomen. It is by manual assistance, applied directly to the swelling, that the reduction of the hernia is effected by means of this operation.

Position of the patient—The best position is that in which the abdominal muscles are completely relaxed. Let the patient, therefore, lie on his back with his head and shoulders raised on pillows. The pelvis should also be raised in such a manner that the patient's back, being in a declivitous position, the swelling is a little above the level of the abdominal cavity. In this position, the bowels will not exert any pressure upon the ring through which the hernia has to pass. Lastly, raise the thighs and flex the legs upon them.

General rules.—Before describing the different manœuvres especially adapted to this reduction of particular hernias, the attention of the reader may be drawn to the general rules which, according to M. Malgaigne, it is necessary to observe in the great majority of cases :
1. Let the patient pass his urine in order to increase by so much the

capacity of the abdominal cavity. 2. Make the patient breathe freely without moving his head—a movement which he is very apt to make for the sake of watching the operation in short, he must make no effort of any kind. 3. Make at first gentle pressure so as to be able to increase it gradually, and to continue it for a long time without bruising the hernia, holding the neck of the sac between the finger and thumb of the left hand so as to prevent the hernia from closing the ring during pressure. 4. Return those parts first which were the first to be protruded. 5. Take care that the protruded parts are returned by the same channel as that through which they were protruded. Thus, in recent inguinal hernias, the bowel should be at first pressed directly backwards in order to pass the first ring, then backwards, upwards, and especially outwards, in accordance with the course of the canal; and, lastly, from before backwards again, when it may be presumed to have arrived at the second ring. In congenital or old hernias it is enough to press the parts backwards and a little upwards. 6. And lastly, in certain exceptional cases, these rules do not hold good, and patients have themselves a method of procedure which it is as well to follow

OPERATION OF TAXIS.

The surgeon places himself on the right of the patient, and takes hold of the base of the tumour in such a manner as to distribute equally the fecal or gaseous contents of the hernia. This manoeuvre, by making gentle pressure over the abdominal ring, should have the effect of pushing *en masse* the contents of the bowel towards the seat of strangulation; but the reduction would be impossible if the operator did not at the same time take care to seize the pedicle of the hernia with the view of concentrating and contracting the passage of the contents of the hernia in the direction of the ring. This last manoeuvre, by preventing the hernia being crushed against the ring, allows of its being drawn outwards, and of its being gradually returned by the channel through which it passed.

Equal pressure should be made upon all points of the swelling by applying the fingers uniformly over its surface.

It is very difficult in an operation of this kind to adopt one method exclusively. The attempts that are made to reduce a hernia always admit of the simultaneous or successive adoption of the different methods of reduction described by authors. The great point is to return the hernia by the same channel through which it was protruded. When the reduction takes place, the hernia may gradually diminish in volume and in hardness, and then pass back all at once. Sudden reduction, which is usually accompanied by a gurgling noise, is a sign of an intestinal hernia. A hernia of the omentum is generally reduced without any noise, and in a more gradual manner.

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



Fig 5



Fig 6



DURATION OF THE TAXIS.

If the taxis be too prolonged, it may compromise the success of the operation for the division of the stricture which may be rendered necessary in consequence of the failure of the attempts made to reduce the hernia. M. Amussat, on the other hand, is in favour of the taxis being prolonged and complete. This question, however, cannot be absolutely decided from *a priori* consideration. The surgeon, therefore, must draw from the peculiar circumstance of each case the indications which should regulate his conduct in this respect.

PLATE LXVI.

OPERATION FOR DIVISION OF THE STRICTURE
(KELOTOMY).

Fig. 1.—A fold of skin is raised over the tumour, transversely to the axis of the groin. This fold of skin is held on the inside by an assistant, and on the outside by the left hand of the operator, who, with his right hand, cautiously makes an incision into the fold. The incision may be made from within outwards, by plunging the instrument, with its sharp edge upwards, into the base of the fold.

Fig. 2.—The above incision (Fig. 1) has merely involved the skin and the subcutaneous cellular tissue. When the edges of the wound are separated, the swelling, *a*, is exposed enveloped in its several coverings, which are next divided layer by layer with the bistoury, *b*, guided over a director, *c*.

Fig. 3. Having divided in succession all the coverings of the hernia, the operator raises a fold of the hernial sac with a pair of forceps, *a*, and lays it open with the bistoury, *b*.

Fig. 4. The hernia, *a*, is now exposed; *b*, omentum. A director, *c*, or the finger is inserted between the hernia and the seat of stricture.

Fig. 5.—*Division of the stricture.*—The surgeon passes over a finger of his left hand either a hernia knife or a blunt pointed bistoury, the blade of which has been partially covered with lint, and then proceeds to divide the stricture.

Fig. 6.—*M. Vidal's plan.*—According to this method the operator presses the bistoury over a fluted spatula, *a*.

DIVISION OF THE STRICTURE IN INGUINAL
HERNIA.

The operation for division of the stricture in cases of strangulated hernia was first proposed and described by Franco in 1561. Adopted and practised at a later period by Ambrose Pare, it was perfected and described as an established operation by Dionis.

The *instruments* required for this operation are—an ordinary straight bistoury or scalpel, the hernial knife of Pott or A. Cooper, also a hernia director, a pair of scissors, a pair of mouse-toothed forceps, and one or two pairs of dissecting forceps. Several fine sponges should likewise be at hand to absorb the blood during the operation. Lastly, several pieces of dressing, lint, bandages, etc., should be provided.

The *position of the patient* should be such as to completely relax the abdominal muscles. He should, therefore, be placed horizontally on a couch, with his thighs half flexed, his legs flexed upon the thighs, and his shoulders slightly raised upon a pillow. The part to be operated upon should be shaved if necessary. The operator should stand on the hernia side of the patient, with his assistants near him on the opposite side, to hand the instruments, stanch the blood with sponges, and take any other part in the operation that circumstances may render desirable.

As the object of this operation is to remove the strangulation by dividing the stricture which causes it, it naturally consists of several principal steps in which the surgeon divides in succession first, the skin; second, the subcutaneous coverings of the hernia; third, the hernial sac; fourth, the stricture itself; while the reduction of the bowel constitutes the fifth and last step in the operation.

First Step.—Incision of the skin (Pl. LXVI., Fig 1).—The incision should be made in the long axis of the tumour, and to an extent proportionate to the size of the hernia. It may be made from within outwards, or from without inwards; and when the skin is intimately connected with the coverings of the hernia, and cannot be raised into a fold between the fingers, the incision should be made very cautiously. The essential point is not to wound the bowel. When the skin is soft, not much adherent to the subjacent parts, it is best to raise up a fold of skin over the tumour. The operator, holding one end of this fold, while an assistant holds the other, makes an incision into it from within outwards, or *vice versa*, by plunging into its base a bistoury with the blade held upwards. This incision divides the skin and subcutaneous tissues; it should extend nearly $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the swelling.

This first step in the operation is generally followed by a little hæmorrhage from some of the superficial vessels, which it is as well to

arrest before continuing the operation by torsion of the bleeding vessels, or the application of cold water.

Second Step.—Division of the subcutaneous coverings of the sac.—This step of the operation must be performed with great caution. Some surgeons make a direct incision from without inwards by passing over the surface of the tumour the sharp edge of a bistoury held like a fiddle-stick. Others tear down all the tissues with the two index-fingers. The safer method for those who are not by practice skilful, is to raise with a pair of forceps the membranous coverings of the hernia, and then to perforate separately each fold seized by the forceps. Through the small opening thus made a director should be inserted beneath the layer as far as each extremity of the tumour, while with a bistoury guided by the director, and with its sharp edge upwards, the surgeon divides one by one the coverings of the hernia as far as the sac. The number of the coverings of the sac is variable, and we have already enumerated and described them when treating of the surgical anatomy of inguinal and crural hernia. But the age of a hernia, the duration of the strangulation, so much modify its relations to the parts around and the nature of its coverings, that its normal anatomy is no guide in cases of this kind, while it is often extremely difficult to recognise the sac in the midst of the abnormal structures produced by the disease. Serous cysts, lumps of fat, suppurating glands, an old sac, etc., may obscure the operation and make the most experienced hand perilously uncertain.

Nevertheless, there are some signs by which the sac may be recognised. These are, a smooth and glistening surface, a spherical shape, fluctuation from the presence of serum, the omentum or the bowel seen through its transparency, etc.

Third Step.—Opening of the sac (Fig. 3).—The sac when once recognised should be cautiously opened so as not to wound the bowel. A fold of the sac should therefore be taken up with a pair of mouse-toothed forceps between the convolutions of the bowel if seen through the transparent sac—an operation which is generally facilitated by the presence of the serum which bathes and distends the inside of the sac. A piece of the sac may be grasped between the thumb and index-finger, and if the bowel is included it may be easily made to slip away from the grasp. An incision should then be made into the fold close to the forceps, in order to make an opening into which a director can be inserted. Guided by the director, the sac is then to be opened both above and below to a sufficient extent, but it is an object to expose the bowel as little as possible. This opening of the sac should be effected as much as possible in front of it, and a little to the outside. It is of the utmost importance to make certain that the sac is really entered. The escape of a certain quantity of serum after the sac has been opened; the facility with which the interior of the sac can be

explored, either with the finger or the director (provided, of course, there are no adhesions between it and the bowel); the fact of the bowel or the omentum freely floating, and not being adherent to anything except the seat of the stricture—all these signs combined will scarcely leave any doubt as to the nature of the pouch or sac which has been opened. We may add, however, that some hernias (hernia of the cæcum, for example) have no sac. Should this embarrassing peculiarity present itself, which is very rarely the case, the bowel may always be readily recognised by the structure of its coats.

Generally speaking, the bowel appears of a variable colour, according to the time that has elapsed since the commencement of the strangulation. Its surface is vascular, of a more or less deep, reddish brown, or even black colour, and perhaps masked in some places by a layer of plastic lymph. The omentum may be easily unfolded when there are no adhesions. Figs. 4, 5, and 6 represent a coil of protruded bowel after the opening of the sac.

Fourth Step.—The division of the stricture.—Before proceeding to divide the stricture, the neck of the sac should be explored with the finger, and gentle traction made upon the protruded bowel, with the view of reducing it, if possible, without dividing the stricture.

Having discovered the seat of strangulation, and that the stricture must be divided, the operation may be accomplished in two ways: first, by dividing the stricture to a sufficient extent, and on the side where there is no occasion to fear the presence of any bloodvessels; second, by making several incisions at different points of the seat of stricture.

The division should be made with a hernia knife; the sharp edge of the instrument should be inserted beneath the stricture, being passed along the index-finger, or over a director (Figs. 5 and 6). When there is no room for the insertion of the finger, the director must be used; but if the nail can be introduced beneath the constricting band, the bistoury should be passed over the finger, first in a flat or horizontal position, and then by raising the sharp edge upwards, and at the same time pushing the back of the instrument with the finger on which it rests, the division of the stricture is accomplished. Afterwards the index finger may be passed in more deeply, so that it may be possible to carry the division a little further. During the operation the assistants should not only keep the edges of the wound apart, but keep the viscera out of the way, as by getting over the blade of the instrument they may be wounded, or obstruct the operation.

M. Vidal has proposed the use of a fluted spatula instead of an ordinary director, and which is particularly useful when it is impossible to follow with the eye the track of the bistoury. The end of the spatula is first passed between the protruded part and the part

strangulating it. The fluted surface is turned upwards, or looks towards the point that is to be divided. Along this surface the bistoury is passed in a flat or horizontal position, so that its edge can do no harm. To make the division, the bistoury must be turned on its axis in such a manner as to raise upwards the sharp edge, which should divide the stricture as much by scraping as by cutting it. The spatula protects the bowel from the edge of the knife, and keeps it out of the way.

In England a hernia director is employed having the form of a spatula, and the breadth of nearly $\frac{3}{4}$ inch.

We have already remarked that an attempt at reduction should be made before resorting to an operation for the division of the stricture; but it should not be forgotten that the seat of strangulation is more often at the neck of the sac than at the aponeurotic ring. Nor should it be forgotten that some hernial sacs have multiple necks, and that the seat of strangulation may be very extensive, and may reach as far as the upper ring of the inguinal canal. It is only by repeated explorations and divisions of strictures that the operator will be able to discover the difficulties that may be encountered in operations of this kind.

There is a difference of opinion amongst authors as to the direction, and the extent to which the division should be carried. When the seat of the strangulation is at the external ring, and when the neck of the sac can be drawn out of the canal, the division is easy of execution, and there is no risk of wounding the epigastric artery. But when the stricture is more deeply situated, the impossibility of knowing whether the hernia is internal or external should induce the surgeon to act cautiously.

The reader should refer back to Plates LV., LVI., and LIX., for a description of the more important anatomical relations of the parts concerned in the production of hernias. The division of the stricture in an upward direction is less dangerous as respects the viscera that have to be avoided; and by not carrying the incision beyond $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in extent, there is no risk of wounding the artery. The index-finger introduced through the ring after slight incision by the knife, may be made to split the constriction. In the case of external hernias, the division outwards allows of its being safely carried to a greater extent, and in proportion to the volume of the displaced viscera. For this reason it will be often advisable to have recourse to the multiple division.

Multiple division.—Where it is necessary to enlarge the abdominal opening, and with the view of avoiding such an extensive incision as would incur the risk of hæmorrhage, M. Vidal proposes three, four, or even a greater number of incisions of $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch in length.

M. Malgaigne's operation.—M. Malgaigne does not make the first

incision over the sac and the scrotum, but over the apparent seat of strangulation, prolonging the incision upwards and downwards to such an extent as the obesity of the patient and the volume of the hernia may render advisable. All the tissues are divided as far as the peritoneum, and in this way he has nothing to fear from the presence of bloodvessels, which are kept under the eye, or removed out of the way. If the strangulation is found to arise from the constriction of a fibrous aperture, the sac itself is not touched, and the hernia is reduced. Otherwise he divides the neck by small incisions from without inwards; or if the stricture appears very tight, he makes a small incision in the peritoneum, either above or below the neck of the sac, and raises the latter with a director on which the neck is divided.

According to M. Malgaigne, the advantage of this plan over all others is, that the operator can see what he is doing; in the second place, the seat of strangulation is reached by the shortest route, and by the fewest possible incisions; and thirdly, the scrotum and the sac are more protected, and the surgeon has not afterwards to trouble himself about the suppuration and cicatrization of a wound that has been more or less useless. In illustration of his method, M. Malgaigne cites a case of scrotal hernia of large size. Its neck was situated on a level with the abdominal ring; the neck of the sac was opened; the sac for a few days became full of fluid, the absorption of which took place as fast as the inflammation of the wound above subsided; and a cure was effected without any accidents (*Malgaigne, Médecine Opératoire*).

Fifth step.—Reduction.—In the case of an intestinal hernia, and when the bowel is sound, draw the latter out a little, divide any slight adhesions that may be present, raise the buttock so as to allow the intestines to drag back from the sac, press gently inwards the gas distending the bowel, and finally reduce it bit by bit, returning first the parts that are nearest the ring. When the bowel is also accompanied by a portion of omentum, the latter should be returned last of all. When a part of the bowel has become gangrenous, the indications for treatment will vary according to the extent of the mischief. If there is any doubt as to the existence of gangrene, M. Vidal recommends a very slight and superficial incision to be made over the injured portion of bowel. If the circulation is still active, a large drop of blood collects on the little wound; if, on the other hand, the bowel is gangrenous, the surface of the wound remains dry: in the first case the part may be reduced, in the second it should not. Where there is any doubt, the diseased part should be kept on a level with the ring; and should it be gangrenous, the fecal matters will find their way through the abdominal opening.

It sometimes happens that in making the small incisions above mentioned, the bowel is perforated by the bistoury. In that case the

surgeon must have recourse to one of the operations already described ('Wounds of the Bowels'), according to the nature and extent of the wound. Lastly, when the bowel is gangrenous to a great extent, the two sound portions or ends of the bowel must be fastened to the ring, to facilitate the passage of the fæces through the upper end and through the abdominal opening, by which means an artificial anus will be established, and slowly heal. Perhaps, too, it might be possible to excise the gangrenous part, to unite the sound parts by suture, by one of the operations described, and then to reduce the bowel.

Whenever it is necessary to establish an artificial anus, great care must be taken to preserve the adhesions which unite the end of the bowel to the neck of the sac. The destruction of these adhesions will expose the bowel to the accident of returning into the cavity of the abdomen. If the stricture should prevent the fecal matters from freely escaping outside, a small female speculum might be introduced into the upper end of the bowel, and if this procedure is impossible, or attended with too much danger as respects the integrity of the adhesions, the sac may be cautiously divided on the outside.

The treatment of a gangrenous condition of the omentum depends upon its extent and volume. When the gangrenous portion is pretty extensive, unfold the omentum, cut off all the diseased portion, tie one by one the bleeding vessels, or enclose the whole pedicle in a ligature, and confine the sound parts, tied as above, to the opening of the ring.

Dressings.—Having well cleaned the depths and the edges of the wound, the latter should be approximated by sutures, and a drainage-tube, an antiseptic dressing with a pad of lint and a spica bandage applied; but if it has been found necessary to establish an artificial anus, the wound must be left open, and a charcoal poultice applied.

CRURAL HERNIA.

The detailed description (pp. 267 *et seq.*), and the illustrations (Pls. LX., LXI., and LXIV.) that have been given of crural hernia will be sufficient to show its anatomical relations. When the extra-peritoneal portion of the cæcum or the sigmoid flexure of the colon is the part protruded, the hernia so formed has no sac. But not counting these exceptional cases, crural hernia is composed of much the same elements as inguinal hernia. The direction it takes is, first, downwards into the sheath of the femoral vessels, then through the layer of cribriform fascia; afterwards it takes another direction, and ascends towards the abdomen, under the skin, and the layers of subcutaneous cellular tissue. If the hernia be of large size, it is on a level with the opening of the cribriform fascia that the neck of the sac is formed; and there also is the seat of strangulation, which takes place at the aponeurotic ring of the cribriform fascia. But usually the stricture is situated at the upper opening of the canal, the crural ring,

or in the canal, the neck itself being in the latter case the seat of strangulation.

The remarks that have been made on the taxis in cases of inguinal hernia are also applicable to the hernias now under consideration. It will be sufficient to observe that in returning the protruded parts they should be made to follow, inversely, the circuitous course above described.

OPERATION.

One great aim of the operator is to reduce the hernia without opening the sac. This can only be accomplished when the constriction is not constituted by the neck of the sac. If, therefore, the hernia has not descended on any previous occasion, the neck of the sac will assuredly not be the constriction. And again, if the knuckle of intestine constricted is small, which is the case in the majority of femoral hernias, it is not likely to be the neck of the sac which prevents its return. In all such cases an attempt to reduce the hernia without opening the sac should be made, unless the length of time since the strangulation took place or the symptoms shown by the patient give rise to the opinion that the bowel is gangrenous, and not in a fit state to be returned into the abdomen.

The most convenient incision is one commencing about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch above the spine of the pubes, and carried downwards, in the course of the tumour—somewhat on its inner side—to a sufficient length according to its size. As the different coverings of the hernia are by no means thick, they must be cautiously divided; and it is often impossible to raise a fold of skin from the tumour. The *fascia propria* enveloping the sac is very thin, and may be mistaken for the sac itself—an error easy to fall into, from the fact that fatty masses folded over the sac, and seen through the transparent fascia, may be mistaken for the omentum, whilst the fascia itself is easily separated from the tissue around, and when so separated presents a ball-like appearance, much in character like the hernial sac. Having determined that the layer under observation is the fascia propria, it should not be separated from the tissue around, for by so doing it is rendered liable to slough, but it should be laid open on a director throughout its length, and thus the subperitoneal fat and cellular tissue is brought into view. The subperitoneal layer is often a mere film of connective tissue; but in fat persons, and in persons in whom the hernia has long existed, it presents important and often perplexing variations. If this covering be simply a connecting lamina, the sac is plainly visible; but if containing fat, it may have increased to a thickness of $\frac{1}{4}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, or even more, and may possibly also contain a number of small serous cysts, each one of which may, when first seen, present the appearance of the sac containing fluid. This loose tissue should be cautiously divided until the sac of the hernia is exposed.

The rest of the operation differs only as to whether or not it has been determined to open the sac. If not, then the finger-nail may be carried along the inner side of the sac to Gimbernat's ligament, beneath which it may be pushed to serve as a guide for the hernia knife. Gimbernat's ligament is then to be incised, together with the fibres of fascia propria, by cutting directly inwards, or inwards and upwards from the hernia, one or two notches being made according to requirement. Now the hernia may be pressed upwards from the sac into the abdominal cavity, the sac itself being retained in its original position. Should it not be possible to empty the sac of the hernia, the rest of the operation may be proceeded with. The sac is to be cautiously raised by a pair of mouse-tooth forceps, and incised by the scalpel to an extent only sufficient to admit the director. The director then being inserted, the sac is to be laid open. Now in the same manner the index finger is to be passed along the inner side of the gut to the crural ring, and the hernia knife carried along the finger, or—if necessitated by the tightness of the constriction—along a hernia director, to incise the neck of the sac, together with the fascia propria and Gimbernat's ligament, as before described.

UMBILICAL HERNIA (OMPHALOCELE OR EXOMPHALUS).

Taxis and bandages.—These hernias may be easily reduced by taxis; and they are kept in place by particular kinds of bandages. In children it is usual to apply some discs of cork—but not of such shape as to wedge in and dilate the opening—which are fastened by a bandage round the body.

A radical cure may be easily effected in young patients by means of simple compression. Ligation of the sac has been also proposed. Practised with success by Desault and Dupuytren, this plan has been condemned by Sabatier, Scarpa, and A. Cooper, who have taxed it with the production of convulsions in children and inflammation of the sac.

Necrotomy.—Umbilical hernia may be obstructed or strangulated, so that an operation is imperative. It must not be forgotten that the coverings of this hernia are very thin, and that the sac contains little or no fluid. The operation, therefore, is rather a delicate one. A + or T shaped or straight incision should be cautiously made, and as, in this kind of hernia, the neck of the sac is very rarely the seat of strangulation, some authors advise only the fibrous ring to be divided, without touching the sac, so as not to expose the peritoneum to subsequent inflammation. This recommendation is a good one, and should be followed when the hernia is large, and when it is not necessary to examine the viscera. A longitudinal incision should be made in the median line, commencing an inch or more above the tumour; the nail may then be inserted between the tumour and the

ring, the tumour being drawn well downwards, and the linea alba may be cautiously cut through towards the finger-nail. Multiple division is preferable to a single division of the stricture; but if only one is made, its direction should be upwards and to the left, in order to avoid the remains of the urachus and the umbilical vessels. The mortality after operation for umbilical hernia is very great, and therefore it is well to fairly try other means of reducing it before resorting to operation. A bandage or plaster lightly affixed around the tumour, and the application of a bag of ice weighted with shot, will often reduce the size of the protrusion, and allow of its return.

PLATE LXVII.

ACCIDENTAL ARTIFICIAL ANUS.

Fig. 1.—*Artificial anus opening inside by two orifices.*—The upper end of the bowel, *a*, and the lower end, *b*, open into the bend of the groin, each by a cutaneous orifice, *d* and *e*; *c*, mesentery.

Fig. 2.—*Artificial anus opening outside by one orifice.*—*a*, Upper end of the bowel; *b*, the lower end, terminating in a cul-de-sac; *c*, partition formed by the approximation of the walls of the two ends; *d*, external orifice of the upper end.

Fig. 3.—*Diagram showing the formation of the spur or partition.*—*a*, The upper, and *b*, the lower end of the bowel; *c*, the partition or spur formed by the juxtaposition of the walls of the two ends; *e*, mesentery; *d*, external orifice of the upper end.

In this figure, the partition, *c*, descends as far as the external orifice, *d*, and prevents the faeces from passing into the lower end, *b*, directing them outside, as shown by the arrow.

Fig. 3 bis.—*Diagram showing the formation of the membranous funnel.*—The mesentery, by drawing inwards the spur or partition, *c*, leaves the passage from the upper to the lower end perfectly free. The space, *d*, intervening between the spur and the external orifice, has been described by Scarpa under the name of the *membranous funnel*.

Fig. 4.—*The membranous funnel, after Scarpa.*—*a*, *a*, Peritoneum; *b*, upper end of the bowel; *c*, lower end; *d*, mesentery; *e*, partition; *a* probe, *g*, inserted through the cutaneous orifice into the membranous funnel; *f*, external wall of the funnel; *h*, *h*, anterior-superior spines of the ilium.

Fig. 5.—*Application of Dupuytren's enterotrite.*—The instrument, *a*, is introduced through the external wound, and the partition or spur is seized between the teeth of the instrument.

Fig. 6.—*Application of a circular enterotrite, a.*

Pl 67

Fig 1



Fig 3



Fig 2



Fig 4



Fig 5



Fig 6



Fig 1-6: Plant specimens of *Salicornia* L.



ACCIDENTAL ARTIFICIAL ANUS.

PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY (PL. LXVII.).

When treating of the accidents incidental to strangulated hernia, we stated that it may terminate in gangrene of the bowel, and the external discharge of the feces through a fistulous wound situated within the fold of the groin. This solution of continuity gives rise to a permanent communication between the bowel and the outside of the body, giving passage to the contents of the bowel by another opening besides the natural one, and constituting an infirmity which is called an *accidental artificial anus*. We shall now notice the surgical operations which have been resorted to with the view of combating this infirmity, reserving for future consideration the operation for *artificial anus*.

It is of the greatest importance to understand the disposition of the ends of the bowel above and below the solutions of continuity: as upon this disposition the curability of the affection depends. Sometimes the accidental anus is formed by a number of small openings more or less distant from the bowel: sometimes the upper and lower ends of the bowel are supported one against the other, like the barrels of a double-barrelled gun, having a parallel direction, and opening externally by two separate apertures. Fig. 1 of Plate LXVII. shows this disposition of the parts: *a*, the upper, and *b*, the lower end, *d* and *e*, the two external openings corresponding to the two ends of the bowel.

The upper end of the bowel may open externally by only one aperture (Fig. 2, *d*), and the lower end may be supported by it, and at the same time be separated from it by the partition, *c*.

The partition or spur.—This disposition of the parts is brought about by the peculiar adjustment of the two ends of the bowel (Fig. 3). Their walls, *c*, supported one against another, constitute a sort of valvular partition, which prevents the free passage of their contents from the upper, *a*, into the lower end, *b*. This partition has received the name of the spur.

Further on will be described the operations performed for the purpose of destroying this partition, and re-establishing a communication between one portion of the bowel and the other.

The membranous funnel.—The mesentery, in consequence of the tractions which it makes upon the bowel, has a constant tendency to drag it back into the abdomen, and to separate it from the abdominal wall. The spur, obeying this retrograde movement of the bowel, gets removed from the abdominal opening. The cellular tissue uniting the bowel to this opening gives way a little, and then there is formed beneath the spur a sort of hollow space (Fig. 3, *d'*), through which the

faeces pass, without being discharged externally, and without meeting with any obstacle from the presence of the spur. In this way the contents of the bowel have a free passage from the upper end, *a'*, to the lower end, *U*, and the accidental anus undergoes a spontaneous cure.

Scarpa has given the name *membranous funnel* to this passage, which, being formed little by little, naturally and gradually effects the cure of these accidental anuses. Fig. 4 is a drawing after Scarpa of this membranous funnel.

It may happen also that the bowel is parallel to the abdominal wall, and that the wound in it is in juxtaposition with the abdominal wound, so that there is neither a spur nor a membranous funnel.

It will be seen from the above how important it is to recognise the dispositions of the two ends of the bowel. In fact, this disposition must be the basis on which the surgeon should make his choice of the operation to be performed.

OPERATIONS.

Palliative treatment.—The object of this treatment is to regulate the evacuation of fecal matters, and to prevent any accidents arising from the obliteration of the abdominal opening. The dilatation of the opening and of the upper end of the bowel may be attained by means of charpie tents, seaweed susceptible of dilatation, fragments of prepared sponge, etc. Obturators have also been designed, the form of which must vary according to circumstances. A plate of ivory or of wood may be used to support the edges of the wound, and may be pierced in its centre with an aperture which can be opened or closed at pleasure.

A communication may also be maintained between the two ends of the bowel by means of a large gum-elastic tube, one extremity of which is inserted in the upper end of the bowel, and the other in the lower end; so that the fecal matters can pass through the tube from one end of the bowel to the other. It will be unnecessary to describe in detail all the apparatus that have been designed in order to lessen the inconvenience resulting from an artificial anus. All these half-measures but badly fulfil the object we have in view, and the distressing infirmity which they still leave exposed to serious dangers calls for operative measures of a curative nature.

Curative treatment.—Before attempting the obliteration of artificial anus, the surgeon should remove the complications by which this affection is frequently accompanied.

When the skin is riddled with holes they may at once be thrown into one. Sometimes there is prolapse of the bowel, and inversion of the mucous membrane, in which case the taxis should be applied, and the reduction effected by making methodical pressure from the summit

to the base of the extrusion. Should the reduction of the bowel be impossible, an operation must be resorted to, dividing the abdominal opening by small multiple incisions from the skin towards the peritoneum.

When this first step in the treatment has been accomplished, the spur or partition above mentioned must be destroyed, with the view of facilitating the passage of the fæces from one end of the bowel to the other, as well as the obliteration of the external wound.

Destruction of the spur—Desault's operation.—This surgeon began the operation by dilating the two ends of the bowel with charpie tents, the size of which was gradually increased; five days often elapsed before the dilatation was complete. He then introduced into the wound a conical plug, which, pushing back the spur in the direction of the abdominal cavity, left the two ends of the bowel facing each other. When the fecal matters were able to pass freely from one end of the bowel to the other, gentle pressure, made over the external wound only, prevented the escape of the fæces externally, and gradually led to the cicatrization of the parts.

Desault also used an ebony holder to push back the spur. Both these proceedings may give rise to flatulence, colicky pains, the retention of the fæces, and other inconvenience.

With the view of not interrupting the passage of the contents of the bowel, M. Fayet, and afterwards M. Colombe, proposed to replace the plug and the ebony holder by a gum-elastic tube of large calibre. The body of the tube compresses the spur, while its extremities engaged within each end of the bowel allow of the free passage of the fæces. This operation was performed by M. Velpeau, but the patient died three days after from peritonitis.

Compression, however, is generally insufficient. It cannot be made in a methodical manner, for there is no power of support on the part of the abdominal wall, and as the spur is not placed between a medium of pressure and one of resistance, there is really no compression, and the spur is merely pushed back. If the pressure is increased, it then becomes dangerous, for the adhesions may be disturbed and even destroyed.

Enterotomy.—The object of this operation is to remove the spur altogether. Schmalkalden was the first to describe it in 1798. He passed a needle and thread through the base of the spur, and joining the two ends of the thread, he thus divided the spur by ligature.

Afterwards (in 1800), this operation was successfully performed by Physick.

M. Dupuytren's operation.—This surgeon made enterotomy an established operation. The danger of perforating the bowel with the needle induced him to bring about adhesion between the walls which by their approximation constituted the spur.

He made use of a particular kind of forceps called the enterotrite. He seized the spur between the teeth of the instrument, and gradually compressed it, so as to make it mortify and fall off from the wall of the bowel.

The enterotrite is composed of two blades, which can be introduced separately, one into the upper, and the other into the lower end of the bowel. The blades are then joined together, as in the case of the midwifery forceps. A screw serves to close the blades. The pressure made by the instrument secures in the first instance the adhesion of the adjoining walls of the bowel, and subsequently the division and separation of the compressed parts. The instrument is fixed by bandages to prevent its moving about or making painful traction upon the bowel. At the end of the seventh or eighth day the division is complete, and the enterotrite falls off.

Delpech has proposed an enterotrite the ends of which are terminated by enlargements resembling one-half of a nut-shell. These forceps, much larger at their extremity than those of Dupuytren, are not easily applied.

M. Liotard has designed an enterotrite terminated by two oval rings $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches in length by $\frac{3}{4}$ inch in width, and one of which, hollowed out by a fluting, receives a corresponding projection of the other. The two blades only meeting at their rings, the latter can be applied over the spur, and thus give passage to the feces at a distance from the abdominal opening.

M. Jobert thinks the enterotrite should only be used for the purpose of securing adhesions. After forty-eight hours, by which time the adhesions have taken place, the instrument should be withdrawn, and when, in the course of a day or two, the adhesions have become more organized, the partition may be cut off with a pair of scissors without disturbing them.

Cauterization.—M. Vidal proposes to use caustics in place of the enterotrite. Each end of the forceps should contain a small hollow space which can be charged with the nitrate of silver, or, what is better, the Vienna paste. In this way the caustic cannot spread far; its action can be limited, and, at the same time, rapid, and nothing remains in the wound after the operation. The slough is gradually thrown off, and the ulceration left behind allows of the passage of fecal matter.

OBSTRUCTION OF THE EXTERNAL OPENING IN CASES OF ARTIFICIAL ANUS.

The spur or partition being destroyed, and a free communication between the two ends of the bowel having been established, the opening in the abdominal wall must be next obliterated. This obliteration is very difficult to accomplish.

Autoplastie has been tried by many surgeons, but without success. M. Velpeau practised excision, followed by sutures, upon a patient in 1835.

He thus describes the operation: 'I included all the fistula in an ellipsis, with the view of excising it by a double halfmoon-shaped incision, and so as not to interfere with the bowel, or, at least, its mucous membrane. I then put in four stitches, about two lines from each other, at the same time taking care that the middle portion of them did not reach as far as the cavity of the abdomen or the bowel. In the next place an incision, about 2 inches in length, and extending through the skin, the subcutaneous cellular tissue, and the aponeurosis of the external oblique, was made on each side, from twelve to fifteen lines away from the wound. After the parts were well washed, I tied the threads, and placed a fold of lint in the lateral wounds.'

By adopting this plan, and by paring down the fistula, M. Velpeau transforms it into a deep funnel-shaped aperture, the widest part of which is outside. By bringing together the edges of this opening, the bottom of it, which is the narrowest part, necessarily closes up before the edges of the external wound can be united. Such is really the case, and the closure of the wound in the bowel is rapidly effected. The lateral incisions maintain the skin in a relaxed state, and permit of the lips of the wound being easily brought together.

M. Malgaigne's operation.—M. Malgaigne thinks that surgeons have not clearly recognised the chief cause of difficulty met with in closing certain abnormal anuses, while others become spontaneously obliterated. In the first case the bowel reaches as far as the cutaneous opening, its valves direct its fecal contents towards this opening, and the condition almost indispensable to the success of the cure is to interrupt this continuity and to carry back the valves in a contrary direction. Hence the following operation, which M. Malgaigne has already successfully performed on the living subject.

The operator begins by paring the abnormal channel throughout its whole extent as far as the bowel, carefully separating the latter from its external adhesions, and remembering that these adhesions are very slight, and that by dividing them beyond $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in extent there would be the risk of opening the peritoneum. He then, without paring them, turns the two edges of the bowel inwards, and unites them by suture, so as to bring them together by their external surface. In addition to this suture he closes up the soft parts of the skin with the twisted or quilled suture, at the same time taking great care to avoid any forcible traction of the parts. If he meets with a loss of substance he would have recourse to autoplastie. In short, the essential point consists in isolating the bowel, to fold inwards its two edges or lips, and to close the external wound over it.

PLATE LXVIII.

OPERATION FOR ARTIFICIAL ANUS.

ANATOMY.

Fig. 1.—The anterior abdominal wall and the bulk of the small intestine have been removed; the large intestine has been preserved, in order to show the disposition of the different parts of the colon: *a*, Transverse colon; *b*, ascending colon; *c*, cæcum; *d*, descending colon.

Fig. 2.—*The back of the body.*—The posterior abdominal wall has been removed: *f, f*, The vertebral column; *a*, the left kidney, covered by a layer of aponeurotic fascia; *b*, the arteries coming out of the lumbar vertebræ. A portion of the peritoneum being removed, the small intestines, *c*, are exposed; *d*, right kidney; *e*, right colon.

This figure shows the general disposition of the viscera in the lumbar region.



Fig. 1

Pl. 6B



Fig. 2

PLATE 6B



fig. 2



fig. 1

fig. 3



fig. 4



PLATE LXIX.

OPERATION FOR ARTIFICIAL ANUS.

Fig. 1. —*The operation performed on the circum, according to the plan adopted by Littre.*—*a, a*, Dotted line showing the course of the ascending colon and of the cæcum; *b, b*, incision made into the right iliac fossa through the abdominal wall; *c, c*, blunt hooks separating the edges of the wound, at the bottom of which is seen the cæcum; *d*.

Fig. 2. —*Cutlsen's method. Amussat's operation*—*a, a*, Dotted line showing the course of the left colon; *b, b*, transverse incision of the subcutaneous layers; *c, c*, hooks separating the lips of the wound; *d, d*, coils of thread passed into the extra-peritoneal portion of the left colon.

Figs. 3 and 4.—Junction of the edges of the wound in the bowel to the edges of the abdominal wound by means of sutures.

ARTIFICIAL ANUS.—OPERATION.

The subject of *accidental anus* has already received full consideration, and the different plans adopted for its cure have likewise been described.

The formation of an *artificial anus* constitutes a regular operation, by means of which the surgeon proposes to make in a particular part of the bowel, and in the abdominal wall corresponding to it, an aperture of exit for fecal matter, which, in certain pathological conditions, cannot be evacuated by the natural passage.

According to M. Amussat, the following are the affections for which this operation may be performed :

1. Stercoraceous tympanites, occasioned by obstruction of the rectum or colon, provided that the obstacle cannot be overcome lower down, and the patient's life is in danger.
2. Scirrhus affections of the rectum or of the large bowel when they give rise to great pain and inconvenience in defecations.
3. Imperforate rectum, or an absence of a portion of the bowel, and when a passage cannot be established lower down.

Two methods of operating are practised at the present day. The first is that of Littre, who, having noticed an imperforate rectum in an infant that died at the age of six days, conceived the possibility of establishing an artificial anus by an opening through the abdominal wall and the sigmoid flexure of the colon. The second method was proposed by Callisen, of Copenhagen, and consists in opening the ascending colon in the right lumbar region.

Littre's operation (Plate LXIX.).—The instruments required are: an ordinary scalpel, a director, forceps, scissors, needles, and wire sutures. The infant being placed upon his back, and brought under the influence of chloroform, an incision about 2 inches long, and starting from midway between the umbilicus and the anterior superior spine of the ilium, is continued down the left flank towards Poupart's ligament. The various layers of the abdominal wall are divided on a director; and on the peritoneum being opened, the sigmoid flexure is readily found, being recognised by its thick and knotted appearance. This piece of the bowel is then brought up to the wound, opened longitudinally, and the edges fixed to the wound in the abdomen by wire sutures. Plastic effusion, should the child survive, will quickly cause the edges of the gut to become adherent to the lips of the wound. The best dressing will consist in oiled lint.

Mr. Edmund Owen, who has lately had a successful case of this nature, is of opinion that, for imperforate rectum where no anus can be established after careful dissection in the peritoneum, the colon should be at once opened from the left flank; and, further, that on account of the large intestines in the infant being very tortuous, and floating in a mesentery, the surgeon should never attempt the extra-peritoneal (Amussat's) operation. At the same time, or on a future occasion, a flexible gum-elastic catheter might be passed through the lower piece of the large intestine towards the perineum. With this aid, Mr. Owen believes the blind end of the bowel might be discovered from the incision in the perineum, and there be opened and secured.

Callisen's operation (Fig. 2).—To avoid injuring the peritoneum, a result inseparable from Littre's operation, Callisen proposed opening the descending colon in the loin, between the last rib and the crest of the ilium. In this part of its course the left colon can be reached without wounding the peritoneum (at least, in the adult). But Callisen's proposal did not meet with a favourable reception at the hands of contemporary surgeons.

In 1830 Amussat was occupied with the study of Callisen's proposal, and framed the rule for the operation which we now describe.

Amussat's operation.—*Anatomy.*—The relationship existing between the peritoneum and the lumbar colon must be well understood. If this piece of the gut is examined on its posterior aspect, after the re-

removal of the mass of muscles which covers it, it is seen that the posterior third is uncovered by the peritoneum. This posterior part of the intestine rests upon the wall of the abdomen without the intervention of a serous layer, so that the bowel can be opened without opening the peritoneum. But this extra peritoneal part varies in extent. Sometimes the peritoneum only just faces the anterior aspect of the colon, whilst at other times its folds almost meet round the gut.

The lumbar colon can only be reached between the kidney and the iliac crest. Its direction corresponds pretty nearly to the interval between the quadratus lumborum and the transversalis abdominis, the interval corresponding to the outer border of the erector spinæ. Sometimes, however, the colon lies in front of the quadratus lumborum—that is, nearer the vertebral column.

The colour of the colon is dusky green; and it is well to bear this in mind, so that in certain cases the small intestine, which is yellowish, may never be mistaken for it. To render the extra-peritoneal part of the colon more accessible, a few syringefuls of warm water, or, which is better, a sufficient quantity of air to make the colon visibly dilate, may be injected by the anus.

The operation.—The patient must be placed with his face downwards, and the body rolled somewhat on to the right side. It is generally advised that a pillow be placed under the right side, but such an arrangement tends to push the coils of small intestines over to the neighbourhood of the left colon. An incision 3 or 4 inches in length is then made horizontally, outwards, from the outer border of the erector spinæ, midway between the last rib and the iliac crest. (It might be necessary, in a very fat subject, to make the incision in the skin cruciform.) Beneath the skin and fat the outer border of the latissimus dorsi is seen at the spinal end of the wound. This must be divided, as must also the posterior part of the external oblique, which lies at the anterior extremity of the wound. Afterwards the internal oblique, the transversalis, and the transversalis fascia are divided, layer by layer. The last-named structure may be divided more vertically than the others.

Beneath these layers lies the colon, which is somewhat masked by layers of connective-tissue and fat, that must be manipulated with great care. The difficult part of the operation consists in recognising and properly opening the gut. On the dead subject the colon is more readily recognised by its colour than it is in the living; the colour is due to the presence of fecal matter. The thick and 'resisting' feel of the large intestine is a useful help. Should the intestine be contracted, it will be found further back upon the quadratus lumborum. The bowel should not be opened without due consideration; but it can be unmistakably recognised if, at this stage of the operation, more air be pumped in through the rectum.

The colon being recognised, two strong sutures, distant about an inch, are passed through its walls and are given to an assistant. It is then opened by the scalpel, and an escape of gas and fecal matter follows. The opening thus made may be increased to any extent desirable by a blunt-pointed bistoury. If thought advisable, an injection of warm water, above and below, through the wound, will do much to clear the canal. When further escape of feces seems unlikely, the wound in the bowel is fixed to that in the skin by twisted wire sutures (Figs. 3 and 4). The ends of the wound may also be closed, and joined to the intestine by carefully arranged sutures.

Relative merits.—Callisen's operation has a real advantage over that of Littre, in that it exposes the peritoneum to less interference: whilst the artificial anus placed behind is, in certain circumstances, less in the way than the anus in the front of the abdomen.

OPERATIONS PERFORMED ON THE KIDNEY.

In describing the operations performed upon the kidney for the relief or cure of what may now be called the 'Surgical' diseases of the kidney, we shall consider each under the following heads: What is the operation done for? How is it done? and What are its dangers?

Besides the use of the trocar or aspirator there are four surgical operations which are now generally recognised, and have been frequently performed upon the kidney: and the lives of many patients have been saved by them, whilst comfort and relief from great suffering has been afforded in many other instances. The names given to these operations are sufficiently expressive of their objects and characters.

1. Nephrotomy is an incision into the kidney for purposes other than the extraction of a calculus, though it is quite possible that a calculus or calculous material may be removed after the incision has been made. Thus, on laying open an abscess of the kidney, one or more calculi may be detected lodged within the pelvis or calyces of the organ; or having ulcerated its way through the kidney, the stone may be found lying outside the suppurating organ.

2. Nephrolithotomy is an incision into the secreting substance or pelvis of the kidney, with the express purpose of removing a calculus therefrom, and that, too, at a date in the progress of the disease prior to the disorganization of the renal substance, or the conversion of the renal pelvis into a large abscess cavity.

3. Nephroraphy consists in cutting down upon and exposing the kidney, and then stitching it to the edges of the wound in the parietes. It is undertaken with the object of fixing a floating or movable kidney.

4. Nephrectomy is the complete removal of a kidney either through an opening in the loin or by laparotomy.

PUNCTURING THE KIDNEY with a trocar, or the aspirator, is performed for the relief or cure of hydro- and pyo-nephrosis, large isolated serous or blood cysts of the substance of the kidney, and hydatid cysts.

The point selected for puncturing will depend on circumstances. If there be any spot over the swelling which is thin, soft, prominent or fluctuating, the trocar should be there inserted. A point which is not seldom indicated is midway between the umbilicus and the anterior superior spine of the ilium; or half an inch below, and an inch and a half to the side of the navel. When no particular spot is suggested by discolouration or prominence, no better place can be selected on the left side than an inch in front of the last intercostal space, but if the tumour be of the right side this is too high, as the liver would be traversed. On the left side the spleen, under ordinary circumstances, runs no risk of being punctured by inserting the needle well in front of the eleventh intercostal space; and if the spleen be projected forwards by the tumour, it will be detected in its abnormal position by palpation, and must of course be avoided. 'If there be no indication for operating elsewhere, the best spot to select when the tumour is of the right kidney, is half-way between the last rib and the crest of the ilium, between two and two and a half inches behind the anterior superior spine of the ilium. This spot is on a level with the front of the bodies of the lumbar vertebrae, and a needle here passed horizontally inwards will be altogether in front of the kidney. It may, however, with safety be conjectured that in any case of hydronephrosis of the right side *requiring to be tapped*, if the trocar be inserted at this place and directed somewhat forwards the peritoneum and colon will be sufficiently in front to escape injury, the liver will be safely out of reach above, and the kidney behind, while the dilated pelvis of the kidney will be tapped at its anterior and lower part.'

NEPHROTOMY is performed for hydronephrosis when the cyst refills rapidly after having been punctured; for hydatid cysts under similar circumstances, or when from the number and size of the daughter cysts its contents cannot be evacuated through a small tube; for pyonephrosis, and for any case in which the kidney has been converted into an abscess sac, whether from the presence of calculus or tubercle.

The incision is precisely the same as for lumbar colotomy, except that as the kidney is situated a little nearer the median line than the colon, the deep part of the wound should be kept a little posterior to that in colotomy. A slight oblique incision should be made in the costo-iliac interspace, beginning over the outer edge of the erector spine, and continued forwards for three and a half inches. After dividing the skin, superficial fat and fascia, the outer border of the latissimus dorsi and the posterior border of the external oblique of

the abdomen will be brought into view, and should be divided to the full extent of the superficial incision. The posterior layer of the lumbar aponeurosis should next be divided, but it is unnecessary to open the sheath of the erector spinae. Next the internal oblique and the aponeurosis of the transversalis must be cut through, whereupon the outer border of the quadratus lumborum will be seen, and the deep layer of the lumbar aponeurosis must be divided. No grooved director or other guide is necessary to reach this stage; a scalpel and a pair of dissecting forceps for the operator, and two well-formed deep retractors for his assistant, being all the instruments necessary beyond two or more pairs of torso pressure-forceps to control hæmorrhage from any vessels cut in the division of the parietes. The perirenal fatty tissue having thus been reached will, in all probability, be found condensed, and otherwise much altered from the inflammatory process which has gone on in and around the kidney; and if the operation be done for abscess of the kidney, suppurative changes perhaps will have taken place in the structures forming the bed of the kidney. When this tissue has been divided, the distended pelvis, cyst or abscess (as the case may be) of the kidney should be either first tapped or at once cut into, its contents evacuated, and when suppuration has occurred, the cavity should be well irrigated with some disinfecting solution. If it be thought desirable, as in hydronephrosis and cysts of the kidney it is, to stitch the cut edges of the cyst to the edges of the skin, this should now be done. In cases of suppuration of the kidney, a drainage-tube should be inserted, and the greater part if not the whole of the wound left to granulate, though the anterior extremity may be brought together by one or more sutures with advantage.

The dangers of nephrotomy are not in the operation, but depend entirely upon the condition of kidney for which the opening is made. When done for cyst—bydatid or simple—the probability is that with a fair drain for its contents the cavity will soon contract, and the wound close by granulations; when done for hydronephrosis or pyonephrosis, set up by some permanent obstruction in the ureter, a continuous and persistent flow of urine, or pus mixed with urine, must ensue, and unless this fistula is removed by nephrectomy, a receptacle, into which the fluid can trickle and be retained, should be adjusted to the loin and constantly worn. Such an instrument has been made at Mr. Morris's suggestion by Mr. Hawksley.

When nephrotomy is performed for abscess recovery may take place; but if the kidney is completely converted into an abscess sac, or is the seat of breaking down scrofulous deposit, the patient, though benefited for a time, may be worn out at length by suppuration or hectic.

NEPHROLITHOTOMY.—This operation should unhesitatingly be done

in all cases in which symptoms of renal calculus continue uninfluenced by medicinal treatment, and are sufficiently severe to interfere materially with the comfort and usefulness of the patient's life. If for several months a person has been subject to more or less constant pain in one loin, and along the ureter, and perhaps also in the testicle of the same side; if there have been recurring attacks of renal colic, and especially if with these symptoms there is occasional hæmaturia or the urine is constantly charged with a little pus or albumen, we have the conditions not only justifying but demanding an exploration. If in addition to these symptoms a small calculus or a little calculous matter has been passed per urethrum, there is almost absolute certainty of the presence of a stone.

Symptoms strongly suggestive of renal calculus arise, however, from causes other than stone, and many times an exploration has been made of the kidney, and nothing found to explain the symptoms. It by no means follows that no stone is in the kidney because the examination proves negative, for subsequent events have, in several instances, divulged the existence of calculus in kidneys in which a stone has been searched for in vain.

Operation.—An incision is made four and a half inches in length parallel with and three quarters of an inch below the last rib. The structures divided are the same as in nephrotomy. In nephrolithotomy if the quadratus lumborum be so wide as to contract the deep part of the wound, its outer edge may be incised to the extent of half or three quarters of an inch. All bleeding vessels having been twisted, and hæmorrhage quite stayed, the assistant should stretch the edges of the wound widely apart by suitable retractors, and the operator with two pairs of dissecting forceps tears through the perirenal fat. As he approaches the back of the kidney, there will be sometimes noticed a difference in the character of this fat, that immediately in contact with the kidney being finer in texture, and of a delicate primrose colour. If from the presence of the stone there has been inflammation in the tissues around the kidney, this appearance will not be expected, and the whole of the tissue will probably be dense and tough.

When the kidney has been fairly reached, the index-finger should be passed carefully over the whole of the posterior surface of the organ, including its pelvis, and any inequality of surface or increased hardness or resistance at any particular spot should be searched for. During this tactile exploration—indeed, throughout the whole of the examination of the kidney—the abdominal walls of the patient should be well supported by an assistant, or well arranged pillows, so that the kidney should not be pushed forward by the exploring finger. If nothing suggestive of the presence of a stone is thus felt, the kidney should be freely exposed to view by drawing aside the edges of the wound, and a fine needle should be passed into the renal substance. This should be

done in a systematic way, and in several places, if the stone be not at once struck ; introducing the needle here and there, so as to puncture in succession the several calyces of the kidney, in one or other of which experience tells us the stone usually rests. If in the course of the digital exploration some one spot gives more resistance than the rest, this should be first punctured, but otherwise the puncturing should be done in a well-planned manner. On this point I would lay great stress, as it is quite possible to puncture in a dozen places, and yet to miss the calculus.

If by this means the calculus is not detected, the search should not be given up until the fingers of the right hand are passed round the outer edge of the kidney, and the front surface felt over in the same way as the posterior. Whilst doing this, in order to give counter-resistance to the exploring finger, the kidney may be pressed against the psoas muscle, or be squeezed between the finger and thumb. Despite all these means a calculus may escape detection. The kidney becomes very hard and tough under the prolonged irritation of a stone, so that whilst the whole organ feels firmer than natural, any slight difference in the degree of resistance of one part is more difficult to appreciate. This hardness of the renal substance should make the surgeon very suspicious of a calculus, and future experience will, probably, encourage him when this condition is present, not to be satisfied either that no stone exists, or that nephrectomy must be performed, until he has made such an incision into the kidney as will open each of the calyces. Kidney wounds are known to heal readily, and whilst the risk of such an incision would not equal that of nephrectomy, the subsequent condition of the kidney would be preferable to the possession of only one of these organs. Having detected the stone by one or the other methods above described, the overlying part of the kidney should be cut into with a probe-ended straight bistoury ; then with a scooping movement of the finger introduced through the incision, the stone, unless a branched or very large one, can be raised to the surface of the parietal wound on the point of the finger. Or a pair of forceps might be passed into the kidney by the side of the knife, and the stone seized and withdrawn. The finger is, however, much to be preferred, and if the incision is small, as it ought to be, the finger serves the purpose of plugging the renal wound, whilst it lacerates the renal tissue to the necessary extent. By this plan the hæmorrhage is minimized, and the rent made with the finger heals as readily as the cut. When equally convenient to reach the stone, it is much best to open the secreting structure and not the pelvis of the kidney ; the wound in the former heals better than in the latter, and the chance of a urinary fistula is much less.

If the calculus be large and branched it may possibly be requisite to break it up into two or more fragments, and remove the fragments

separately. I have known this done in a suppurating kidney, but it is not probable that a stone will attain such a size as to require breaking before removal, without having in its growth more or less destroyed the kidney structure. A stone 1 oz. in weight has been removed entire from a kidney not markedly enlarged nor the seat of advanced suppuration.*

The after-treatment is very simple ; a drainage-tube should be left in the back part of the wound, and the rest should be closed by sutures. For a time, of course, the whole or greater part of the urine secreted by the injured kidney will be discharged through the loin, but after gradually diminishing this may be expected to cease altogether in from three to four weeks. These loin wounds usually heal very quickly. In nephrotomy, as in nephrolithotomy, some simple dressing, such as lint soaked in terebene and oil, or spread with boracic ointment, should be applied over the wound, and the drainage-tube should pass through this and be covered with a thick pad of absorbent cotton-wool or Lister's gauze, retained in place by a light bandage. The dressings will require frequently changing, as they soon become saturated with the urine ; to keep the bedding dry a large pad of finely-powdered German moss peat should be placed beneath the loin, to receive and absorb the urine, which it readily does.

The dangers of nephrolithotomy are not great, so far as we can judge from present experience. The operation hitherto has, it appears, been uniformly successful, but the number of cases as yet recorded are but few. 1. *Hæmorrhage* from the wounded kidney is not likely to be serious if the plan suggested above be followed. There may, perhaps, be a formidable-looking gash on first dividing the tissue, as in M. Beck's case, but compression with the finger or a sponge will soon check it. 2. *Cellulitis* may follow the operation, but with due precaution as to antiseptic cleanliness and drainage, this will almost certainly be escaped. 3. *Renal abscess* might possibly follow the operation as the result of wounding an organ already long irritated by the presence of a calculus. 4. A renal fistula, or a more superficial purulent fistula may follow, but, though the chances are against it, such a result would be a welcome substitute for the ceaseless pain and chronic invalidism of the condition which it replaces.

NEPHROGRAPHY was first performed by Dr. E. Hahn,† of Berlin ; and the experience of others, including that of the author, had quite prepared them to accept the operation as a distinct step in the treatment of wandering kidney. It is practised in cases of floating, movable, or wandering kidney, in which the organ, besides being mobile, is the seat of frequent severe and spasmodic attacks of pain ; or of more or less continuous suffering.

* Benne'tt May, 'Chemical Transactions.' London, 1883.

† *Centralblatt für Chirurgie*, July 23, 1881.

It consists in fixing the kidney in the loin ; and is performed by exposing the kidney through an incision in the loin, such as that described for nephrotomy or nephrolithotomy. This done, a strong catgut suture should be passed through the renal capsule and the edge of the parietal wound. By tightening and knotting the suture the kidney is fixed back against the lumbar parietes. The wound should be stuffed with carbolyzed gauze or boracic lint, and left to heal by granulations. The operation has been performed several times by Kuster, Esmarch, Bassini, and others, and with almost uniform success. In one case, however, Gilmore found that the suture cut its way out of the kidney and set the viscous once more free ; he afterwards successfully removed the kidney by lumbar nephrectomy. Dr. Robert T. Weir, in fixing the kidney of a woman of thirty-three, cut along the outer edge of the quadratus lumborum, from the last rib to the iliac crest, thus making a vertical instead of an oblique incision, and stretched the perirenal fat to the edge of the external wound, leaving the wound open to fill up by granulations. The patient did well, and was greatly improved by the operation. Hahn also made the vertical incision, and in his first two cases he simply stitched the perirenal adipose tissue to the parietal by eight or ten catgut sutures ; but as in one of them the result was not quite satisfactory, he passed the catgut suture in his third case through the renal capsule. Hahn advises that the kidney should be fixed as low down as possible, so as to obviate the effects of dragging when the patient resumes the upright posture. Experience will have to decide whether there is any necessity for penetrating the kidney envelope. Gilmore's case shows that the same want of success may follow from the kidney suture as from the perirenal one. Indeed, though a suture seems to give an extra chance of success, and adds but little extra risk to the lumbar incision, it is not yet adequately proved that any suture is requisite to attain the end in view.

Of course, no operation should be undertaken for floating kidney until pads and belts and corsets for steadying the kidney, and electricity, massage, and sea baths to increase the tone of the abdominal parietes, have been tried and failed.

NEPHRECTOMY, or the removal of the kidney from the living body, was first performed as a planned operation in the human subject by Gustav Simon, of Heidelberg, in April, 1869.

Blundell,* years ago, did nephrectomy on the rabbit, and proved that in them, at least, the kidney might be removed without causing death. Three different surgeons had preceded Simon in excising the human kidney, but without knowing the nature of the tumours they were removing until the operations had been completed ; the first of these was performed in 1861, the others in 1867 and 1868 ; the

* Blundell 'On the Surgery of the Abdomen.' See Ashwell, 1828.

ventral method was employed in each ; all the patients died. Simon's case was the fourth in which nephrectomy was performed, and the first in which the lumbar method was adopted. The patient fortunately recovered, and from that time the operation has been recognised as a legitimate one.

Lumbar Nephrectomy should be performed in cases in which the removal of a disorganized kidney is advisable after nephrotomy has been tried and failed to improve the condition of the patient : in cases of nephrolithiasis for which nephrolithotomy is not practicable ; in cases of wounded or ruptured kidney which are injured past the probability of functional repair, or in which blood-clots are being forced into the ureter and plug it so as to lead to urinary extravasation into the loin, acute nephritis of the injured organ, and threatened implication of the peritoneum. It should also be selected for cases of renal cystic tumours, and small or medium-sized solid tumours of the kidney, and for some cases of painful movable kidneys which are condemned to removal. Other cases of large tumours, and of wandering kidneys very loosely held by a mesonephron, are better dealt with by the abdominal method. But it must be laid down as a cardinal principle that extirpation of a kidney is only permissible when a patient's life is seriously threatened by disease, and all other remedies have failed, because renal disease is more dangerous in persons with only one kidney.

The suffering caused by a floating kidney ought, therefore, to be quite unrelievable by other means before the patient is exposed to the great risks—operative and prospective—of nephrectomy, and in renal calculus no pains should be spared to procure relief by nephrolithotomy before proceeding to the much graver operation of excision. Rayer and Moseler tabulated fourteen fatal unirenal cases : in seven death was sudden, and due to obstructed ureter and anuria ; and in nine there was renal calculus.

It is probable that future experience will exclude from the category of cases for nephrectomy, tubercular disease, and renal sarcoma in children, as well as cancer at any period of life. In cancerous tumours it is not likely that life can be much prolonged. In tuberculosis, which when it affects the genito urinary tract, rarely confines itself to one organ, much temporary relief may be given by nephrotomy ; but nephrectomy is only advisable, and safe from the special danger of anuria, in very exceptional instances. Here all will depend upon the character of the urine secreted by the other kidney, a point most difficult to determine. The best guides are (1) the normal character of the urine as to absolute quantity and percentage of the excreted solids ; the excretion of urea being the chiefest (2) The absence of albumen over and above what is explained by the pus in the urine. (3) The urine should have an acid reaction. (4) The

absence of vomiting; vomiting, as pointed out by Dr. Barlow, being often a distressing symptom when both kidneys are diseased. Mr. Davy informs me that the last application of his rectal lever has been the compression of one ureter to ascertain the condition of the excretion of the opposite kidney. Methods of catheterizing the ureter have been proposed, but are not of any practical utility.

In speaking of tuberculosis of the kidney a distinction ought to be made between it and strumous pyelitis or pyonephrosis. In the latter there is less tendency for the disease to spread along the ureter and affect more than one part of the genito-urinary organs and the disease chiefly affects the calyces of the kidney, whereas tubercle commences in the cortex and passes downwards.

The advantages of lumbar operation are twofold: (1) the peritoneum is not opened, and (2) the wound permits of excellent drainage. It is performed most easily by the transverse, or slightly oblique incision, as in nephrotomy, and made somewhat nearer the last rib than in lumbar colotomy; with this should be conjoined a second incision, running vertically downwards from the first, and starting from it about one inch in front of its posterior extremity. In making the first incision, which should be about four and a half inches in length, the operator must not go nearer than half an inch of the twelfth rib, for fear of wounding the pleura, which sometimes descends a little below it. The second incision may be left until the kidney has been reached and explored, and it can then be made by cutting from within outwards with a probe-ended bistoury, steadied by the index-finger of the left hand. One great advantage of the vertical incision is the increased facility it affords for passing the ligatures around the pedicle. Other incisions have, however, been employed. Simon originally adopted the vertical; Klineberger a curved incision, having its convexity upwards and outwards; and several surgeons have used the ordinary lumbar colotomy incision alone. Lucas recommends an oblique incision, half an inch below and parallel with the last rib,* and a vertical incision along the outer edge of the quadratus lumborum, commencing at the upper edge of the last rib, and extending to the iliac crest,^o but the upper end of such an incision is in dangerous proximity to the pleura, which would in some subjects be wounded by it.

The kidney being reached, the next step is to separate it from its surroundings. When no perirenal inflammation has existed, the colon, peritoneum and fatty tissue will easily be detached from their connection with the kidney by the index-finger of one hand, worked close against the capsule of the organ. It will generally, I think, be found that even when no inflammation has occurred, some of the renal capsule

* *British Med. Journal*, Sept. 29, 1883, p. 615. An admirable digest of the surgical diseases of the kidney

will be torn off and left behind ; in other cases, as when the operation is performed for calculous or scrofulous pyonephrosis, and as a subsequent proceeding to nephrotomy, the kidney should be enucleated from its thickened and adherent capsule, and the capsule left behind with the pedicle.

The next step is to pass a double ligature of platted silk through the pedicle, between the ureter and the vessels. This is done by means of an aneurism needle, fixed in a long handle, whilst the kidney is dragged well up into the wound by the left hand of the operator, one of the fingers of which can at the same time be acting as a guide for the needle. The needle passed and withdrawn, the ligature silk should be divided, and one half of it should be tied tightly around the vessels and the other half around the ureter. In doing this the ligatures should be pressed well inwards towards the front of the spine, so as to leave plenty of room between them and the hilus for dividing the pedicle. The kidney should now be drawn quite out of the wound, a proceeding which is sometimes very difficult, but which will be greatly facilitated by dragging the lower ribs forcibly upwards with the fingers of the left hand dipped into the wound. Another ligature should be thrown round the whole of the pedicle and securely and tightly tied before cutting the kidney free, which is now safely done by snipping through the ureter and vessels with a pair of blunt-ended scissors.

Any bleeding points should at once be seized and ligatured or twisted ; and it is very probable that when the wound comes to be fairly looked into, some moderate sized vessel will be found bleeding. Some aberrant branch of the renal ; or one of the inferior supra-renal arteries, or the branch to the upper end of the ureter, or to the connective-tissue of the loin, all branches from the renal trunk, or one of the parietal branches of the aorta, may require control.

All the ligatures should be cut off short, and the pedicle dropped into the wound. A very large drainage-tube should be fixed in the wound, the edges brought together with waxed silk or fishing-gut sutures, and the form of dressing commonly employed for fresh wounds by the particular operator should be applied. The patient should be kept in the recumbent position until healing is complete. Healing is, as a rule, rapid, though the drainage track will require from three to four weeks to close perfectly, and it is well that during all this time complete quietude should be observed, and great care given to the diet, so that the other kidney may not be irritated by too great concentration of urine secreted by it.

Some surgeons attach importance to the separate ligature of the artery, vein, and ureter ; others again think it is unnecessary to ligature the ureter ; and others that the ureter had best be sutured to the external wound.

The most important thing, however, is to securely control the

vessels without putting too great a strain upon them in doing so. To attempt in all cases to get the kidney on to the surface before ligaturing the vessels would be to run a great risk of lacerating the coats of the artery or vein beyond the point at which it is possible to apply the ligature, and the advantage of leaving the ureter untied has yet to be proved. In no case is it advisable to excise the last rib, and where the costo-iliac space is very narrow some other form of operation, not the lumbar, should be adopted.

The dangers of the lumbar operation are that (1) the peritoneum or the colon may be torn open; (2) too great strain on the vessels of the pedicle may cause their laceration, or the ligatures may slip after the kidney has been cut off; (3) the kidney may be broken in the manipulations for separating or withdrawing it. All these accidents have occurred, but they are not necessarily fatal. The laceration of the kidney requires the control of hæmorrhage by pressure, and by hastening the completion of the removal; a great safeguard against hæmorrhage from laceration is the application of the double ligature before attempting to withdraw the kidney.

If the ligatures have slipped or fail to control the vessels of the pedicle; or if troublesome hæmorrhage from any source arises, it will be best managed by the application of one of Wells's large ovariectomy forceps, which should be left in the wound, and will in addition act very well instead of a drainage-tube. If the colon be torn, the rent should be closed by suture; if the peritoneum is opened, it may be either sutured or left, as without stitches the surfaces will fall together and quickly adhere. In Mr. Cowper's case of *scrophulous pyelitis* the hole in the peritoneum was sutured, but before this was done pus from the kidney had contaminated the inner surface of the peritoneum; yet the patient rapidly recovered, and the operation, which lasted two and a half hours, was throughout all but bloodless.

Abdominal nephrectomy should be performed in cases unsuited to the lumbar method. They have been already specified. The best incision is that which many of the old surgeons employed in all abdominal sections, and which Langenbeck, of Berlin, has recommended and practised in at least two successful cases of nephrectomy, namely, along the outer border of the rectus abdominis on the side of the kidney to be removed. The midpoint of the incision will probably be the umbilicus, but this must entirely depend upon the size and outline of the tumour.

All bleeding, which is sometimes considerable in this incision, being stopped, and the peritoneal cavity opened, the state of the opposite kidney can be ascertained, if need be, by digital examination. The intestines should be kept aside from off the surface of the kidney to be removed by means of a large flat sponge introduced into the abdo-

* 'Transactions of the International Congress,' 1881, p. 278.

men. The outer layer of the mesocolon should then be opened sufficiently to allow of the introduction of two or three fingers behind the peritoneum and into the fat in front of the kidney : the fingers should then gently tease their way towards the renal vessels, around which separately *artery first and then the vein*—ligatures should be secured. The ureter should then be seized by two pairs of ovariectomy forceps and divided between them. Langenbeck's object in selecting this incision was to divide the outer layer of the mesocolon, and so avoid risk of hæmorrhage ; this is more particularly necessary on the right side, since the inner layer of the mesocolon covers the vessel passing to the ascending colon. The enucleation of the tumour should next be proceeded with ; lastly, the vessels should be divided outside the ligatures, and the mass removed from the body.

The ureter should now be tied with ligature silk, like the vessels ; or the upper end can be turned out through an opening specially made in the loin, and there stitched to the external wound. The supposed advantage of bringing out the end of the ureter is that it allows of the escape of any pus or scrofulous material it contains, and of the antiseptic irrigation of the canal. The advantage of this is doubtful, except perhaps in scrofulous pyonephrosis : whilst the plan adopted by Mr. Knowsley Thornton, of fixing the cut end of the ureter out of the abdominal wound, seems to invite the future occurrence of intestinal obstruction.

The operation in abdominal nephrectomy is completed like ovariectomy, and the subsequent treatment is the same. The dangers of the operation will appear from the following comparison between the lumbar and abdominal methods. Median laparotomy has been several times employed, but is not so good as the above. From an examination of one hundred cases of removal of the kidney collected by Dr. Robert P. Harris, the following facts come out. Of forty-two fatal cases the cause of death was as follows. The cases are arranged according to the nature of the operation :

	<i>Abdominal Nephrectomy.</i>	<i>Lumbar Nephrectomy.</i>
Suppuration -	1	0
Peritonitis -	10 (4 being septic)	2
Hæmorrhage -	4	1
Cræmia -	1	5
Shock -	4	7
Infarction -	2	0
Pyæmia -	1	2
Vomiting -	0	2
	—	—
Total -	23	19

Thus it appears that peritonitis, hæmorrhage, pulmonary embolism, pyæmia, and exhaustion from suppuration are more frequent causes of death after abdominal nephrectomy than after lumbar in the proportion of eighteen to five, whilst the number of deaths from uræmia, 'vomiting' and 'shock,' after lumbar nephrectomy, as compared with abdominal, is fourteen to five. The greater mortality of lumbar operation from uræmia and shock is due to the fact that in several of the lumbar cases both kidneys proved to be diseased at the time of operation; that in one case the last rib had been removed, and the pleural cavity laid open; in another the patient was reduced by cancer of the uterus; and others of the patients were in an unfit state for any surgical operation of importance.

The abdominal operation, therefore, seems to be a much more formidable affair for the patient; and the fatality from causes directly traceable to the operation, and apart from the state of health of the patient, much higher.

Looked at from the point of view of the totals, the same conclusion is arrived at, but the difference is not so striking. Thus out of the hundred cases, the nature and result of the operation were recorded in ninety-six. Of these forty-six were abdominal nephrectomies, of which twenty-three recovered and twenty-three died. Fifty were lumbar nephrectomies, of which nineteen died and twenty-seven recovered.

A good deal as to result depends upon the nature of the disease for which the operation is performed, but less than might be *a priori* expected. Of eighteen operations for malignant disease, nine died; and of sixteen for floating kidneys, six died. Of the sixteen cases of floating kidneys, fourteen were submitted to abdominal operation, and six died, two were treated by the lumbar method, and both recovered. Of seven lumbar operations for fistulæ of ureter, six recovered and one died. The conclusion pointed out by these figures is that though in many cases from size of tumour the abdominal operation is easier, and therefore safer, the lumbar method is, as a rule, much safer, and to be preferred in all cases where the kidney is not much enlarged, where the tumour can be reduced by puncture, and when the loin-space is not too much contracted.

Kroner ('Archiv für Gynäkologie') collected and analyzed forty-one cases of nephrectomy. In twenty-one the abdominal operation was performed, with fourteen deaths; and in twenty the lumbar operation, with five deaths; but in three others the result is unstated. From these cases Kroner concludes that the higher mortality of the abdominal operation is not owing to the greater danger of it, but is due to the fact that these cases include those in which the diagnosis was uncertain, and the operation was therefore commenced tentatively. Kroner's cases are included in Harris's list, but for a good abstract of

Kroner's conclusions the reader may refer to the *Medical Times and Gazette*, October 22, 1881.

Lateral retroperitoneal nephrectomy.—Mr. Thornton has suggested a method which may be described as the lateral retroperitoneal operation. It consists in making an incision parallel with the linea semilunaris, but further out than it, and then reaching the kidney by raising the colon and peritoneum.

The plan would probably answer very well for certain tumour cases, and Mr. Thornton has employed it successfully in a case in which the ureter of a healthy kidney had been divided in ovariectomy. The advantage claimed for Langenbeck's and the lateral retroperitoneal methods is that they enable the vessels to be enucleated and tied before the main enucleation is performed, and that thereby hæmorrhage is saved.

The curved incision used for ligaturing the common iliacs and aorta might be substituted for the lateral method of Thornton.

PLATE LXX.

OPERATIVE SURGERY OF THE ANUS AND RECTUM

All the figures in this plate represent the rectum in vertical section, and the course of a fistula

Fig. 1.—*Blind internal fistula*.—*a, b*, Fistula; *a*, internal orifice communicating with the interior of the bowel, *d*; *b*, blind end of the fistula; *c*, anus; *f*, section of tissues between the fistula and the bowel.

Fig. 2.—*Complete simple fistula*. *a, b', b*, Fistulous tract opening at *a*, in the intestine, *d*, and at *b*, near the anus *c*; *f*, section of intervening tissues.

Fig. 3.—*Blind external fistula*. *a*, External orifice of fistula, *b*, fistula and off-shoots; *d*, intestine; *c*, anus.

Figs. 4 and 6.—Incision.—Ordinary Method.

Fig. 4.—*First step of the operation*.—*c*, A grooved director is passed through the fistula, *a, b*: the index-finger, *d*, of the operator catches the end of the instrument in the intestine at the inner end of the fistula to hook it outside the anus.

Fig. 6.—*Second step of the operation.—Incision*. The end of the director, *g*, has been brought out, *a, b*, the fistula; *e*, the blade of the bistoury lodged in the groove of the director, *g, d*; this blade travelling along the director will divide the bridge of tissues, *f*.

Figs. 5 and 8.—Desault's method.

Fig. 5.—A grooved director, *a, b, c*, passed through the fistula is caught by an instrument, *d*, introduced into the intestine. A bistoury, *e*, is started in the groove of the director to divide the bridge of tissues, *f*.

Fig. 8.—*The same operation*.—The bistoury, *e*, meets the instrument, *d'*. These two instruments will be drawn out together to divide the soft parts in the angle made by the instruments. *c'*, the grooved director.

Fig. 7.—*Ligature*.—A thread of silk introduced into the fistula, *b, a* reaches the intestine, *d*, and passing out by the anus, includes in a loop, *c, a, c'*, the organic bridge, *f*.

FISTULA IN ANO. OPERATIONS.

Fistula in ano is of several varieties; some *complete* (Fig. 2), consisting of a course communicating with the intestine by an *internal orifice*, and in the neighbourhood of the anus by an *external orifice*.

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



Fig 5



Fig 6



Fig 7

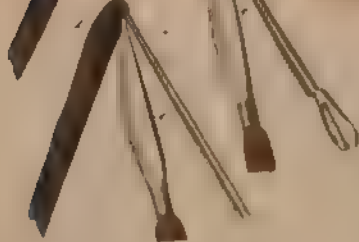


Fig 8





The others, *incomplete* or *blind*, have but one opening, their other end being a *cul-de-sac*. The *blind external* fistula has an opening on the exterior only, the track does not communicate with the bowel. The *blind internal* fistula opens into the rectum, but not on to the exterior. Fistulæ are said to be *complicated* when their course branches off into sinuses, and they are often accompanied by much induration of the surrounding tissues. Such complications may require modifications in the operation; but the chief point to be borne in mind is to hunt out and open up all offshoots, and to freely incise indurated walls.

To learn the nature and extent of a fistula, it is necessary to explore with a blunt pointed flexible probe introduced by one of the openings, and it is only after careful examination in this way—occasionally once or twice repeated—that a true knowledge of the condition of the parts can be arrived at.

It is easy enough to find the external orifice; it is generally found to one side of the anus, rarely in front of, or behind it. The opening is not always solitary, sometimes the surface of the integument is riddled by holes, like a colander. These multiple and branched sinuses may undermine the skin through a great extent, but they generally open into the bowel by a single fistula. The internal opening is found with greater difficulty. Generally it is found near the anus, just above the internal sphincter.

The surgeon having oiled his left index-finger, introduces it into the rectum, and there discovers either a hard ridge, a depression, or some irregularity of the mucous membrane in which is situated the internal orifice. Towards this spot the probe must be directed, and often it travels on to the end of the finger most readily. Fig 4 shows this exploratory manœuvre. The surgeon's finger, *d*, is introduced into the rectum, a grooved director, *c*, enters by the external orifice, *b*, passes along the fistula, and impinges by the opening, *a*, on the pulp of the finger, *d*. Important evidence of the presence of a fistula in ano is the thickening about the anus due to chronic inflammatory deposit; before searching for an opening it is well to feel carefully around the anus for the hard and rigid course of the burrow. From the time of Hippocrates practisers of the healing art have endeavoured to cure fistulæ in ano by canterization and by injection of caustic or irritant fluids; but such methods generally end in failure and disappointment—occasionally in inflammation and hæmorrhage.

Ligature.—For surgeons or patients who have an antipathy to the knife in the treatment of fistulæ in ano, a ligature of silk, wire, or hemp has been employed. This method of treatment is unattended by loss of blood, and in uncomplicated cases may be successful, but it is often unsuccessful, and the pain is unendurable; but where there are branching sinuses and much induration of the parts nothing short of free incision and removal of tissue is of any service. For ligature

with wire a small canula is first introduced by the fistula, and the wire is passed through it into the rectum and drawn out through the anus; the canula is then withdrawn and the knot tied. Five or six weeks may be required for the ligature to cut its way out. Much pain is experienced on the knot being from time to time tightened up, and, perhaps, after all, the surgeon is forced to complete the tedious cure by the bistoury. Free incision is evidently to be preferred to such half measures.

Mr. Reeves's operation for rectal fistula.—After dividing the fistula the floor and all parts of the wound needing it are pared, and when projecting flaps of skin are removed, and the entire surface is made raw, deep sutures are passed, as in the operation for ruptured perineum, the upper one being passed first. This plan is very serviceable in some fistulæ, i.e., those not running high up in the bowel, and those not complicated with much burrowing and secondary fistulæ. Its advantages are, 1. Preservation of sphincteric action; 2. Rapid union of the wound; 3. The saving of much pain and time to the patient through doing away with subsequent painful dressings.

Incision—A purgative should be administered on the evening before the day of operation, and an enema should be administered in the morning, so that there may be but a small chance of evacuation taking place upon the operating-table. The instruments that will be required will be probes, a grooved steel director, a scalpel, curved bistoury, straight blunt-pointed bistoury, a pair of spring scissors to cut off angles of thickened tissue, and cotton-wool for the after-dressing.

The patient should be placed in the lithotomy position, the legs being held by assistants.

Ordinary method (Figs. 4 and 6).—The grooved steel director having been introduced through the fistula, and having been caught by the pulp of the index-finger introduced into the rectum (Fig. 4), is thus hooked down out of the anus, and the end is drawn out over the opposite buttock (Fig. 6). The curved bistoury travelling down the groove effects the section of the intervening tissues.

The straight bistoury will be then found of great use in dividing hard and thickened bands and tissues generally.

Figs. 5 and 8 show Desault's method of operating on fistulæ which open high up into the rectum; but with a finger of average length such modifications as he suggests are quite superfluous; the secret of success in all operations for fistula lying in free and thorough divisions of sphincter, sinuses, and indurated tissues, and the removal of all skin and tissue which will interfere with the dressing. It is never necessary to stay to tie twigs of the inferior hæmorrhoidal vessels; all bleeding will cease when the wound is lightly filled with fine cotton-wool, and when the thighs are brought down and approximated.

FISSURE OF THE ANUS.

By *fissure of the anus* one means the narrow and elongated painful ulcer which is found between the muco-cutaneous folds of the lower end of the rectum. If the fissure is merely a superficial chaf at the exterior of the anus it may be cured by application of nitrate of silver, or by a forcible dilatation of the anus; but when it is of greater extent, and is accompanied by painful spasms of sphincter, these means may be insufficient, and more severe treatment is necessary.

Dilatation by sponge tents introduced into the rectum has been advised. The introduction of the first tents is very painful, but the fourth or fifth creates much less trouble. M. Vidal (de Cassis) speaks highly of tents prepared with mercurial ointment and belladonna.

It has been advised to commence the gradual dilatation with full-sized tents, so that the painful treatment may be rendered as short as possible, the sphincter being quickly and thoroughly stretched. The tent may be left in a day or two; and after its removal an enema may be given. Dilatation may be associated with cauterization.

M. Recamier's treatment.—In 1838 Recamier showed the possibility of curing fissures by *extension and dilatation*.

The patient having been placed upon his side, and brought to the edge of the bed, the legs are flexed upon the thighs and the thighs upon the trunk. The surgeon's right index and middle fingers having been smeared with ointment, are introduced into the anus, first the index, then the middle finger, and by this means the anus is well and steadily dilated. The pain is acute, but of short duration, and Recamier did not find it necessary to administer a narcotic. To make the dilatation more complete, Recamier used often to introduce the left index-finger as well as the two mentioned (*Journal des Connaissances Médico-Chirurgicales*, 1852). This gradual dilatation is unattended by danger, and is certainly to be preferred to M. Velpeau's method of *excision*. Indeed, twice in six cases did excision fail in M. Velpeau's hands.

Boyer's method of *division of the sphincter* is applicable to all fissures which do not get well under other treatment: by its means all spasm and pain cease, and the fissure granulates to the surface.

The patient having been prepared for the operation (as for the operation for fistula), is brought to the edge of the bed, and a straight bistoury with a blunt end is laid flat upon the left index-finger and introduced into the rectum. The edge is then turned towards the fissure, and the sphincter incised as the knife is withdrawn. A pyramidal wound results, the apex being above, the base at the anus. It is well to let the incision through the fissure be free. A light dressing of cotton-wool is applied to the wound; the bowels are kept

from acting for three days, and at the end of five or six weeks all is soundly healed.

Night but painful ulcers, hidden beneath the anal folds, may be cured by drawing the edge of the knife gently down their course, without dividing the sphincter.

PLATE LXXI.

CONTINUATION OF OPERATIONS UPON THE RECTUM AND ANUS.

Fig. 1.—*Removal of piles.*—The piles are held by ligatures at *a* and *b*, and are removed by scissors, *c*, curved on the flat; an ordinary vulsellum will act as well as, or better than, a ligature in holding the tumour.

Fig. 2.—*Excision of redundant folds of skin about the anus.*—A fold of skin, *a*, held by the forceps, is excised by the scissors, *b*.

Fig. 3.—*Imperforate anus.*—Removal of small flaps of skin to establish an outlet.

HEMORRHOIDAL TUMOURS, OR PILES.

Piles should only be operated on when, from their volume, they obstruct the fecal evacuations; when they are inflamed or tender; or when, from the loss of blood which they occasion, the patient is becoming weak; or when they cause straining at stool and prolapse of the rectum.

Incision, cauterization, ligature, excision and crushing comprise the methods of operating.

Incision is only suited for external piles. The incision can be made with a bistoury or lancet, and the clot turned out, or the whole pile may be cut off with the scissors.

Cauterization is only employed to prevent bleeding after excision. But strong nitric acid may be applied with advantage to a general and relaxed condition of the mucous lining of the rectum.

Treatment by ligature.—For this process the tumour must be drawn well out of the rectum by a vulsellum, and there held by an assistant. The blade of spring scissors, passed up between the broad root of the pile and the wall of the rectum on the side to which it is attached, incises the mucous membrane, and diminishes the amount of tissue to be enclosed in the ligature. As the hemorrhoidal vessels pass vertically downwards into the pile, there is but little or no danger of their being divided in the cut. The ends of the ligatures, which should be of strong hemp, well waxed, are left out of the rectum. The tumours slough off in about ten days. Should the mass of prolapsed membrane

Pl 71

Fig 1

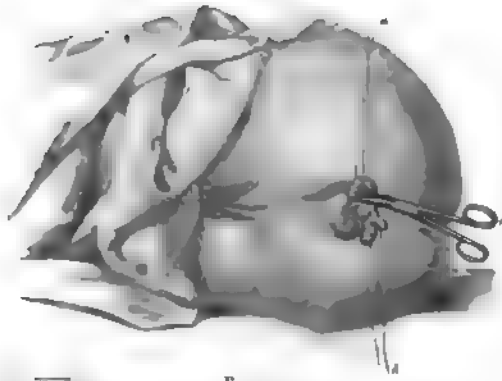


Fig 2

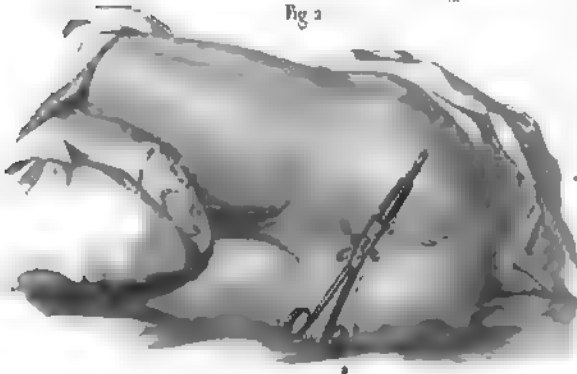
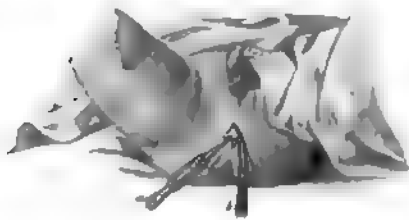


Fig 3



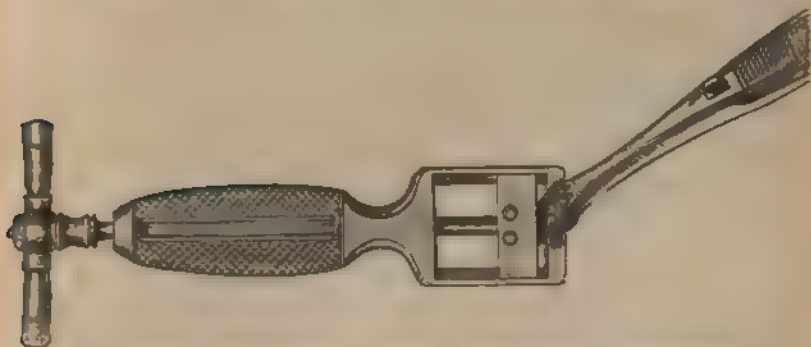
J B Baillière et Fils Éditeurs
Paris

appear as a large pad extending in a circular manner around the bowel, it will be necessary to tie it in separate portions. Before tying the ligature the pile must be drawn well out and away from the wall of the rectum, and by the aid of the tips of the index-fingers the noose must be pushed high up round the pedicle. No dressing other than by cotton-wool will be required. An opium suppository may be administered at the end of the operation if it is thought desirable. Action of the bowels should be prevented for three or four days, lest hæmorrhage should occur.

Mr. Henry Smith has identified himself with the treatment of internal piles by the clamp and the actual cautery. An incision is made as for ligation, the clamp is applied, and the tissue cut off to a level with the clamp; actual cautery is then applied to the stump by means of the thermo-cautery.

Pollock's operation. This operation consists in crushing the pedicle of the hæmorrhoidal mass and so damaging the trunks of the vessels that no hæmorrhage can take place.

The instrument employed is a form of clamp (*vide diagram*).



The pile is drawn into the clamp by strong-toothed forceps without any previous section of the mucous membrane, and the instrument is then forcibly closed by the screw movement to crush all the tissues enclosed. The pedicle is held in the grasp of the instrument for about a minute, and then released after first cutting off with the curved scissors all superabundant tissue.

If any little vessel bleeds after its removal it may be twisted to save time, but this is rarely requisite.

If there should have been any degree of prolapse in connection with hæmorrhoids, removal of a portion of integument is an advantage. Should any prominent points of skin be evident, after the removal of the hæmorrhoids, it is well to snip them off. If left untouched they become cedematous, and may be a source of discomfort for some days.

The advantages of this operation appear to be. (1) its simplicity;

(2) the much greater freedom from pain than is usually experienced after the application of ligature, or actual cautery, (3) the results are most satisfactory, and have never been followed by secondary hæmorrhage.

Ignipuncture for internal piles.—Some years ago Mr. Reeves introduced this method into practice. It is well adapted to moderate cases of this disease, and these form the large majority. The fine point of Paquelin's cautery at a dull red heat is inserted with a rotary motion into the centre of each pile, and towards its point of attachment, and is withdrawn with a rotating movement. Large piles need two or three punctures. Abraded mucous membrane is lightly touched with the cautery, and the gut being oiled, a $\frac{1}{4}$ grain morphia suppository is passed, and the bowels kept confined for three days. The piles gradually shrivel up and disappear, and in a week patients may be discharged. Solid piles, *i.e.*, those which have undergone fibroid induration, must be removed and not ignipunctured.

POLYPI OF RECTUM.

Polypi are treated as internal or external piles, according to their situation.

CANCER OF RECTUM—ANATOMY.

The following data have been given by Lisfranc: The antero-posterior diameter of the female perineum is rather more than an inch; in both sexes the distance from the anus to the tip of the coccyx is rather more than an inch and a half.

In the female the front of the rectum lies in close proximity to the vagina, and higher up it is separated from the uterus by a *cul-de-sac* of peritoneum. This *cul-de-sac* also comes down between the vagina and the rectum. Posteriorly the rectum lies upon the sacrum, and having reached the tip of the coccyx, it turns to end at the anus. It should be remembered that the rectum does not take the straight course which its name seems to imply, but curves laterally as well as in the antero-posterior direction. In introducing a long enema tube no force must be used.

The upper part of the rectum is supplied by the superior hæmorrhoidal arteries, the terminal branches of the inferior mesenteric. The next part is supplied by branches of the anterior trunk of the internal iliac. The lowest part is supplied by the inferior hæmorrhoidal branches of the internal pudic, and by twigs from the superficial and transverse perineal.

OPERATIVE SURGERY.

Lisfranc's operation of excision.—The patient must be placed in the lithotomy position upon his side, and brought over to the edge of the

bed or table. The thighs are half-flexed upon the abdomen, and there fixed by assistants. One of these assistants stretches the integument around the anus, whilst the other hands the instruments to the surgeon, who makes, with a sharp bistoury, two bold semicircular sweeps around the anus. The incisions meet in front of and behind the anus. If malignant growths or ulcerations are found in the integument the incisions must be kept well to their outside. The skin is then freely dissected up by directing the bistoury towards the rectum. The left index finger is then introduced into the bowel, and the whole mass is drawn firmly down through the wound. When the malignant disease is limited to the mucous membrane, and at the same time does not extend far up the bowel, the wall of the rectum may be turned almost inside out, and the morbid growth shaved off or removed by curved scissors. But where, as is too often the case, the disease has spread for some inches up the bowel, and has invaded the external coat, the operation just described would be of no use; a more complicated one is required. The first part of the operation must be performed as before, and, in addition, the fibrous tissue around the rectum must be divided by a strong pair of scissors directed up into the pelvis parallel to the axis of the rectum. This incision must be kept as much as possible to the back of the bowel, so that the peritoneum which slopes downwards and forwards into the sides of the bladder may not be wounded. The incision must, however, pass well beyond the limits of the disease. The bleeding may be checked by pausing for a few moments, and stuffing the wound with sponges soaked in ice-cold water. After this, one can obtain a good idea of the extent of the disease, and the bleeding is but slight. The lower end of the rectum can be drawn well out of the wound, and there held by a strong vulsellum. When the operation is to be performed upon a female, the fingers of an assistant should be introduced into the vagina to push down the recto vaginal wall; and in this region the dissection must be conducted with the greatest delicacy. If the subject be a male, a staff should be passed into the bladder to demonstrate the course of the urethra, and to save it from injury when the front of the rectum is being dissected. The assistant who holds this staff should warn the operator each time the bistoury comes near it. And from time to time the surgeon himself should take hold of the staff to reassure himself of the relations of the parts.

After the diseased part has been removed, a careful exploration by means of the finger will be necessary. A large drainage tube may be left in the rectum. With women it may be necessary to draw off the urine, so that the wound may not be irritated during micturition.

Remarks.—M. Vidal has collected statistics of this operation, which give reflections that must not be lightly passed over.

*The operation can rarely remove all the disease, then it will do

harm and hasten death. Out of nine cases Lisfranc confesses to have lost three; Velpeau lost three out of six patients operated on. Only two of M. Velpeau's were completely cured. The sixth could not hold his feces. Here is, then, an operation which by no means always frees the patient of his disease, which may possibly give an imperfect relief, and which may kill in twelve hours.

'But whereas patients with cancer of the rectum are inevitably destined to die of the disease, and as it is possible that the operation may greatly improve their condition, the surgeon may in some cases feel justified in trying it.'^e

According to M. Vidal, the cancer in the form of small tumours is of a most malignant type, and more than likely to return, and if it spreads any distance up the rectum it is probably beyond the reach of the knife. In the male it is very difficult to separate the rectum from the prostate; and the prostate from its colour and consistence may well be confounded with the scirrhus. In the female the operation should never be attempted when the finger introduced into the vagina finds the partition invaded.

PLUGGING THE RECTUM.

Severe hæmorrhage, after operations such as we have just described, may render this process necessary. A *cul-de-sac* of strong linen may be introduced into the rectum by the finger, and then packed tightly with small pieces of sponge, or of dry lint.

FOREIGN BODIES IN THE RECTUM.

Much will depend upon the nature of the material introduced as to what process be adopted. If the body be angular the mucous membrane must be well protected by the finger, and pressed out of the way, as the material is withdrawn. Or a speculum may be inserted, and the body withdrawn through it. Section of the sphincter might be necessary.

STRUCTURE OF THE ANUS AND RECTUM.

This affection may be dealt with by dilatation or by incision.

Dilatation.--Desault dilated the rectum with greased tents, gradually increasing the size. Gum elastic bougies might be employed in the same conditions.

M. Costollat introduced a small linen bag by the aid of a bougie, and then stuffed it with cotton-wool. A good means of dilatation is afforded by Todd's double bladed dilator. A thin capsule of india rubber covers the blades, which are gradually separated by a screw. The india-rubber cap prevents the mucous membrane being

^e Vidal (de Cassis), 'Traité de Pathologie externe,' vol. iv., 3rd ed. Paris, 1851. J. Baillière.

injured when the blades are approximated previous to the withdrawal of the instrument from the rectum.

Incision is specially applicable to fibrous stricture where no malignant disease exists. It is effected by a long blunt-ended bistoury introduced flat on the finger. When the stricture has been entered and passed, the edge is turned to the stricture and the incision is performed as the instrument is withdrawn. The nicks into the stricture should be made at the back and sides of the bowel, as the vagina, or bladder, lies close to the front. Dilatation may afterwards be indicated.

PROLAPSE OF THE RECTUM.

Sometimes the mucous membrane, but loosely connected to the other tunics of the rectum, descends externally for an inch or so. Sometimes the prolapsed part consists of the whole thickness of the bowel with some peritoneum.

For the cure of this condition several operations may be performed — reduction, excision, cauterization, and excision of folds at the anus. In children no active treatment of the bowel itself is required, as the prolapse is probably due to calculus, worms, phimosia, or to some disturbing element. The child so affected should never be allowed to pass his motions *sitting*. Should the prolapse be due to a general feeble condition, all that will be required is reduction, and an occasional astringent enema; the affection will disappear with the return of health. The rectal tumour should be washed and then oiled. Gentle compression with the fingers, applied in the centre of the mass, so as to cause diminution of bulk, will be followed by ascent of the prolapsed part. The thighs should then be fixed together, and a perineal bandage applied.

In the adult, the prolapsed mucous membrane may be removed by treatment such as that recommended above for internal piles.

Dupuytren recommended excision of some of the muco-cutaneous folds at the anus, so that the cicatrization which follows would cause a permanent narrowing of the opening. Actual cautery and the application of nitric acid have been employed with good results.

IMPERFORATE ANUS.

This abnormal condition may exist in the newly-born, and the septum may be superficial or deep. If the former, it is composed of skin. This condition is readily distinguished by the violet tint of the skin, and by the bulging at the spot when the infant cries. On plunging a bistoury into the swelling a flow of meconium escapes. A crucial incision is then made in the septum, and the corners are cut off by scissors. Pieces of oiled lint are then inserted, and are kept there until cicatrization has advanced (Plate LXXI, Fig. 3).

Should the septum be higher up, it may not be possible to reach it satisfactorily with the knife. Should it be beyond reach, an artificial anus must be made. This high imperforation may be diagnosed by the absence of evacuation of meconium, by the general symptoms and discomfort of the unhappy infant, and by constant efforts at vomiting. The confirmation is obtained by a flexible bougie introduced into the rectum, meeting the obstruction.

Should the septum be within reach, the treatment by the guarded scalpel and by dilatation is indicated and is easily performed. Meconium at once escapes. A piece of oiled lint may then be passed through the opening.

Malgaigne gained easier access to the partition by dividing the sphincters of the anus.

In a case under the care of the author the anus was formed; but a septum *more than an inch* in thickness existed between the anus and the bowel. A fine trocar and canula were cautiously introduced, with an aspirator attached. As soon as the bowel was reached a small quantity of meconium was at once aspirated from the canula, and a sharp-pointed straight bistoury was then carried along the canula, to enlarge the opening to a sufficient extent by means of a crucial incision.

ABNORMAL ANUS.

The inferior extremity of the rectum may be wanting, and the bowel may open into the bladder, urethra, or may end in any part of the pelvis. When the rectum opens into the vagina, two methods of treatment have been proposed. The first is the division of the perineum and the partition up to the abnormal anus. A tube is placed in the bottom of the wound, and the edges united in front of the tube, so that the tube continues the course of the bowel. The other operation consists in puncturing the bowel from the proper site of the anus, and treating the abnormal anus like a recto-vaginal fistula. Should there be absence of the lower end of the rectum, a dissection may be attempted from the perineum with the view of finding the blind end. Should this process fail, an artificial anus would be necessitated, and would be performed as described a few pages back. Generally the rectum ends in a *cul-de-sac*, filled with meconium. The knife must be directed towards this pouch from the perineum, layer by layer. Should the operator be fortunate enough to meet with the pouch, the treatment is simple enough.

Should the rectum open into the bladder one will operate as for imperforate rectum, directing the knife in the dissection well up the front of the sacrum, so as to avoid injuring the bladder, or, in the female, the vagina.

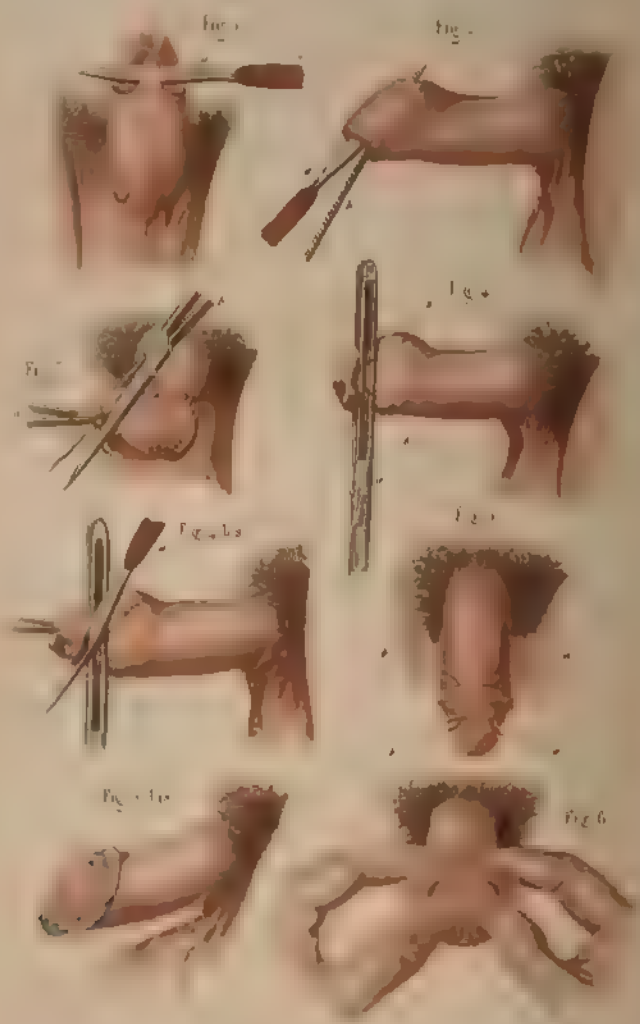


PLATE LXXII.

OPERATIONS PERFORMED UPON THE PENIS.

Fig. 1.—*Division of the frænum.*—A bistoury, *a*, transfixes the frænum to divide it from below upwards.

Fig. 2.—*Phimosis*—A grooved director, *b*, is inserted between the glans and the prepuce; a bistoury, *a*, slid along the groove, pierces the prepuce and divides it from behind forwards.

Fig. 3. The operator seizes the flaps with the forceps, *a*, and cuts them off with the scissors, *b*.

Fig. 4.—*Circumcision.*—*First step.*—The prepuce is drawn forward from the glans and fixed in the grip of the fenestrated forceps, *a*; sutures, *b, b*, are passed through the fenestræ and through the prepuce.

Fig. 4, *bis.*—*Second step.*—Amputation of the prepuce in front of the glans by the bistoury, *a*.

Fig. 5. —The prepuce released, the retraction of the skin is greater than that of the mucous membrane: *a, a, b, b*, sutures.

Fig. 5, *bis.*—Skin brought to the mucous membrane by a suture, *a*.

Fig. 6.—*Operation for paraphimosis.*—*Reduction.*

DIVISION OF THE FRÆNUM (Fig. 1).

The operation may be performed with the scissors or bistoury. An assistant holds the glans; the operator pulls forward the fold of skin containing the band. A snip of the scissors, or a stroke of the bistoury which has transfixed the frænum, completes the operation. The best dressing is a small piece of dry lint.

PHIMOSIS (Figs. 2 to 5, *bis*).

Phimosis may be operated on by incision, excision, or circumcision.

1. *Incision.*—Incision consists in setting free the prepuce. M. Cloquet advises that the incision be made at the lowest part; in the centre lies the artery of the frænum, which if divided must be ligatured. The prepuce may be incised above, and from behind forwards, a grooved director having first been introduced (Fig. 2) between the foreskin and the glans. It is well to have the skin made tense during the cutting part of the operation.

2. *Excision.*—Excision often follows as the second step after incision, for when two long flaps hang down on either side of the cut, it is

necessary to snip off their corners, as is shown in Fig. 3. The flaps may be removed by scissors or by knife.

3. *Circumcision.*—In this operation the whole free end of the prepuce is taken away. The prepuce is drawn forwards, and all the redundant skin is caught between the blades of forceps, as shown in Fig. 4. Fig. 4, *bis*, shows the section with the bistoury, and Fig. 5 the relation of mucous membrane and integument after section. It will be necessary to excise the mucous membrane separately, as it is sure to be less affected by the section than the skin, and if left in many cases becomes a hypertrophied mass. The glans must be completely uncovered after the operation, the mucous membrane being turned well back, and, when adherent, peeled from off the glans.

It is advisable that sutures be introduced to keep the edges of the skin and mucous membrane in apposition, so that the process of cicatrization may be accelerated. Cold-water dressing is all the after-treatment required, and the sutures may be removed after four or five days.

PARAPHIMOSIS (Fig. 6).

For paraphimosis reduction by careful compression should be attempted. Should this fail, it may be necessary to divide the constricting band, which is usually found at some distance behind the oedematous prepuce.

1. *Reduction.*—The operator seizes the penis, as is shown in Fig. 6. With his thumbs he pushes back the glans, which has been previously smeared with oil, whilst with the index and middle fingers of each hand he drags forward the oedematous prepuce.

Compression exercised by a narrow bandage may succeed, after several hours, in restoring the parts to their proper condition when the ordinary method proves inefficient. In troublesome cases, punctures to allow of the escape of the serum will aid in the reduction.

2. *Section.*—When the parts are much inflamed, and the pad of mucous membrane is much strangulated, it is necessary to divide the constricting band.

The surgeon seizes the penis in the left hand, placing the thumb upon the glans and the fingers beneath it. He then passes a sharp-pointed bistoury up under the constriction and divides it from behind forwards, and then attempts its reduction in the ordinary way; or instead the band may be cut from above downwards, taking care to carry the incision through the mucous membrane as well as the skin. The glans should then be pushed back.

CANCER OF THE PENIS (Pl. LXXII.).

Liafranc has called attention to the true origin and seat of this disease. It may begin at the prepuce, or in the skin of the body of

the penis, and completely surround it. An incision made along the dorsum of the organ often shows the cavernous structure to be completely free of disease, although situated in the middle of a cancerous mass. All the diseased parts must be carefully removed by the bistoury or scissors.

AMPUTATION OF THE PENIS.

When cancer has spread into the depths of the penis, nothing short of amputation will be of use. The penis is held at the root by an assistant, and the surgeon, drawing it well forward, severs it with one sweep. It must be remembered that the corpora cavernosa retract more than the skin. The assistant must not pull too much upon the skin, lest such redundancy at the end result that the aperture becomes interfered with. As the corpus cavernosum contracts in proportion to its length, the nearer the amputation is performed to the scrotum the more skin may be left.

After the amputation a catheter is fixed in the urethra, and though it is removed from time to time, still its use must be continued until cicatrization is complete, or the skin may be approximated by sutures to the urethra.

PLATE LXXIII.

OPERATIONS UPON THE PENIS AND SCROTUM.

Fig. 1.—*Operation for hydrocele*—The operator takes the tumour in the left hand, *a*, and punctures with a canula and trocar held in the right hand (Fig. 1 *bis*).

Fig. 2.—*Operation for sarcocoele*.—Ligature and excision of the arteries of the cord. The cord is laid bare by an incision along its course, the spermatic artery is separated by a director, *a*, from the other constituents of the cord.

Fig. 3.—Dissection of the tumour with a bistoury, *a*.

Fig. 4.—*Amputation of the penis*.—The surgeon holds with one hand, *a*, the extremity of the penis wrapped in a piece of lint; an assistant, *b*, holds back the integument at the root; *c*, the knife amputating the organ.

HYDROCELE (Figs. 1 and 1 *bis*).

Tumours composed of a collection of serum are called hydroceles. When it collects in a sac such as the tunica vaginalis, it constitutes an ordinary hydrocele. Edema of the scrotum is often due to general causes, and may be relieved by punctures. *Hydrocele* may occupy the tunica vaginalis or the spermatic cord. A *congenital* hydrocele is one in which the fluid collects in the tunica vaginalis, and filling the funicular process of peritoneum, passes up into the general peritoneal cavity. In such a case the scrotal tumour can be emptied into the abdomen, and the swelling diminishes when the patient lies on his back, and has his pelvis raised. The constant pressure of a truss is generally sufficient to effect a cure, no operation should be undertaken. Hydrocele of the cord may be treated as a hydrocele of the tunica vaginalis; but the surgeon, remembering the close proximity of the structures of the cord, and of the peritoneal cavity, should be cautious in the employment of injections. The treatment of hydrocele may be palliative or radical. The former consists in drawing off the fluid by puncture. But after this simple operation the fluid may collect again and the affection return. For the radical cure the nature of the secreting surface of the serous membrane must be altered so as to prevent the recurrence of the affection. To obtain this condition recourse has been had to puncture, incision, excision, cauterization, seton, suture, and injection.

Puncture is best performed by a small canular trocar. The patient lying down, the scrotum is taken in the palm of the left hand, and so

Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3



Fig. 4



Fig. 5





held as to render tense the integument, and the front and lower part of the tumour should project between the thumb and index-finger. Having first made out the exact situation of the testis, by the aid of a strong light, the instrument is suddenly plunged into the fluid, the depth of the puncture being limited by the right index-finger, which is held firmly against the canula. The trocar is then withdrawn, and the canula held in position whilst the serum flows away.

Incision. The scrotum is held as for puncture (*vid. sup.*), and the tissues are divided layer by layer down to the tunica vaginalis; an incision through this structure is made of sufficient length to allow the cavity to be stuffed with oiled lint.

Excision, as recommended by Boyer, consists in laying bare the tunica vaginalis, and in removing as much of it as possible. This may be advisable when the wall is very thick, but for most cases the previous operation suffices.

Cauterization by caustic potash is an obsolete operation for hydrocele.

A *seton* passed through the cavity and the ends tied together on the front of the scrotum may effect a cure.

Injection is the method of treatment most often adopted. The puncture is first made by a good-sized canula and trocar, and some port wine, tincture of iodine, or solution of sulphate of zinc is thrown up into the sac. Some surgeons inject a large quantity of a weak solution (grs. iv. to ʒj.), which they afterwards withdraw; others prefer a little strong solution, which they allow to remain in the sac. The syringe must have a nozzle which exactly fits the canula. Should a large quantity be injected, it should be allowed to remain in the sac until the patient experiences severe pain up the spermatic cord, and in the loins. The fluid can be then pressed out through the canula.

As the injection is being performed, it is very necessary that the end of the canula be free in the sac, lest some of the fluid be thrown up amongst the tissues of the scrotum. Should such a mishap occur, free incisions must be made for the escape of the irritating fluid, lest gangrene supervene.

After the use of the seton, or of the injection, the parts become very red and inflamed, hard and painful: then absorption commences, and at the end of a fortnight the patient is probably cured. Should suppuration follow, the certainty of cure becomes absolute.

TUMOURS OF THE TESTIS (Figs. 2 and 3).

Castration (Fig. 3). The first step consists in laying bare the cord, the second in its division, and in the removal of the gland itself.

First step.—An incision is made down the front of the cord from the external abdominal ring; and when the gland is not adherent to the integument, it can be easily turned out by the handle of the scalpel

and by the finger. But if it is adherent a careful process of dissection may be required. All the diseased skin must be removed.

Second Step.—The tumour forced from its coverings, and now only attached by the spermatic cord, is supported by an assistant. The cord may be divided by a single cut, and the arteries may be secured when the testicle is taken away. But perhaps it is preferable to tie the cord in one ligature before dividing it, as all risk and trouble of hæmorrhage is then at an end. Moreover, there will be no danger of any divided arteries being drawn, by the elastic cord, up into the abdomen, and bleeding there.

After removal of the testis a drainage-tube should be inserted, and the skin adjusted by sutures.

PLATE LXXIV.

OPERATION FOR VARICOCELE.

Fig. 1.—Compression of the varicocele by the aid of *Breschet's apparatus*, *a, a*.

Fig. 2.—*Felpeau's twisted suture*.—A pin, *a*, is passed beneath the dilated veins, and a string, *b, b*, is twisted in a figure of 8 around it.

Figs. 3 and 4 bis.—*Ligature.*—*Ricord's method.*

Fig. 3.—A loop, *a*, passed under the veins.

Fig. 4.—A second loop, passed by the holes which the introduction and exit of the other has made, lies in front of the veins. The ends, *a* and *c*, are caught in the loops; *a*, veins; *b*, vas deferens.

Fig. 4 bis.—Subcutaneous strangulation of the veins by the loops.

Fig. 5.—*M. Vidal's method of treatment by twisting*—*a, a'*. Needles represented in natural size: they are pointed at one end and hollowed out at the other, so as to receive the worm of a silver wire, *b, b'*. The stronger needle, *a*, should be the posterior one.

Fig. 6.—The varicose veins, *a, a*, are strangled between the two wires, *b* and *c*. The vas deferens, *d*, is to the outside of the veins.

Fig. 7.—The veins puckered up by the twisting of the wires.

Fig. 8.—The wires slightly twisted.

VARICOCELE.

Varicocele may be radically treated by compression, twisting, or ligature.

1. *Compression.*—*Breschet's method* (Fig. 1).—This method consists in compressing the varicose veins by the blades of forceps, which nip the

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



Fig 4 bis



Fig 5



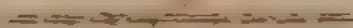
Fig 6



Fig 7



Fig 8



included tissues, and are fixed by screws. A slow section of the veins results from the pressure.

Before applying the blades the veins should be well distended by a hot bath. The vas deferens and the artery should be carefully separated from the varicose veins, so as to escape strangulation. The former structure can be recognised by its whipcord-like feel. All the veins should be compressed. The blades have been modified by M. Landonzy, so that the border of the fold of skin is not damaged.

2. *Suture*.—*Velpeau's method* (Fig. 2) may be performed in two ways: by passing a pin under the veins, and twisting a ligature tightly around in figure of 8; or the veins may be compressed by two pins placed, one in front and one behind the cluster, the ends of the pins being firmly secured by ligatures.

Ligature.—By a curved needle a strong ligature is passed through the scrotum, around the veins, and out near to the point of entrance. The two ends are then tied tightly around a roll of lint, so that the skin suffers but little. In about a fortnight the vessels are divided. Or the two ends may be brought out of the same opening, and the veins tied subcutaneously.

Ricord's method (Figs. 3, 4, and 4 bis).—The varicose veins are isolated in a fold of scrotum, and a loop is passed behind them through the scrotum (Fig. 3, a). Another loop is passed through the same holes in front of the cord, but in the opposite direction to the first loop, so that the cord lies, a (Fig. 4), between two double ligatures. Then, as represented in Fig. 4, the ends are passed through the loops, and on drawing them tightly in opposite directions (Fig. 4 bis), the vessels are thoroughly strangulated. The free ends may be tied to the extremities of a piece of metal of horse-shoe shape.

M. Vidal (1844) twists up the veins (Figs. 5, 6, 7, and 8), passing a needle, a (Fig. 5), armed with a wire, b, between the veins and the vas deferens, and then another, a', with a finer wire, b', in front. The same openings serve for the two wires. By bending the first wire with the concavity slightly forward, the finer wire lies like a bow-string in front of the veins.

Fig. 6 shows the varicose veins, a, a'; the testicle and vas deferens, d; the latter being kept out of the way. The wires, b and c, include the veins. On twisting the wires round and round, the veins are entangled and wound up also (Fig. 7): the vas deferens is not interfered with.

As the veins have a fixed point above (in the abdomen), and are movable below, the act of winding causes the testis to ascend towards the inguinal canal.

Fig. 8 shows the wires slightly twisted, with the thinner wire winding around the thicker. Afterwards the ends of the wires are brought round to the front of the scrotum and fixed together, and a pad of lint

is placed between the skin and the point of junction of the wires. Thus the veins of the cord become obliterated in several places, and if the veins of the scrotum become divided from pressure of the wires, or, indeed, if they be cut with the knife, the chance of return of the malady is diminished. In the twisting many small veins are implicated which might have escaped the influence of the ordinary ligatures. If the varicocele be of long standing, there may be many veins in the scrotum which will require division.

A common English method, and perhaps one of the best and safest, is to cut down upon the veins with all antiseptic precautions, separate them from the vas deferens, tie them by two ligatures, and sever them between the ligatures. A drainage-tube is then inserted, and the skin adjusted.

PLATE LXXV.

OPERATIONS ON THE BLADDER AND URETHRA.

Fig. 1.—*Supra-pubic puncture of the bladder.*—This diagram gives a vertical section of pelvis, and shows the relations of bladder to neighbouring viscera. *a*, Meatus urinarius; *b*, neck of bladder; *c*, interior of bladder; *d*, symphysis pubis; *e*, connective tissue between pubes and prostate; *f*, section of bulb; *g*, septum scroti; *h*, prostate; *i*, rectum; *l*, deflection of peritoneum from summit of bladder on to abdominal wall; *l*, trocar and canula passing over pubes into bladder.

Fig. 2.—*Perineal puncture of bladder.*—The body is placed in the lithotomy position, *a*, spot at which puncture is performed between the anus and front of ischial tuberosity. *b*, projection of bulb beneath the skin; *c*, anus.

Fig. 3.—*Puncture through the rectum.*—The median section shows the relations between bladder and rectum. *a*, Bulb in median section; *b*, posterior lobe of prostate; *c*, interior of bladder; *d*, summit of bladder; *e*, symphysis; *f*, left index-finger of operator introduced into rectum to guide the instrument in effecting puncture through base of bladder.

PUNCTURE OF BLADDER.

Now that the treatment of stricture is better understood, the operation of puncture of the bladder is becoming a rare operation, and is only had recourse to when every other means of relieving the retention has failed. The aspirator is now used in preference to the trocar. Let the operator be absolutely sure of the need of this operation before he performs it. Much may be learnt from the introduction of the finger into the rectum. When the performance of the operation becomes imperative, delay may be attended by extravasation.



Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3



11

1. *Supra-pubic puncture* (Fig. 1).—When the bladder is much distended it rises nearly to the umbilicus, carrying the peritoneum up in front of it, the anterior surface—base of serous covering—lies close behind the front of the abdomen.

To perform this operation the patient must be brought to the edge of the bed, and his head and shoulders raised, the canula and trocar are then forced with a sharp and sudden plunge downwards and backwards into the interior of the bladder, the point entering the abdomen in the middle line and close above the pubes, *b*. It is advisable to puncture the skin with a knife before thrusting in the trocar. The canula is then steadied, and the trocar withdrawn. When the urine is withdrawn, the end of the canula is fixed to tapes passing around the pelvis and thighs, and a small plug of wood stops up the opening of the instrument. If the instrument is too short the bladder will slip away from the end as it contracts. When the distress is relieved the stricture becomes less obstinate, and allows the passage of a catheter; but until this happy result is brought about the canula must be kept in the bladder.

When the aspirator is used a very fine trocar is sufficient, and it is the practice to remove the trocar after drawing off the water, and it is not often that a repetition of the operation is required. Even this operation, simple as it is, is not without its mortality.

2. *Puncture by the perineum* (Fig. 2). The patient is placed in the lithotomy position, and the straight canula and trocar is plunged into the bladder through a spot lying between the anus and the front of the left ischial tuberosity. The instrument passes through the skin and connective tissue, and the levator ani, entering the bladder close behind the neck. As soon as it travels freely in the deep part the surgeon knows that the vesical cavity has been penetrated, the trocar is therefore withdrawn, the urine voided, and the canula fixed in position by a T-bandage.

3. *Puncture by the rectum* (Fig. 3).—The patient being placed upon his back, and the thighs and legs flexed, the surgeon passes his left index-finger, well anointed, into the rectum, and then he feels the prostate gland and the base of the bladder bulging on to the anterior wall of this bowel. The well-curved canula and trocar are then passed up in front of the finger, the point of the trocar being withdrawn into, and concealed by, the end of the canula. When the end of the canula reaches the base of the bladder, the trocar is suddenly forced out of the canula, and with the canula enters the distended viscus. The instrument enters between the vasa deferentia, behind and above the prostate, and below the recto-vesical fold of peritoneum. When the bladder has been evacuated, the canula is fixed to a spika of tape, the urine may be allowed to pass, as quickly as it flows into the bladder, out by the canula into a carefully-arranged receptacle.

These situations have been chosen for tapping the bladder on account of their being free of important connections and on account of their being easy of access. The perineal puncture offers no special advantage. The rectal puncture has hitherto been most frequently performed, but should the prostate be much increased in size it may become necessary to have recourse to the supra-pubic puncture. But, as we have said above, the operation is now rarely required, because the simple and frequent use of the aspirator gives all that can be desired, and is almost free from danger. The site for puncture by the aspirator needle is an inch or so above the symphysis pubis.

PLATE LXXVI.

CONTINUATION OF OPERATIONS UPON THE BLADDER AND URETHRA.

Fig. 1. -Vertical section showing the direction of the urethra, and the position of pelvic viscera, etc. *a*, Neck of bladder; *b*, cavity of same; *c*, opening of ureter; *d*, summit of bladder; *e*, glans penis; *f*, corpora cavernosa; *g*, prostate; *h*, bulb; *i*, vesicula seminalis; *j*, front of prostate; *k*, symphysis; *l*, rectum.

Fig. 2. -*Catheterization.* - Introducing the instrument into the meatus urinarius, *a*; *b*, bladder; *c*, opening of ureter; *d*, summit of bladder, and, *a'*, neck; *e*, prostate; *f*, bulb; *h*, front of prostate; *i*, symphysis; *l*, floor of urethra.

Fig. 3. -*Catheter, reaching to the prostate.* - *a*, Meatus; *b*, bladder; *c*, ureter; *d*, summit of bladder; *a'*, beak of catheter; *e*, prostate; *f*, bulb; *i*, symphysis; *l*, catheter in the spongy part of the urethra.

Fig. 4. The catheter entering the bladder as the penis is depressed. *b*, Beak of catheter in the bladder; *e*, *h*, prostate; *g*, vesicula seminalis; *k*, rectum.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE URETHRA.

The urethra in the female is the conduit for the urine only, in the male it conveys also the semen.

The male urethra is divided into three parts for description. 1. The prostatic part, about an inch and a quarter in length, and extending from the neck of the bladder to the posterior layer of the triangular ligament. 2. The membranous part measures about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in length, and, lying between the two layers of the triangular ligament, is curved, with its concavity directed to the under part of the symphysis pubis. This part is surrounded by the compressor urethræ. The bulb projecting backwards overlaps the floor of the membranous part of the

Fig. 1

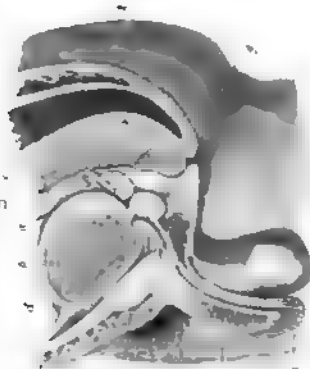


Fig. 2

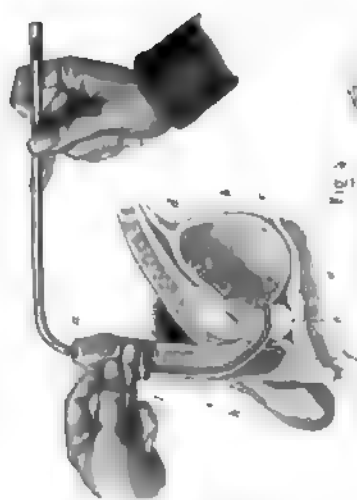


Fig. 3

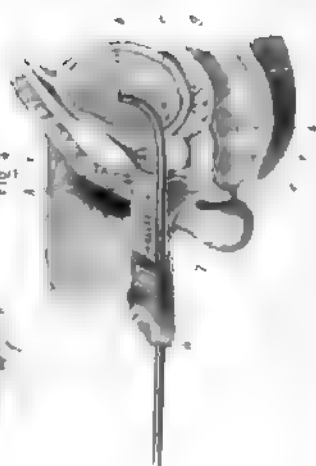
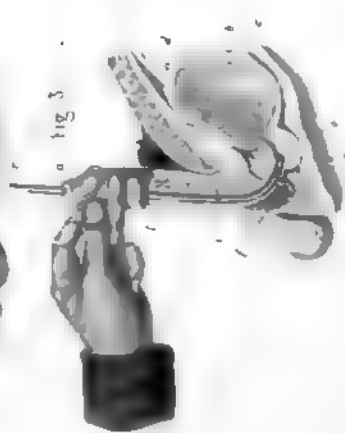
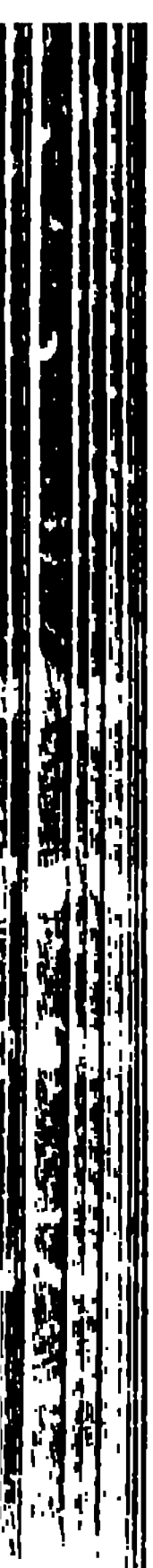


Fig. 4





urethra. 3. The spongy part of the urethra measures six or seven inches, but its length varies with the condition of the penis. It extends from the membranous part behind to the meatus urinarius in front. It must be borne in mind that the canal takes a bold sweep under the pubes to reach the neck of the bladder, and that when the prostate is much hypertrophied the neck of the bladder becomes pushed up behind the pubes, and that the length of the urethra may be thus increased from about seven or eight inches to ten or eleven. When the penis is flaccid, the urethra curves like the italic *f*. When the penis is drawn out for catheterization but one curve remains, and this is between the layers of the triangular ligament—this curve, then, is permanent.

Calibre. The calibre of the urethra varies in different people, and at different times in the same person. But when one sees a No. 14 English catheter enter the bladder without trouble, the capacity of the canal and its readiness to adapt itself to circumstances becomes evident.

The prostatic portion of the urethra is large and somewhat dilatable. The membranous portion is girt by the compressor urethræ, and becomes small towards the bulb, whilst the meatus is the narrowest part of the canal. Behind the meatus is a dilatation, the navicular fossa. Occasionally the meatus is very small, and requires forcible dilatation or incision before an ordinary sized catheter can be introduced (Pl. LXXVII., Fig. 9 *bis*).

Structure and relations.—The mucous membrane is thin and elastic, and darkens in colour towards the meatus; there it becomes continuous with the delicate covering of the glans penis. When the canal is distended the longitudinal folds which are found in the flaccid urethra become effaced.

In the prostatic urethra the mucous membrane and erectile tissue are raised in a permanent ridge called the *veru montanum*, and burrowing backwards beneath it is the depression known as the *sinus pocularis*.

On either side of the ridge lies a groove, the prostatic sinus, which receives the openings of the prostatic follicles. Into the *sinus pocularis* open the two common ejaculatory ducts.

The lining of the urethra is studded with the small openings of the mucous crypts of Littre, these are apt to become the seat of abscess in connection with urethritis, and to open externally. In rare instances they intercept the beak of a small catheter in its passage towards the bladder (Pl. LXXVII., Fig. 1 *a*). The mucous membrane of the urethra is covered externally by a layer of fibrous and non-erectile muscular tissue, and it is in this bed that the inflammatory products contract in organic stricture. In the spongy part of the canal this submucous layer is composed chiefly of vascular and erectile tissue. It is perhaps on account of its great vascularity that the mucous lining of the spongy urethra is so prone to the absorption of irritating and

morbid products. Outside this layer is the general fibrous investment, and over all is the muscular expansion from the accelerated urinae.

Around the membranous part of the urethra is a considerable quantity of fibrous tissue, and at the narrowing anterior end of the part of the canal the careless introduction of a small catheter may do great damage. In front of the triangular ligament the spongy portion of the urethra is expanded (in a bulb), especially at the floor, and unless the beak of the instrument be kept carefully along the roof of the canal it is very apt to pass out and run up between the prostate and rectum. Hence the advisability of introducing the left index finger into, and keeping it in, the rectum in dealing with a troublesome stricture. In all probability the compressor urethrae does not by 'spasmodic contraction' offer such a great bar to the passage of catheter as it is generally represented to do. Muscular fibres have indeed, been described by Wilson, which have as their office the widening of the urethra in this neighbourhood. The membranous portion of the urethra is in relation with the veins of Santorini, and with the connective tissue below the pubic symphysis. Behind and below it is overlapped by the bulb. It really belongs to the perineal region, being situated between the two layers of the deep perineal fascia (or triangular ligament).

In the prostatic part the urethra is enclosed by friable muscular and glandular tissue.

In old men the prostate is often found to be much increased in size, firm and lobulated, encroaching on the trigone and neck of the bladder and on the outer wall of the rectum, and this, by altering the length and curve of the urethra, gives rise to conditions of serious importance, but which we cannot attempt to enter upon in this work.

CATHETERIZATION OF THE URETHRA.

The operation of passing an instrument into the bladder may be required for drawing off the urine, for crushing a stone, for dilating a stricture, for searching for a foreign body, and for obtaining a guide in certain operations (*vide* 'Imperforate Rectum').

The operation of passing an instrument through the urethra will vary as we deal with a man, a woman, a child, or with any subject with an altered condition of the parts. We shall speak farther on of catheterism in the female; but we must refer our readers to special treatises for an account of the diseases in which it may be required. The instruments may be curved or straight; if the former, the curvature may be permanent, as in the case of silver catheters and metallic sounds, the curvature may be altered by having the instrument made of gum-elastic, with a flexible wire in the interior.

Everyone knows the curve of the ordinary sound, and the proportion between the straight and curved parts. If the patient is young, the curve will be less pronounced; for old men, on the contrary, and in cases of disease of the prostate or neck of the bladder, it is better to employ an instrument with a sudden curve. Before passing an instrument it should be warmed and oiled.

A catheter may be passed in the ordinary way, or by the '*tour de maître*.'

1. *In the ordinary way, or from over the abdomen* (Pl. LXXVI., Figs. 2, 3, 4).—*Position of the patient*.—The patient may be placed upright, with his back against a wall, or he may lie upon his back at the left edge of his bed.

Position of the surgeon.—The surgeon will find it most convenient to stand at the left of the patient, so that he may pass the instrument with his right hand, introducing the left index-finger, if necessary, into the rectum to give him his bearings. The end of the penis is taken between the fingers and thumb of the left hand and drawn up towards the abdomen so as to straighten the spongy part of the urethra. (See '*Anatomy of the Urethra*,' and Pl. LXXVI., Figs. 2 and 3.) The prepuce may require drawing back, and before introducing the instrument it may be well to draw the penis over toward the left groin. The catheter is taken in the right hand and held like a pen, the convexity being directed upwards. Introduced into the meatus, it must be pressed onwards with great care and gentleness, any roughness giving rise to pain and spasm. Thus the beak of the instrument reaches the level of the symphysis, and then the fingers of the left hand are glided down beneath the penis, and are placed in the perineum, feeling the instrument in the urethra; the handle by this time is raised perpendicular to the abdomen, and by gentle depression of the right hand the beak passes through the membranous part of the urethra and through the prostate into the bladder; and in depressing the handle the instrument sweeps up under the pubes. It is very necessary to keep the beak close under and along the roof of the canal.

The surgeon recognises the instant that the instrument enters the bladder, and keeping his thumb or index finger over the opening of the catheter, directs it so that the urine may flow into the vessel prepared for it.

2. '*Tour de maître*.'—This showy way of passing a catheter was much in vogue with the surgeons of the last century; it may be useful when the abdomen is large and pendulous. It is practised thus:

Position of the patient.—He may be standing, sitting, or lying on his back, the last position being the best. The pelvis is brought to the edge of the bed, and the legs and thighs flexed and separated.

Position of the surgeon.—At the right side, or kneeling, or stooping between the thighs of the patient, the surgeon takes the end of the

penis between his fingers and thumb, drawing it but slightly towards the abdomen. The catheter held in the right hand, with beak directed towards the perineum, the concavity looking downwards and backwards, is introduced into the meatus and passed down to the triangular ligament. The left fingers now embrace the root of the penis, and giving the handle of the catheter a bold and rapid sweep from right to left, it is brought up in front of the abdomen as in the ordinary way, but at the same time the beak travels on into the bladder.

The introduction of flexible instruments rendered rigid by a style of wire is performed as in the case of the metallic, but the operation is more difficult; but if the urethra is well accustomed to the passage of instruments, the soft catheter will find its own way into the bladder without force or trouble. The style is only useful for introduction of the catheter as far as the triangular ligament, and when this part is reached it should be withdrawn: if it be left in until the catheter has reached the bladder its withdrawal will be attended with pain; or, if possible, following the advice of Hey, fix the style and push on the catheter the rest of the way by itself.

Catheterism by straight instruments.—When we consider how elastic the urethra is, and how its walls are capable of depression, one understands how it is possible to pass a straight catheter into the bladder.

M. Amussat occupied himself much with this subject, and he exercised considerable influence in directing the surgery of the urethra and bladder, especially as regards lithotomy.

Position of the patient.—He may be standing, sitting, or lying.

Position of the surgeon.—He places himself in front of the patient and pulls out the penis with his left hand until it is at a right angle with the trunk. The instrument passed straight from before backwards, passes beneath the pubes to the level of the bulb. Then the penis is drawn on the instrument and the handle firmly depressed so as to make the beak ride into the prostatic part of the canal and into the bladder (Pl. LXXVIII., Fig. 1). If the first attempt fail, the instrument must be withdrawn a little and again pushed on. The penis must not be stretched until the symphysis is passed.

Obstacles to catheterization. Accidents. Remedies.—The various manoeuvres that we have just described do not always succeed at the first attempt, and we will show in what the failure may consist and how it may be overcome. We must also point out the accidents which may arise in catheterization, and how they are to be avoided, and the precautions which must be taken in passing a catheter in a wounded urethra. The difficulties may be due either to clumsy handling of the instrument, or to deviations in the direction of the urethra; from either cause a false passage may result.

False passages.—The beak of the catheter may be caught in one of the large follicular depressions so frequently found on the roof of the

canal near the meatus; to avoid it the beak of the catheter must be withdrawn and then passed on along the floor of the urethra. Or the catheter may be stopped beneath the pubes, where the bulbous part joins the membranous, perhaps because the instrument is too much curved, perhaps because the handle has been depressed too soon; the instrument must be slightly withdrawn and then passed along nearer the floor of the urethra.

A common cause of difficulty is the catching of the beak in the bulbous enlargement of the urethra against the front of the triangular ligament. To avoid this the handle must be gently depressed; nothing is easier than to force the beak of the catheter through the pouch and up between the rectum and prostate.

Another obstacle may be found at the junction of the membranous and prostatic portions of the canal; and yet another at the neck of the bladder, where a wall of mucous membrane may be developed.

These obstacles may be overcome by passing the beak of the instrument along the roof of the urethra. From this short account it is evident that a correct knowledge of the length, shape, and size of the various parts of the canal must be obtained. It is a good plan never to continue to press on the catheter through an obstruction unless it is found by a slight attempt to withdraw the instrument that it is grasped by the stricture.

Lesions of the canal.—In this category must be placed the numerous causes of obstacle to the passage of the catheter, but all are not of equal importance. The instrument may be intercepted by one of the lacunae (Pl. LXXVII., Fig. 1a.), by a dilated prostatic duct, or by the opening of the common ejaculatory duct, but such an accident can only happen to a fine instrument. When passing a full-sized catheter such a cause of failure is out of the question. But when a stricture exists, or when enlargement of one lobe of the prostate has altered the direction of the urethra, catheterization is not a simple matter, nor is it when a spasmodic contraction supervenes in the muscles about the urethra, which we have described above. It is impossible to say how each case is to be dealt with, but some useful hints will be found in the article on 'Stricture of the Urethra.'

The most serious accident that can happen is the perforation of the wall of the urethra, and this may readily occur where the canal is narrowed or diseased, especially if the catheter be roughly or carelessly handled. A tricle of mucous membrane in the urethra, or at the neck of the bladder, may thus be tunneled, and, more likely still, the middle part of the prostate (Pl. LXXVII., Fig. 1).

This is not, however, a very grave accident, if the beak regain the canal and enter the bladder. But of great gravity is the perforation of the wall of the urethra, for the instrument may then travel on amongst the neighbouring tissues almost indefinitely.

False passages are generally formed in the floor of the urethra near the bulb, and may give rise to hæmorrhages and the infiltration of urine. Their presence may be suspected when free bleeding occurs, or when the handle wanders away from the median line; the left index finger should at once be introduced into the rectum, where the handle may be found lying in front of the muscular wall of the bowel, and in dangerous proximity to it. The prostate gland ought to be felt between the catheter and the rectum.

Often false passages exist when the surgeon is called in to relieve a case of retention of urine, or to dilate a stricture. If he find out the situation he must carefully avoid them, keeping his finger in the rectum; and it must be confessed that the operation in these cases is one requiring the greatest skill and patience.

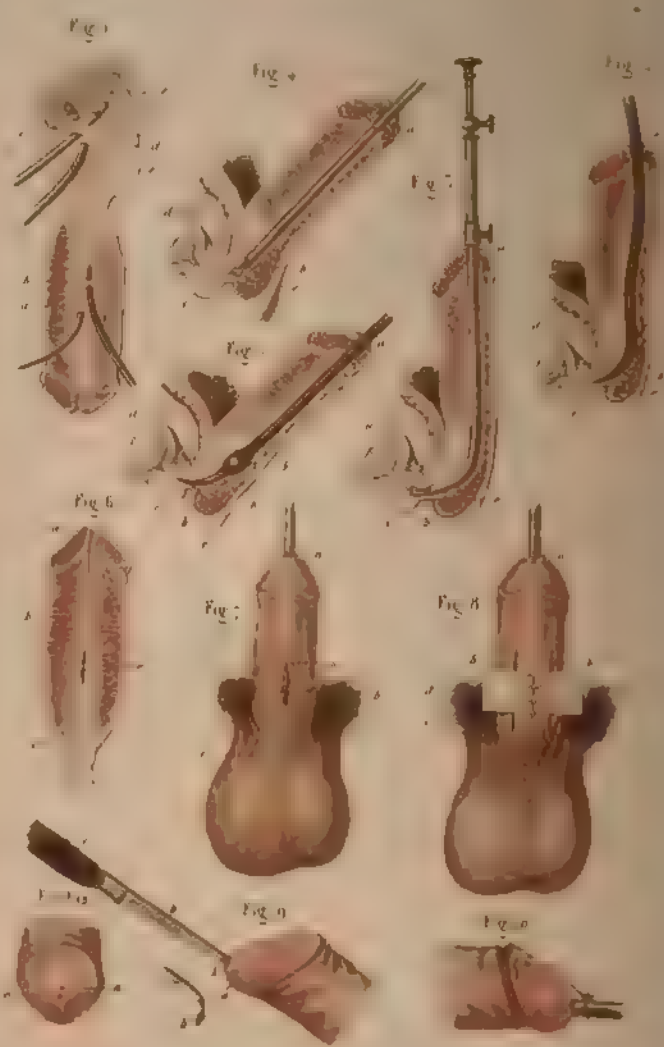


PLATE LXXVII.

FALSE PASSAGES.—STRICTURE OF URETHRA.—PLASTIC OPERATIONS.—ENLARGEMENT OF MEATUS.—FIXING INSTRUMENTS IN URETHRA.

Fig. 1.—*Accidents of catheterization.*—*a*, Beak of instrument caught in a lacuna ; *b*, the same having traversed the mucous membrane and re-entering the canal ; *c*, *d*, catheters caught in old false passages in the prostate, tunnelling its tissue ; *e*, urethral crest ; *f*, bladder with thickened walls.

Fig. 2.—*Passage of bougies through stricture.*—*a*, Meatus ; *b*, conical extremity of a bougie caught in the stricture ; *c*, bulb ; *d*, symphysis of pubes ; *e*, prostate ; *f*, cavity of bladder.

Fig. 3.—*Cauterization of the prostatic part of the urethra, with M. Lallemand's instrument.*—*a*, Meatus ; *b*, membranous portion with the instrument carrying the caustic ; *c*, prostate ; *d*, symphysis ; *e*, bulb ; *f*, bladder.

Fig. 4.—*Cauterization of the membranous part of the urethra with the straight instrument.*—*a*, Canula of the *porte-caustique* ; *b*, part of the instrument armed with caustic ; *c*, prostate ; *d*, symphysis ; *e*, bulb ; *f*, bladder.

Fig. 5.—*Division of stricture.*—*a*, Meatus ; *b*, conical point of scarifier in the membranous part of the canal ; *b'*, enlargement of scarifier ; *b, b, b'*, blade protruded from the protecting enlargement by a movement of the handle ; *c*, prostate ; *d*, symphysis ; *e*, bulb ; *f*, bladder.

Fig. 6.—*Antero-posterior section showing a stricture of urethra.*—*a*, Meatus ; *b*, stricture with dilatation behind it, whilst the urethra in front of it (from *a* to *b*) is narrowed ; *c*, commencement of the membranous part of the canal ; *e*, internal orifice of an antero-posterior fissure situated on the floor of the spongy portion.

Fig. 7.—*Plastic operation.*—*a*, A sound ; *b'*, the same seen through the urethral fistula ; *b*, penile fistula. A dotted line shows the extent to which the surfaces have to be vivified around the opening ; *c*, a flap to be raised from the root of the penis and scrotum. This flap must be rather larger than the gap on to which it will afterwards fall.

Fig. 8.—*Operation by lateral incision.*—*a*, Sound in urethra ; *c*, fistula whose vivified edges have been brought together by sutures, *c'* ; *b, b'*, lateral incisions made at a distance from the fistula ; *d*, a thin sheet of india-rubber, placed so as to protect the sutured part from contact with urine, and to prevent the lateral incisions healing too quickly.

Fig. 9.—*Enlargement of meatus.*—A sickle-shaped bistoury, entering

at *b'* and emerging at *a*; *b'* shows the point guarded by a small button of wax.

Fig. 9 *bis*.—Urethra ending in two apertures on the glans, *a* and *a'*. The intervening bridge of skin requires division.

Fig. 10. —A catheter fixed in urethra by a piece of darning cotton tied around the penis behind the corona.

STRICTURES OF URETHRA.

Stricture is the narrowing of the canal from some pathological condition. Most authors admit three kinds of stricture.

1st. *Inflammatory or congestive*.—This is noticed when an acute urethritis causes the mucous membrane to swell into the canal and diminish its calibre.

2nd. *Spasmodic*.—Spasmodic stricture should be called urethral spasm, being simply a spasmodic contraction of the muscular fibres surrounding the urethra.

3rd. *Organic*.—These are the most common, and follow on injuries to the urethra, and on chronic urethritis. They are the most obstinate as regards treatment, and when a man is once the subject of one he can never be cured. The bad effects may be kept under control; but so surely as the patient and surgeon leave off attending to the stricture, so surely does a relapse take place—it is only a question of time.

There may be one or many strictures in the same urethra; they may appear as small or large cicatrices, fibrous rings surrounding the canal, bridles, or as a general thickening all around a certain part of the canal.

The narrowness of the aperture will vary with the degree of thickening in the submucous coat. As a rule, the older the stricture the smaller the opening. The mucous membrane in the neighbourhood of the stricture becomes altered in appearance, so that the terms *indurated* and *fibrous* are often employed in describing the parts; they mean this—that the chronic inflammation has given rise to a considerable amount of plastic deposit in and beneath the mucous membrane, a deposit which has become organized into thick fibrous tissue.

Traumatic strictures may be found anywhere along the urethra. Organic contraction following gleet generally occurs in the neighbourhood of the bulbous end of the spongy portion. An enlargement of the prostate, blocking up the canal, cannot properly be included amongst the strictures.

The surgical therapeutics comprise preliminary explorations, palliative and radical treatment.

Preliminary operations are to give information concerning the number, size, and situation of the strictures.

The introduction of ordinary catheters of different sizes is generally sufficient to give the surgeon every information that he requires for undertaking the treatment of a stricture; but when about to operate, one must be careful and precise in making the preliminary examination. Ducamp used to employ what he called his *exploratory sound*, but the instrument has properly fallen into disuse. The simpler the instruments the better.

The instrument *a boule* in gum-elastic renders service in measuring the length of a stricture; but when the thickening in the submucous coat exists in the spongy portion only, the surgeon can obtain a good idea of its extent by gently pinching it between his finger and thumb.

TREATMENT.

Dilatation.—Dilatation is the method to be preferred in the treatment of most tight organic strictures. The best way of performing it is to employ the No. 1 (English scale), for instance, on the first occasion, and having ascertained by the finger in the rectum that it is in the proper course for the bladder, to urge it gently onwards; when it has reached the bladder, urine having flowed, it should be withdrawn. On the third or fourth day, supposing that no harm have followed on the introduction, No. 2 will probably be introduced, and so on until No. 12 finds its way in easily. But this is a method which requires much time and patience, both on the part of the surgeon and of the subject. When No. 12 can be passed the patient should be instructed in the art of catheterization, and should, at first every week, introduce No. 10 for himself. He will never be permanently cured, whatever the treatment adopted be; but, as we have said above, he may be able to keep the stricture under control.

Continuous dilatation.—Sir H. Thompson has shown that if No. 1 be introduced into a stricture and left in—just within the bladder—for a few days, a process of softening takes place at the seat of stricture, so that when the small instrument is withdrawn No. 9 or 10 may be easily passed.

Forcible dilatation.—When a stricture allows the passage of No. 2 or 3, but refuses to yield to larger size catheters, Mr. Holt's instrument for bursting the fibrous ring may be employed. The instrument consists of a small catheter split down the middle, the halves being joined by a hinge near what would be the eye of an ordinary catheter. Running between the halves, and fixed to the hinge, is a slender wire stylet, over which a large hollow style, of the size of a No. 8 or 9, is passed. In its passage over the stylet it separates the halves of the instrument and so bursts up the fibrous constriction.

The instrument has met with little approval in the hands of some surgeons, and condemnation from others, but a fair trial of its merits

shows that most organic strictures can be quickly and effectually treated by its means, though numerous deaths are on record from its use.

Simple division.—In this operation a cutting instrument is passed through the stricture, dividing some of the constricting tissue. The instruments are called *urethrotomes*. They vary much in form. They may be straight or curved, and cutting from behind forwards, when passed through the narrow track. For the most part they consist of canulae, varying in size, and are armed with a stylet, which has a hidden blade at its vesical end. Sometimes the blades are terminal, at others they start out through a lateral slit in the instrument on pressure being made through some arrangement of screw or lever. When the urethrotome is curved, the blade is situated at the convexity. The blade may be single or multiple. Some of the instruments cut their way through the stricture in passing through towards the bladder, but generally the cutting is effected with the withdrawal.

The instruments are used thus. When the stricture has been somewhat dilated, and a good knowledge of its extent and condition has been obtained, the urethrotome is introduced with the blade hidden; the beak is then passed beyond the narrowing, so that when the blade is made to start out it is on the bladder side of the stricture. The blade is then made to cut its way forward through the tight band, without wounding the healthy part. If advisable, the band may be divided in more points than one; the blade must be made to return under cover again ere the instrument is withdrawn. Some bleeding may follow the operation. From time to time a full-sized catheter must be introduced to prevent the return of the contraction.

M. Reyhard, not satisfied with division of the fibrous ring of the stricture, proposed to divide, in addition, the healthy tissues of the urethra right through the corpus spongiosum to the skin, the section being effected by a blade like that of a penknife. We only mention the operation to condemn it.

Wertheimer has employed electricity in the treatment of stricture.

Some have tried to force a passage through the narrowed part of the canal by cauteries; whilst others have endeavoured to effect a cure by excision of the morbid tissue.

M. Amussat sometimes succeeded in introducing a catheter through an obstinate stricture by forcibly distending the urethra with warm water, and for this he had a small catheter with an indiarubber ball at one end, which, filled with water, could be forcibly emptied by the hand into the urethra, the other end of the catheter being passed down to the stricture. By gently forcing on the catheter after the injection the stricture has been penetrated. Whilst the injection is being made the penis is tightly pressed around the instrument by the finger and thumb.

When dealing with a narrow stricture it is well to inject a small quantity of oil into the urethra before introducing an instrument.

Furueux Jordan's rectal operation for relief of impassable stricture and retention of urine. A well-curved bistoury covered with adhesive plaster except three-quarters of an inch at the point very sharp, and it may be double-edged near the point, is carried by the index-finger into the rectum: the finger directed forwards passes into a depression between the anal sphincter and the prostate: this depression corresponds with the membranous portion of the urethra, which is as a rule greatly dilated. The bistoury is then thrust forwards at right angles to the axis of the rectum, exactly in the median line, and about an inch and a quarter from the anus, and in front of the apex of the prostate, which the finger can readily feel.

The bistoury is then *drawn forwards* to an extent sufficient to allow the tip of the finger to be introduced into the urethra. The finger can now be carried backwards to the bladder or forwards to the stricture.

The finger being directed towards the stricture, a soft French bougie is directed forwards along its concavity through the stricture and out at the meatus. The rectal end of the instrument is then carried into the bladder, and the stricture is treated on the principle of continuous dilatation. In twenty-four hours a larger instrument can be introduced from before backwards. The wound in the rectum heals readily.

External Urethrotomy—Where the stricture refuses to yield to dilatation, and especially when there are perineal fistule and sinuses, external urethrotomy becomes imperative.

When the stricture is permeable and a No. 1 catheter can be introduced, the operation is simple, and consists of the insertion of a fine-grooved staff, on to which an incision may be made through the perineum: the knife may then be carried forwards and backwards in order to completely sever all the hardened tissues of the stricture. A No. 12 catheter should then be introduced into the bladder in the ordinary manner, and the urine drawn off. The wound should be lightly plugged with oiled lint. After two or three days No. 12 should be again introduced, and again from time to time in order to keep the canal pervious to this size catheter. Where the stricture is altogether impermeable the operation of external urethrotomy is much more complicated and difficult. It is necessary to open the urethra behind the stricture.

Cock's operation.—Mr. Cock introduced the left forefinger into the rectum until it impinged on the prostate, then with the right hand he passed a knife through the perineum, parallel with the left index-finger, nearly up to the prostate, and then drawing the blade forward by a cutting movement, opened up an incision in the perineum, taking care that such incision was perfectly in the central line of the perineum.

By this means the urethra behind the stricture, which is almost invariably in the form of a dilated pouch, was freely opened. The knife, once inserted, was never withdrawn until the operation was complete. The incision complete, and the left finger still in the rectum, a probe-pointed director was guided along the finger to the urethra and bladder, and finally a cannula was inserted into the bladder. He did not touch the stricture, but relied on treating the stricture subsequently by dilatation after the cannula had been retained in the bladder for a few days. There is, however, no reason why the stricture should not be sought and severed at the same operation, and a No. 12 catheter at once inserted.

The author usually performs post-stricture urethrotomy in the following way. A catheter is inserted down to the stricture, the legs raised in lithotomy position, and kept perfectly even. An incision is then made down upon the end of the catheter through the exact central line of the penneum, and carried backwards so as to open the central line of the perineum to within half an inch of the anus: the wound may be opened by retractors, and the canal of the urethra with the catheter within it exposed. In some cases a probe can now be pushed in the line of the urethra through the stricture, but if such is impossible, still the hardened mass of the stricture is felt by the left index-finger, and can be dissected into, taking care not to go beyond the roof of the urethra, otherwise hemorrhage will take place and great risk be entailed. In order to facilitate this dissection, the left index-finger may be placed in the rectum, and the line of dissection carried, as in Cock's operation, near to the rectum and towards the prostate, in the central perineal line, when the dilated pouch of the urethra is sure to be opened. A No. 12 catheter is now inserted into the bladder to draw off the urine, and withdrawn, the section lightly plugged with carbolic-oiled lint, etc., as in the former case. In this operation the former urethral passage is not always retained, and a new canal is developed in the line of the stricture. The author has had the opportunity of examining some of his cases in which the patients have died some years after the operation, and he has found no sign of obstruction, but on the contrary a dilated space in the region of the former stricture continuous with the dilated pouch behind the stricture.

OPERATIONS ON URINARY FISTULE (Plate LXXVII. Figs. 6, 7, and 8)

Urinary fistule may be the result of injury or of abscesses, and may give rise to a communication between the urethra and skin, bladder and vagina or rectum, bladder and uterus.

Urethral fistule are named from their seat penile, ante-scrotal,

scrotal, and perineal: they may have followed on stricture with abscess, or on injury. They may be short and uncomplicated, or burrowing, tortuous, and multiple.

As regards curability, we may say briefly that the ante-scrotal fistulae are very difficult of treatment, and that the larger the fistula the less the success.

Should the fistula be associated with stricture, the latter must be dealt with before the former is touched. The great difficulty of obtaining a complete success is due to the union of the vivified surfaces being hindered or prevented by contact with urine. Often one sees a perineal fistula heal spontaneously on a stricture being dilated.

Indirect treatment—Old plan.—A catheter is introduced into and fixed in the bladder, and the small plug of wood is removed each time that the patient desires to pass water. The urine, however, sometimes finds its way to the wound by passing between the catheter and the walls of the urethra. To prevent this some surgeons have left the catheter without the plug of wood, so that the urine might flow away as it is secreted. Simple fistulae in the perineum occasionally heal under such methods of treatment. On account of the severe inconveniences resulting from the catheter being allowed to remain in the bladder, Ducamp has proposed to draw off the urine by passing a catheter each time the patient has the desire, but the irritation set up by urine collecting in the bladder is occasionally so severe that the patient cannot wait to have the instrument passed, so that no good result can be anticipated with certainty from this method of treatment. The convolvulus catheter introduced by Mr. Napier may be employed.

Direct treatment.—Perineal fistulae often require free division, but no excision of the tracts need be practised.

In many cases external urethrotomy is the most satisfactory operation, because the line of incision may often be carried through the principal fistulae, and the stricture at the same time obliterated. It is well also to lay open, if possible, all fistulous tracts.

A *plastic operation* may be required when there has been a loss of tissue at the floor of the urethra in the spongy portion of the penis, but it is very apt to fail. The edges of the fistula are pared and brought together by wire sutures over a gum-elastic catheter introduced into the urethra, but M. Malgaigne considers that its presence in the canal is productive of harm, and that repeated catheterizations are to be preferred. In such cases it is well to make an opening into the urethra in the perineum and retain a short india-rubber tube in the bladder—the author has on several occasions retained such a tube in the bladder for upwards of six weeks—and allowed the urine to escape by it whilst the wound at the front of the scrotum heals.

When the gap in the floor is extensive it will be necessary to make use of a flap cut from one side of the thin penile covering, and, bringing it across the opening, to let it fall into a space which has already been excavated for it on the opposite side.

Partial successes are by no means uncommon in these cases, and it is often only after repeated attempts that the opening is entirely closed.

Imperforation of the glans.—Enlarging the meatus (Plate LXXVII., Figs. 9 and 9 bis).—Should the imperforation of the glans be congenital, the aid of the surgeon is at once required. Generally in these cases the urethra is distended behind the obstruction, so that a simple incision, or an excision combined with puncture, will be all that is necessary.

After the operation care must be employed lest the new passage be again blocked up by cicatrization.

Should there be congenital narrowing of the meatus, oft-repeated and gradual dilatation will alone be required. The separation of the ends of the blades of small dressing forceps introduced into the meatus will effect a sudden and complete dilatation.

A catheter may be fixed in the urethra by a loop of worsted tied from the handle of the instrument around the neck of the glans (Plate LXXVII., Fig. 10); or, if preferred, the instrument may be secured by small tapes to a spika bandage around the trunk.



PLATE LXXVIII.

CATHETERISM AND LITHOTRITY.

Fig. 1.—*Rectilinear catheterism.* *a*, Position of the instrument at the start; *a'*, position showing the inclination necessary to pass (*b*) triangular ligament; *a''*, the instrument entering the bladder, the handle having passed through the quarter of a circle. *g h*; *c*, prostate; *d*, symphysis; *e*, bulb; *e'*, testicle; *f*, bladder.

Fig. 2.—*Passage of a metallic sound.*—*a*, First position; *a'*, when introduced into the bladder; *b*, the beak passing through the prostate; *c*; *d*, symphysis; *e*, bulb; *f*, bladder.

Fig. 2 bis.—*Soundling for stone.*—*a*, Sound entering bladder, *f*; *c*, prostate; *d*, symphysis, *e*, bulb; *e'*, testicle; *g*, stone lying at base of bladder behind prostate. This diagram shows how necessary it is to employ a sound with a short and sudden curve, and also how much assistance may be occasionally obtained by pushing up the base of the bladder by the left index-finger in the rectum.

Fig. 3.—*Extraction of a urethral calculus.*—*a, b*, Small straight forceps introduced into the membranous part of the urethra; *b'*, the fragments seized in its bite; *c*, prostate.

Fig. 4.—*Crushing a stone by percussion.*—*a*, Lithotrite; *a'*, female blade, which allows the toothed male blade to play in it, so that the stone may be readily fixed in the bite; *a''*, circular plate on the male blade for manipulation by the finger; *a'''*, disc like head of male blade for receiving the strokes of the hammer—the lithotrite is firmly held between the two hands of an assistant, and steadied by the operator's left hand, whilst he uses the hammer with the right; *b*, end of lithotrite in bladder, *f*; *b'*, male blade; *b''*, female blade; *c*, stone. A window has been cut through the hypogastric region of abdomen.

LITHOTRITY.

Modern lithotry has for its end the entire removal of a stone from the bladder, as far as possible, at one operation, without the use of the knife. The stone is crushed by lithotrites, and the fragments are immediately washed out through tubes by means of an aspirator.

The idea of the operation is of ancient origin, being alluded to in terms more or less clear by Azzarhavi, A. Benedictus Sanctorius, Fabrice de Hilden. Everywhere one hears of the Monks of Cîteaux, and of one, Martin by name, who removed stones from bladders by ingenious methods. Of more importance were the endeavours of the Bavarian surgeon, Gruithuisen (1812), to perforate a calculus, and of Elgerton, who invented an ingenious rasp for the destruction of a

stone. Then came (1818-22) the reports of the cases of Civiale, Amussat, and Leroy d'Etiolles, which did so much to improve the operation; and later, further advance has been made by Wm. Coulson and Sir Henry Thompson. While quite recently the operation has been radically improved by H. J. Bigelow, of Boston.

Lithotrity is not performed on calculous male children, unless the calculus is very small; for the reason that the urethra is not large enough to admit a trustworthy instrument into the bladder, and because the child is intolerant of prolonged or frequently repeated interference. Moreover, the lateral lithotomy in children is so safe and satisfactory an operation that no improvement on it is to be obtained.

Nor should the operation of crushing be undertaken in the adult male subject when the bladder is over-sensitive or small, callous and thickened, for there must be room for the free movement of the end of the instrument around the stone. When the kidneys are in all probability the seat of abscess, when the stone is unusually large and hard (oxalate of lime), or when the stone is lodged in a hernial pouch of the mucous membrane, cutting is preferable to crushing.

For the most part, in the female, crushing is not to be chosen unless the stone be small, for should the urethra be paralyzed from over dilatation, no subsequent operation can repair it; whereas if vagino-vesical lithotomy be undertaken any fistula that may result can subsequently be closed. In the female child, then, unless the stone be small, lithotomy is the operation to be selected; in the male child there is, as we have shown above, with few exceptions, no alternative to lithotomy.

Briefly then, lithotrity is to be performed on the healthy adult male when the stone is not unusually large, and not too hard. Most stones up to $2\frac{1}{2}$ ounces, and occasionally even larger, can be crushed. Lithotrity with the entire evacuation of the stone is now (with very few exceptions) performed at one sitting—formerly many operations were required; and a stone weighing $1\frac{1}{2}$ ounces would require perhaps six or eight sittings. Professor Bigelow has succeeded in showing that it is much better to remove all the stone at once, even though the operation may be long and trying to the patient, than to leave fragments of crushed stone for long periods in the bladder. Without anaesthesia, his method is impossible; with it, his plan has afforded results far superior to any yet obtained by any method of removing calculi from the urinary bladder. It must not be forgotten, however, that the modern operation of lithotrity is much more difficult than the older one, and must not be attempted without the surgeon has thoroughly mastered the subject, and if possible witnessed the operation performed by experienced men.

Lithotomy and lithotrity do not permit of comparison; they are not rivals, but are complementary the one of the other. The one

undertaking what the other cannot do ; or, if it can, not with equal safety to the patient.

THE OPERATION AND INSTRUMENTS FOR CRUSHING A STONE IN THE
BLADDER.

When once a stone has been found in a bladder, by careful and gentle sounding, the less instrumental interference there is before operation the better ; if, however, there is partial or complete retention of urine, a catheter must be used. The patient should be kept quiet and warm at home, attention should be paid to the bowels and digestive apparatus generally, the temperature noted, and the



Position of the hands and lithotrite searching for stone.

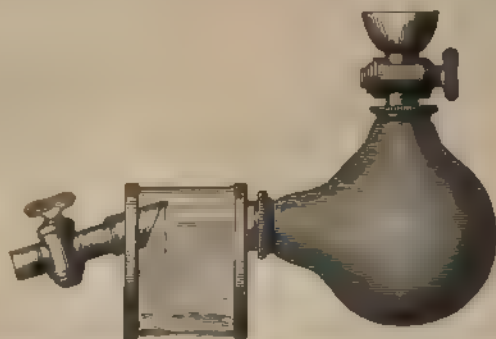
urine examined—particularly as to its density. No operation should be performed, if it can be avoided, while the temperature is above normal, or the specific gravity of the urine low, if under these untoward circumstances an operation is imperative, an uncertain prognosis must be given.

If the operator is experienced or skilful, he will have formed a very accurate estimate of the size of the stone when he first sounded the patient. If he suspects a very large stone, he should, at the time of operation, be prepared to perform either lithotomy or lithotrity, not attempting the former until he has satisfied himself that the latter is impracticable. The night before the operation, the lower bowel should be unloaded by a copious enema : and at the time of operation, the patient should be found warm in his bed, from which he need not be removed. He should have a fasting stomach, and he may be allowed to please himself whether he passes urine before the operation or not. A firm pillow must be placed beneath the buttocks, and anaesthesia induced.

Modern lithotrity cannot be described, so that one description is applicable to all cases, it varies much with the patient, and with the

size of the stone. It is also well to describe the older procedure, or lithotrity at more than one sitting, to enable the student to appreciate the change which has taken place, and also because some surgeons hold that in certain rare cases the older operation is preferable.

Lithotrity at more than one sitting.—Anæsthesia here is not absolutely necessary, although, as a rule, desirable. If there is any uncertainty as regards the size of the stone—and it is very easy to be deceived—a sound should be passed, and the stone examined; as a rule, it will be found that a stone under 2 inches in diameter may be crushed, but much must depend upon the skill of the individual operator. Next, a soft or steel bougie must be passed of full size (12 English). If the meatus is found small, it must be freely divided with a bistourie cachée; and if stricture lower down is found, it must be dealt with as directed further on. Assistants hold the patient's knees aside, and



Sir Henry Thompson's Lithotrity Aspirator with swing valve.

the operator, standing on his patient's right, takes the penis with his left hand, and with his right gently introduces a warm and well oiled lithotrite. He brings the instrument gradually to the perpendicular, lets it remain so for an instant, then gradually depresses the handle between the patient's thighs, and the beak slips easily and gently under the pubic arch and on into the bladder. When the blades have fairly entered that organ, they should be deliberately opened and closed with as little movement as possible, and generally, as taught by that most experienced operator, Sir Henry Thompson, the stone will be found within their grasp. If not, close the blades, and turn to one side; open, and close. If the stone is not seized, repeat the proceeding on the other side, and if the operator is still unsuccessful, he may use the lithotrite as a sound; and, having found the stone, he will have more or less difficulty in seizing it, according to his manipulative skill. When once the stone is crushed, piece after piece may be picked up easily and crushed, as long as the operator thinks well—usually for

about three minutes. A tube (No. 12 or 14 English) is passed, and the bladder washed out with Mr. Clover's aspirator. In three or four days this proceeding is repeated; and repeated again and again, until not a single fragment of stone can be found. It is right to say that before 1878 many operators did not use Clover's apparatus, but trusted to the patient's natural efforts to pass the *débris* between the sittings.

Lithotrity at one sitting when the stone is small.—This operation is exactly like the preceding one, except that, after the use of the aspirator, the surgeon again introduces the lithotrite, crushes fragment after fragment, rejecting small ones as they fall into the jaws of his



Professor Bigelow's Lithotrity Aspirator.

instrument, and only screwing home the male blade when large fragments are seized. He thus reduces the calculus to small pieces, and again washes out. He may use a Clover's aspirator, or the more powerful one of Professor Bigelow, or of Sir Henry Thompson. And he alternately crushes and washes out until all the stone is removed.

Lithotrity at one sitting when the stone is large.—The operation here only differs from the preceding one, inasmuch as larger and more powerful instruments are required to crush, and larger tubes are necessary, in order to shorten the time occupied by the operation. For very large stones, tubes 16 and 17 of the English scale are required, and special lithotrites, which will be found described in works devoted to these matters. These lithotrites differ in no way from those formerly in use, except that they are stronger.

A large stone is often seized with difficulty. Sometimes it can only be grasped with reversed blades—that is, with the blades turned downwards in the bladder, instead of upwards. Sometimes the lithotrite

has to be almost vertical before seizure is effected. Occasionally after the stone is caught, a sharp tap on the male blade with a hammer will succeed better in breaking the stone than force applied by the screw.

Lithotomy when urethral stricture is present.—If the stricture is a very narrow one, it will have been detected when the patient was first sounded. In this case, a gum catheter should be tied in the urethra for some days before the operation. It will necessarily follow that the patient's urethra must admit at the time of operation a No. 7 or 8 (English). Such a condition of urethra is no bar to the performance of lithotomy. The surgeon may perform internal urethrotomy (p. 363 in the French); or, better still, in the writer's opinion, avoid the presence of an important and possibly dangerous wound in the urethra, by passing a series of conical highly-polished steel sounds, and so dilating the stricture until No. 16 (English) passes with ease. The lithotrite can then be passed, and the operation completed. Lithotomy should not be attempted in the presence of stricture if any false passages exist. Lithotrites should only be used whose blades cannot become so separated by debris as not to be approximated before withdrawal. The stone should be broken into small pieces before commencing evacuation, so that there may be no large fragment to become caught in the eye of the aspirating tube, and so possibly to prevent the withdrawal through the stricture of the tube, and the aspirating tube should be fitted with a stylet to dislodge any fragment that may become so caught.—*Lancet*, Nov. 10, 1883.

Accidents. Attention to the precautions which we have just given will avoid injury to the bladder and urethra; but it occasionally happens that the male blade snaps off at its angle. The fragment may be removed by the aid of another lithotrite; but if this appear impracticable, the patient must be submitted to the operation of lithotomy. Cystitis, nephritis, peritonitis, or retention of urine, may follow lithotomy, and so also orchitis and prostatitis. Slight or severe febrile symptoms are by no means uncommon. Inflammation of the plexus of veins about the neck of the bladder is a very grave sequel, and may be fatal. To ensure a good result in a case of lithotomy, the greatest care and supervision must be exercised during and after the time that the patient is under operative treatment.

Relapse.—Should a small fragment of stone be left in the bladder, it will probably form the nucleus of another calculus, so that the surgeon must make sure that all is removed before the patient leaves his care.

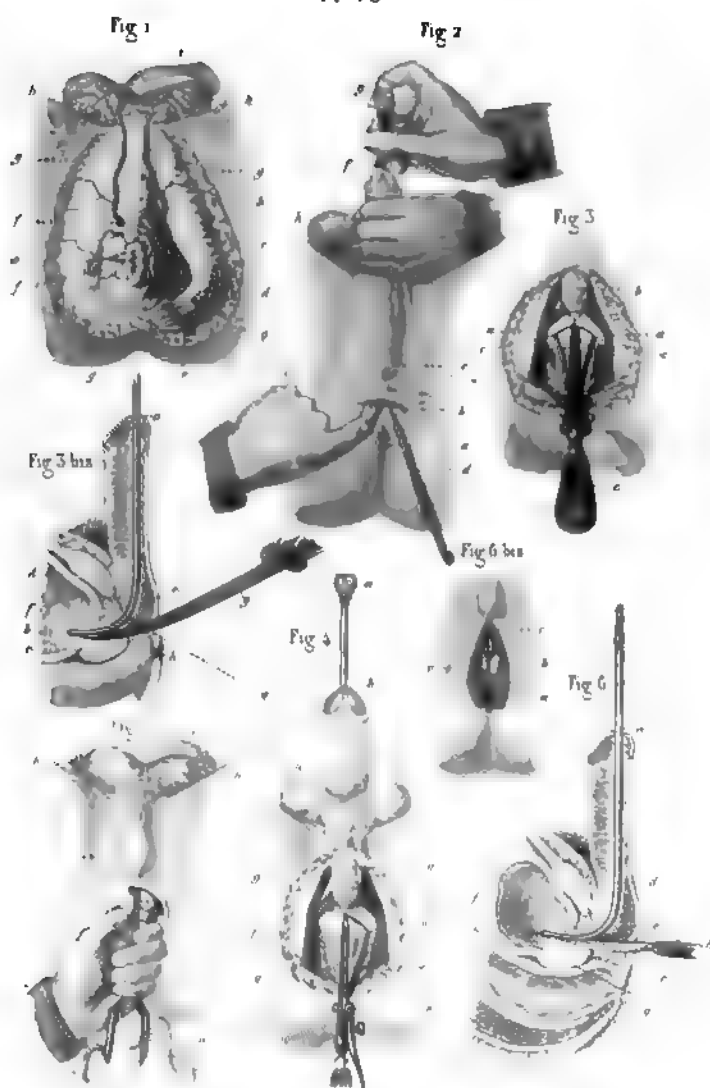


PLATE LXXIX.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE PERINEUM.

Fig. 1.—*The perineum*.—The left half of the figure represents the superficial layers, the right half the deep structures, the superficial fascia being preserved on the left half. *a*, the anus with the external sphincter, half dissected; *b*, the bulb of the urethra covered by the accelerator urinae; *c*, the internal pudic vessels, the artery being superficial and external to the vein. These vessels, traced backwards over the spine of the ischium, enter the pelvis below the pyriformis, but traced forwards, under the protection of the tuberosity and ramus of ischium and pubes, they lie between the two layers of the triangular ligament, giving off branches in their course: these are, *f*, the superficial perineal, for the supply of the scrotum, and *f'*, the inferior hemorrhoidal which passes inwards towards the anus.

The most important branches are the artery to the bulb, which runs from the front of the ischial tuberosity forwards and inwards, and the transverse perineal, which courses along the posterior border of the transversus perinei. These are accompanied by corresponding veins. The internal pudic artery ends in the artery for the corpus cavernosum and the dorsal artery of the penis; *e*, section of glutæus maximus; *g*, *g*, skin. The origin of the adductors and the fascia lata, the coccygeus and levator ani, and the coccyx are also seen; *h*, *h*, testicles; *i*, the penis.

Fig. 2.—*Bilateral lithotomy*.—Introduction of the staff and incisions in the skin.—*a*, Anus; *b*, transverse incision across perineum between anus and bulb; *c*, the index-finger feeling for the groove in the staff; *d*, bistoury; *e*, bulb; *f*, meatus; *g*, the staff held vertically in the middle line; *h*, testicles drawn up by the assistant who holds the staff.

Fig. 3.—*Incision through prostate in the bilateral section*.—The coverings have been removed to show, *a*, the internal pudic vessels; the bulb, *b*, covered by the accelerator urinae; the inferior surface of the prostate, in which is noticed the crescentic incision made by the withdrawal of the separated blades of the lithotome, *c*, *c*. At the middle of this incision is seen a small notch, which passes into the membranous part of the urethra to give greater room; more posteriorly is shown the levator ani.

Fig. 3 bis shows the way in which the double lithotome is introduced, the blade being hidden in the stem.

Fig. 4 shows the way in which the left side of the prostate is cut by the single lithotome. The line of incision, *d*, is also followed by the

lithotomy knife of the English surgeon in the second part of the lateral operation. The incision passes backwards and outwards between the median line and the internal pudic vessels.

Fig. 5.—*Extraction of the stone by the forceps, a*, held in the right hand, the blades being steadied on the stone by the left hand.

Fig. 6 shows a modified operation for stone, the incision passing backwards in the middle line through the prostate and front of the rectum. (*Median Recto-prostatic.*)

Fig. 6 bis shows the result of the section.

LITHOTOMY.

Lithotomy is the operation in which a passage is cut through into the bladder for the extraction of calculi or foreign bodies generally. Every variety of operation which the ingenuity of surgeons could conceive for reaching the bladder has been attempted; but we shall content ourselves here with describing the methods of operating employed in England. A special article will treat of lithotomy in the female.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE PERINEUM.

By the perineum is meant the layers of muscular and fibrous tissues which fill in the triangular interval between the rami of pubes and ischium and the anus: further back, and on either side of the anus, is the ischio-rectal fossa. Beneath the perineum, and partly in its substance, are the urethra, the bulbous and membranous portions, the prostate and neck of the bladder, and, further out, the trunks of the internal pudic vessels and nerve.

The surface markings are, in the middle line, the urethra with the bulb; behind this a slight depression can be made out which corresponds to the central tendon of the perineum, and further back still is the anus. In front is the root of the scrotum, with its median raphe. The fossa at the side of the urethral tube is limited externally by the rami of the pubes and ischium. Behind it loses itself in the ischio-rectal fossa.

The skin is thin, brownish, and elastic, being covered with scattered hairs and sebaceous follicles. Beneath the skin is the superficial fascia disposed in two layers, of which the superficial contains non striated muscular fibres and becomes continuous with the fatty layer on the thighs and in the ischio rectal fossa. The deeper layer of the superficial fascia is thin and membranous; it is attached externally to the rami of pubes and ischium, posteriorly to the base of the triangular ligament, and looping around the scrotum in a wide sheet, passes up to the abdomen and around the penis. On the abdomen it is attached to Poupart's ligament and to the outer lips of the crest of the ilium. This deeper layer of the superficial fascia plays a most important part

in cases of ruptured urethra, for, whilst preventing the urine from passing down the thighs or into the ischio-rectal fossæ, it guides it up on to the abdomen by way of the scrotum and penis, and in the direction of the spermatic cord. This layer of fascia covers in an important triangular space, limited by the following muscles: externally by the erector penis, posteriorly by the transversus perinei, and in the middle line by the accelerator urinæ. Under this fascia are found the superficial perineal branches of the internal pudic vessels and nerve, and, probably, the small transverse perineal branch of artery. In the depths of the space is seen the triangular ligament of the urethra, or the true deep perineal fascia. Into this triangle the surgeon plunges the knife in the beginning of the lateral operation of lithotomy to reach the groove in the staff between the two layers of the triangular ligament, and, cutting backwards and outwards to the interval between the anus and the ischial tuberosity, divides perhaps the superficial perineal branches of vessel and nerve, the transverse perineal muscle and vessels, the inferior hæmorrhoidal vessels and nerve, the base of the triangular ligament, the compressor urethræ, and the wall of the urethra itself.

The central tendon of the perineum is the spot in front of the anus in which the posterior fibres of the accelerator urinæ and the anterior fibres of the levator ani join with the insertion of the transverse muscle of the perineum.

The triangular ligament or deep perineal fascia is a double fibrous layer which fills up the anterior part of the pelvic outlet, and steadies the urethra in its course beneath the pubic symphysis, between the prostate and the bulb of the urethra.

The superficial layer of the ligament covers the compressor urethræ, the internal pudic vessels and nerve, the branches to the bulb and to Cowper's gland. It is lost externally on the rami of the pubes and ischium: in front it is attached to the pubic symphysis and posteriorly it is joined to the base of the deep layer of the triangular ligament, and is in connection with the deep layer of the superficial fascia which has dipped down behind the transverse muscle.

The deep layer of the triangular ligament is a fascia stretched across the pubic arch. Posteriorly it is in connection with the capsule of the prostate and the pelvic fascia. It is separated from the superficial layer by the internal pudic vessels and nerve, the compressor of the membranous part of the urethra, and the artery of the bulb.

If the knife is brought too far forward in the lateral operation the artery to the bulb would be in danger of being divided.

Both the layers of the triangular ligament are pierced, at about an inch below the symphysis, by the urethra, and higher up by the dorsal vein of the penis in its course to the prostatic plexus.

The neck of the bladder is partly behind the prostate gland, partly

surrounded by it. It is steadied in its position by the wings of the pelvic (recto-vesical) fascia passing inwards under the name of the lateral true vesical ligament. This same fascia surrounding the prostate is also connected with the back of the pubes and the bladder under the pubo-prostatic or anterior true ligaments of the bladder. Passing down to the side of the prostate are the anterior fibres of the levator ani.

After the knife has reached the groove in the staff it is made to travel on from the membranous part of the urethra through the side (left) of the prostate and the neck of the bladder, dividing in its course a few fibres of the levator ani.

Position and course of incisions in the lateral operation.—The superficial incision should not be started too far forwards lest the bulb of the urethra or its artery be injured. The surgeon must feel for the prominence of the bulb at about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches in front of the anus of the adult, and should plunge his knife boldly in towards the membranous part of the urethra behind the bulb and close to the left side of the median line. Nothing is gained by keeping the point of the knife well forward at the commencement of the operation; the ripping up of so much of the canal is undesirable. This incision must extend to a point between the tuberosity and the anus, and a little nearer to the former, well back into the ischio-rectal fossa, so that the inferior extremity of the passage cut into the bladder may be the most capacious part, and so that urine may have no impediment in its flow to the exterior of the perineum. It is well also that the operator endeavour to hit the staff in the first plunge of the operation; if this be effected the following parts will have been divided by the time that the knife has emerged from the ischio-rectal fossa—skin and superficial fascia, branches of the superficial perineal vessels and nerves, the transverse perineal vessels and muscle, the base of the triangular ligament, the membranous part of the urethra with the compressor urethrae, the inferior hæmorrhoidal vessels and nerves, and the fat in the ischio-rectal fossa.

Now, before this incision is made, the surgeon must have obtained a thorough knowledge of the anatomical position of the tuberosity and the ramus of the ischium, the anus, and the rectum. He must assure himself, by introducing his finger into the bowel, that the rectum is not distended with faeces and bulging into the ischio-rectal fossa, for if this be the case it will stand in great danger of being wounded as the knife passes backwards through the fat in the fossa. While the left index-finger is in the rectum it will be well to feel by it the staff in the bladder and urethra, and, possibly, the calculus.

If the incision be taken too far outwards and the point of the knife be allowed to travel up under the ischium, the internal pudic vessels would be in peril. The dangers in connection with the last part of

this incision will be the wounding of the rectum or the internal pudic artery.

Second incision.—Although we are in the habit of speaking of the first and second incisions in lateral lithotomy, it must not be supposed that the operator is to make only two with his knife. On the contrary, he may have to draw his knife several times from before backwards in making the opening into the perineum and ischio-rectal fossa according to his experience. By the second incision one means the deepest part of the cutting operation by means of which the groove of the staff is laid bare, and the prostate and neck of the bladder are incised. The surgeon introduces his left index-finger into the front of the wound and feels the grooved staff in the membranous part of the urethra. He then makes the nail of the finger a guide for the knife to reach the groove. The point of the knife being thus engaged in the groove, the surgeon feels with certainty that all is going well, and he makes the knife to travel on in the groove until a rush of bloody urine informs him that he has reached the bladder. The back of the point of the knife must be made to rub firmly along the groove the whole way, lest it wander out between the bladder and rectum and fail to enter the bladder. The knife must be then withdrawn, with the handle depressed, so as to enlarge the bladder opening.

The parts which are necessarily divided are, the base of the triangular ligament, and perhaps a few fibres of the accelerator urinae, the urethra between the layers of the ligament, and the compressor urethrae. Then the prostate, and its capsule derived from the pelvic fascia, and the neck of the bladder. In the adult this incision is best limited to the prostatic part of the bladder, lest, the pelvic fascia being freely divided, urine find its way into the loose tissue in the floor of the pelvis, and infiltration ensue. But in the child it is impossible to keep the incision in such narrow limits, on account of the exceedingly small dimensions of that gland.

The incision, however, must not be too cramped, especially in the child, lest, on account of the slender connections of the neck of the bladder, the whole viscus be pushed up into the pelvis by the finger which seeks the stone. No doubt many of the cases in which no stone has been found at the time of the operation have been consequent upon the incision into the bladder not being properly made.

Knowing, then, that he has opened the neck of the bladder, the surgeon passes the left index-finger on to the groove in the staff and works it over the concavity of the staff into the bladder, hooking down, as it were, the staff in the endeavour to reach the interior of the bladder. Then he feels for the stone, and having his finger against it, he requests his assistant to withdraw the staff. The finger thus introduced dilates the wound, and over it is passed the forceps; the stone

is seized and worked out by lateral movements. It must not be pulled straight out, lest damage be done by laceration. If the stone is very large, a nick may be made into the right side of the prostate, or if it proves to be a calculus of enormous size it must be crushed, or the supra-pubic operation must be at once performed. A 'petticoated' tube may be introduced into the bladder, and there left if there seems to be much hæmorrhage; a syringe-ful or two of cold water will generally be enough to check oozing.

The following rules deserve the attention of the young lithotomist. Never cut a patient unless you can strike the stone when you are about to operate. Let your first incision be free, so as to get plenty of room for the second, which should not be made too far forwards nor of too limited an extent. Be sure to lay the staff well bare before running the knife towards the bladder. Never allow the staff to be withdrawn until you have touched the stone with your index-finger. Take no thought of dash, display, time, or lookers-on, but proceed step by step with care and certainty. If the rectum is prolapsed as you are about to commence, do not diminish the space required for your incisions by returning the protruded part.

The median operation.—By the 'median operation' is meant the removal of a stone from the bladder by an incision through the middle line of the perineum. This method of procedure was, in late years, revived by Allarton, who was of opinion that the bladder could by its means be opened with much less injury to tissues, especially as regards the pelvic fascia, and with less risk of damaging important arterial branches, such as the artery of the bulb and irregular trunks from the internal pudic.

A full-sized staff, with a groove running along the convexity, having been introduced into the bladder, the patient is tied up in the usual way. The surgeon then introduces his left index-finger into the rectum, and, feeling the staff in the urethra, keeps the end of the finger against the apex of the prostate gland. The point of the knife is now plunged into the perineum about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in front of the anus, the back of the knife being directed towards the rectum. The incision is then carried forward in the middle line of the perineum for about an inch. The urethra having been opened at the triangular ligament, a button-ended probe is pushed along the groove of the staff into the bladder; the staff is then withdrawn. The finger then, following the track in which the probe lies, makes its way into the bladder and feels the stone. The finger being kept against the stone, and dilating the wound the while, prepares the way for the forceps, and the stone is extracted.

Remarks.—This operation answers well for the extraction of a small stone or of a small foreign body; but these are just the cases in which lithotritry can usually be employed with advantage. Moreover, small

bodies can well be removed by the lateral method; for it is not, as a rule, the incision into the bladder which, in fatal cases, causes the unfortunate result, but the laceration of the parts which is necessitated by the removal of a large stone. The larger the stone, the more unfavourable the prognosis. Certainly there is less risk of hæmorrhage following on the median than on the lateral operation, and less risk of opening up the reflections of pelvic fascia, and of death occurring from urinary infiltration into the connective tissue of the pelvis. But as the incision lies so far to the front of the pelvic outlet, there is, evidently, little chance of being able to remove a large stone by the median operation. If, to obtain greater space, the incision is taken far forward, the bulb would be cut, if taken backward the rectum would be opened.

The '*medio-lateral*' operation is performed much in the same manner as the median, but in order to obtain more room for reaching and extracting the stone, the incision is carried backwards and outwards from the membranous part of the urethra into the ischio-rectal fossa.

By the use of Buchanan's rectangular staff, the angle of which is made to project well into the perineum, the bladder is reached with great ease.

Dupuytren's bilateral operation was introduced with a view to obviate the risk of wounding the bladder unnecessarily, or of cutting beyond the limits of the pelvic fascia, as it surrounds the prostate. Both lobes of the prostate being divided, it is held that ample room is obtained without further cutting or rough dilatation. The operation is rarely performed in England, because, since the days of Cheselden and Liston, the simple lateral operation has been found to fulfil almost every requirement.

The staff, which has a wide median groove in its convexity, is passed and held in the usual way, and the surgeon, with his left forefinger introduced into the rectum, makes a crescentic incision just in front of the anus, the convexity being directed forwards. The ends of the incision are carried round into each ischio-rectal fossa. Cutting down, layer by layer, and guarding well the rectum, the surgeon at last exposes the staff as it lies in the membranous part of the urethra (Plate LXXIX., Fig. 2). Guided by the groove on the staff, the *lithotome caché* is then introduced into the bladder, the concavity being turned upwards (Fig. 3 *bis*). The staff is now withdrawn, and the lithotome turned with the concavity directed downwards. The surgeon then presses a button on the handle so that the hidden blades start out of the lithotome and effect the section of the two sides of the prostate as the instrument is withdrawn. The amount of separation of the blades and consequent section of the lobes of the prostate can be arranged beforehand by the adjustment of a screw (Fig. 3). The

lithotome having been withdrawn, the calculus is extracted in the usual manner.

Surgeons have occasionally removed stones from the bladder by cutting through the anterior wall of the rectum; but it is not necessary to more than allude to the fact that such an operation has been performed.

PLATE LXXX.

SUPRA-PUBIC OR 'HIGH' OPERATION.

Fig. 1. *Antero-posterior median section*, showing the thickness of the perineum and the position of bladder and rectum, and a sound, *a*, with a hidden blade, *b*, which is made to travel from the interior of the bladder through the abdominal wall in the supra-pubic region. *p*, Prostate; *v*, seminal vesicle; *pv*, recto-vesical pouch; *d*, symphysis; *e*, bulb; *t*, testis; *f*, bladder distended by fluid.

Fig. 2. *High operation. Section in linea alba.*—*a*, Bistoury, plunged into the small wound made by the sharp guide; *b*; *b'*, point of guide passing through thickness of abdominal wall. The distended bladder, the rectum and the prostate are also shown.

Fig. 3. *Incision into the bladder.* *f*, previously distended, the bistoury, *a*, the edge being directed towards the pubes, the back resting upon the curved index-finger of the left hand.

Fig. 4. *Dilatation of the wound.*—*Extraction of the stone.*—*a*, Hook or elevator raising the stone, *c*. The wound is dilated by a gorget held by an assistant, and by the operator's left index finger.

Fig. 5.—*Extraction of calculus.* *c*, by the forceps; *l*, the thumb and fourth finger being passed through the rings of the forceps. The left hand steadies the forceps nearer the wound, and helps in traction; *d* and *d'*, edges of wounds.

Fig. 6. *View of the interior of the bladder*, the upper and back parts having been removed, so as to show the line, *e*, of the hypogastric section; *g*, the incision for the median operation; *f*, *f'*, shows the bilateral section of Dupuytren—the half on the left side would pretty nearly indicate the line of incision in the English operation. *h*, ureters; *b*, seminal vesicles. The body and ramus of the pubes are marked in dotted outline.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE SUPRA-PUBIC REGION.

When the bladder of the adult is empty it lies deeply in the pelvis, hidden behind the pubes; but when distended it rises high up, nearly to the umbilicus, and pushes up with it the peritoneum, leaving always the surface of the bladder behind the anterior abdominal wall bare of serous coat. Of this fact the surgeon takes advantage in certain operations. The skin of this part of the abdominal wall is thickened



above the pubes by a considerable addition of fat, constituting in the female the *mous venerna*. The region in the middle line, corresponding to the *linea alba* beneath, is covered by a longitudinal streak of hairs. The skin in this line is a little darkened, and beneath may be made out the furrow between the *recti abdominis*; but in a very fat subject the situation of the *linea alba* can only be distinguished by drawing a line on the surface from the symphysis pubis to the ensiform cartilage. The amount of fat in the superficial fascia varies; it is, as a rule, more abundant in women than in men, and may increase to such an extent in either case as to render the wound in the high operation for stone excessively deep.

On either side of the *linea alba* is the *rectus abdominis* in its sheath; the muscle is narrower near the pubes than elsewhere. In front of the *rectus* in this neighbourhood is the *pyramidalis*, an accessory muscle, which is inserted into the *linea alba*. The *rectus* arises from the crest and symphysis of the pubes, and passing straight upwards is inserted into the cartilages of the lower *true ribs*. The borders of the muscle are thinner than the middle portion, and along the outer edge is seen a somewhat crescentic marking, corresponding to the border of the *rectus* and the ending of the fleshy fibres of the oblique muscles in the aponeurosis; this is called the *linea semilunaris*. The deep epigastric artery, a branch of the external iliac, lies so far away from the inner border of the *rectus* that it is in no danger of being wounded in supra-pubic lithotomy.

Behind the lowest part of the *rectus* no sheath is found, but the muscle lies upon a layer of condensed connective tissue known as the *transversalis fascia*, which varies much in character, being sometimes thick and strong, at others loose and lax, or impregnated with fat. It separates the posterior surface of the anterior wall of the abdomen from the peritoneum and the distended bladder, and is often firmly attached to the *linea alba*.

The remains of the umbus and of the two hypogastric arteries are found between the peritoneum and the recti.

When the bladder is distended this layer of connective tissue becomes thinned; but it is nevertheless somewhat tough, like the sheath of an artery, and may require to be cautiously divided by a crucial incision. It is quite possible to reach the bladder from above the pubes without having distended the viscus with water; but in doing this care must be taken not to wound the fascial layer unnecessarily. If the bladder be previously distended the operation is facilitated by its easy recognition: to strip up the serous pouch is an easy task. The catheter introduced into the bladder by the urethra is useful as a guide. If the coats are hypertrophied there may be some trouble in extracting the stone, but the incision in the front of the viscus must not be taken down too far, lest the veins of the neck be injured.

OPERATION.

The high operation is performed in England when the stone is too large to be extracted by the perineum. Mr. Holden says ('Landmarks') that Jean de Dot, a smith at Amsterdam, cut himself in the linea alba, above the pubes, and took out of his bladder a stone as large as a hen's egg. 'The stone, the knife, and the portrait of the operator, may be seen to this day in the museum at Leyden.'

The operation is unsatisfactory on account of the frequency of injury to the peritoneum, and also on account of the danger of urinary infiltration. About one in three is the proportion of success.

The operation is thus performed: the patient is placed on his back, and an incision three or four inches in length is made in the middle line down to the pubic symphysis. A catheter introduced by the urethra is steadily held by an assistant, the handle being well depressed so as to make the beak approach the hypogastric region in the middle line. This will be a sufficient guide to the surgeon without injection of the bladder. The operator will work through the lower part of his incision, keeping close towards the pubes, cutting through the fibrous structures of the linea alba. Having divided the transversalis fascia, he will strip up the peritoneum with his fingers, and feel down behind the pubes for the end of the catheter, over which he will make an incision. A soft gum elastic catheter will be allowed to remain in the bladder for a few days, and a tube in the wound so as to keep urine from the wound.

Though this operation is performed but rarely in the present day, nevertheless a deformed pelvic outlet, or ankylosed femora will occasionally render its selection imperative. There are several methods of performing it described, but the simple one to which we have just called attention is to be preferred. A scalpel, scissors, director, dissecting forceps, catheters, calculus forceps, retractors, needles and sutures will be all the instruments that are required.

TUMOURS OF THE BLADDER.

In the Female.—For more than a century, tumours in the female bladder have been removed. Some, having protruded through the meatus, were ligatured or craseured; others were reached by dilating the urethra, and were then ligatured or scraped off. But in the year 1879, the author (Mr. A. T. Norton) excised a sessile papilloma about an inch square, situated on the trigone, the operation being followed by death on the twelfth day; and in the same year he removed a second successfully in a similar manner, the patient having no recurrence at the present date.

In the first case, the tumour occupied the trigone, and the operation performed was as follows:

Spring scissors were inserted, one blade into the bladder, and the other into the vagina, up to the level of the tumour, the vaginal wall was then separated from the bladder wall, and then the whole thickness of the bladder, including the growth, was cut away with scissors, and the vaginal wall reunited with sutures. Instead of reuniting the vaginal wall, it is much better, in order to prevent septicæmia, to keep up continual antiseptic irrigation, and to leave the reunion for a second operation when the parts have recovered themselves. In the second case, the tumour, also a papilloma, was on the front of the bladder. The bladder was opened through the urethra and vagina, and the tumour was excised, antiseptic irrigation kept up, and a month later, when all parts had healed, the communication between the bladder and vagina was operated upon, and cured after the manner of an ordinary vesico-vaginal fistula.

In the male, tumours may be removed by perineal or by supra-pubic cystotomy.

In Stein's 'Study of Tumours of the Bladder' is reported a case by Billroth, in 1874, a tumour, the size of the fist, in a boy twelve years of age. Lateral incision was made in the perineum, but the size of the tumour rendered its extraction impossible. A supra-pubic incision was then made without injury to the peritoneum, and to give sufficient room both recti muscles were cut across at their attachment; a transverse incision was then made into the bladder. The tumour, which was found to be connected with the muscular coat, was separated from its attachments by the finger-nail. Two arteries were tied, and the ligatures brought out through the upper incision. A drainage-tube was drawn through the bladder and brought out at the perineal incision. On the fifth day, the wound granulating freely, the drainage-tube was removed. In thirty-four days the wound had closed, and the patient was discharged cured.

Supra pubic operation.—The bladder is to be first distended with disinfectant solution. An incision some three inches in length is made in the mesial line immediately above the pubes, after dividing the linea alba, the finger, handle of knife, or dissecting instrument separates the tissues close to the body of the pubes, till the bladder is felt. The bladder being exposed may be drawn up by ligature, passed through half the depth of its wall, and not penetrating its cavity. The bladder, drawn in part outside the abdominal incision, and there held by the ligature or tenaculum forceps, may now be opened gradually and carefully to a sufficient extent, and the contents allowed to escape. If now there should not be sufficient space to get freely at the tumour, the pubic attachments of the recti may be in part or wholly separated, as in Billroth's case. Next, in order to expose the tumour the rectum may be plugged to the required extent by sponges or by a distensible air-bag, thus pushing the bladder and tumour upwards and forwards to

the abdominal opening. The tumour may then be removed, according to the circumstances of the case, by the finger-nail, the scoop, *écraseur*, or thermo-cautery.

The operation being completed, the extreme danger of the urinary secretion being in contact with a raw wound has to be remembered; there can be no doubt that complete drainage and even irrigation are in these operations a very real necessity, and for that purpose it must be surely wiser to open the bladder through the perineum and let the drainage-tube be continuous through the upper and lower openings.

Sir Henry Thompson has had a series of clipper forceps made of different sizes and shapes for the purpose of cutting the growth from the bladder-wall. They can be used either in the perineal or the supra-pubic operation.

The incisions for the removal of a tumour from the bladder by way of the perineum are the same as for lithotomy, the lateral incision being the preferable.

PLATE LXXXI.

OPERATIONS PRACTISED ON THE GENITAL ORGANS OF WOMEN.

CUTTING FOR STONE IN WOMEN.

Fig. 1.—*Anatomy of the perineal region in women*—C, Anal sphincter; C', constrictor vaginae; P, anus; V, vagina; u, clitoris; u', meatus urinarius; m, m, superficial branch of the internal pudic artery; b, clitoris, or deep branch; l, l, transverse muscle; i, i, middle aponeurosis; a, a, internal pudic artery; f, f, gluteus maximus; r, levator ani.

Fig. 2. *The vestibular operation in women.—Method of Ligfranc.—First step of the operation.*—A, Curvilinear incision practised in the vestibule, and designed to give exit to the calculus—at the same time the vestibular space is enlarged by lowering the urethra, v, by means of the catheter, S; l, b, fingers of assistants keeping the labia majora apart; V', external orifice of the vagina; l, l, labia minora.

Fig. 3.—*Urethral operation in women, seen in profile section of the perineum, so as to show the relation of the different organs in the operation.*

Method of Laurent Colot. P, Anus; S, grooved sound introduced into the urethra and bladder; V, vagina; a, uterus; a', orifice of the cervix uteri; a'', vesico-uterine fold of peritoneum; b, bladder; c, vesico-vaginal septum; d, recto-vaginal septum; e, lower part of the rectum not invested with peritoneum; e', upper part of the rectum; l, middle hæmorrhoidal artery; t, straight lustoury, the end of which, u, is engaged in the grooved sound (see Operative Procedures)

PL. 31

Fig. 2.

Fig. 3.





SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE FEMALE PERINEUM.

In women, as in men, the ano-perineal region may be considered in its entirety as a musculo-fibrous floor, designed to close the lower part of the abdominal cavity. The floor is, pretty nearly, formed in the two sexes by the same planes, disposed in the same order. The modifications affect only the organs which traverse this floor. Thus it always presents two regions—the one posterior, or anal; the other anterior, urethral or perineal, properly so called.

There is nothing to add respecting the first, in which the same elements are met with—in the centre is the rectum, which descends surrounded and supported by the levator ani, ending below in the anal orifice (*P*, Fig. 1), itself surrounded by the anal sphincter, *C* and presenting right and left the ischio-rectal space bounded by the obturator internus and levator ani, and their aponeuroses. This space, filled with fat in the recent state, is traversed by the internal pudic artery, *a*. It is less deep in women than in men; but it is more extended transversely, which is explained by the greater separation of the two ischial tuberosities, which diverge obliquely outwards, and are less prominent.

The result is that the anus is not so deep, and it is found on nearly the same plane as the two tuberosities, without the great quantity of celluloso-adipose tissue with which the skin is thickened at the level of these prominences.

In front, on the contrary—that is to say, in the perineal region properly so called—we have to point out notable differences, which do not affect the disposition of the superposed layers or planes, but the organs which traverse these layers. Thus this portion of the perineum is, like the preceding, traversed through the centre by a membranous canal (the vagina, *V*, Fig. 3), situate between the rectum and the bladder, surmounted by the uterus, the neck of which it embraces, and of which it may be considered the excretory duct. This canal ends below at the vulva. In front it is in immediate relation with the urethra.

The vagina and urethra traverse the perineal aponeuroses, the disposition of which is the same as in man.

The vulva, or the whole of the external parts of generation, presents itself externally in the form of an elongated fissure from the mons veneris to one inch in front of the anus.

The fissure is bordered on each side by two more or less projecting cutaneous folds, which are the labia majora. These, opposed to each other by the internal surface, are free and covered by hairs on their external or cutaneous surface.

The internal surface is mucous, and one finds here, as at the level of nearly all the orifices where internal and external integuments are

continuous, the almost insensible transition between skin and mucous membrane, marked only by the change in colour

By their posterior extremity they are joined to one another to form a membranous fold, the posterior commissure or fourchette, which is nearly always torn in delivery

One finds in their thickness dartos tissue, hairy and sebaceous follicles, an expansion of the *fascia superficialis*, and the superficial aponeurosis

On separating the labia majora, two other folds appear, formed by erectile tissue and covered by a mucous fold, which is here abundantly endowed with sebaceous follicles. These folds, the labia minora, less developed than the preceding, commence internal to the labia majora, at the level of the posterior third of the vulva, by a thinned extremity, and end in front by uniting together.

Here they cover a small rounded eminence, the clitoris, more or less prominent, and formed of abundant erectile tissue, or rather of a cavernous body springing from two roots, very rich in nerves, and surrounded by a fine fibrous layer, which lines the mucous membrane.

a, a, internal pudic artery.

Behind the posterior border of the transverse muscle, *l, l*, this artery divides into two branches: the one superficial, *m, m*, which is destined to the labia majora and mons veneris; the other deep, or clitoric artery, which goes to the clitoris.

Veins accompany the arteries. A certain number of those which come from the clitoris always communicate with the vaginal veins.

The lymphatics go to the inguinal glands; the nerves come from the internal pudic and the inguinal branches of the lumbar plexus.

About half an inch behind the clitoris, *s*, the external orifice of the urethra, or meatus urinarius, *v*, is seen, and a quarter of an inch behind the meatus another small nipple, less prominent than the clitoris, exists, named the urethral tubercle. It is the anterior part, the termination of the column or anterior longitudinal crest of the vagina, slightly enlarged in the form of a tubercle.

The space which separates the clitoris from the meatus urinarius, and which is bounded on each side by the angular opening of the two labia minora, has received the name of vestibule, and is of some interest to the surgeon on account of its great dilatability, which allows him to obtain a space more than double (one inch or more) when the urethra is depressed backwards, or when, after labour, or from any other cause, the meatus urinarius, carried upwards, rises to behind the symphysis pubis.

Below the vestibule, and at the level of the urethral tubercle, begins the vaginal orifice, which occupies all the posterior part of the vulva nearly to the fourchette, from which it is only separated by a small triangular space, the fossa navicularis. The orifice is, in virgins, more

or less closed by a thin membrane, somewhat disposed in the form of a diaphragm, with a central aperture, sometimes like a crescent, of which the free concave border looks forwards. It is this membrane, known as the hymen, which is torn during coitus, and is represented by little tubercles called *carunculae myrtiliformes*.

Outside these caruncles the excretory canal of the vulvo-vaginal gland opens.

The *vagina*, *V*, a short distance from its external orifice, is embraced by the spongy body which has received the name of Bulb of the Vagina.

The walls of this membranous canal are constituted by a layer of erectile tissue, by fibres of dartoid tissue, of which one set, longitudinal, arranged on the anterior and posterior aspects, form within the vagina two projections, which have received the name of Columns of the Vagina, and of which the others, circular or curvilinear, extended from one column to the other, and forming within a great number of transverse folds, raise the mucous membrane, which covers or invests the internal surface of the organ. Lastly, at the level of the external orifice there is a veritable ring of muscular fibres, the sphincter or constrictor vaginae, *C'*. The mucous membrane contains a great number of follicles and glands; the vulvo-vaginal gland, situate without the vagina, through the walls of which its excretory duct passes, seems to be one of the most developed of these glands. The arteries come from the internal iliac, the veins, frequently anastomosing with each other and with those of the clitoris, empty into the vesical vein. The nerves come from the hypogastric plexus.

The anus, *P*, is surrounded by the sphincter, *C*; *r*, levator ani; *i*, ischial tuberosity; *S*, clitoris; *f*, *f*, glutei maximi.

The female urethra, much shorter and less complicated than that of man, begins at the *mentus urinarius*, is directed obliquely upwards and backwards, presents a slight curve with the concavity upward, which follows the symphysis pubis, and ends at the neck of the bladder. Wanting a prostate, it widens, and is placed near the lowest part of the body of the bladder. The length of the urethra is rather more than an inch. In front, it is within a third of an inch of the pubic symphysis; posteriorly it is at first in immediate relation with the anterior wall of the vagina, which is grooved by a canal to receive it, then it deviates from it a little above, and is separated by a cellular space a quarter of an inch in extent. This canal, larger than that of man, is besides eminently dilatable. In other respects it has the same structure as that of man.

The bladder, *b*, presents nothing particular in women; it rises forwards and a little above behind the pubic symphysis; behind it is in relation, not with the rectum, but with the vagina and uterus, *a*. The vagina, *V*, is four to five inches long from the cervix uteri to its

external orifice. In the normal condition it has a diameter of about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches; but by forcible extension it may attain to double that, especially in its middle and upper parts; for at its orifice it resists dilatation much more. Like the urethra, it describes a curve with the concavity forward: its axis, oblique from above downward, and from behind forward, falls in front of that of the outlet of the pelvis.

The vagina is in relation, in front, with the base of the bladder, which, in the extent of that position corresponding to the vesical trigone, is united with it by a filamentous cellular tissue in such a manner that the peritoneum, which is reflected over the posterior surface of the bladder, does not descend to the vagina. The arrangement is not the same behind, where the vagina, immediately connected with the rectum, in its middle part, is separated above by the peritoneum reflected from the anterior aspect of the rectum to the posterior aspect of the vagina, forming the recto-vaginal cul de sac, of which the bottom is rather more than an inch from the surface of the perineum. Below, the vagina, on account of its curve, deviates from the rectum, and is separated from it by a cellular tissue; *c*, vesico-vaginal septum; *d*, recto-vaginal septum.

Situate in the pelvic cavity between the bladder and the rectum is the uterus, *a*, of a pyriform shape, of which the larger end is upwards. The two upper thirds form the body of the organ; the lower third constitutes its neck.

The uterine axis is generally considered as oblique from above downwards, and from before backwards. But from recent researches it is found that in the foetus, the child, the young girl, in a word, up to the epoch of the first pregnancy, the axis of the body of the uterus forms with that of the neck an obtuse angle, an angle which may sometimes be even acute: so that these two parts, the body and the cervix, are flexed on each other.

In all cases the body and cervix are separated by a constriction: the anterior and posterior surfaces are convex: the upper and lateral borders, convex, unite by two rounded angles, which give attachment to the Fallopian tubes, the round ligaments, and the ligaments of the ovary.

The cervix uteri projects half an inch into the vagina, the walls of which are inserted around it. This projection presents in the middle the uterine orifice, the os tincæ. The form of the cavity of the uterus is elliptic at the level of the cervix, and triangular in the body, the two superior angles being continuous by a very narrow orifice with the cavity of the Fallopian tubes. The cavity of the cervix and that of the body are separated by a marked narrowing which can seldom be passed by the sound without difficulty, and without causing rather sharp pain.

The uterine walls are very thick and covered by peritoneum, which

in front is reflected from the posterior wall of the bladder to invest the anterior surface of the uterus, and behind covers the posterior surface in its reflection from the rectum to the uterus. Of these two folds, or *cul de sac*, in which loops of intestine may lie, the posterior descends lower than the anterior, the bottom of which is half to two-thirds of an inch from the insertion of the vagina. This serous investment and the folds to which it gives rise, and which form the broad ligaments, are, with the vagina and the round ligaments, nearly the only means of fixing the uterus. Accordingly this organ is exceedingly mobile and exposed to deviations and displacements.

It is susceptible of great development in spite of the resistance of its walls, to such an extent that, barely reaching the level of the superior pelvic opening in the normal condition, it sometimes rises to about the umbilicus during pregnancy.

Besides the serous tunic, the uterine walls present a very thick layer of muscular tissue, which, but little apparent in the empty state, acquires a very great development during pregnancy. These fibres constitute almost by themselves the whole thickness of the organ: they are covered on their internal aspect by a mucous membrane closely attached. The mucous membrane of the cervix presents a great number of muciparous follicles, which when distended by their secretion have received the name of *Ovula Nabothi*.

The arteries of the uterus come from the ovarian and internal iliac arteries. The veins (which in the thickness of the uterine tissue present only their internal membrane and the dilatations of which during pregnancy form the uterine sinuses) outside the organ follow the same direction as the arteries. The nerves emanate from the hypogastric plexus; few in number, they go to the body and cervix.

The broad ligaments formed by two serous folds extend transversely outwards, being prolonged to the superior extremity of the vagina. Subdivided into three secondary folds or wings they are lined by some muscular fibres, prolongations from the uterine fibres. The three folds contain the round ligament which ends in an expansion in the cellular tissue of the *mons veneris*; the Fallopian tube, a slightly flexuous narrow tube, opening into the abdominal cavity by a fringed orifice; and lastly, the ovary and the ovarian ligament.

The ovary is the essential organ of generation in woman, is united to the uterus by a fibro-muscular ligament, and has an ovoid shape, flattened from before backwards.

In childhood, and up to the epoch of the first menstruation, the surface of the organ is smooth; then in proportion as the woman advances in age, this surface becomes uneven and fretted by the formation of numerous cicatrices, which correspond to the evolution of ova.

The ovary is formed by a very dense fibrous membrane covered by

the peritoneum of the posterior wing of the broad ligament, and constituting, by the prolongations which emanate from its interior surface, the stroma of the ovary, a species of fibrous mesh where the ovules form, or rather the Graafian vesicles, to which the corpora lutea succeed.

The ovarian arteries come from the aorta, the veins accompany the arteries. It is the same with the nerves which come from the renal plexus.

OPERATIVE PROCEDURES.

ON CATHETERISM AND CUTTING FOR STONE IN WOMEN.

(a) *Catheterism*.—Catheterism may be practised with the patient lying down or sitting on the edge of a bed, the parts being covered or uncovered.

The catheter ordinarily used is the female one, generally carried in every pocket case, it is usually made of silver and is short, its length being from six to seven inches. Slightly curved and designed to traverse a short and but slightly curved canal, it generally enters the bladder very easily. The only difficulty, if ever there is any, is to find the meatus urinarius. If the parts are uncovered, this difficulty does not occur. In the first case the patient lies on the back, the legs and thighs separated and slightly flexed, the pelvis a little raised. The operation may be performed by the right or left hand, the position of the surgeon being considered indifferent; but, generally, it is easier to stand on the right of the bed.

Carrying the left hand pronated on the pubes, the surgeon separates the labia majora and minora with the thumb and index finger of that hand, and uncovers the vestibule and meatus. Then, taking in the right hand the catheter, previously oiled, he holds it almost like a pen. It is sometimes useful to close the catheter with the index-finger, in order to avoid soiling the clothes by the first jet of urine.

The direction of the catheter is such that the concavity looks upwards. The beak is applied to the urethral orifice; and, as soon as the instrument is engaged, it is lowered to free it from the symphysis pubis, then it is raised a little, and pushing it forwards in the direction of the urethra, it is introduced at once into the bladder.

Sometimes, as in cases where the pelvis is deep in the bed, in old age, during pregnancy, or after delivery, it happens that the urethra, rising with the bladder towards the pelvis, becomes very oblique, or even rises entirely behind the symphysis pubis.

In such circumstances, M. Velpeau advises the separation of the nymphæ by the thumb and middle-finger of the left hand, and with the index-finger of the same hand forcibly lifting the clitoris and vestibule, so as to lower the meatus urinarius and bring it forward, then to pass the hand with the catheter, not directly between the

patient's limbs, but below the ham which corresponds to the side occupied by the surgeon.

Should this not be sufficient, a more curved catheter, or even a male catheter, would be required.

In these difficult cases one has not often a choice of means, and it is necessary to catheterize the patient uncovered : but generally it is not so ; and as feminine modesty ordinarily revolts at being thus exposed, the surgeon is obliged to catheterize guided only by touch, and without the aid of the eye. Search may be made for the urethral orifice by proceeding from before backwards, or the reverse.

In the former case, M. Velpeau advises, as previously, the separation of the labia minora with the left thumb and middle-finger, and raising the clitoris with the index-finger, the nail of which remains turned towards the meatus urinarius ; then carrying the point of the catheter on this nail, it is made to glide gently along the middle line from above downwards on the vestibule, and it then almost necessarily enters the urethral orifice.

In the second case, which is the preferable, inasmuch as many women have great objection to manipulation of the clitoris, the surgeon, standing on the left, carries the index-finger of the left hand, the pulp being directed forwards, towards the posterior part of the vulva. The finger meets successively with the fourchette, the vaginal orifice, and the urethral tubercle, $\frac{1}{2}$ of an inch from which is the orifice of the urethra ; the finger thus serves to conduct the catheter, held in the right hand, which is directed along it to the urethra. This method may also be conveniently adopted when the patient is lying on her left side in the usual obstetric position.

In performing the operation of catheterism in women, it will be found much more convenient for all purposes to use a gum elastic male catheter than the silver instrument advocated in the text. A good size is the No. 8 English, but other smaller sizes should be at hand. When the urethra is tortuous, compressed, or elongated, the flexible instrument adapts itself readily to the distorted canal, and renders this sometimes troublesome operation much more easy to the surgeon, as well as less painful to the patient.

(b. *Cutting for stone*.—This operation is but rarely practised on women, and it may be given as a precept, and before all indication of procedures, that it should not be resorted to without absolute necessity. Many reasons concur to render this operation infrequent. These reasons are the consequence of the fortunate anatomical disposition of the female urethra ; its shortness, its want of curvature, and, above all, its great dilatability, which, joined to the declivity of the neck of the bladder, and the absence of the prostate, render easy the emission of calculi, when of small volume ; or allow of their being easily seized and extracted when they have not acquired a very notable size.

Nevertheless, sometimes we are obliged to have recourse to this operation. As in man, it may be practised above or below the pubis, by the perineum or high operation.

The perineal operation consists of three methods: in the first, the bladder is penetrated through the vestibule; in the second, the vagina is involved; in the third, the urethra is engaged, a method which we reserve to the last, to incorporate dilatation and lithotomy.

Vestibular operation (see Plate LXXXI, Fig. 2).—The patient being placed, as directed by Ledran, on the edge of a table or bed, is to be turned on her back in such a way that the body occupies a line between perpendicular and horizontal, the thighs being separated and flexed. One or more assistants, *b, b*, are charged with keeping the labia majora and minora, *l, l*, apart. The surgeon, standing between the patient's legs, introduces into the urethra an ordinary catheter, *S*, and turns it downwards so as to depress the urethra and vagina, *V*. The surgeon then, recognising the pubic arch, and holding a bistoury in the right hand like a pen, makes a curvilinear incision, *A*, about $\frac{1}{2}$ of an inch below it, the convexity being directed upwards.

The incision should begin at the level of the right lateral aspect of the meatus urinarius, and finish diametrically opposite on the other side. The tissues are then severed layer by layer to the bladder, care being taken to hold the handle of the bistoury a little lower than the point. Having reached the bladder, the bistoury is either plunged in by puncture, or the walls are incised on the catheter, or, lastly, according to Lisfranc, the left thumb is introduced into the vagina, and the index-finger into the wound, and, exercising slight traction on the tissues, the bladder-walls are stretched and the incision made surer. In all cases, the bladder-wall being cut above the neck, the left index finger is introduced into the wound and the wound enlarged.

The wound should be $\frac{3}{4}$ to 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ inches in length. The forceps are then to be introduced and the stone extracted.

Vesico-vaginal operation.—This operation, first performed by Roussel, consists in making an incision one inch or more in length into the vesico-vaginal wall. It has been practised by Fabrice de Hilden, Merri, Ruysch, and in latter times by MM. Faure, Chénut de Rochefort, Flaubert, and Rigal.

The process is very simple. Introduce an ordinary catheter into the urethra, the convexity looking downwards, and depress the vesical wall; a straight bistoury is then to be carried into the vagina, an incision made upon the instrument and enlarged to the desired length, care being taken to avoid the urethra.

M. Velpeau proposed a slight modification which consists in placing the woman not in the ordinary position for lithotomy, but lying on the abdomen, the thighs and leg separated and flexed.

Urethral operation (see Plate LXXXI)

different pro-

cedures of urethral lithotomy may be ranged under two principal heads. sometimes one or two lateral incisions are made into the urethra, sometimes the urethra is incised directly upwards or directly downwards.

If it is intended, after Fleurant and Louis, to incise the urethra bilaterally, the surgeon employs either the instrument of the latter, which is composed of a flattened sheath furnished with two lateral openings, into which a double-edged blade is introduced, and which cuts both ways, or, preferably, the double lithotome of Fleurant or Dupuytren, which are very analogous. If, on the contrary, a unilateral incision is preferred, for which M. Klein invented the name of *condemnation*, the section of the urethra is made obliquely from above downward and from right to left, by the aid of a grooved sound, which serves to conduct either a long straight bistoury, or, what is simpler, the lithotome of F. Cline. Lateral incisions are at present completely abandoned. meanwhile Dupuytren believed, and M. Velpeau inclines to the opinion, that the bilateral incisions may offer some advantage.

In the second method, the incision of the posterior wall of the urethra directly downwards has been proposed by M. Malgaigne, resembling a little vesico vaginal lithotomy. this may be termed urethro-vaginal lithotomy.

Incision of the upper wall of the urethra directly upwards, attributed to A. Dubois, belongs, according to A. Paré, to Laurent Colliot. The operation is very simple. a grooved sound (see Plate LXXXI. Fig. 3), is introduced into the urethra, the groove directed to the symphysis. This instrument, when the end is pressed upon, serves on the one hand to depress the vaginal wall: on the other to introduce a straight bistoury, or a lithotome each, by means of which the urethra is incised throughout its length, and the surrounding tissue to the sub-pubic ligament. This incision gives an opening of nearly $\frac{1}{2}$ of an inch, a small opening which barely permits the extraction of small calculi. The forceps being introduced, and the stone seized, a recommendation of M. Velpeau should be remembered, especially useful in this case, and which may moreover be equally so in all sub-pubic lithotomies. The handles of the forceps must be raised in such a way that they are applied to the inferior wall of the urethra, and that the instrument, being directed in the lower axis, does not impinge the stone against the symphysis.

Supra pubic operation—Concerning the operation, nothing need be added to what has been said respecting hypogastric lithotomy in man.

Lithotomy. The same may be said of lithotomy.

Remarks.—This resume of the different operations for stone in women appears to condemn nearly all of them. The calculi which it is possible to extract through an incision not an inch in length are all

or nearly all small enough to be removed by lithotrity, especially aided by an operation which it remains for us to speak of, careful dilatation of the urethra.

Thus reduced to the exceptional cases of large calculi, which we cannot usefully crush, lithotomy may be practised by the vagina or by the high operation.

DILATATION OF THE URETHRA.

The idea of extracting foreign bodies or calculi by the urethra naturally occurred to the minds of surgeons, as is shown by many examples, in which the canal was sufficiently distended for bodies as large as hen's eggs or goose eggs, if we may believe Heister, Collot, Plangue, and others, to have passed. Dilatation may be performed suddenly, as suggested by Tolet, or slowly, as first suggested by Douglas. First suddenly. The urethra may be dilated by introducing a grooved sound or a gorget, in the groove of which the finger is forcibly thrust, or by a bivalve or trivalve speculum, the blades of which can be forcibly and rapidly expanded. Secondly, slowly, by daily introducing into the urethra a tent of prepared sponge or gentian root, the size of which is progressively increased.



PLATE LXXXII.

OPERATIONS INVOLVING THE GENITAL APPARATUS
PROPERLY SO CALLED.OPERATIONS APPLICABLE TO RUPTURE AND FISTULE OF THE
VAGINA.

Fig. 1.—This figure shows the state of the parts after perinæorrhaphy by Dieffenbach's method, modified by the substitution of the quilled suture for the twisted suture. *P*, Anus ; *u*, urethra ; *v*, vagina ; *i*, *i*, semilunar lateral incisions ; *d*, *d*, *d*, threads tied around a quill ; *c*, *c*, *c*, loops of thread round the opposite quill.

Fig. 2 represents the operation to remedy vesico-vaginal fistula ; it shows the fistula after paring the edges and while the sutures are being passed. *A*, Cervix uteri depressed by tenacula, *t*, *t* ; *B*, vesico-vaginal fistula, with the edges pared, and through which the end of a female catheter, *S*, introduced through the bladder by the urethra, *u*, is passed ; *P*, anus ; *b*, *b*, fingers of assistants separating the labia ; *d*, *d*, *d*, sutures passed through the lips of the fistula ; *c*, curved needle carrying a suture through the edges.

Fig. 3.—Operation for vesico-vaginal fistula by adaption of the edges of the fistula.—*Dessault's method*.—*S*, a support to bring nearer the edges of the fistula ; *l*, *l*, labia minora separated by the fingers of assistants, *b*, *b* ; *u*, meatus urinarius ; *a'*, edges of the fistula, one of which is partly pared ; *a*, shred detached by the bistoury ; *c*, held by forceps.

Fig. 4.—*Antero-posterior section*.—To show the relation of the parts concerned in the operation for recto-vaginal fistula.—*Method of M. Jobert*.—*V*, Vagina ; *b*, bladder ; *c*, vesico-vaginal wall ; *e*, rectum ; *l*, upper lip of the fistula drawn upon by a thread ; *l'*, the descent of which is facilitated by lateral incisions ; *u*, meatus urinarius.

Fig. 4 bis.—*The same operation completed, seen from the front*.—*l*, *l*, Labia minora separated by the fingers of assistants, *b*, *b* ; *u*, meatus urinarius ; *a*, fistula ; *c*, *c*, points of interrupted suture ; *d*, *d*, *d*, threads of three other points of suture ; *l*, upper lip of the fistula drawn down ; *P*, anus.

Fig. 5.—Operations for vesico-vaginal fistula by elythroplasty.—*Method of M. Jobert*.—*P*, Anus ; *u*, meatus ; *b*, *b*, fingers of assistants separating the labia ; *a*, vesico-vaginal fistula ; *l*, flap for closing it, taken from the skin of the buttock which shows a wound, *i*, of the form of the flap ; *l'* pedicle of the flap.

OPERATIONS ON THE VELVA.

1. Many of these operations differ scarcely at all from those of the same kind which may be practised elsewhere.

Thus the labia majora are frequently the seat of abscesses which are important, on account of the rapidity with which they develop, the frequency of vulvar fistulae which follow them, and the foetid odour prevailing in the pus of these abscesses, as in all collections which form near the orifices of natural openings. The operation is a suitable incision. There is a precept which should always be taken into account in making the incision: that is, as far as possible, to make it in the cutaneous aspect of the abscess. In this way the cavity is preserved from contact with the fluids which may flow from the vagina.

It is unnecessary to insist upon certain other operations which are not of great interest; thus the amputation of a hypertrophied clitoris, or one which has become the seat of any morbid growth, may be made by bistoury or scissors, the ligature may be rejected, the labia minora may be removed by excision or ligature. Excision by knife or scissors, or ligature of the clitoris or labia minora, is, ordinarily, not so satisfactory as removal by actual cautery, for in the case of excision bleeding is apt to be very troublesome, and with the ligature the tediousness and pain are both objectionable. Removal by *ecraseur* does not altogether prevent hæmorrhage; and, all things considered, the actual cautery is decidedly preferable.

Lastly, more deeply situated tumours, vaginal tumours, require great precautions, and demand much attention on the part of the surgeon. Minute dissection is necessary in order to avoid, with certainty, wounding the walls of the canal in which he operates. If he has to do with a tumour situated in the recto-vaginal or vesico-vaginal walls, he should assist himself by rectal examination or catheterism. If a foreign body is introduced into the vagina, he must conform to the precepts given for extracting foreign bodies from the rectum, unless he prefers, where the foreign body is very large, dividing it, like Dupuytren, by introducing a small saw or cutting forceps into the vagina, or, like Lisfranc, incising the perineum.

2. *Imperforate vagina*.—The vaginal orifice, in part normally closed by the hymen, is sometimes completely closed by this membrane. A small crucial incision with removal of the flaps suffices, or, in default of instruments, when there is accumulation of menses behind the obstacle, with thinning of the partition, he may do as Malgaigne did, burst it by forcible pressure with the finger. If the partition is dense, the operation may be repeated.* But imperforation of the vagina

* This small operation is by no means free from danger: numerous cases have been recorded where death, due to the onset of septicæmic poisoning or peritonitis, has followed the incision of the imperforate hymen. With the view of averting these dangers, it has been proposed to carry out the operation under strict antiseptic precautions.

may be due to congenital absence of a part of the canal, or to morbid adhesions. In the latter case generally the occlusion is incomplete, and well-directed dilatation with sponge tents, aided, if necessary, by incisions, will be sufficient. In the former case, on the contrary, the canal may be wanting for a small portion of its length, and at the epoch of puberty, when the menstrual blood, accumulating at the bottom of the sac, gives rise to a fluctuating tumour, one may, aided by rectal touch and catheterism, puncture the tumour by a trocar and afterwards enlarge the artificial passage by a bistoury. Lastly, when one has to do with one of those cases in which the vulva barely presents more than the urethral orifice, remembering the example of M. Amussat, a kind of vagina may be made by simple pressure with the finger, aided by dilatation by means of sponge tents, in order to get near enough to the existing vagina, or rather vaginal *cul-de-sac*, to give exit to the accumulated fluid by puncture. This was done to a girl of fifteen and a half years by M. Amussat, who began by forcibly depressing the mucous membrane by a large sound, then he used the finger, carrying it immediately below the arethra to the point where the vaginal orifice should be found. In the depression which ensued he placed and kept forcibly applied a piece of sponge tent. Three days afterwards fresh attempts were made to break down this wall, followed by slight tearing of the mucous membrane, and the application of sponge tents. Lastly, at the end of five or six attempts a conduit measuring $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches was formed. Fluctuation was easily felt. The index-finger, passed into the bottom of the canal, served to guide a trocar, by means of which the tumour, having been separated by a layer of tissue an inch thick, was penetrated.

The opening was enlarged by a blunt-pointed bistoury, covered by lint for $\frac{1}{2}$ of its blade, and was kept open by means of a large sound.

3. *Perineorrhaphy* (Plate LXXXII, Fig 1) This is the name given to the operation by which it is proposed to remedy a more or less complete laceration of the perineum, and even of the recto-vaginal septum.

Rupture of the perineum, a very common accident after parturition, may, when it is recent and not so extensive as to transform the vaginal and anal orifices into a cloaca, be cured by the insertion of a few silver sutures, the recumbent position, and by the thighs being kept closed, extended, and immobile.

But when the tear is old, extensive, and especially when it involves a part of the recto-vaginal septum, it is necessary, after having pared the edges with scissors or a bistoury, to keep them in apposition by deep sutures, either by suture *a points passés*, or by quilled sutures, or still better, the common interrupted suture: the patient is then placed on her back, the thighs are brought together immovably, and must not be disturbed except to draw off the urine which the patient may not pass

naturally, or for motions, which one should endeavour as far as possible to prevent until the eighth day. If the sutures are found to drag too much on the edges of the wound, semi lunar incisions, with the convexity outwards, may be made in the skin to the right and left of the sutures, after Dieffenbach's method.

Each incision should commence $\frac{1}{2}$ inch outside the posterior border of the labia majora, widening at its greatest convexity to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, and finishing less than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the anus.

Deep sutures should be removed in fifty-six hours, but if the ordinary interrupted sutures be used, they may be retained till the fourth, fifth, or sixth day, but superficial stitches may be left in place until cicatrization is perfect; for the success of operation is likely to be lost by precipitation, or the rent may be replaced by a small fistula, which disappears with difficulty. One may often count on union by the first intention.

An operation for the restoration of the functional integrity of the anal sphincter in cases of rupture of the perineum into the bowel, suggested and practised by Dr. Wiltshire, deserves mention here. In addition to the ordinary operation of paring the edges of the ruptured parts, Dr. Wiltshire cuts down upon the retracted ends or stumps of the sphincter, the remains of which can be felt like a crescentic cord at the posterior margin of the anus, and in inserting the sutures he is careful to add an additional one, which picks up and reunites the separate ends of the torn sphincter, so as to restore the integrity of the lacerated ring.

A similar plan has been since advocated in a recent edition of Dr. Chubbard Thomas's work on the 'Diseases of Women.'

In cases in which the communication between the vagina and rectum is complete the author places the greatest reliance in the following arrangement of suture. A simple deep interrupted suture should be carried down, well below the laceration, and carefully adjusted in the septum between the rectum and vagina, so that entering the tissues a good half inch outside the denuded surface it never touches the surface until it reaches the corresponding point on the opposite side.

As regards the material of which the suture is composed, opinions vary. The twisted silver wire suture is very manageable and quite reliable. To prevent the ends irritating the skin, a knot of gutta serena, softened by hot water, should be applied to each.

Pure silk, carbolized cat-gut, or silkworm gut may be used.

OPERATIONS ON THE VAGINA.

1. *Venico-vaginal fistula*.—This is not the place to enunciate at length the series of procedures which have been successively proposed

to remedy a lesion which involves so painful and disgusting an infirmity. This useless trouble would only be, as usual, an indication of the poverty of sufficient means, or an indication of a great number of operations, all more or less inefficient, among which one may almost choose at hazard.

A lucky idea, ably put into practice by M. Jobert, allows us nowadays to do justice to old procedures, to relegate to the surgical arsenal numerous and varied instruments that henceforth can be of no service, as also to bear witness to the incessant efforts of modern surgery to solace a misery formerly considered as beyond remedy, until J. L. Petit, and afterwards Desault, soon followed by the German surgeons, fixed attention to the subject.

It is therefore useless to recall that J. L. Petit confined himself to a simple attack by means of a tampon in the vagina, a tampon much more frequently troublesome than useful, especially when complicated with the bandage added by Desault, that MM. Malagodi, Roux, Lallemand and Nagel, pared the edges of the fistula, and then reunited them by interrupted sutures, the quilled, or looped suture; that MM. Lallemand, Caubet, Langier, etc., successively invented an infinite variety of forceps and hooks.

To cauterize the edges of the fistula, one introduces into the vagina a univalve speculum, or the duck bill speculum, then an actual cautery, or caustic (nitrate of silver generally) is applied to the edges of the fistula thus exposed. The caustic is either fixed in a straight caustic-holder, or perpendicularly at the end of a long forceps. If the fistula is very small, it may sometimes be closed; generally it fails, and it may happen that, far from determining adhesive inflammation, an eschar is produced, which transforms a small canal into a large opening.

The operations must vary according to the size of the orifice, or rather of the loss of tissue. In some cases much, or the chief part, of the bladder wall has been lost by sloughing; in others there may be but the smallest communication; and in others of traumatic lesion where an incision has been made in the vesico vaginal wall there is no loss of tissue whatever, and the condition is readily obliterated by paring the edges of the orifice and applying sutures of the interrupted variety in sufficient number.

Simple suture — In order to perform this simple though rather troublesome operation, a duck-bill speculum is to be inserted into the vagina; the fistulous orifice drawn well into view by tenaculum or vulsellum forceps: then an electric light is of great advantage. The edges of the wound are to be pared, but not only the edges of the wound, it is well to take off the mucous membrane of the vagina for a $\frac{1}{4}$ inch all round the fistula, for by this means there is formed a good free surface denuded for approximation.

The sutures may be of silk wove gut or of fine silver wire, and may be passed by an ordinary rectangular curved needle of very small size. The needle should be passed just outside the denuded surface, carried deep enough to get a good hold, and should reappear just short of the bladder-surface, re-enter at the corresponding point on the opposed surface, and again appear outside the denuded surface. The surfaces should now be very carefully adjusted, and the sutures fixed rather loosely, *not* tight enough to slough out. It is well now to inject milk into the bladder to see if the orifice is closed; and if so, then to retain a catheter in the bladder for a week or ten days. The wound should be looked at on the fourth or fifth day, and if any suture show sign of irritation it should be removed; if not, they may remain two or three days longer.

Two operations generally suffice to cure any fistula where little or no tissue has been lost. Cases in which much tissue has sloughed away are among the most troublesome and painful that surgery has to deal with, and for their relief complicated operations have been carried out.

Perineorrhaphy.—M. Vidal employed a sort of perineorrhaphy; he proposed to close the vaginal orifice by paring the periphery of it and uniting it by suture: but as M. Sedillot stated, the vagina became an appendage of the bladder; and, admitting a complete success, the genital functions were abolished, and the woman exposed to other accidents, for the menstrual blood must of necessity arrive first in the vagina, and then rise up, after a longer or shorter sojourn, into the bladder, to be expelled by the urethra, the only possible issue of a cloaca which can never be completely emptied. Attempted twice, the operation has not been judged by its results, for in the first case it failed, and in the second the patient died. In judging it, then, even favourably, in admitting the complete obliteration of the vagina as possible, such an operation must be performed as a last resource, applicable only to cases of very considerable loss of structure, and in women who have passed the critical age.

Elytroplasty.—The first and oldest is an autoplasmic procedure, which consists in closing the fistula by a cutaneous flap taken at the expense of the labia majora or the buttocks (see Plate LXXXII., Fig. 5).

The edges of the fistula, having been previously pared, are made tense, stretching the labium majus of the side from which it is proposed to cut the flap; then by two connected incisions an angular, or semi-lunar, flap of suitable size, and especially long enough not only to close the fistula, but to resist retraction, is circumscribed. This flap should be cut so that the base or pedicle is as near as possible to the vagina. Sometimes the extent of the fistula may oblige the surgeon to prolong his incisions to the buttocks, so that the flap may be long enough; nevertheless, it should be made with extreme reserve, especially

in fat women, for the cutaneous flap lined with cellulo-adipose tissue may be too thick and difficult of introduction ; while deprived of this tissue it becomes exposed to gangrene.

The flap is afterwards dissected from the summit towards the pedicle, which is left broad and thick enough for the skin to preserve its vitality. Then the summit of the flap being traversed by a wax thread, its introduction is proceeded with, and it is fixed by two sutures. These two steps present certain difficulties, especially if the fistula is rather high in the vagina.

The operator begins by folding the flap, rolling it on itself, then, introducing a female catheter by the urethra, and bringing the end out by the fistula, the two ends of the waxed thread are passed through the eye of the catheter, which is then withdrawn, bringing with it the ends of the thread. The threads are then to be moderately drawn upon, the other hand at the same time gently pushing the flap through the vaginal orifice, within the vagina, until it is engaged in the fistula. To fix it there the index-finger of the left hand is carried up to one of the angles of the fistula ; on this finger, serving as a conductor, a curved needle, or needle in a holder, armed with thread, is slid up ; with one thrust the vesico-vaginal wall and the flap are traversed ; then with forceps the needle is brought out. It is then armed again with thread, and in the same way a similar suture is put in the other angle of the fistula. The indispensable necessity of including each of the two angles in one suture will readily be conceived if one wishes the flap to be opposed to the vivified edges of the fistula. A double knot generally suffices : or a perforated shot may be used to finish the ligature.

The patient is then removed to her bed ; a catheter, introduced with care so as not to disturb the flap, is left in the urethra. The catheter requires constant watching for fear it should be shifted or get stopped.

Six or seven days afterwards, the sutures, the ends of which have been left in the vagina so that they may be more easily found, begin to loosen ; little by little the flap adheres more intimately to the lips of the fistula ; but to avoid the chance of gangrene, M. Jobert advises that the pedicle be not cut before about the fourteenth day.

Cystoplasty.—The second method of M. Jobert rests essentially on the anatomical disposition already indicated, that is to say, on the relations which exist between the uterus, bladder, and peritoneum. It will be remembered that the vesico-uterine peritoneal cul-de-sac is shallower than the recto-uterine cul-de-sac, and that in consequence the cervix uteri and the posterior wall of the bladder are in immediate connection, and are united by lax cellular tissue, which allows of isolation of the two organs one from another to the extent of more than 1 inch.

It is precisely that which has allowed M. Jobert to obviate the traction which causes cutting of the lips of the fistula by the sutures.

The operation necessitates a pretty complete list of instruments: thus a univalve speculum, tenaculum forceps, blunt-pointed and sharp bistouries, curved scissors, straight scissors, long and strong forceps, curved needles, the dart-shaped catheter of Lewisinsky or Deyler, sutures, a female catheter, one or more syringes filled with water, and sponges fixed on holders.

The instruments being arranged, the operation is begun. The patient is placed on her back with the legs separated. The surgeon depresses the lower wall of the vagina with the speculum so as to show the cervix uteri, and, directed by the index finger of the left hand, which he slides along the anterior wall of the vagina, he seizes the cervix uteri with the tenaculum forceps, sideways if the fistula is longitudinal, and in the contrary way if it is transverse, but always in such a manner as to leave the anterior insertion of the vagina on the cervix free. The forceps being fixed, the speculum is withdrawn, and moderate traction is made on the cervix so as to bring it down as much as possible. Is it necessary to add that if the first pair of forceps do not suffice more may be used? When the cervix uteri is brought down it is well, before going further, to proceed to a last exploration of the fistula, either by introducing a sound through the urethra into the mouth of the fistula, or by injecting fluid (preferably milk) through the urethra.

The great advantage of the last step of the operation is the bringing of the fistula almost under the operator's eyes. To obtain this result more completely, which is frequently wanting when the uterus resists the attempts to bring it lower, and especially to prevent the dragging which usually occurs on the upper lip of the fistula when the operation is finished, the vagina is detached from its insertion to the uterus by a semi-lunar incision made transversely; the cellular space which separates the bladder and cervix uteri is thus penetrated, and the two organs are isolated by slow and careful dissection, grazing the anterior aspect of the cervix, the most superficial fibres of which are incised if necessary. M. Malgaigne prefers generally to reserve this part of the operation to the end, because it is only at this time that one can appreciate the traction, and one may thus apportion more suitably the extent of the incision and dissection.

There are different advantages in the two cases: the incision done at this time facilitates the lowering of the uterus; done later it is perhaps better proportioned, although, in truth, the traction, the effects of which are feared, is not immediately produced, but according as inflammation develops after the operation: it appears then, preferable, especially when the uterus offers much resistance, to terminate this dissection early. This being done, the blood is sponged away, or it is

stopped by a current of cold water ; then, seizing the edges of the fistula one after another with toothed forceps, they are pared by the blunt-pointed bistoury. If the fistula is transverse, one must begin at the posterior border, which, by reason of its position being lower, would be masked by the blood which would flow from the anterior lip. The paring should be through the whole thickness of the vesico vaginal wall, and in cases when one meets with indurated tissues the operator must not be content with simply paring, but should remove them entirely.

The next process is to apply the sutures. To pass them M. Jobert often used the barbed catheter of Deyher. But the management of this instrument is somewhat complicated, and it is not indispensable. When the fistula is pared the wound is generally large enough to allow the finger being passed into the bladder and guiding the needle. The operator should always prefer this method, which has the advantage of greater simplicity, and, above all, allows him to assure himself that the needle has traversed the whole thickness of the wall, which is sometimes great. The needle then, armed with the suture, is introduced into the bladder, then it is brought through the other lip, from the bladder to the vagina, and the same manœuvre is repeated as many times as it is judged necessary to insert sutures. If too great obstacles compel the operator to use the barbed catheter, he introduces it through the urethra into the bladder so as to bring the end to one of the lips of the wound, then, pushing the barb armed with the suture, he traverses this lip, disengages one of the ends of the suture, and returning the barb in its sheath, he does the same to the other lip, and thus has the two ends of the suture hanging outwards. In these two cases the two lips of the fistula are comprised in the loops, the number of which is proportional to the extent of the fistula. The two ends of the suture are lightly drawn to approximate the two lips of the wound, then they are only lightly tied, so as not to cut the flesh, for fear of exciting too sharp inflammatory reaction. It may happen that the anterior lip is the seat of some dragging ; it is good in that case, to combat its effects, to practise some small incisions in the vaginal mucous membrane parallel to the lips of the fistula. If the operation has been well done, if the lips of the wound are well adapted, the fistulous orifice should be sufficiently well closed to prevent an injection passed into the bladder penetrating into the vagina. One of the two ends of the sutures may be cut, the other being left in the vagina, which will be an easy means of finding the loop when it becomes time to remove the sutures ; then the forceps are withdrawn, a catheter is placed in the urethra, and the patient is removed to her bed. It is not necessary to follow M. Jobert's example of placing a tampon of agaric in the vagina ; there is no fear of hemorrhage, and if a little blood should flow, the means which serve to remove the clots from the

vagina will always suffice : it is only an oozing which is easily overcome by injections of cold water.

At the end of eight or ten days, in general, the process of cicatrization is sufficiently advanced to allow the removal of the sutures : the uterus is lowered, and, guided by the ends which hang in the vagina, the loops are cut and withdrawn.

When the sutures are removed the fistula may be only diminished, and not cured. In this case, sometimes cauterization, or better, a fresh suture, completely cures, or it may be necessary to operate more than once.

The vagina may be the seat of two other kinds of fistula which operative surgery proposes to remedy. It may happen that a more or less extensive solution of continuity of the recto-vaginal septum constitutes a recto-vaginal fistula : or sometimes one sees a communication established between a portion of the intestinal tube, above the rectum, and the vagina : an entero-vaginal fistula.

(a) *Recto-vaginal fistula*.—What has been said of vesico-vaginal fistulae applies to recto-vaginal fistulae : paring and adaptation of the edges, cauterization, and sutures may be employed. One may also have recourse to a kind of suture exactly comparable to cystoplasty : the edges of the fistula being pared and united by some points of interrupted suture, incisions parallel to the great axis of the fistula are practised on each side. This is a new application of the precept of Celsus, Franco, and Dieffenbach (Plate LXXXII., Fig. 4 and 4 bis).

Lastly, as a last resource in cases of failure, one may still imitate Saucerotte, who, having failed by the suture, transformed the fistula into a rupture of the perineum and septum by an incision of the lower part of the recto-vaginal septum, and had recourse to perineorrhaphy.

(b) *Entero-vaginal fistula*.—As regards the treatment of entero-vaginal fistulae, in which the continuation of the intestinal channel becomes more or less obliterated, surgery offers but few resources. Two operations of this kind have been attempted by two different processes ; in both cases the patients died. In the first M. Roux incised the abdominal wall, and after having attempted to separate from the vagina the portion of intestine which communicated with it, he wished to invaginate it in a loop of intestine which he believed to be below the fistula. At the autopsy it was found that instead of invaginating the portion of intestine, which was the seat of the fistula, in the lower end of the colon, it had been made to communicate with the gut above the level of the fistula. In the other case, M. Cammayor devised the following much more simple and also less dangerous process.

The operation was performed with the aid of a particular apparatus, a kind of enterotome, composed, like that of Dupuytren, of two stems articulated like forceps, 8 inches long, each furnished with an oval

plate, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch long and half that breadth. One of these two stems introduced into the vagina was carried through the fistula to the upper end of the intestine ; the other was conducted through the rectum to the level of the first. The two plates were then only separated from one another by the thickness of the opposed walls of the intestine and rectum. By the two faces, which should correspond, the plates offer some indentations designed to maintain its relations more securely. Then, the two branches being approximated, the intestinal walls are strongly compressed. By the aid of this constriction it is sought to produce a loss of substance, which, putting in communication the two portions of intestine, allows the fæces to follow the new passage. It is to be regretted that pneumonia carried off the patient, and rendered useless a well-conceived operation.

PLATE LXXXIII.

OPERATIONS APPLICABLE TO THE TREATMENT OF
UTERINE POLYPI AND PROLAPSE OF THE WOMB.

Fig. 1.—*Ligature of a polypus*.—*A*, Polypus; *b*, gorget held by an assistant to separate the polypus from the vaginal wall and help the action of vulsellum forceps, *d*, and at the same time to facilitate the passage of the ligature, carried round the pedicle, *c*, by the knot-fastener; *u*, the meatus urinarius; *h*, fingers of an assistant; *P*, anus.

Fig. 2.—*Torsion of a polypus*.—*A*, Polypus; *B*, bivalve embracing the pedicle of the polypus; *P*, anus; *u*, meatus; *c*, torsion forceps.

Fig. 3.—*Excision of a polypus*.—*A*, Polypus; *P*, anus; *l, l*, labia separated by the fingers of assistants, *b, b'*; *u*, meatus; *t, t*, tenaculum forceps, which draw upon the polypus, the pedicle of which is partly cut through by strong scissors.

Fig. 4 bis.—*Prolapse of the uterus and vagina*.—*u*, Meatus; *l, l*, labia majora; *A*, vagina drawn outwards by the uterus between the labia majora, the neck of which, *b*, is seen externally; *P*, anus.

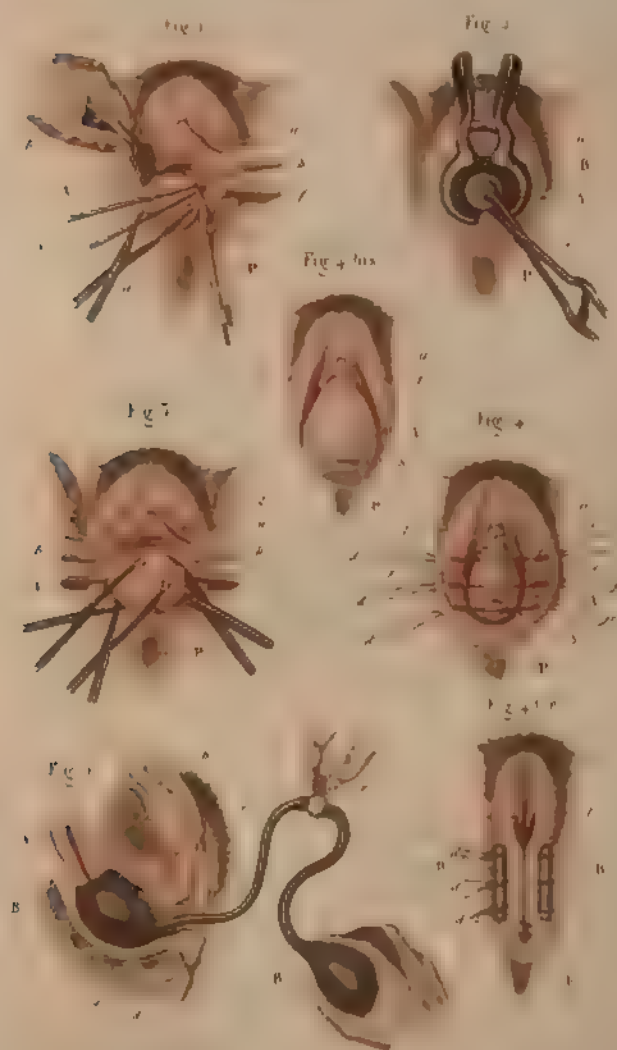
Fig. 4.—*Obliiteration of the vagina*.—*A*, Vagina prolapsed; *b*, cervix uteri; *P*, anus; *l, l*, labia; *u*, meatus; *s, s*, internal surface of the labia majora pared at the level of the vaginal orifice; *c, c, c*, loops of suture which traverse the labia majora at the level of the pared portion, and of which the ends, *d, d, d*, are seen on the opposite side.

Fig. 4 ter.—*Procedure of Frick of Hamburg (episiorrhaphy)*.—*Operation completed*.—*l, l*, Anterior portion of the labia majora; *P*, anus; *B, B*, quills engaged on the one side in the loops of the sutures, *c, c, c*, and over which on the other side the ends, *d, d, d*, are tied.

Fig. 5.—*Antero-posterior median section, to show the application of an air pessary*.—*A*, Uterus pushed up by the ball, *B*, introduced into the vagina; *c*, rectum; *d*, recto vaginal wall; *u*, meatus; *v*, vagina vesical wall; *b*, bladder; *s*, tap which controls the communication between the vaginal ball, *B*, and the external ball, *B'*, which is emptied on being compressed to distend the other.

OPERATIONS UPON THE UTERUS.

Operations applicable to uterine polypi.—This is not the place to enter upon extended anatomico pathological considerations of uterine polypi: these do not in effect decide the surgeon in preferring one method over another; he relies more upon the indications furnished by the consistence and volume of the morbid product, and, above all, he is careful to ascertain if it is pedunculated or not.





OPERATIVE PROCEDURES.

There are several methods of operation which have been proposed for the cure of uterine polypi. Of these, three are very seldom employed; they are cauterization, crushing, and torsion. The other methods—avulsion, ligature, ceraseur, and incision—are more important.

(a) *Cauterization* was known to the ancients, it is nowadays nearly abandoned. The operative procedure is the same as that which will be described apropos of cauterization of the cervix uteri; it is done with the actual cautery or caustics.

(b) *Crushing*. Having to do with a small polypus of soft consistence, Recamier introduced the finger into the cavity of the cervix uteri, and it was sufficient to press the polypus between the cervical wall and the bulb of the finger to break up and extract it. In a similar case this example might be imitated. One may also, if the polypus is very voluminous, but appears soft, have recourse not to a real crushing, but to a strong compression with forceps to diminish the volume somewhat, as Dupuytren and Recamier once did, causing almost complete disappearance by combining pressure, crushing, and avulsion. It was a large polypus, consistent, which could not be lowered by any means. These surgeons broke it up several times with tenaculum forceps and the fingers, so as to make it a pulp, which suppuration was left to eliminate.

(c) *Torsion*. Like crushing, torsion is hardly anything else than undistinguished avulsion. The polypus being seized and forcibly drawn upon by forceps, an effort is made to twist the pedicle, as in the treatment of nasal polypi. If the polypus is soft, it yields more to the efforts at traction than those of torsion; if it is hard, at least when the pedicle is not very small, it resists, and it is not only the polypus which is twisted, but the whole uterus.

(d) *Avulsion*. Avulsion is still an imperfect method; it is reserved for polypi which are not very firm. The index finger is passed into the vagina, the polypus is recognised, and the polypus forceps are slid along the finger and the growth seized; and partly by traction and partly by torsion it is sometimes entirely torn away, generally only partially. In the latter case, the forceps are again introduced, and the attempts are renewed until it is all extracted.

M. Malgaigne indicates another procedure, applicable to multiple polypi, viz., drawing down the uterus with tenaculum forceps, then, with a curette introduced into the uterine cavity, scraping all the internal surface. This is also a procedure which partakes of crushing; it has, according to its author, the advantage of not being followed by hæmorrhage.

(e) *Ligature* (Plate LXXXIII., Fig. 1).—The polypus may be tied outside the vulva, in the vagina, or in the uterine cavity.

1. If the tumour appears outside the vulva with its pedicle, the operation is very simple, and consists in surrounding the pedicle with a strong waxed thread, which one ties with a double knot. If the pedicle does not appear, the polypus is drawn down by tenaculum forceps. Lastly, if the pedicle is too large for a simple ligature to suffice to grasp it, it is to be transfixcd with a needle carrying a double thread, the four ends of which are to be subsequently separated and tied, two and two, on each side.

2. When the polypus, although already low down and escaped from the uterine cavity, is still retained in the vagina, one may either attempt to draw it externally with tenaculum forceps and deal with it as above, or put on a ligature with the fingers if they can reach high enough, or with one or two knot-fasteners, that is to say, two metallic atoms pierced with a hole at one end, or ending, as proposed by Mayor, in crab's-claws, to receive the thread, or two metallic tubes which carry a thread. The patient is placed as for the operation for stone or vesico vaginal fistula; an assistant presses on the hypogastrium, the surgeon explores the vagina with the two first fingers of the left hand, feels the polypus again, then, applying these two fingers to the posterior wall of the vagina, they serve as conductors to guide the knot-fasteners and place the ligature round the pedicle. The fingers are withdrawn, and a knot-fastener is grasped by each hand; they are made to describe a half circle from behind forwards, and the pedicle is surrounded by a loop of ligature. One may equally well, like Desault, engage the two knot-fasteners in front, and, while one remains immoveable, manage the other so as to surround the polypus. In these two cases, the instruments, being carried in front, are crossed, and thereby the two ends of the ligature are crossed; then, after having withdrawn the instruments, recourse is had to a knot-holder (that of Græfe or Sauter), which twists the ligature on itself several times so as to strangle the pedicle.

3. Lastly, if the polypus is retained within the uterine cavity, recourse is had to the process of ligature with knot fasteners. But a difficulty here presents itself: in carrying a ligature around a polypus within the uterus, there is danger of tying the cervix uteri itself. This operation is often accompanied by sharp pains which oblige one to relax the ligature, and even to renounce it.

Instead of making use of silk for a ligature, silver wire may be employed, which, being readily twisted, avoids the necessity of tying a knot, a proceeding always accompanied with considerable difficulty.

(f) *Excision*.—Like the ligature, excision of uterine polypi may be practised in the vagina or in the uterus. For the rest, whatever the place where the operation is performed, the process varies but little.

The patient is always placed as in the preceding cases, and the surgeon introduces into the vagina either a bivalve speculum, or rather the index-finger of the left hand, to serve as a guide for seizing the polypus with tenaculum forceps, by the aid of which he draws it down as low as possible, facilitating the lowering, if necessary, by the use of other forceps placed higher up. The polypus having descended, the pedicle is apparent, and it is then cut with a bistoury or with strong scissors curved on the flat (Plate LXXXIII., Fig. 3).

If the polypus offers too great resistance to efforts at traction, and cannot be brought down, a long blunt-pointed bistoury curved on the flat is to be slid along the finger, and the pedicle cut in the vagina. It is scarcely necessary to remark that this process is only applicable to polypi already large, fibrous polypi; for if we have to do with a small polypus, it suffices to dilate the vagina by a speculum, discover the tumour, and apply the bistoury or scissors to its roots.

When the polypus is retained within the womb, it must be brought down in the same way; or better, the uterus may be drawn down by forceps placed in the cervix (the latter having been first dilated with tents if necessary), and then the polypus itself dealt with. Sometimes the polypus is too voluminous to pass the cervix uteri or vagina; it is then necessary to incise the cervix and perineum, or, like Chassaignac, to diminish the volume of the polypus by two deep incisions which circumscribe a wedge-shaped fragment: inasmuch, when dealing with non-pedunculated polypi, it often suffices to incise the superficial layer, which forms a sort of envelope, to enucleate the tumour. By the rapidity of its execution, excision merits the preference which has been accorded to it since Dupuytren brought it into honour. Hæmorrhage is the only complication to be feared, and it always yields to the simplest hæmostatics, or at least to plugging. Ligature, on the contrary, is a longer operation, which exposes to more dangers, and involves graver inconveniences, among which may be named the slowness of its action, the pains which are the consequence of it, the hindrance occasioned by the flow of foetid discharges, the presence of knot-holders, etc., and the obligation of repeating the constriction several times.

The best method of excising polypi is that by the *écraseur*, an instrument which excels all others for this purpose in the great majority of cases. The wire or the cord *écraseur* is very convenient, and can be applied without difficulty, even to large polypi. That form of wire *écraseur* should be used which allows of the adaptation of the wire around the polypus before it is attached to the rest of the instrument. In this way a loop of wire of moderate length may be made to encircle the base of a polypus or sessile growth. When the pedicle is properly encircled by the loop of wire, the ends are to be attached to the handle of the instrument and the screw put in motion. In this way the wire

is caused to embrace the pedicle so tightly that by slow turns of the screw the tissues are gradually cut through quite cleanly, and that without loss of blood. Hemorrhage from the pedicle is thus prevented, and the risk from that source is accordingly almost entirely excluded. The process is quick, clean, simple, and safe. The instrument can be applied to polypi even high up in the uterus.

The application of the *craseur* will be facilitated by first seizing the polypus by polypus forceps, or, if the growth be too large for that, by toothed forceps. The handles of both these instruments should lock, so that a firm grip may be obtained with them without the necessity of maintaining constant pressure by the hand. Downward traction to a sufficient extent may be made by the forceps, and the wire, rope, or chain of the *craseur* can then be readily applied around the pedicle or base of the growth.

Dr. Gaillard Thomas has invented a spoon-saw, by means of which he thinks intra-uterine fibroids can be removed with a minimum amount of risk and hemorrhage. The cervix having been well dilated, and the tumour being drawn down, the spoon is passed up to the base of the fibroid, and then by a steady sawing movement the base of the growth is cut through.

OPERATIONS THE OBJECT OF WHICH IS TO REMEDY PROLAPSE OF THE UTERUS AND VAGINA, VAGINAL CYSTOCELE AND RECTOCELE.

These operations are of two kinds—palliative and radical. The palliative treatment is the application of pessaries. There are many kinds—lung-shaped, hour glass shaped, ring shaped, cup shaped, etc., etc., the form of which varies not only according as one proposes to combat prolapse of the vagina, vaginal hernia, falling, or the various displacements of the uterus, but also as the inventors of the different instruments were moved by such or such principles, one proposes to act on the cervix uteri, another on the body of the uterus, another solely on the vagina, which he proposes to stretch, etc. For the rest, one can readily conceive that the size of the vagina, or still more the nature of the lesion, must singularly modify the form of pessary. One can therefore frequently employ with great advantage india-rubber air pessaries, which by their small volume are very easy of introduction, and which are moreover much more capable of filling the vaginal cavity in dilating and unfolding the folds of the vagina, or the organs which tend to escape from that canal, without causing discomfort comparable with that almost inevitably caused by all others, their size and consistence being augmented, but not their weight. Their action is double—they keep up the organs by direct pressure, they dilate the vagina, causing its folds to disappear, which causes the organs to rise, obliging them to resume a normal position (Plate LXXXIII., Fig. 5).

Whatever may be the pessary chosen, it is first oiled and is then carried to the entrance of the vagina and is introduced from before backwards, and from below upwards. If the pessary is larger one way than another, it is to be presented so that its larger diameter corresponds with that of the vulva. It will then depress the posterior part of the vaginal orifice and the perineum so as to facilitate its passage below the pubic arch.

Once introduced, the pessary is to be placed in a suitable position; thus those which present a concavity on one of their faces—being designed to correspond with the projection of the symphysis—must be directed forwards. Those which are cylindrical, or bung shaped, are placed according to the axis of the vagina: those which are furnished with a cup are so disposed as to receive the cervix uteri into the cup; if they are flat (ring shaped), an oblique position is given to them in the vagina, so that one face looks forwards and the other backwards, and the upper border is behind the cervix, etc. It is impossible to enumerate the different positions to give to pessaries, but they present no difficulty. It is less easy to obtain the immobility of these pessaries, which shift with disheartening facility in spite of all the more or less troublesome means with which they are complicated to obviate the defect. In this relation, too, pessaries of caoutchouc, funnel-shaped, and especially air pessaries, have a great advantage, for they keep themselves in position.

In some cases of prolapse, when other varieties of pessaries have failed, Zwanck's expanding pessary may be tried with advantage.

The *radical cure*, like the palliative treatment, is also encumbered with far too great a number of processes, the efficacy of which is no more demonstrated than that of different pessaries. Thus Dieffenbach proposed the excision of some folds of the vaginal orifice; Marshall Ireland, Hemming, and Velpeau, that of a longitudinal or quadrilateral flap of vaginal mucous membrane; M. Langier prefers to cauterize it: then M. Malgaigne thought to obtain good results by excising the demi-circumference of the vaginal orifice, before and behind, and reuniting them by suture. Fricke (of Hamburg) indicated, under the name of *episiorrhaphy*, vivification of the labia majora, and then reunion by suture. Lastly, M. Romain Girardin had recourse to the extreme process applied by M. Vidal (de Cassis) to vesico-vaginal fistulae, obliteration of the vagina.

In late years it has been suggested, should other methods have failed, to endeavour to retain the uterus in its place by shortening the round ligaments. This procedure, which is known as Alexander's operation, has not as yet met with that unqualified approval which would sanction its being placed in the catalogue of established operations.

All these processes are so simple as to render a description of them useless, but, unfortunately, they offer the common inconvenience of being inadequate.

All fail against an obstacle which is almost insurmountable : and, even when they seem to be followed by complete success, one is often deceived, for the malady is not slow of reproduction.

In cases where pessaries have to be applied to combat falling of the vagina, or womb, or displacement, it is evident that the application of the pessary must be preceded by another little operation, the reduction of the fallen or displaced organ.

To reduce displacement of the vagina, the plan is the same as for prolapse of the rectum : the surface of the projection is covered with a napkin smeared with grease, and then gently pressed with the fingers from the circumference towards the centre. It is the same for the reduction of the uterus : the organ is enveloped in greased linen, and then pushed back by compressing the fundus so as to lessen its size : if the organ is inverted like the finger of a glove, one places the finger on the lowest part and pushes it in the direction of the vagina.

If there be deviation of the uterus, it is recognised by the help of touch, or the application of a speculum, or the use of the sound : then, having reduced it, it is opposed by the employment of an appropriate pessary, or by the use of Simpson's sound.

Serious difficulty may be encountered in restoring an inverted uterus to its proper position : indeed, reduction may be impossible, and then, if hæmorrhage threaten the life of the patient, amputation of the inverted organ may become necessary. Success will often attend patient efforts. Continuous elastic pressure should be kept up against the centre of the fundus uteri, with slight deviation to one or other side : Aveling's uterine reposer has proved very successful in some chronic cases. Compression of the organ by an elastic bandage with a view to driving as much of the blood as possible out of the organ in order to reduce the bulk of the body and fundus will facilitate all efforts at restoration. Incisions into the cervical tissues have been practised by Dr. Barnes and others, in order to favour dilatation of the neck. These should be carefully done, if employed, so as to avoid undue laceration, or penetration into the peritoneal cavity or adjoining viscera, *e.g.*, bladder or rectum. A much more serious measure has been adopted by Dr. G. Thomas, *viz.*, opening the abdominal cavity, dilatation of the cervix on its peritoneal aspect, and subsequent re-inversion of the organ.

This is so grave an operation that its adoption must always be guarded by great circumspection.

All attempts at reduction are more likely to be attended by success if they are made a week or more after the cessation of a catamenial period rather than near that epoch. Pressure upon the inverted organ should not be too long continued for fear that sloughing may ensue.

Fig. 1



Fig. 2 bis



Fig. 2



Fig. 3



Fig. 4





PLATE LXXXIV.

OPERATIONS ON THE UTERUS AND ITS APPENDAGES.

Fig. 1. *Tapping the uterus.*—*a*, Uterus; *b*, bladder; *c*, rectum; *d*, index-finger of the surgeon introduced into the vagina, and serving as a conductor of a trocar, *d'*; *e*, sacrum; *f*, abdominal wall depressed; *g*, loops of intestines; *h*, anus; *i*, urethra; *l*, orifice of the uterus.

Fig. 2.—*Application of the speculum.* *a*, *a*, Trivalve speculum; *b*, cervix uteri.

Fig. 2 *bis.*—*d*, Long forceps, with cotton wool, *c*, to cleanse the cervix.

Fig. 3. — *Cauterization of the cervix uteri.*—*a*, Ivory speculum; *a'*, its handle; *b*, cervix uteri; *c*, actual cautery; *c'*, its handle; *d*, *d'*, labia majora.

Fig. 4.—*Puncture of an ovarian cyst.*—*a*, Cyst; *b*, canula of trocar, the handle of which is seen at *c*; *d*, uterus; *e*, *e'*, Fallopian tubes; *f*, healthy ovary; *g*, bladder; *h*, coils of intestine.

EXPLORATION OF THE CERVIX UTERI.

Of the touch. Besides palpation and mediate auscultation through the abdominal parietes, the surgeon has at his disposal two modes of direct exploration to discover the different physiological and pathological conditions which the uterus and vagina may present. By touch he acquires a number of ideas respecting the consistence, volume, etc., of the cervix and body of the uterus, and by the application of the speculum he completes it by bringing in the aid of vision.

Vaginal examination may be made in two ways, the patient standing or lying down.

1. If the woman who is to be examined is standing, she is to be placed with her back against a firm substance; the surgeon sits or kneels before her; kneeling on the left knee, if he uses the right hand, and *vice versa*.

The index-finger is to be oiled, the thighs are to be separated, and the hand passed to the parts. The index-finger and thumb are to be kept extended, and the others flexed on the palm of the hand, the forefinger, being carried to the perineum, recognises the vulvar opening, which is then to be penetrated gently and without violence. If any obstacle is encountered, its nature is to be investigated.

It is always to be understood that if the woman is a virgin, the integrity of the hymenial membrane is to be respected, unless there be urgent indications to the contrary.

The vagina having been explored, the finger reaches the cervix uteri and glides gently around it, explores the os and surrounding parts—in a word, it is carried in every possible direction, examines the uterus so as to appreciate its sensibility, consistence, temperature, weight, etc. Lastly, to complete the investigation, the surgeon places his left hand on the hypogastrium and depresses the abdominal wall, while he fixes the uterus with the finger which is in the vagina, so as to compress the organ between the two hands, and estimate with the greatest certitude its form and volume.

This last stage of the examination can be most easily practised when the patient is lying down. The examination being completed, the nature of the liquid adhering to the finger should be carefully examined.

2 The patient lying on the back, the head, shoulders, and pelvis being somewhat raised and supported, so as to put the abdominal walls in the greatest state of relaxation possible, the surgeon places himself as near as he can on the right side, and passes his hand under the coverlet, and proceeds as above. It frequently happens, when the patient is lying down, that the finger cannot reach the cervix uteri; the pelvis should then be raised, either by the patient's own efforts, or by placing a cushion under the loins. Should this not be sufficient, either the flexed fingers may press back the perineum, the thumb being fixed against the pubic bone, or the middle as well as index finger may be introduced.

The foregoing is the position generally adopted by continental practitioners, both for obstetrical as well as gynecological practice. In England the patient is usually placed on her left side for both purposes.

Application of the speculum.—Before proceeding to the application of the speculum, the surgeon always finds it a great advantage to make a digital examination. He learns by this means the exact position of the cervix uteri, and thus avoids a number of searchings which render the operation fatiguing, difficult, and sometimes even nearly impossible.

It is unnecessary to insist on the different form of instruments which may be used. the operative procedure varies but little, whatever be the speculum preferred.

It is, however, worthy of remark that the smaller the inferior extremity of the speculum, the easier it is of introduction: and in this respect the bivalve speculum apparently offers the greatest advantage by its conical shape: when introduced, the examination is often difficult, the separation of the two valves permitting the folds of the vagina to project into the cavity of the speculum, and to mask the parts which one would examine at the top of the vagina. In this respect it is more convenient for the examination of the vaginal wall.

The quadrivalve speculum is very rarely employed, those which are preferable are the full speculum, that is to say, the slightly conical metal tube of Recamier, furnished at the end with the ebony of Galezowski, or Meier, or the trivalve speculum.

The patient is placed on the edge of a bed, the lower limbs separated, bent, and supported by assistants, or on chairs, the surgeon places himself in front, either seated or kneeling on one knee, takes the speculum, previously greased, and, separating the labia with the fingers and thumb of the left hand, presents the end of the speculum to the vaginal orifice, and gently introduces it. The instrument ought in the first place to be directed from before backwards, and but little from below upwards, so as to avoid the fourchette, which if pressed upon causes much pain. The orifice passed, the hand is lowered, and the instrument is introduced in the direction of the vaginal axis. The plug is then to be withdrawn, and the introduction is to be continued with much gentleness, guiding the speculum to the position of the cervix uteri, which has already been recognised by touch. At the same time the operator examines the state of the vaginal walls, against which he must exercise a certain amount of force to overcome their resistance. In effect the patient involuntarily makes efforts, the vagina contracts and presents a rose form at the extremity of the instrument, which may often be taken by the surgeon for the cervix uteri, but it has not the smooth aspect of the cervix; on the contrary, the surface is furrowed with corrugations somewhat redder than the cervix in the normal state, or paler in case of inflammation of the cervix. Lastly, it does not offer the resistance of the cervix on pressure, either by the speculum or sound.

As soon as the cervix appears, endeavours should be made to engage it in the orifice of the speculum; if it is too large, the different parts should be examined by inclining the speculum from side to side, the parts successively discovered being wiped by lint or cotton-wool, held by long forceps (see Plate LXXXIV., Fig. 2 and 2 bis).

When once the speculum is introduced, nothing is easier than to apply topical remedies, whatever one may have recourse to, even the actual cautery; only in that case an ivory or wooden speculum should be used instead of a metallic one (Plate LXXXIV., Fig. 3).

One may add to the employment of the ordinary speculum the use of a similar but much smaller instrument, viz., that of a small speculum fixed to the end of long forceps, whereby one can examine the uterine cavity. The use of this instrument, which necessitates the employment of artificial light, has been much simplified by the mode of illumination adopted by M. Langier.

The speculum may also be used for the introduction of the uterine sound; but generally touch suffices. Once the os uteri is recognised, the finger is used to conduct the sound. It is the same for the applica-

tion of the uterine adjuster, on the use of which it is the less necessary to insist, as the application is easy, and, moreover, the importance of the general employment of it has probably been much exaggerated.

In the case of pronounced uterine deviation, anteversion, or retroversion, the first thing is to reduce it. Reduction is ordinarily easy; but the displacement may be reproduced directly. It may be done by the vagina, or by the rectum. The patient lying down, and the abdominal walls in a state of relaxation, the surgeon introduces one, or, if required, two fingers, by means of which he first pushes up the body of the uterus, and then hooking the end of the finger on the cervix, he tries to bring it downwards.

If that be not sufficient, the body of the uterus may be pushed up through the rectum, either by the fingers, or, rather, after Evrat, by means of a stem nine or ten inches long, having at its end a greased plug, whilst attempts are made by the vagina to hook down the cervix.

Lastly, when these attempts have failed, and the displaced uterus is distended by the product of conception, a last resource is puncture of the organ.

Puncture of the uterus—Puncture of the uterus is done in cases of congenital or accidental obliteration of the cervix, either to give exit to the menstrual blood accumulated in the uterine cavity, or when the gravid organ is in a state of retroversion which cannot be modified. In the first case the puncture is made per vaginam; in the second it may also be made by the rectum.

1. By the vagina (Plate LXXXIV, Fig. 1), the finger in the canal serves the surgeon to recognise the point where the os and cervix should be. Should this search be fruitless, it at least serves to guide a slightly curved trocar, so disposed that when the handle of the trocar is held in the palm of the hand, the point is within and masked by the canula.

When the end of this reaches the point which it is judged suitable to traverse, the instrument is thrust through, being stopped as soon as resistance is no longer met with. The trocar is then withdrawn, and the liquid evacuated through the canula, or, if desired, a sound may be inserted to keep open the orifice made or to inject into the uterine cavity.

2 By the rectum the process is the same; instead of introducing the trocar by the vagina, it is conducted through the rectum; and as, in this case, the object is especially to determine the escape of the liquor amni, should it not flow, a stylet may be passed through the canula, so as to ascertain the nature of the obstacle, and to learn whether or no a second puncture should be made.

Puncture of a retroflexed or verted gravid uterus is rarely, if ever, necessary. Evacuation of the bladder and rectum, the prone, or genu-

pectoral position, continuous pressure with distensible elastic bags and chloroform will always, or nearly so, enable the surgeon to restore the displaced organ. In making efforts at reposition it is well to apply pressure laterally, so as to avoid the promontory of the sacrum.

A word may be added respecting the reduction of displacements of the non gravid uterus.

When reduction cannot be effected by the fingers, the careful use of the uterine sound will usually accomplish it—that is to say, if there be no morbid adhesions of the uterus to surrounding parts. In a case of retroflexion, for example, the sound should be bent to a curve, corresponding, as nearly as the operator can judge by digital examination, to the bend in the uterus. The sound being then introduced into the uterine cavity, careful and gentle attempts at rotation are to be made by causing the extremity of the handle of the sound to describe a large circle, so as not to press upon or injure the interior of the uterus. On no account is the handle of the sound to be rotated on its own axis; this would cause the uterine end of the sound to describe as large a circle as possible, which would be injurious, while by causing the handle end to describe as large a circle as possible, injury to the uterus is avoided, and the fundus of the retroflexed organ is brought forwards.

If a pessary be applied, it should be inserted while the sound keeps the womb in the normal position, so that the organ may be kept up and prevented falling again into its abnormal location.

OPERATIONS APPLICABLE TO CANCER OF THE CERVIX UTERI

Several kinds of operations have been proposed for cancer of the cervix uteri: cauterization, ligature, and excision or amputation. Ligature, being frequently followed by very grave accidents, is completely abandoned. Excision, extolled by Recanner and Lisfranc, is, like all other operations for cancer, followed by such numerous relapses that, conjoined with the series of primary accidents which may accompany it, it is nowadays almost abandoned. Cauterization justly merits to be reserved.

Cauterization of the cervix uteri, which is also practised for several other lesions besides cancer of the cervix, is a very simple operation.

Apply the speculum, cleanse the cervix, place between the posterior lip and the wall of the speculum a dosol of dry lint, so as to absorb such portions of the caustic as, failing to act on the cervix, may involve the vagina; then, by means of forceps or caustic-holder, apply the caustic, solid or liquid, to the cervix, and let it remain there a longer or shorter time, according as it is desired to affect the tissues slightly or deeply; lastly, apply some cooling lotion: this is the whole procedure.

If, on the other hand, the actual cautery is preferred, and this is a

procedure one need not fear to recommend, several lenticular cauteries, e.g. Paquelin's, are heated to a white heat, so as to act as deeply as may be desirable, then an ivory speculum is to be applied, in order to avoid burning the vagina and causing pain; or even a tin speculum, after M. Malgaigne's example.

Cauterization, and especially with the actual cautery, is an excellent operation: generally but slightly painful, it permits of the destruction, if not by one, by several applications, of the deep ulcerations, which at first sight one might have felt obliged to regard as of a nature to yield only to a cutting instrument.

Amputation of the cervix uteri.—This is performed in two ways, according as the womb can be lowered or not.

1. Two fingers in the vagina serve to implant and keep in place tenaculum forceps, by means of which the uterus can be brought down to the level of the vulva, then, with a blunt-pointed curved bistoury, protected with lint up to near the end, section of the tissues is made, care being taken always to keep above the diseased portion, and to trench on the sound parts.

2. If traction will not produce the desired effect of lowering the womb, scissors, curved on the flat, may be advantageously used, or Dupuytren's curette, which should be introduced into the cervix, guided by the two fingers. The use of the galvano-cautery will often be found preferable to other procedures in this operation.

The operation is generally done without the patient having felt much pain, except perhaps during efforts at traction, which should always be done with extreme gentleness and slowness; blood will flow freely, but it need not occupy the attention much, plugging being called for only when the flow is very abundant and the patient is sensibly weakened by it.

Dr. Marion Sims has lately practised an operation similar to the second of the above. He cuts widely into the sound tissues and plugs the resulting cavity with a styptic preparation of iron—the persulphate by preference, or the perchloride. Care should always be taken in these operations not to invade or to approach too near to the peritoneal cavity or the bladder or rectum. Erosion, or scraping by means of scoops, such as Simon's, is a very useful operation where practicable, but care is requisite to avoid penetration into the bladder, rectum, peritoneum, etc.

The cervix may also be removed by means of the *écraseur*.

Emmet's operation.—As cancer of the cervix uteri is considered by some pathologists to have its origin in the morbid changes consequent on fissure of the cervix, it may be well to consider here 'Emmet's operation' for the radical cure of the latter condition.

The patient is placed in the lithotomy position or else on her left side, and Sims' speculum introduced. Two tenacula are now inserted,

one in each flap of the laceration, and by approximation the operator decides what amount of denudation is needed. Having decided this point, the lower side of one flap is caught, and the mucous membrane and a small portion of parenchyma as far as the angle made by the junction of the flaps, are cut away: the corresponding part of the other flap is now seized and treated similarly. The other side is treated in the same way, the result being two long raw surfaces, with an intervening strip of mucous membrane in each flap. All bleeding is now stopped by the application of sponges wrung out in hot water, and the raw surfaces are closely approximated; if the operator is satisfied that sufficient tissue has been removed and that the denuded surfaces come well together, he next proceeds to pass the sutures. This is done by means of short curved needles threaded with silk, to which the silver sutures are attached: when the wires are all in position, a sound is passed to secure the integrity of the central canal, and the sutures are then twisted up or clamped with a shot and coil, commencing from above if proceeding downwards. The amount of tissue to be removed in the denudation of the flaps necessarily depends on the previous degree of hypertrophy.

Extirpation of the womb.—This operation, which has been undertaken for the removal of the cancerous uterus, may be performed either entirely by the vagina or by abdominal section combined with manipulation through the vaginal canal.

Frend's operation.—The patient having been put on the table and anesthetized, the vagina is syringed out with a strong solution of carbolic acid, and then, all preliminary precautions having been observed as in ovariectomy, the abdomen is incised along the median line and the peritoneal cavity opened. In the next stage of the operation the fundus uteri is seized with forceps or transfixed by a string and drawn upwards by an assistant, while the operator proceeds to ligature the broad ligaments. In the latter proceeding three ligatures have to be passed; the upper one, passing through the ovarian ligament below, includes the Fallopian tube, the middle one penetrates the ovarian ligament above and the round ligament below, while the lowest one is managed in the following manner: one end is threaded into a needle pushed up from the vagina into the pelvis anterior to the broad ligament: the needle is now withdrawn and carried up again by the same puncture into the pelvis posterior to the broad ligament, the ligature end is now unthreaded, and afterwards again threaded and passed through the round ligament from behind forward. The ligatures having now been drawn tight, the uterus is carefully separated from the bladder, and the anterior vaginal roof is then incised from below, by two fingers passed into the rent thus made the cervix is drawn upwards and the posterior part of the vaginal roof is seen. Taking care to respect the position of the last ligature passed, a knife

is now carried round the cervix, and the uterus entirely freed from its connections and removed. If the woman has not reached the climacteric period, at this stage the ovaries must be removed: this is best done by transfixing their pedicles and ligaturing, as in normal ovariectomy. Nothing remains now but to bring the ends of the ligature securing the stumps of the broad ligament into the vagina, and then to sew up the rent in the vaginal roof with catgut ligatures; the parts having been now perfectly cleansed, the edges of the abdominal wound are brought together and the patient put back to bed.

Schneider's operation. — Removal of the cancerous uterus per vaginam.

The patient, having been anesthetized, is put in the lithotomy position, and the vagina having been thoroughly purified, is then, if narrow, rapidly dilated. The cervix is now seized with vulsellum forceps and dragged forwards and upwards, so as to expose the posterior cul-de-sac of the vagina; at the upper extremity of this the healthy mucous membrane is incised transversely, so as to enable the finger to be passed up into Douglas's pouch. Then the cervix being drawn down, another incision is made into the vaginal mucous membrane at the junction of cervix and vagina, and the bladder is freed from its connections with the cervix. The next step of the operation consists in retroverting the fundus uteri, or hooking it down by a finger passed upward through the posterior incision; considerable difficulty may be experienced at this stage of the proceedings, as, if the uterus is infiltrated and enlarged, the fundus is not easily brought down into the vagina. Once the uterus is retroverted the broad ligaments are quickly brought into view, and may be secured either side *en masse* by elastic ligatures, prevented from slipping by hair-lip pins, or clamped (as recommended by Sir Spencer Wells) by long compression forceps, or again ligatured in detail, as practised in the abdominal operation. The ovaries may be left, or, if easily removable, taken away when the broad ligaments are being dealt with; should omentum or intestine prolapse, it must be returned at once, and kept up if needful by the pressure of a soft sponge welling out in antiseptic fluid. A plug of cotton-wool well dusted with iodoform is now passed into the vagina, and the patient placed in bed with the upper part of the body well raised, so as to form an inclined plane, and favour the escape of discharge from the vagina.

When the prolapsed womb hangs outside the vulva, and circumstances necessitate its removal, it may be ligatured, but it should not be immediately followed by excision.

DISEASES OF THE OVARY.

Ovarian cysts.—Operative surgery is not concerned in the different kinds of cysts which occur in the ovary: hairy, fatty and other cysts. In effect there is but one which has demanded its help, for until recently all cysts have been designated under the name of dropsical cysts, or encysted dropsey of the ovary.

These cysts generally acquire a considerable volume, pushing aside the viscera, and ending by filling the abdominal cavity, the walls of which they distend. Sometimes they are formed by a single fibrous sac, filled by perfectly limpid lemon-coloured serous fluid; sometimes they are divided into a great number of cysts, which have only an external envelope in common, and do not communicate with each other. This variety in the disposition of the cyst has real interest for the surgeon: though it is not always possible to know whether the cyst is uni- or multi-locular. Sometimes the cyst contracts intimate adhesions with the neighbouring organs; at others it is found to be retained only by a pedicle formed by the Fallopian tube and the broad ligament in which arteries, and notably the ovarian artery, are found, the development of which has followed that of the tumour.

OPERATIVE PROCEDURES.

For this lesion a simple operation is generally adopted, but one which is incomplete in its results, for it only affords temporary relief, and generally does not prevent the reproduction of the disease. This operation is *puncture* of the cyst (Plate LXXXIV, Fig. 4). Puncture, like that which is made in dropsical ascites, is made with a trocar through the abdominal wall, care being taken to carry the instrument through the most prominent part of the tumour, generally in the median line. Puncture has also been made through the vagina, but the results of such attempts are not such as to encourage a repetition. Purely palliative, puncture is only useful in uni-locular cysts: it may, however, be repeated many times. It may even sometimes, according to Ledran, cure radically, a result the rarity of which is much to be regretted when one compares the freedom from danger of the process with the dangers presented by all the other curative measures of which we shall have to speak.

It is not on account of the smallness of their number that we may reproach these methods: in effect there are many, but all so inefficient or dangerous that the palliative cure is, and perhaps long will be, the only treatment a really prudent surgeon will first think of. Accordingly we shall be brief respecting these different methods.

We shall, therefore, merely refer to the compression of M. Bricheateau, by means of a tightly laced bandage; puncture with a small knife, proposed by M. Maisonneuve, with a view to the escape of the fluid into

the peritoneal cavity, a method which may well bring about a fatal peritonitis. puncture with a canula, which is left in to allow of the continuous escape of the liquid, a practice which has succeeded in South Carolina, but which in the hands of M. Robert, less fortunate than the American surgeon, Douglas, caused hectic fever and endangered the life of the patient.

As regards the tapping of cysts, experience shows that when judiciously done it is usually harmless. This simple operation is moreover often of great aid in diagnosis, the microscopical and chemical characters of the fluids withdrawn frequently affording conclusive evidence of the nature of a given case. Again, cysts of the parovarium, which are usually single and contain limpid fluid of low specific gravity, are commonly cured by a single tapping. On the other hand, true single ovarian cysts generally refill, but immense relief may be gained by a simple tapping, which may, in some cases, be repeated scores of times.

Tapping, followed by the injection of iodine, has long since been discarded by the most experienced and enlightened ovariologists. The results are generally most unsatisfactory in every way.

Incision, practised by Ledran and Galenzowski, count some cures. Nothing is simpler than this operation, which consists in a large longitudinal incision in the integuments of the cyst wall, either in the middle line or outside the recti muscles. Issue is given by it to the fluid, and then a roll of linen, a tent, or canula, is placed in the wound; or the cyst wall is stitched to the external wound, the rest being left to suppurate; or, lastly, a greater or less part of the cyst wall is excised.

From this to the complete extirpation of the tumour is but a step.

Ovariectomy. MacDowell made an incision from the umbilicus to the pubis. The incision penetrates to the peritoneum; this membrane is seized with forceps and so raised that a small opening can be made into it through which the finger is introduced, in order to push aside and protect the neighbouring organs and to serve as a conductor to a blunt-pointed bistoury, with which the incision can be enlarged. The surgeon introduces one or two fingers, or even the whole hand, through the wound, to recognise the nature and number of adhesions, and it may happen that after having produced a large separation, he may be obliged to give up the operation when the adhesions are so strong that they cannot be destroyed without too great risk. In this case the cyst is emptied and becomes one of simple incision. When the adhesions are few, a ligature is put around them and they are cut. The cyst, being isolated, is incised or punctured to give exit to the fluid, then the pedicle is included in a strong ligature, and the tumour can be removed.

Modern surgery deals almost as, if not equally, successfully with der

Pl 85

Fig 1 bis



Fig 1

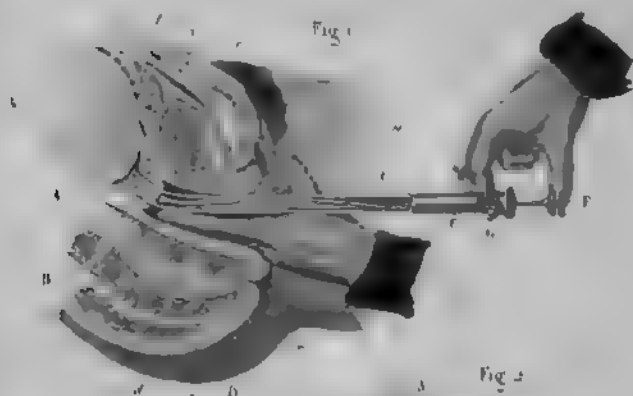
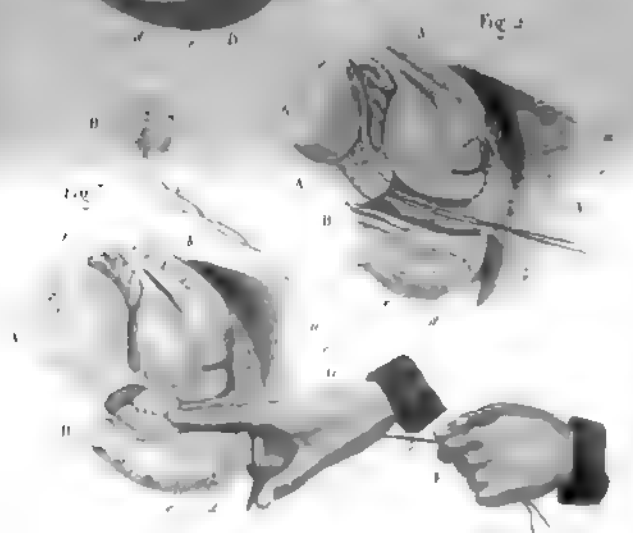


Fig 2



moid as with simple cysts of the ovary. Any competent ovariologist can ordinarily diagnose the character of the tumour, whether mono- or poly-cystic. Indeed, much more than this is requisite, and can be done : for before operative measures of so grave a character are undertaken it is usual, in this country at least, to make a differential diagnosis between the various forms of abdominal tumour, at any rate such as may, or do, simulate ovarian tumours.

The brilliant results of ovariectomy in England and America show that it is an operation more successful than almost any other capital operation in surgery. The mortality in the hands of Wells, Keith, Atlee, Peaslee, Wiltshire, and other operators has long been less than twenty per cent. : indeed, the most recent statistics would make it under ten per cent ! Great improvements have been made in the manner of operating, and especially in the after-treatment of the patients. Scrupulous cleanliness is observed, all possible sources of infection are avoided, the peritoneal cavity is carefully freed from all clots of blood or other discharges, and the pedicle is more judiciously managed than formerly. Coincidentally with these improvements the mortality has fallen to the remarkably low figures already mentioned.

In performing the operation of ovariectomy the best operators are careful not to make a larger incision into the abdominal parietes than is requisite ; but they do not hesitate to make it free enough for convenience of manipulation, nor to enlarge it if judged necessary, for it is found that mere length of incision alone does not unfavourably influence the results of the operation. Care is taken to arrest bleeding step by step ; adhesions being ligatured when necessary with pure silk or carbolized catgut. The cyst or cysts are tapped to reduce their bulk before withdrawing the tumour through the abdominal incision, and the pedicle is dealt with according to the views of the operator : if it be long enough, it may be clamped or tied ; if short, it may be tied in one or more portions ; but it is always important that the ligatures should transfix the pedicle so that slipping may be avoided. Care should of course be taken not to wound large blood-vessels when transfixing the tissues. Some operators prefer searing off the pedicle with the hot iron, the tissues being held meanwhile by a suitable clamp. However the pedicle may be secured, care should be taken to prevent the occurrence of hæmorrhage from it, cases having terminated fatally from this cause. The peritoneal cavity having been scrupulously cleansed, the wound in the abdominal parietes should be brought together by sutures of pure silk, silver, or carbolized catgut, care being taken to include the peritoneum in the stitches. Simple dressings suffice, with a light cotton-wool compress ; union of the wound, by first intention, usually taking place.

Oophorectomy. — *Batley's operation.* — This operation, advocated originally by Batley of Georgia, and Hegar of Germany, has been

performed in numerous cases during the past ten years, principally with the view of anticipating the climacteric period in women suffering from severe losses of blood from uterine fibromata or at the menstrual epochs. The ovaries may be removed either through the vagina or by abdominal section; should the former method be adopted the patient is to be put into the lithotomy position, the perineum drawn down by a Sims' speculum, and the vagina pulled forwards by a tenaculum fixed in it near its junction with the cervix. The vaginal wall is now cut through with scissors, the ovaries, hooked down by the finger, are gently drawn into the vagina, and their ligaments having been tied with carbolized silk, the organs themselves are cut away and the pedicles returned into the pelvic cavity; the opening in the vagina is then closed with sutures.

Should abdominal section be preferred, the course of proceeding is exactly as in ovariectomy; the ovaries are secured, their pedicles ligatured, and then the stumps are dropped back into the pelvis. In some cases when oophorectomy is done for menorrhagia due to fibroid tumour of the uterus, some difficulty may be experienced in getting away the whole of the ovarian structure of one side, owing to the organ being spread out over the surface of the tumour.

PLATE LXXXV.

OBSTETRICAL OPERATIONS.—PREMATURE ARTIFICIAL DELIVERY.

Fig. 1.—*Dilatation of the cervix uteri.—Ordinary process.—Anatomy.*

A, Uterus ; *A'*, cervix uteri into which the end of a catheter, containing a sponge tent, *B*, is introduced. *D*, finger of the operator introduced into the vagina ; *b*, bladder ; *c*, vesico vaginal septum ; *d*, recto-vaginal septum ; *e*, rectum.

The right hand of the operator, *G*, slides into the interior of the catheter, *C*, a stilette, *C'*, *F*, the end of which, pushes the tent, *B*, into the cervix uteri ; *n*, meatus ; *f*, intestinal loops ; *v*, cavity of the catheter.

Fig. 1 bis.—*The catheter and the stilette.*

Fig. 2. *A*, Uterus ; *A*, vesico-vaginal septum. The sponge tent, *B*, has swollen and dilated the cervix ; *r*, double thread serving to withdraw the tent ; *f*, loops of intestine ; *b*, bladder ; *u*, meatus ; *c*, vesico-vaginal septum ; *v*, vagina.

Fig. 3.—*Plugging.*—*A*, Uterus ; *B*, plug of lint introduced into the vagina, and pushed up to the cervix by two fingers of the operator's right hand. *D* ; the left hand, *F*, retains externally a double thread, *e*, attached to the plug ; *f*, loops of intestine ; *b*, bladder ; *u*, meatus ; *c*, vesico-vaginal septum ; *d*, recto-vaginal septum ; *e*, rectum.

OPERATIVE PROCEDURES.

Perforation of the membranes.—Practised by Macaulay in 1756, this operation may be done either with a straight or curved trocar, but it should be long enough to penetrate into the interior of the cervix and reach the inferior segment of the membranes. The instrument should be so directed as not to wound either the mother or the fœtus.

After the puncture the rapid flow of fluid is followed by contractions and expulsive pains.

The method may prove dangerous both to mother and fœtus. After the complete escape of the fluid, labour may begin late and proceed slowly. The uterine walls then compress the fœtus and cause its death.

A much more safe and satisfactory method of inducing labour is that which consists in merely introducing a clean (new, preferably) gum elastic catheter into the cavity of the uterus, where it is to be allowed to remain until regular contractions are established. The instrument should be gently passed up, *without the stilette*, between the

membranes and the uterine wall, the whole being introduced into the uterine cavity, with the exception of about a couple of inches which should be coiled up in the vagina. All things considered, this is probably the safest method of inducing labour prematurely.

Meissner's process. With the view of moderating the flow of the amniotic fluid, and to prevent unfortunate consequences, Meissner (of Leipzig) has proposed the perforation of the membranes at the highest part of the ovum. For that purpose a silver canula 1.3 inches long, of which the curve represents an arch of 8 inches radius, is armed with two stilettes: one, ending in an ivory button, facilitates the introduction of the instrument; the other, ending in a trocar, serves to make the puncture. The canula is introduced between the posterior wall of the uterus and the membranes. When it has reached some height above the cervix, the bulbed stylette is replaced by the trocar and the puncture is made. The flow of the fluid then slowly occurs; the pains have time to come on; dilatation begins before the fetus is compressed by the uterus, and delivery may take place in thirty-six or forty-eight hours.

Plugging (Plate LXXXV., Fig. 3) —Schæffer, of Berlin, has practised plugging of the vagina with the view of provoking premature delivery. Whatever the object for which plugging is had recourse to, the method of its performance is the same.

The rectum and bladder are first emptied, then a plug composed of several balls of lint anointed with oil or cerate is introduced into the vagina close to the uterus, the first ball being furnished with a double thread to facilitate extraction. It is not necessary to fill the whole vagina; there are indeed inconveniences in doing this, for the excretion of urine and feces may be hindered. The effect of this method is soon apparent by pains in the abdomen and back, and by a certain bearing down in the womb. When the plug has aroused uterine contractions and the os is open, it may be withdrawn. If the labour is not real, or if the pains become weaker and slower, the plug may be reapplied. The pain may also be roused by dilating the os with the finger. Care should always be taken to avoid rupturing the membranes before dilatation is nearly complete.

Dilatation of the cervix.—Kluge was the first to suggest the induction of premature labour by the introduction into the cervix of a foreign body acting at once as a mechanical dilator and irritant; and with the object of determining expulsive contractions he used a cone of prepared sponge, which he introduced into the cervix with long forceps, and then applied a plug to keep the tent in place, which, in dilating, brought on contraction.

Ordinary process (Plate LXXXV., Figs. 1 and 2).—A small cylinder of prepared sponge, traversed by a loop of thread, is placed in a canula (Fig. 1 *bis*); the two forefingers of the left hand are then

introduced into the vagina, and feel the position of the cervix; the canula is then slid along the palmar aspect of the fingers to the os uteri, in which the end of the instrument should be engaged, when, the stilette being pushed, the sponge slides into the cervix, and the canula is withdrawn.

The first sponge determines, by its dilatation, pains which soon cease; the dilated cervix will then easily receive a second tent larger than the first; fresh pains occur, and the dilatation of the cervix increases, and if labour does not progress regularly, a third tent may be inserted, and the cervix still more dilated, so as definitely to bring on labour.

It is important that only such tents be used as have been fully disinfected by steeping them in thymol, carbolic acid, or some other powerful disinfectant. No tent should be allowed to remain *in situ* over twelve hours, and disinfecting injections should be used before another tent is inserted. Barnes's bags may be substituted for tents when the cervix uteri is large enough to admit the smallest size.

Process of uterine injection.—M. Cahun describes this process as follows:

To practise the injection use is made of a small syringe, generally of tin, containing from forty-eight to sixty grammes of starch water. The canula is about 9 inches long, $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ in diameter at its extremity, and presents a curve similar to that of a female catheter. The patient should lie on her back with the pelvis raised; two fingers should be passed to the posterior lip of the os, and along them should be slid the canula, which should be introduced between the anterior wall of the uterus and the ovum to the extent of 2 inches within the uterine cavity. The injection is then to be begun, being thrown in gently and slowly, care being taken to raise the syringe a little, to avoid the opening being applied to the uterine wall, and to vary, if desired, the direction of the instrument, whenever there is any obstacle to the escape of the liquid. The syringe is withdrawn gradually; ten minutes afterwards the patient may get up and walk about; if at the end of six hours there are no signs of labour, the injection may be repeated.

Attention may here be called to the use of the vaginal douche in the induction of premature labour, this plan was recommended by Kiarsch in 1846.

PLATE LXXXVI

CÆSARIAN SECTION.—SYMPHYSEOTOMY.

Fig. 1.—*Body of a pregnant woman.* *a, a'*, Line indicating the lateral incision; *b, b'*, line indicating the median incision.

Fig. 2.—*Cæsarian section practised in the linea alba.*—*a*, Head of the child; *b, b'*, incision; *c, c'*, operator's hands; *d*, flap of membranes.

Fig. 3.—*Lateral incision.*—*Extraction of the child by the feet.*—*a*, Body of the child; *a, a'*, incision; *c*, hand of an assistant separating the lips of the wound; *d, c'*, hands of the operator.

Fig. 4. Dotted lines indicating the direction of the pubic bones *a*, incision made at the level of the symphysis pubis; *b, b'*, labia majora.

CÆSARIAN SECTION (Figs. 1, 2, and 3).

When the passages are too narrow to allow of the application of the forceps, or the operation of symphyseotomy, recourse must be had to Cæsarian section, which consists in making an incision through the abdominal and uterine walls for the extraction of the child.

This operation may be practised on the dead woman, from five to twenty minutes after the last breath, after the seventh month of pregnancy, with a chance of saving the child.

The operation of Cæsarian section is considered indispensable in the living woman, whenever the pelvis measures under 2 inches. The most favourable time for operating is that which immediately precedes or follows the rupture of the membranes.

OPERATIVE PROCEDURES.

The incision may be made laterally, *a, a'*, Fig. 1, on the right side, following a line springing upwards from the anterior superior iliac spine to the last rib. The incision thus practised has been recommended by some authors with the object of avoiding the recti muscles. But M. Malgaigne has justly remarked that authors have confounded the disposition of the abdominal walls in pregnancy at term with that of the non-pregnant condition.

In women at term the linea alba is generally from 3 to 4 inches broad at the level of the umbilicus: the lateral muscles contribute least to the amplification of the abdomen. Consequently the longitudinal incision into the linea alba is preferable.

If an oblique incision is made, M. Malgaigne advises that it should be made 2 inches outside, but at the level of, the umbilicus, terminating below in the middle line.





The incision in the *linea alba* should begin a little below the umbilicus, and end from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 inches above the pubis. Before it is made, the bladder and rectum should be emptied. The patient is held on a bed by assistants, one assistant fixing the womb with two hands applied to the sides of the abdomen. The surgeon then makes an incision which should be at least 5 to 7 inches long, and which should involve only the skin and subcutaneous cellular tissue: the aponeuroses are then to be divided layer by layer to the peritoneum; the peritoneum is at first to be carefully opened in such a way that a finger may be introduced, on the palmar aspect of which a blunt-pointed bistoury may be slid so as to enlarge the incision.

The womb is then incised layer by layer; the membranes are incised with the blunt-pointed bistoury like the peritoneum. The assistant whose duty it is to keep open the lips of the wound keeps those of the abdominal wound in relation with the lips of the uterine wound: the child is then extracted by the part which presents (Plate LXXXVI., Figs. 2 and 3), together with the placenta.

The transverse incision is made between the *linea alba* and the vertebral column at the level of the fundus uteri.

A second method has been proposed with the view of avoiding lesion of the peritoneum. Physick recommended a transverse incision above the pubis, stripping off the peritoneum, and incision of the uterus to the level of the stripped peritoneum. This process has been variously modified. Experience has not yet appraised the value of the second method; and incision in the *linea alba* is generally preferred.

The operation should not be undertaken without having at hand an electrical apparatus to excite contraction of the uterus, should other measures fail to secure it. After the uterus has been emptied of its contents a clean probang, carrying a sponge as large as a walnut, or a disk of soft caoutchouc $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches in diameter, should be passed through the cervix uteri and out at the vagina, so as to secure a free exit for lochial or other discharges. The probang should be from 8 to 12 inches long, and the handle should be passed first through the cervix from above downwards, so that the larger end following may carry down any clots or other *débris*, and thus prove that a free channel exists.

Some doubt exists as to the desirability or the reverse of stitching together the edges of the uterine wound. Cases have done well with out being so treated; but probably on the whole it would be better to bring the edges together carefully with silk sutures. Catgut sutures should be avoided, as they are apt to become untied when soaked in discharges, and fatal hæmorrhage has been known to occur from this cause.

The incision into the abdominal walls made in the middle line, just as in ovariotomy, is to be preferred, and the after treatment of the cases should be similar to the after-treatment of ovariotomy.

Porro's operation.—In all cases of Cæsarian section, the state of the uterus after operation forms an important element of anxiety as to the further progress of the cases; desirous of diminishing all risk to a minimum, Prof. Porro, of Paris, formed the bold idea of not only removing the fœtus and the decidua by abdominal section, but at the same time of taking away the uterus and its appendages. The incision of the wall of the abdomen is performed as in ovariectomy; then the uterus being exposed, the operator incises and extracts the child, while an assistant slips a *serre-nœud* round the neck of the uterus at the level of the internal os, including both ovaries and tubes; the child having been given over to the charge of an assistant, the wire of the *serre-nœud* is tightened, and the uterus with its appendages is cut away. The pedicle is now brought up to the abdominal surface, transfixed with guarded pins, and so fixed in position, while the edges of the abdominal incision are brought together with sutures. The after-treatment of the case is in every respect the same as is followed out in cases of ovariectomy. Some operators prefer to remove the uterus and fœtus *en masse*, thus avoiding the risk of any blood escaping into the peritoneal cavity; but if this be done, the wound of the abdominal wall has necessarily to be considerably prolonged. Removal of the uterus after Cæsarian section is not necessary in all cases, e.g., where the obstruction to delivery arises from a cyst or tumour which is removable after laparotomy.

Laparo-Elytrotomy.—*Thomas's operation.*—Devised to avoid the dangers of opening the peritoneum and incising the uterus. The patient is placed on the table with the pelvis well raised, the os is well dilated with Barnes's bags, if this has not already been done, and a curved incision is commenced $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches above and outside the spine of the pubes, and carried up parallel to, and an inch above, Poupart's ligament to a point 1 inch above the anterior-superior iliac spine. Each layer of the abdominal wall is divided in turn till the peritoneum is reached, then this latter is gently separated from the transversalis and iliac fascia, and drawn upwards and inwards till the vaginal wall is exposed. A catheter now being introduced into the bladder, and the fundus of the uterus being well drawn over to the left, the vaginal wall is made to bulge into the abdominal wound by pressure from within, and then enclosed as far below the uterus as possible; for this latter purpose a Paquelin's cautery at red heat answers best. To enlarge the rent made by the cautery, it is best to 'tear' the vaginal wall transversely and anteriorly; the opening is carried as far forwards as the safety of the bladder permits, while posteriorly the rent is made as extensive as the abdominal wound allows of. The catheter is now withdrawn, and the os brought forward into the wound (the membranes having first been ruptured, if as yet intact, the way being now open, the fœtus is extracted by

traction, turning, or forceps, and the placenta is expelled by uterine compression, and all hæmorrhage having been stopped, the edges of the wound are brought together by interrupted sutures.

Operations in connection with extra-uterine pregnancy.—In the early months of extra-uterine pregnancy various methods have been adopted with the view of destroying the life of the fœtus, and thus arresting the growth of the ovum and the risk of rupture and hæmorrhage. The principal methods employed have been—(1) Puncture of the sac with an exploring trocar through the vaginal or rectal wall. (2) Injections of solutions, *e.g.* of morphia or atropia, into the sac. (3) The use of the Faradaic and galvanic currents. (4) Elytrotomy, or cutting into the sac from the vagina. Dr Thomas recommends the use of Paquelin's cautery in this operation. (5) Laparotomy—an incision of 4 or 5 inches should be made along the linea alba through the abdominal wall: in case the sac is not found adherent to the abdominal wall, it should be stitched to the cut edges of the wound, and then an opening made into it between the lines of ligature. The placenta should be allowed to come away spontaneously, unless it occupies the site of incision; the upper part of the wound may be closed, but the lower part is to be left open for drainage and future antiseptic injections. Strict antiseptic precautions should be observed throughout.

SYMPHYSEOTOMY.

Proposed and practised in 1768 by Sigault, symphyseotomy has for its result an increase of about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in the extent of the antero-posterior diameter of the brim, and allows of a separation of about 1 inch between the pubic bones. This operation may, therefore, be indicated where the pelvic diameters are not large enough for the passage of the foetal head.

Nevertheless, in the present state of science, it cannot be considered as a regular and practicable operation; the indications are vague and uncertain, the operation is dangerous, and premature delivery is, happily, applicable in cases which demand symphyseotomy. In forty operations Baudeloque found fourteen deaths; thirteen children only were living, and most of the patients operated upon who recovered remained infirm.

Although these results are but little encouraging, we shall describe the operation.

Ordinary procedure (Fig 4).—An incision beginning a little above the pubis is practised in front of the symphysis, and is prolonged to the clitoris, inclining a little to one side so as to avoid one of the branches of the clitoris. This first incision comprises all the soft parts. The inter-pubic ligament is then carefully incised, so as to avoid wounding the bladder; as soon as the section is completed the

bones immediately separate. Delivery then takes place naturally or by means of the forceps, according to the case.

MM. Jambert and Stoltz have proposed a subcutaneous method: the first with the bistoury passed under the skin near the clitoris, and cutting the symphysis from before backwards, the second with the chain saw acting on the side of the symphysis on the bone itself.

M. Gabbiati has also proposed and practised the double section of the pubis.

We cannot advise this operation, the indications for which, as we have already said, are not clearly laid down, and the results of which are most uncertain.

PLATE LXXXVII.

TENOTOMY.

TORTICOLLIS OR WRYNECK.—SECTION OF THE STERNO-CLAVO-MASTOID MUSCLE.—CLUB-HAND,—PERMANENT CONTRACTION OF THE FINGERS.

Fig. 1.—*Torticollis of the right side, and contraction of the sternomastoid*—*a*, Cord-like prominence, caused by the shortening of the muscle.

Fig. 2.—*Torticollis of the left side, and subcutaneous division of the muscle.* *a*, The sternal fasciculus contracted; *b*, puncture made by the tenotome at the external border of the fasciculus.

Fig. 3. *Tenotomes or tenotomy knives*, employed by Jules Guerin, but in England discarded.

Fig. 4.—*Operation for a torticollis due to contraction of both the sternal and the clavicular fasciculi of the muscle.*—The plate represents an assistant rotating the head in order to increase the tension and the prominence of the contracted muscle. *a*, Point at which the extremity of the knife should be felt beneath the skin, which, however, it should not penetrate; *c*, point at which the puncture is made by the knife.

Fig. 5.—*Same operation.*—This figure does not represent the operation as now performed. This peculiar double-bellied knife is now never employed, nor is the point of the present tenotome allowed to make its appearance from beneath the skin. The whole operation should be *subcutaneous*.

Fig. 6. *Permanent contraction of the fingers with palmar club-hand.*

Fig. 1



Fig. 2



Fig. 3



Fig. 4



Fig. 5



TORTICOLLIS—SECTION OF THE STERNO-MASTOID.

We recognise by the name of torticollis a lateral deviation of the head and neck, more or less marked, with an inclination towards one shoulder. The face is turned to the side opposite to the lesion: the mastoid apophysis approaches the clavicle, and is drawn forwards, the cervical region of the vertebral column is flexed laterally. This deformity may be temporary or permanent. Numerous *causes* are recognised. It may be the result of a traumatic or organic disease of the cervical vertebrae, or it may be due to the presence of enlarged glands or of a large tumour, or of bands or cicatrices, etc. It most commonly originates in contraction of the lateral muscles of the neck—the scaleni, platysma, and sterno-cleido-mastoid. This last being almost always the seat of origin of permanent torticollis, or at any rate the locality of the only form of the disease capable of cure by operation, will be the only muscle with which we shall concern ourselves.

For a long time attempts have been made to cure this disease by means of various forms of apparatus: but now section of the contracted muscle is regarded as the most efficacious procedure: bandages and other contrivances are only introduced as aids, although they are indispensable for securing a good result after treatment.

Anatomy.—Bouvier, Malgaigne, and other surgeons have proposed various positions for the point of section of the sterno-mastoid, but the division is usually made in the lower third, the tendinous portion being preferred.

The muscle in its lower portion consists of two distinct fasciculi: the inner one very firm—half an inch wide—fibrous the length of an inch or more. It is inserted into the upper anterior surface of the manubrium sterni, in front of the sterno-clavicular joint, its more internal fibres often touch those of the other side. The second and outer fasciculus, larger, broader, and thinner than the first, with very short tendinous fibres at its lower extremity, is connected with the inner third of the clavicle. Though sometimes the two tendons are in contact and almost united, yet in other cases, especially in thin subjects, they are quite distinct, as can be made out by sight and touch: a depression marks the cellular inter-space between them.

Jules Guerin, who has clearly shown the functional independence of the two heads of the muscle under consideration, showed that the sternal origin of the muscle is the part usually affected, contraction of the clavicular portion, which is much rarer, producing inclination of the head to one shoulder, or elevation of the latter without rotation. The result has been that surgeons have proposed to limit the incision to the inner fasciculus alone, a precept too exclusive.

The relations of the tendons are as follows. They are subcutaneous, and when the muscle is contracted form an immovable projection, like

a hard cord ; there is no important structure between the tendons and the skin, on which account some of the old surgeons made the section in an open wound. Behind the tendons is the deep fascia which alone separates them from the carotid and internal jugular, whose course is indicated by the cellular interval between the sternal and clavicular origins. Tension of the muscle separates it from the large vessels, which fact adds greatly to their safety in the operation. The inferior thyroid and anterior jugular veins run along the inner edge of the sternal origin ; but the first is separated from it by the sterno-hyoid and thyroid muscles, and the second, when present, is superficial and easily avoided. As regards the external jugular, it is generally far enough from the outer edge of the clavicular origin not to be in the way. The nearer we approach the bony origins of the muscle, the less the risk of wounding the vessels, so that in a doubtful case it is best to cut the tendons close to the bones.

No important nerve is met with in these parts ; the muscle is enclosed in a sheath derived from the cervical fascia, which will be treated according to circumstances.

OPERATIONS.

The necessary apparatus consists of tenotomes of different shapes sharp pointed for puncture, straight or convex for the section.

Dupuytren was the first to subcutaneously divide the sterno-mastoid : he was followed by Stromeyer and Bouvier. Guerin modified their operation, and to him we owe the rules of the procedure now generally adopted.

The patient is seated, or lying on his back, with the trunk half raised ; an assistant sitting behind fixes the head, and rotates it to the side opposite to the morbid condition, so as to put the affected muscle more than ever on the stretch. It then forms so marked a projection that it can be held by the fingers of the left hand. This circumstance is of real help in making the section. The surgeon, standing in front of the patient, takes up a vertical fold of the skin, parallel to the axis of the muscle, its base corresponding with the outer edge of the muscle where the skin is naturally loose. The surgeon then pierces the skin with his knife, at a point answering to the outer edge of the muscle, and $\frac{1}{2}$ of an inch above the clavicle or sternum, using for this purpose a sharp-pointed tenotome. A blunt-pointed tenotomy knife is then passed from without inwards, flat, between the skin and muscle, until it reaches and passes the inner edge of the sternal origin of the muscle, carefully avoiding any perforation of the skin, then the surgeon gives a quarter rotation to the knife, so that the edge touches the anterior surface of the tendon. The skin is now held no longer, and the knife is drawn slowly backwards and forwards across the tendon, until a peculiar sound—a kind of cracking—shows that the tissue is divided.

when the knife is withdrawn through the passage by which it was introduced. If the two portions of the muscle are both contracted, the clavicular origin is to be attacked at the same time as the sternal, and without making fresh wounds: the muscle is put on the stretch by drawing the head over to the opposite side, and the tenotome is passed again through the same wound, but from within outwards, following the same rules as before; but the knife must not go far beyond the outer edge of the muscle, lest the external jugular be wounded.

By this method of incision there is always some risk of injuring the external jugular vein. Many surgeons therefore prefer to cut the clavicular portion from behind forwards, and to penetrate behind the muscle at a point on its outer margin, between it and the external jugular vein. If both clavicular and sternal attachments of the muscle require division, there is no objection to making a cutaneous puncture for each attachment.

After the operation, the head should be replaced in its morbid position for a few days, and gradually extended by one of the various forms of extension-instruments employed for this particular purpose.

PERMANENT CONTRACTION OF THE FINGERS.—CLUBBED HAND.—
SECTION OF PALMAR APONEUROSIS, AND OF THE FLEXOR TENDONS.
—WEB FINGERS.

Permanent contraction of the fingers may be congenital or accidental. It arises from burns, from wounds, or from disease peculiar to the fascia itself. In all cases the lesions may be simple, and limited to the superficial parts, or else accompanied by general deformity of the hand—as is the case in clubbed hand, or complicated with contractions or cicatrices of the tendons of the muscles of the forearm. There are many modes of treating contractions of the skin and of the palmar fascia.

Astley Cooper was the first to apply subcutaneous surgery to these cases. The fibrous band was put on the stretch by forcible extension of the finger, a straight-bladed bistoury was passed under the skin and made to divide the contraction without cutting the integument. If then extension could not be properly effected, the incision was repeated in another place. The fingers had to be kept straight by suitable apparatus.

Dupuytren operated by open incision. The hand being supinated, and the fingers extended as far as possible, he cut down upon the contracted band at its most prominent part, somewhere near the metacarpophalangeal joints. The skin being cut through transversely to the extent of an inch, the fibrous band was laid open and cut completely through. A second incision was made higher up or lower down; if the hand could not be easily extended, the fingers were bandaged to a digital splint, applied to the dorsal surface, and the wounds dressed

with lint, slowly cicatrized; but the deformity often reappeared after a shorter or longer interval.

Goyrand cuts through the skin longitudinally at the most prominent part of the band, and dissects aside the integuments on each side, thus laying the contraction bare throughout, which is then divided at one or two points and removed; the lips of the wound are then brought together. This is the most successful of the operations employed for this deformity.

When contraction of the fingers is due to the flexor tendons, division has been proposed at the level of the first phalanx in the palm, or near the wrist even. This matter has been the subject of most lively controversy, and is not yet settled.

Most surgeons have declined the operation because tendons divided in their synovial sheaths seldom reunite—the fingers can be straightened, but afterwards can rarely be flexed properly. Hence tenotomy of the fingers is only to be performed in very rare cases. Contraction of the flexors and other forearm muscles is occasionally the cause of clubbed hand. Subcutaneous division of the tendons is evidently indicated, and rarely presents any great difficulty.

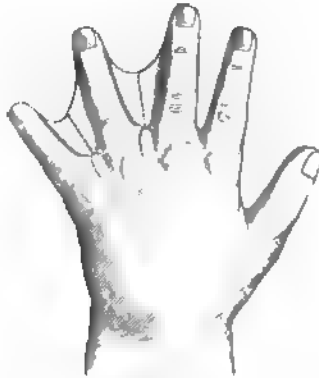
Operation for web-fingers.—Web-fingers are not an uncommon deformity. For this treatment the web may be cut either directly through from end to end, or may be cut in an anterior and posterior flap lengthwise with the finger, and each flap applied to the sides of one of the two fingers implicated. This latter operation is rarely applicable.

In the former operation—simple section of the web—success is generally prevented by reunion at the cleft from a growth of granulations, to overcome which, various plans have been adopted—the application of plaster, drawn tightly between the cleft of the finger up to the wrist; perforation of the web at the cleft by a piece of wire some months previous to the operation, etc.; but withal, the deformity can not be prevented. To obviate this, the author devised the following operation, which is both simple and unfailing.

Norton's operation. A tongue of integument is cut from between the knuckles, and another, corresponding in shape and position and size, on the palmar surface. These tongues are raised by dissection, and the webs cut through. The knife is then carried back so as to sever all the tissues as far back as the bases of the tongues, and any superabundant tissue removed. Next, the apices of the tongues are sewn together, and lint dipped in cold water applied.

The points to be considered in performing the operation are: (1) The tongues should be cut thick, so that their vascular supply may be complete, and the chance of their sloughing reduced to a minimum. (2) They should be cut rather narrow, with judgment, otherwise they get compressed laterally and bulge upwards at the margins, instead of

lying in adaptation to adjacent tissues. Such compression, of course, interferes with their circulation. (3) The tissue between the knuckles is to be cut back, or, if necessary, cut away, so that the apices of the tongues shall lie well in contact with each other without tension. (4) The tongues must be of sufficient length, so that there shall be no tension when the suture is applied; they had better be too long than



too short. (5) The apices of the tongue are very small, so that a very small needle should be used to carry the suture. (6) In shaping the tongues, the line of the natural web should be carefully observed. If the tongues heal by first intention, no web can redevelop. There is no reason whatever why union by the first intention should not invariably take place if the above points are remembered whilst performing the operation, and thus one of the most troublesome and unsuccessful of operations is converted into one of the most simple and most certain of success.

PLATE LXXXVIII.

CLUBFOOT—SECTION OF TENDO-ACHILLIS.

Fig. 1.—*Tenotomes*.—*a*, Tenotome with concave cutting edge, *b*, tenotome cutting on its convexity; *c*, lancet-shaped tenotome for puncturing the skin.

Fig. 2.—*Division of tendo-Achillis*.—*Surgical anatomy*.—*a*, *a'*, The two ends of the tendon separated after division, *b*, the sheath of the tendon formed in front by the muscular aponeurosis which separates the superficial from the deep muscles, *c*, the crural aponeurosis which forms the posterior layer of the sheath of the tendo-Achillis; *d*, skin removed to let the dissection be seen.

Fig. 3. *Talipes equinus*.—The foot is in the same line as the leg, and only rests on the ground by the toes. The heel is raised by the contraction of the tendo-Achillis; *a*, point of puncture of the skin, where the tendon is to be cut.

Fig. 4.—*Operation of dividing the tendo-Achillis*.—*Position of the surgeon and his assistant*.—The tenotome, *b*, introduced by the wound, *a*, dividing the tendon from behind forwards.

Fig. 5. *Talipes calcaneus*.—The foot is forcibly fixed upon the leg, the heel alone resting on the ground, which the toes do not touch at all.—*a*, *a*, Point in the skin where the tenotome ought to be introduced to cut the tendon of the extensor digitorum.

Fig. 6.—*Talipes valgus*.—The foot rests on its inner edge, the outer edge is raised from the ground, and the sole looks outwards.

Fig. 7. *Talipes varus*.—The sole is turned inwards, and is concave from behind forwards, the foot resting on its outer edge, the inner edge being turned upwards.

CLUBFOOT—DIVISION OF TENDONS OF THE LEG AND FOOT

All deviations of the foot termed *clubfoot*, whether congenital or acquired, are associated with contraction of certain muscles, tendons, or aponeuroses. Subcutaneous tenotomy is successfully employed in the cure of these deviations.

There are many varieties of clubfoot, but they are always in some way related to the normal movements of the sound foot, of which they seem to be merely exaggerations, as is well seen in cases where the deformity is simple and at an early stage, while, on the other hand, in extreme cases, the deformity is so great that the foot may take any strange forms.

Extension of the foot causes *talipes equinus*, in which the heel is

PL 88

Fig 1



Fig 2



Fig 3



Fig 4



Fig 5



Fig 6



strongly raised, and the foot, placed in a line with the leg, only rests on the ground by the toes or ends of the metatarsus. *Talipes equinus* is caused by contraction of the tendo-Achillis, and of the common flexor of the toes.

Flexion of the foot causes *talipes calcaneus*, which is just the reverse of the preceding. The heel alone rests on the ground, the plantar surface of the foot being directed forwards; the toes, which cannot touch the ground, are more or less drawn upwards, and towards the crest of the tibia. This variety, the rarest of all, is due to contraction of the anterior tibial and peroneal muscles, and of the common extensor of the toes.

Adduction of the foot is found in *talipes varus*, the commonest form of all. The foot touches the ground on its outer edge, the inner is turned up, the sole looks inwards, the toes are almost always flexed, and the heel raised from the ground. This kind, especially when of long standing, is almost always associated with *talipes equinus*. The cause of *talipes varus* is contraction of the tibial muscles, the tendo-Achillis and plantar fascia.

Abduction is represented by *talipes valgus*, which is the reverse of the last kind. The foot rests on its inner edge, from which the concavity is gone: the outer edge and sole of the foot no longer rest on the ground, and the latter looks outwards. This kind is usually combined with *talipes calcaneus*, and is the result of contraction of the peronei; the deformity known as *flatfoot* is a mild form of *valgus*.

If the malformation is originally due to muscular contraction, there soon arise other causes for its perpetuation, in gradual involvement of the fibrous tissues, the articular ligaments, the aponeuroses, and the tendinous sheaths. The bones subluxated, and deformed by abnormal pressure, lose their shape and relations to such a degree as to remove all hope of restoration, so that tenotomy is useless in extreme degrees of clubfoot, especially when the patient is fifteen or eighteen years old. In some very severe cases of deformity of the bones with *talipes*, excision of the deformed bones of the tarsus has been recently practised, as already described, page 93.

Cases are not altogether hopeless at a later date if the deformity is simple and not excessive, and improvement may be looked for. Tenotomy, which is so valuable in the treatment of clubfoot, should always be associated with the use of suitable apparatus designed to restore and preserve the normal position of the limb. The simultaneous use of shampooing or of galvanism is often very useful. Section of the contracted muscles is performed according to the general principles of tenotomy. We are about to recall these principles, referring first to the class of cases in which the tendon is free, and capable of making a distinct prominence under the skin, and to a second class of cases where it is bound down to the bones by a fibrous

sheath, and surrounded by a synovial membrane. In the first category are the tendo-Achillis and tendon of the tibialis anticus, common extensor of the toes, superficial tendons and muscles of the sole, and bands formed by the plantar fascia. In the second class are the tendons of the tibialis posticus, long flexor of the toes, and peronei.

Section of the tendons of the first kind is performed as follows. Only one opening is made in the skin, as small as possible, the size not exceeding that of the instrument, which is to be no larger than is required for proper strength.

The opening must be at such a distance from the tendon that its course can be oblique; thus to prevent admission of air, and to obtain this result, it is a good plan to pinch up a fold of skin and puncture it near its base.

When the tenotome reaches the tendon, the section may be effected either from the deeper side outward or in the other direction. Selecting the latter mode, the tenotome is slipped under the skin flat, and as soon as the middle of the blade is opposite the tendon, the knife is to be turned through a quarter rotation, so that the edge presses against the tendon, and the back is in contact with the deep surface of the skin. Convex tenotomes are preferable to those which are straight or concave, or two may be used, one pointed and straight, the other blunt and convex. While the knife is being introduced, the tendon is to be relaxed that the blade may glide between it and the skin; but it must be stretched during section, an assistant keeping the limb in the requisite position.

When selecting the method of cutting the tendon from its deeper surface, the tendon should be relaxed, and if possible raised by the thumb and index-finger of the left hand, when the knife can be easily inserted beneath it. The tendon is then put firmly on the stretch whilst the section is being made.

The surgeon knows when the section is complete by a slight shock accompanied with a peculiar sound, by the disappearance of the prominent cord, and sometimes by the perceptible interval between the cut ends.

These general principles being given, we proceed to examine the division of special tendons separately.

Section of tendo-Achillis.—This operation is undertaken for the cure of talipes equinus, but it is often required for equino-varus, and even for simple varus in young children. It has been employed in a variety of cases, as, for instance, in the retraction of the tendo-Achillis, after Chopart's amputation, and in some cases of irreducible fractures of the leg it has proved most efficacious.

Surgical anatomy.—The tendo-Achillis consists of the combined insertions of the muscles of the calf. Wide above, the tendon converges its fibres in descending, so as to form a vertical cord, which

makes a well-marked prominence, capable of being embraced by the fingers for a length of 2 inches or more.

The height above the os calcis at which the fleshy fibres end varies, but is seldom less than 2 inches. The tendon at its lower end widens for insertion into the tuberosity of the calcaneum, from which it is separated by a bursa. As it is necessary to avoid the bursa below, and the muscular fibres above, the point preferred for the division of the tendon is about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches above its insertion into the bone. In infants the distance should be about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch. This point is chosen for another anatomical reason: the tendon is covered behind by the skin alone, while in front it is in relation with the deep muscles, and especially with the tibial vessels and nerves, from which it is only separated by the fascia. Near the heel, the tendon is at some distance from these deeper parts, a thick layer of fat and cellular tissue intervening; but above and below the point indicated as the selected point, there is more risk of wounding the vessels and nerves, this is further lessened by introducing the knife on the inner side of the tendon.

The tendo-Achillis is surrounded by a firm and resisting fibrous sheath, in which the two ends retract after division, and which plays an important part in the cicatrization of the divided tendon. Fig. 2 shows the relations of the tendon and the separation of the cut ends.

OPERATION.

The patient lies on his face; an assistant holds the leg about its centre, and the foot about the middle of the sole. In the first stage, the foot is extended to relax the tendon, while the knife slips under the skin; in the second stage, the tendon is made very tense to assist the division. The surgeon, standing on the inner side of the leg, perforates the skin with a lancet, or the sharp tenotome, at the inner edge of the tendon at the point selected as referred to above. The instrument is introduced on the flat between the deep surface of the skin and the prominent tendon, or, on the other hand, beneath the deep surface of the tendon; then, having made a quarter rotation, its edge is brought against the tendon, when direct pressure, aided by a slight movement backwards and forwards, divides the tendon with a slight noise. This sound, a sudden shock, and the yielding of the tendon, show that the section is complete. Usually a deep groove can be felt between the separating ends of the tendon; the knife is withdrawn with great care, and two or three drops of blood follow. A pad of lint and a piece of plaster is applied over the wound, and the foot retained in its original position by a flexible metal splint. The Scarpa's shoe may be applied two or three days later.

Division of the tibialis anticus.—This is practised in the treatment of talpes calcaneus, and in talpes varus, though Bonnet considers that it may be dispensed with in the latter affection. It is performed at

the point where the tendon makes its prominence under the skin most evident; that is, about the level of the tibio-tarsal joint. This tendon should certainly not be cut from the surface downwards, for fear of injuring the joint and the dorsal artery of the foot. The knife should be entered on its outer side and slipped beneath the tendon, cutting towards the surface.

Division of the extensor pollicis, extensor communis digitorum, and peroneus tertius.—This operation may be called for in talpes calcaneus, valgus or varus. The prominence of these tendons under the skin renders their division easy. They can be reached by one or more incisions made in front of the malleoli, above the level of the tibio-tarsal articulation (Fig. 5, a, a). Bonnet prefers to operate at the level of the metatarso-phalangeal articulations: there is less risk in that proceeding of wounding the nerves and the vessels of the dorsum of the foot. The section of all the tendons is effected at the same operation.

Section of the plantar fascia. Contraction of this structure is very common in talipes. It is usually about the level of the joints, between the first and second row of tarsal bones, that the prominences of the fibrous bands are most marked; they may be cut from the surface downwards. The numerous processes of tissue to the sides and into the depth of the sole render complete division of the plantar fascia very difficult; in fact, the result seldom appears at once. The methods of operating on the palmar fascia are equally applicable to these cases.

Section of the muscles of the thenar and hypothenar eminences is seldom effectually performed, and no clear rules can be laid down.

The *peronei* and *tibialis posterior* form another class of muscles which, closely attached to the bones and contained in firm fibrous sheaths, make no prominence under the skin until they are contracted. Division is never here effected by cutting from the surface: it is best, having made the skin-puncture as before described, to slip the pointed convex tenotome under the tendon and cut it from below towards the surface. Cutting from the surface downwards, as recommended for the preceding muscles, would risk opening the joints and wounding the vessels of the foot.

Section of the peronei.—This may be done in three places:

(1) Behind the fibula, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch above the external malleolus, it is possible to make the section quite safely from the surface downwards but as fleshy fibres pass very low down the tendon, the division must be made freely.

(2) These tendons may also be cut $\frac{1}{2}$ inch below the outer malleolus, near the point where they turn forwards. There is, however, greater risk of opening the ankle joint, on which account the first operation is preferable.

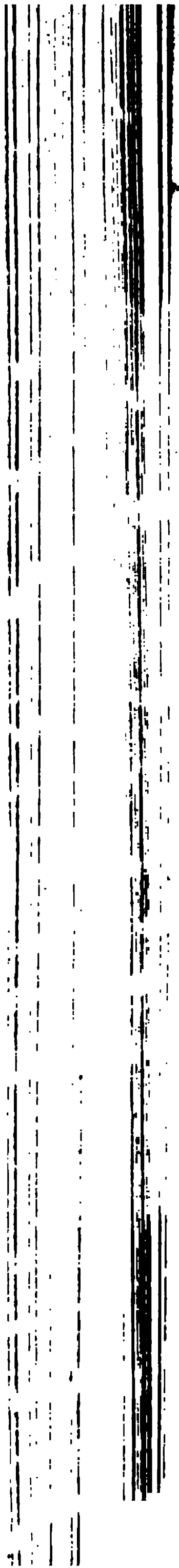
(3) Lastly, the operation may be performed behind the malleolus, but the manœuvre is impeded by the bony edge of the groove in which the tendons run. Division of these tendons is employed in cases of valgus, and has been of much use in the relief of flat foot (Bonnet).

Section of tibialis posticus.—In talipes equinus and in cases of varus in adults this tendon may need to be cut, the operation varying according to the degree of deformity. In talipes equinus the tendon is divided behind the malleolus. It may also be cut below the ankle as follows: Define exactly the prominence of the scaphoid; let the tenotome perforate the skin $\frac{1}{4}$ inch above and a little in front of this eminence, until the knife reaches the astragalus; then slip it along the bone until the point passes $\frac{1}{4}$ inch below the scaphoid eminence; then raise the edge and turn it forwards until it comes just under the skin. The tendon cannot fail to be divided, and the flexor communis is generally involved in the section (Bonnet). When in very bad cases of varus the scaphoid touches the malleolus, there is then no other part of the muscle available for operation in the foot, and the tendon must be divided behind the malleolus; but the result is less certain; if the instrument is carried too deep there is much risk of wounding the artery. M. Bonnet thinks this has often happened, but rarely with any great injury.

Section of the tendons of the flexor longus pollicis and flexor communis digitorum.—The deep position of these tendons prevents their being divided with certainty near the malleoli or in the sole; the operation must, therefore, be performed near the first phalanges of the toes. The methods applicable to the muscles of the first category are used here: puncture of the skin and division of the tendon must be performed in each toe, the chief inconvenience being the length of the operation. The same remarks are applicable to the flexor brevis digitorum. It usually happens that the tendons of the long and short flexors are cut at the same time, as is shown by the simultaneous retraction of the two muscles.

THE END.





M32 Norton, A.T. 15369
N88 A text book of operative
1886 surgery, based on Ber-
nard & Huette

DATE DUE

Quinlan

11/24/15

